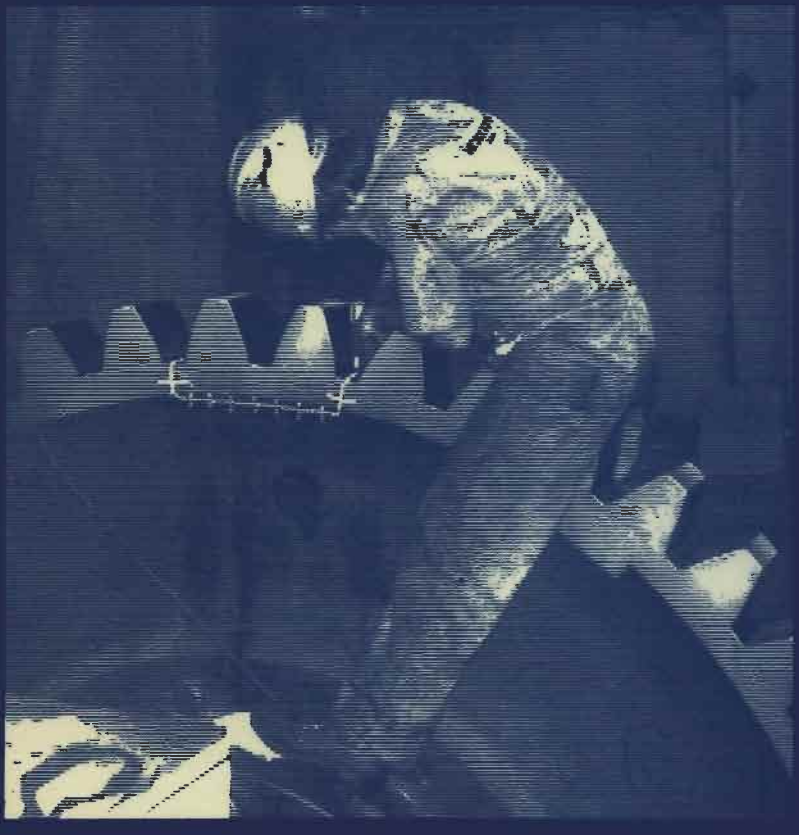
VISIT…

SECOND EDITION

Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants

Volume 3

Machinery Component Maintenance and Repair



Turbomachinery Overhauls ■ Foundations and Grouting ■ Alignment and Balancing ■ Pump Shaft Repairs ■ Mechanical Seals ■ Machinery Components

Heinz P. Bloch ■ Fred K. Geitner

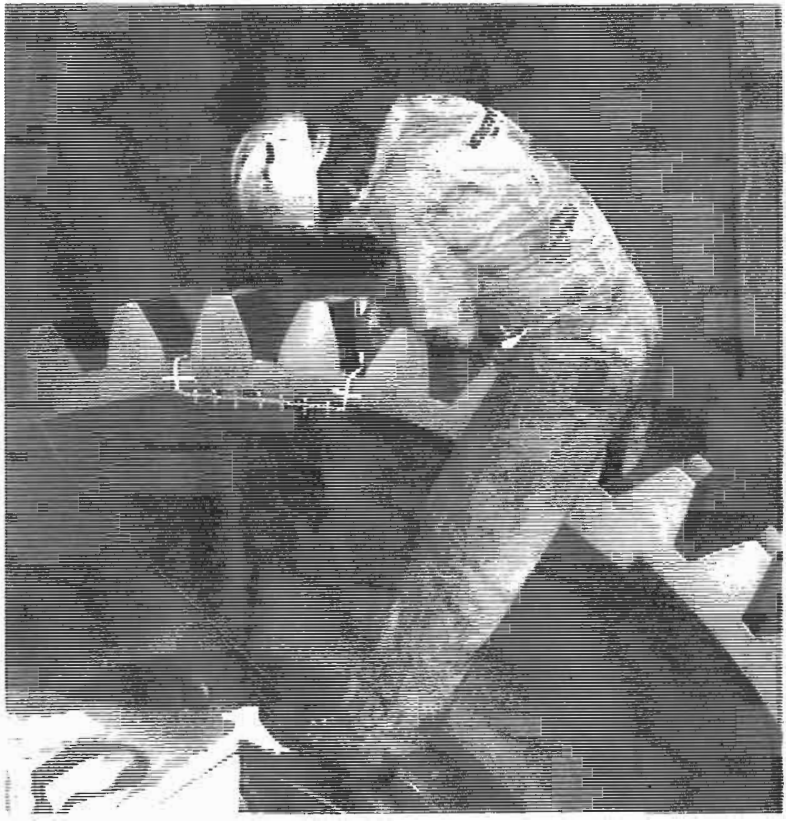
Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants
Volume 3, Second Edition

Machinery Component Maintenance and Repair

Gulf Publishing Company
Houston, Texas

Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants
Volume 3, Second Edition

Machinery Component Maintenance and Repair



Heinz P. Bloch and
Fred K. Geitner

This edition was
reviewed by the authors
and reprinted in 1999.

Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants
Volume 3, Second Edition

Machinery Component Maintenance and Repair

Copyright © 1985, 1990 by Gulf Publishing Company, Houston, Texas. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. This book, or parts thereof, may not be reproduced without permission of the publisher.

Gulf Publishing Company
Book Division
P.O. Box 2608 ☐ Houston, Texas 77252-2608

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Bloch, Heinz P., 1933-
Machinery component maintenance and repair/Heinz P. Bloch and Fred K. Geitner.—1st ed.
p. cm.—(Practical machinery management for process plants; v. 3)
Includes index.
ISBN 0-87201-781-8
1. Machinery—Maintenance and repair. 2. Industrial equipment—Maintenance and repair. I. Geitner, Fred K. II. Title.
III. Series: Bloch, Heinz P., 1933-. Practical machinery management for process plants; v. 3.
TJ153.B583 1990
670′ .28′8—dc20 90-3579
CIP

Series ISBN 0-87201-675-7

Note: The reader is reminded that many of the techniques and procedures described herein are of a general nature and may have to be modified or adapted to be directly applicable to the specific machinery in his plant. In case of conflict, observe the manufacturer's instructions or ask the manufacturer to assist in resolving any differences.

Printed on Acid-Free Paper (∞)

Contents

Foreword viii

Acknowledgments ix

Part I: Background to Process Machinery Maintenance Programming 1

1 Machinery Maintenance: An Overview 3

2 Maintenance Organization and Control for Multi-Plant Corporations 12

Type of Operation. Manager's Role. Central Control System. Planning Turbomachinery Overhauls. Assignment of Qualified Personnel. Specific Preparation and Planning. Inspection. Cleaning. Reassembly. Documenting What You've Done.

3 Machinery Foundations and Grouting 65

What's An Epoxy? Epoxy Grouts. Proper Grout Mixing is Important. Job Planning. Conventional Grouting. Methods of Installing Machinery. Pressure-Injection Regrouting. Foundation Repairs. Pump Baseplate Installation and Epoxy Grouting. Baseplate Leveling Procedures. Baseplate Preparation. New Concrete Preparation. Old Concrete Preparation. Anchor Bolts. Grout Forms. Epoxy Grout Placement. Appendix 3-A—Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Horizontal Pump Baseplate Checklist. Appendix 3-B—Specification for Portland Cement Grouting of Rotating Equipment. Appendix 3-C—Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Baseplate Grouting. Appendix 3-D—Specifications for Epoxy Grouting of Rotating Equipment.

4 Process Machinery Piping 142

Fundamentals of Piping Design Criteria. Piping Design Procedure. Flange Jointing Practices. Primary Causes of Flange Leakage. Proper Gasket Selec-

tion. Controlled Torque Bolt-Up of Flanged Connections. Recommendations for the Installation, Fabrication, Testing, and Cleaning of Air, Gas, or Steam Piping. Appendix 4-A—Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Machinery Piping. Appendix 4-B—Specifications for Cleaning Mechanical Seal Pots and Piping for Centrifugal Pumps. Appendix 4-C—Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Pump Piping.

Part II: Alignment and Balancing 169

5 Machinery Alignment 171

Prealignment Requirements. Choosing an Alignment Measurement Setup. Checking for Bracket Sag. Face Sag Effect—Examples. Interpretation and Data Recording. Graphical Techniques. Reverse Indicator Method Using Crossover Brackets. Horizontal Movement by Vertical Adjustment. Thermal Growth—Eleven Ways to Correct for it. Thermal Growth Estimation by Rules of Thumb.

6 Balancing of Machinery Components 238

Definition of Terms. Purpose of Balancing. Units of Unbalance. Types of Unbalance. Motions of Unbalanced Rotors. Balancing Machines. Centrifugal Balancing Machines. Measurement of Amount and Angle of Unbalance. Classification of Centrifugal Balancing Machines. Maintenance and Production Balancing Machines. Supporting the Rotor. Balancing Keyed End-Drive Adapters. Balancing Arbors. Testing Balancing Machines. Test Procedures. Balance Tolerances. Balance Errors Due to Rotor Support Elements. Computer-Aided Balancing. Field Balancing Overview. The Vector Diagram. Appendix 6-A—Balancing Terminology. Appendix 6-B—Balancing Machine Nomenclature. Appendix 6-C—Balancing and Vibration Standards. Appendix 6-D—Critical Speeds of Solid and Hollow Shafts.

Part III: Maintenance and Repair of Machinery Components 349

7 Ball Bearing Maintenance and Replacement 351

Engineering and Interchangeability Data. Cleanliness and Working Conditions in Assembly Area. Removal of Shaft and Bearings from Housing. Cleaning the Bearing. Shaft and Housing Preparation. Checking Shaft and Housing Measurements. Basic Mounting Methods. Hints on Mounting Duplex Bearings. Preloading of Duplex Bearings. Importance of the Correct Amount of Preload. Assembly of Bearings on Shaft. Cautions to Observe During Assembly of Bearings into Units. Mounting with Heat. Checking Bearings and Shaft After Installation. Testing of Finished Spindle. Maintain Service Records on All Spindles.

8 Repair and Maintenance of Mechanical Seals and Rotating Equipment Components 430

Mechanical Seal Installation, Repair, and Maintenance. Lapping and Seal Face Flatness. Installation of Stuffing Box Packing. Welded Repairs to Pump Shafts and Other Rotating Equipment Components. How to Decide if Welded Repairs are Feasible. Case Histories. High Speed Shaft Repair. Shaft Straightening. Straightening Carbon Steel Shafts. Casting Salvaging Methods.

9 Centrifugal Compressor Rotor Repair 487

Compressor Rotor Repairs. Impeller Manufacture. Compressor Impeller Design Problems. Impeller Balancing Procedure. Rotor Bows in Compressor and Steam Turbines. Clean Up and Inspection of Rotor. Disassembly of Rotor for Shaft Repair. Shaft Design. Rotor Assembly. Shaft Balancing. Rotor Thrust in Centrifugal Compressors. Managing Rotor Repairs at Outside Shops. Mounting of Hydraulically Fitted Hubs. Dismounting of Hydraulically Fitted Hubs.

10 Protecting Machinery Parts Against Loss of Surface 519

Basic Wear Mechanisms. Hard Surfacing Techniques. Special Purpose Materials. The Detonation Gun Process. Selection and Application of O-Rings. Casing Joint Compounds. Sealing Compounds.

Index 588

Foreword

A machinery engineer's job was accurately described by this ad, which appeared in the classified section of the *New York Times* on January 2, 1972:

> Personable, well-educated, literate individual with college degree in any form of engineering or physics to work . . . Job requires wide knowledge and experience in physical sciences, materials, construction techniques, mathematics and drafting. Competence in the use of spoken and written English is required. Must be willing to suffer personal indignities from clients, professional derision from peers in more conventional jobs, and slanderous insults from colleagues.
>
> Job involves frequent physical danger, trips to inaccessible locations throughout the world, manual labor and extreme frustration from lack of data on which to base decisions.
>
> Applicant must be willing to risk personal and professional future on decisions based on inadequate information and complete lack of control over acceptance of recommendations . . .

Well, that was in 1972. Since then, however, the job has not become any simpler. The cost of machinery outages and repairs has escalated. The prerequisites required to be able to perform as a machinery engineer could even be expanded thus:

> A knowledge of stress analysis, measurement techniques, instrumentation, vibration analysis, materials, machine shop procedures, fluid flow, rotor dynamics, machinery field erection and startup procedures, and an understanding of effective maintenance management.

This list is by no means complete. And since very few of us feel absolute master of all of these areas, we seek guidelines, procedures, and techniques that have worked for our colleagues elsewhere. Collecting these guidelines for every machinery category, size, type, or model would be almost impossible, and the resulting encyclopedia would be voluminous and outrageously expensive. Therefore, the only reasonable course of action has been to be selective and assemble the most important, most frequently misapplied or perhaps even some of the most cost-effective maintenance, repair, installation, and field verification procedures needed by machinery engineers serving the refining and petrochemical process industries.

This is what my colleagues, Heinz P. Bloch and Fred K. Geitner, have succeeded in doing. Volume 3 of this series on machinery management brings us the know-how of some of the most knowledgeable individuals in the field. Engineers and supervisors concerned with machinery and component selection, installation, and maintenance will find this an indispensable guide.

Here, finally, is a long-needed source of practical reference information which the reader can readily adapt to similar machinery or installations in his particular plant environment.

Uri Sela
Walnut Creek, California

Acknowledgments

It would have been quite impossible to write this text without the help and cooperation of many colleagues and friends. When we explained our intention to follow up on Volumes 1 and 2 of this series by assembling pertinent material for Volumes 3 and 4, we struck a responsive chord with professionals who shared our goal of providing a practical reference text on the subject of machinery maintenance and repair. These companies or individuals have earned our respect and gratitude for allowing us to use, adapt, paraphrase or otherwise incorporate *their* work in Volume 3: W. J. Scharle (Multi-Plant Maintenance), J. A. Trotter (Computer-Based Maintenance), J. D. Houghton (Planning Turbomachinery Overhauls), E. M. Renfro/Adhesive Services Company (Major Machinery Grouting and Foundation Repair), M. G. Murray (Grouting Checklists, Machinery Alignment), C. C. Fletcher (Machinery Alignment, Installation, Checkout), Prueftechnik Dieter Busch (Laser Alignment), P. C. Monroe (Machinery Installation Checklists), J. W. Dufour (Machinery Installation Guidelines), W. Schmidt (Piping Connection Guidelines), D. C. Stadelbauer, Schenk Trebel Corporation. (Balancing of Machinery Components), MRC Division of SKF Industries (Bearing Installation and Maintenance), Bill Carpenter, Durametallic Corporation (Metallic Seal Installation, Repair, Maintenance), H. A. Scheller (Pump Packages), T. Doody (Welded Repairs to Pump Shafts, etc.), H. A. Erb (Repair Techniques for Machinery Rotor and Case Damage), Byron Jackson Pumps (Field Machining Procedures), Terry Washington, In-Place Machining Company (Metal Stitching Techniques), Barney McLaughlin, Hickham Industries, Inc., and W. E. Nelson (Compressor Rotor and Component Repairs, Sealing Compounds, etc.), M. Calistrat/Koppers Company (Mounting Hydraulically Fitted Hubs), C. R. McKinsey and K. G. Budinski (Hard Surfacing), C. R. Cooper, Van Der Horst Corporation (Chrome Plating), Turbine Metal Technology (Diffusion Alloys) and National O-Ring Company (O-Ring Selection and Application).

Three highly qualified machinery engineers, D. L. E. Jacobs, W. A. Clark and Dino Troisi, took care of the appropriate Exxon Chemicals manuscript reviews; their efforts were sincerely appreciated as, of course, were those of our close personal friend Uri Sela who devoted so much of his personal time to a detailed review of the entire draft, galleys, and page proofs. Uri counseled us on technical relevance, spelling, syntax and other concerns. Last, but not least, we are indebted to our editor, Brad Sagstetter.

As we put the finishing touches on the simultaneously released companion Volumes 3 and 4 in our series on "Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants," we are reminded of some important remarks made by Exxon Chemical Technology Vice President W. J. Porter, Jr. in early 1984. Mr. Porter expressed the belief that through judicious use of outside contacts, participation in relevant activities of technical societies, and publication of pertinent material, we can be sure that our technical productivity will continue to improve. The technical person will thus be updated on the availability of "state-of-the-art" tools and individual creativity encouraged.

With these sentiments, which so fittingly express our thoughts, we conclude by thanking Exxon Chemical Company for permitting us to tackle this challeng-

ing task on our own. It certainly accomplished for us what it is to accomplish for the reader: Find new and better ways to do our jobs, broaden our perspective as engineers, and contribute to a fund of knowledge which—if properly tapped—will bring benefits to everyone.

Heinz P. Bloch
Fred K. Geitner

Part I

Background to Process Machinery Maintenance Programming

Chapter 1

Machinery Maintenance: An Overview

Maintenance and repair of machinery in a petrochemical process plant was defined in a preceding volume as simply "defending machinery equipment against deterioration."[1] Four strategies within the failure-fighting role of maintenance were defined:

- Preventive
- Predictive
- Breakdown or demand based
- "Bad actor" or weak spot management

Machinery maintenance can often be quite costly in a petrochemical plant operation. Prior to the the publication of the first two volumes of this series, very few studies were available describing quantitative or objective methods for arriving at the optimization of the four strategies[2]. Though our readers should not expect detailed contributions to those subjects in this volume, we did opt to include an overview section describing the maintenance philosophy practiced in a large multi-plant corporation which makes effective use of centralized staff and computerized planning and tracking methods.

What, then, can our readers expect? After a short definition of the machinery maintenance problem we will highlight centralized maintenance planning. We will then guide our readers through the world of machinery maintenance procedures by identifying the What, When, Where, Why, How—and sometimes Who—of most maintenance and repair activities around petrochemical process machinery. We ask, however, that our readers never lose sight of the total picture. What, then is the total picture?

It is the awareness that true cost savings and profitability can only be achieved by combining machinery reliability, safety, availability, and maintainability into a cost-effective total—consistent with the intent of our series of volumes on process machinery management. Figure 1-1 illustrates this concept. Consequently, machinery maintenance cannot be looked at in isolation. It will have to be governed by equipment failure experience, by our effectiveness in failure analysis and troubleshooting[1], and by built-in reliability[3].

Maintenance in a broad definition is concerned with controlling the condition of equipment. Figure 1-2 is a classification of most machinery maintenance problems.

Deterministic or predictive component life problems are those where no uncertainty is associated with the timing or consequence of the maintenance action. For example, we may have equipment whose components are not subject to actual failure but whose operating cost increases with time. A good illustration would be labyrinths in a centrifugal process compressor. To reduce operating cost caused by increasing leakage rate, some form of maintenance work can be done—usually in the form of re-

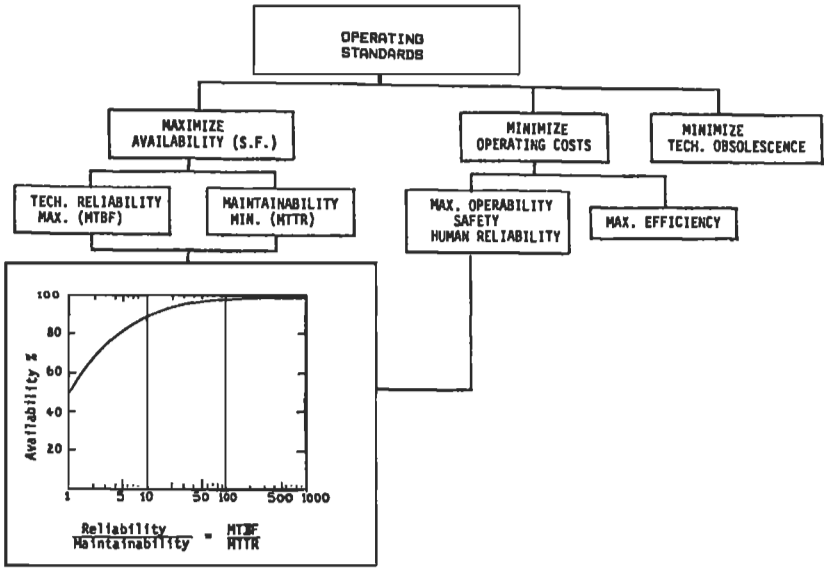


Figure 1-1. The total picture: Possible goals of process machinery management.

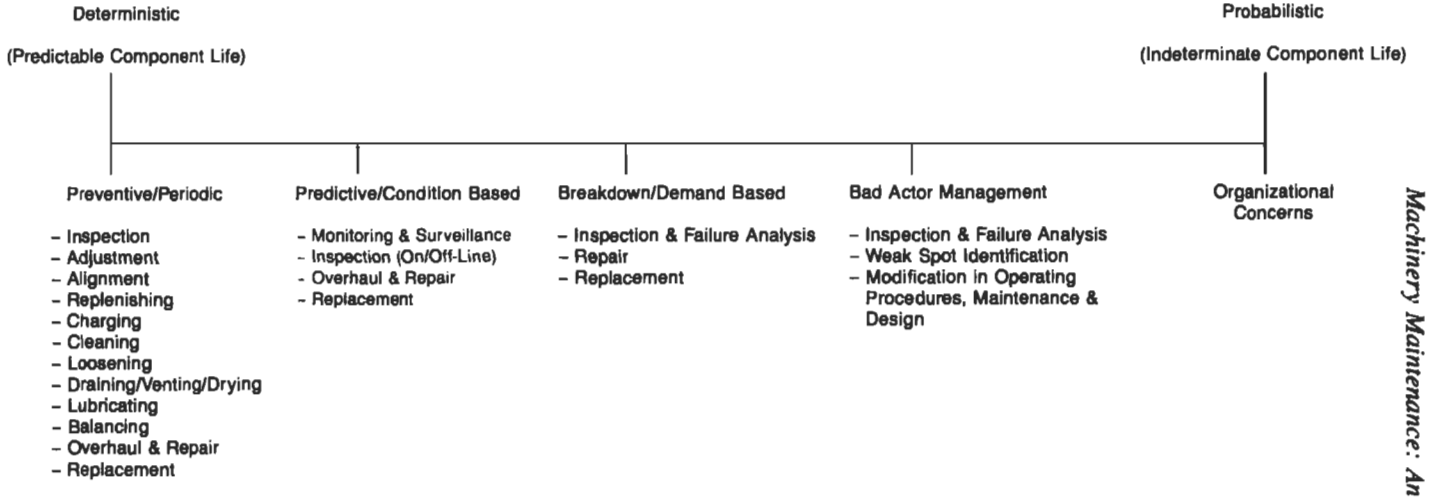


Figure 1-2. Classification of machinery maintenance problems.

placement or overhaul. After maintenance the future trend in operating cost is known or at least anticipated. Such a deterministic situation is illustrated in Figure 1-3.

In probabilistic or indeterminate component life problems, the timing and result of maintenance may depend on chance. In the simplest situation a piece of machinery can be described as being "good" or "failed." From a frequency distribution of the time elapsed between maintenance activity and failure it is possible to determine the variations in the probability of failure with elapsed time. These relationships are thoroughly dealt with in Reference 1.

We saw from Figure 1-2 that *inspection, overhaul, repair* and finally *replacement* are common to all maintenance strategies. The basic purpose of inspection is to determine the condition of our equipment. All machinery inspection should be based on these considerations:

1. Expected failure experience:
   - Deterministic
   - Probabilistic
2. Inspection cost.
3. Probability and risk of failure.
4. Probable consequences of failure, i.e., safety-health, and business loss.
5. The risk that inspection will *cause* a problem[4].
6. The quality of on-stream condition monitoring results.

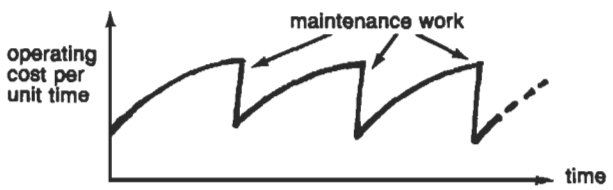


Figure 1-3. Deterministic trend in costs.

The terms *overhaul* and *repair* are often reserved for maintenance actions that improve the conditions of an item, but may or may not establish "good as new" condition. In fact, *overhaul* is often interpreted as a preventive maintenance action while *repair* is strictly reserved for maintenance of an item that has reached a defined failed state or defect limit[5,6]. *Replacement* should be understood in our context as a broad term that includes the replacement of components, operating fluids and charges, as well as of complex machinery and systems. Finally, we understand *organizational structure* problems in machinery maintenance as those concerns that deal with maintainability parameters such as facilities, manpower, training, and tools. Figure 1-4 illustrates this point.

Most petrochemical process plants have a preventive maintenance (PM) system. The authors know of a plant where 95% of the maintenance work orders are turned in by the PM crews and not the operators. While this is an extreme—and probably not a very cost effective—way of failure fighting, we can support a moderate approach to machinery PM. This moderate approach begins with an attempt to plan all PM actions by following this pattern:

1. Determine what defect, failure, or deterioration mode[7] it is you want to prevent from occurring.
2. Determine whether the defect, failure, or deterioration mode can be prevented by periodic actions. If not, determine how it can be pre-

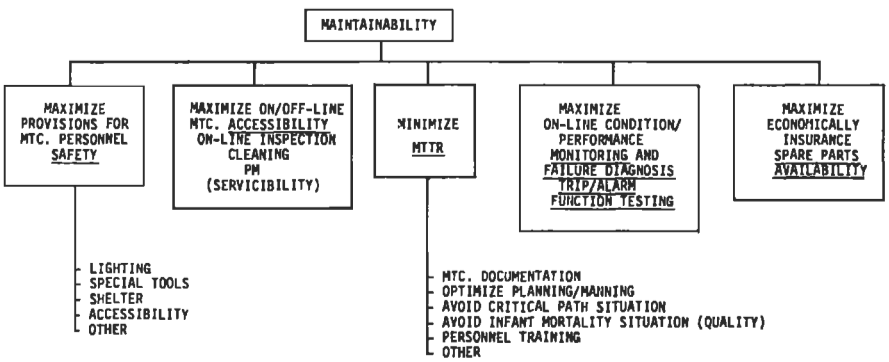


Figure 1-4. Process machinery maintainability components.

dicted and its consequence reduced by perhaps continuous or daily surveillance.
3. Select PM task.
4. Determine normal life span before defect, failure, or deterioration mode will develop.
5. Choose PM interval within normal life span.
6. Determine who should do the job—operating crew or maintenance personnel.

More often than not we will find that machinery failure modes are probabilistic and indeterminate. PM will therefore not help and predictive strategies are indicated: By continuously looking for problems, we expect not to reduce the deterioration rate of machinery components, but to control the consequences of unexpected defect or failure. This maintenance strategy is often referred to as predictive- or condition-based maintenance. Together with "post mortem" failure analysis[8], this strategy is the most powerful weapon in the arsenal of the machinery maintenance person. Figure 1-5 shows how predictive maintenance works in connection with large petrochemical process machinery such as turbocompressors, reciprocating compressors, and their drivers.

The fundamental difference between preventive maintenance and predictive- or condition-based maintenance strategies is that PM is carried out as soon as a predetermined interval has elapsed, while condition-based maintenance requires checking at predetermined intervals, with the maintenance action carried out only if inspection shows that it is required. The main factors in a predictive machinery maintenance program are:

- State-of-the-art instrumentation and monitoring methods as shown in Table 1-1.
- Skilled analysts.
- Information system allowing easy data retrieval.
- Flexible maintenance organization allowing for an easy operations/maintenance interface.
- Ability to perform on-line analysis[11].

In the following chapters we will further deal with predictive maintenance tools.

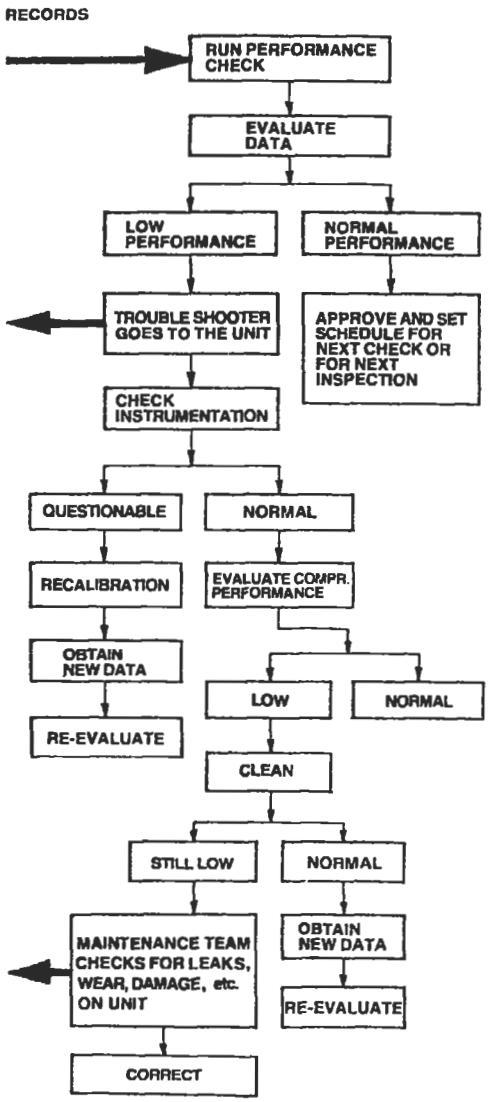


Figure 1-5. Machinery predictive maintenance routine (Adapted from Reference 9).

Table 1-1
State-of-the-Art Instrumentation and Monitoring Methods

| MACHINERY COMPONENTS | SENSORY PERCEPTION: DIRECT: Sound (Change) | Resonance | Vibration | Liquid leakage | Discoloration | Gas/vapor leakage | Temperature (touch) | Wear debris | SENSORY PERCEPTION: INDIRECT: Pressure | Temperature | Flow | Position | Speed | Torque | Vibration | Pressure ratios | Temperature ratios | Power demand | Recycle rates | Efficiency | MONITORING/INSPECTION METHOD AND PARAMETER: Visual inspection | Gas test | Alignment check | Dye penetrants | Magnaflux | Radiographic inspection | Vibration survey | Vib. spectrum analysis | Modal analysis | Shock pulse level | Spike energy level | Ultrasonic measurement | Acoustic emission | Peak firing pressure | Gas path condition | Thermographic survey | Process fluid analysis | Oil analysis/off-line | Oil analysis/on-line | Oil filter inspection | INSTRUMENTATION REQUIRED: Process instrumentation | Engine analyzer | On-line alignment instr. | On-line torque meter | Proximity probe system | Velocity probe system | Accelerometer system | Electronic stethoscope | Sound spectrum analyzer | Ultrasonic meter | Ultrasonic imaging equipment | Acoustic valve leak detector | Portable X-ray analyzer | Gamma ray equipment | Stroboscope | Stroboscope: borescope | Portable vibration meter | Vibration spectrum analyzer | Shock pulse meter | Vibration spike energy analyzer | Acoustic emission detector | Acoustic flaw analyzer | Pocket digital thermometer | Infrared thermometer | Spectroscope | Magnetic plugs | Contaminant monitor |
|---|---|---

References

1. Bloch, H. P. and Geitner, F. K., *Machinery Failure Analysis and Troubleshooting,* Gulf Publishing Company, Houston, Texas, 1983, Page 514.
2. Jardine, A. K. S., *The Use of Mathematical Models in Industrial Maintenance,* The Institute of Mathematics and its Applications, U.K., August/September 1976, Page 232–235.
3. Bloch, H. P., *Improving Machinery Reliability,* Gulf Publishing Company, Houston, Texas, 1982, Pages 1–366.
4. Grothus, H., *Die Total Vorbeugende Instandhaltung,* Grothus Verlag, Dorsten, W. Germany, 1974, Pages 63–66.
5. Reference 2, Page 232.
6. Reference 1, Page 515.
7. Reference 1, Pages 527–530.
8. Reference 1, Page 211.
9. Fucini, G. M., *Maintenance Shops,* Quaderni Pignone, Nuovo Pignone, Firenze, Italy, Number 27, 1983, Page 30.
10. Reference 1, Pages 289–476.
11. Baldin, A. E., "Condition-Based Maintenance," *Chemical Engineering,* August 10, 1981, Pages 89–95.

Bibliography

Whittaker, G. A., Shives, T. R., and Philips, *Technology Advances in Engineering and Their Impact on Detection, Diagnosis and Prognosis Methods,* Cambridge University Press, New York, N.Y., 1983, Pages 11–286.

Chapter 2

Maintenance Organization and Control for Multi-Plant Corporations*

There are many approaches to performing maintenance and engineering activities at an operating facility. The type of process, plant size, location, and business conditions at a particular time are all variables that can affect this approach. The system must fit the basic overall corporate goals. The final evaluation of success, however, for whichever system selected, is achieving the lowest possible product cost over extended periods of time at varying business conditions.

This segment of our text will concentrate on plant maintenance and engineering service in a multi-plant corporation operated on a combination centralized-decentralized basis. Organizational control methods are all planned for an optimum approach to cost economy. Basically, then, we are presenting corporate management's approach to an overall maintenance strategy.

Type of Operation

To understand the organizational approach to maintenance and engineering described here, it is first necessary to understand the size and type of operations involved. We should assume that the facilities would fall into virtually all size categories. The plants are quite autonomous and may select maintenance organizations to fit their particular needs.

* Based on articles by W. J. Scharle ("Multi-Plant Maintenance and Engineering Control," *Chemical Engineering Progress*, January 1969) and J. A. Trotter ("Reduce Maintenance Cost with Computers," *Hydrocarbon Processing*, January 1979). By permission of the authors.

Through their own unique experiences of plant maintenance and engineering problems and studying alternative approaches used by others, a mature organization will have gradually formulated an operations control system, including plant maintenance and engineering services, which best serves its type of operation and is flexible for future needs.

This implies that large plants, which have the technical and maintenance support resources to be totally self-sufficient, may opt to deviate from the organizational and implementation-oriented setups we are about to describe. However, for best results, the deviation should not be very drastic because the basic principles of effective maintenance organization and control hold true for any plant environment.

Before discussing plant maintenance specifics and engineering functions, we will discuss why this multi-plant corporation went to the present approach. Like many companies, the corporation started with an approach wherein the plant manager was autonomous in his responsibility for production, maintenance, and most engineering services. He depended largely on the equipment manufacturer to help solve problems.

As more plants were added to the network and more significant operational and mechanical problems were encountered, it was gradually recognized that the most economical solution to critical problems was to quickly interject the best technical specialists within the company, regardless of location. However, it was not possible or economical to have these highly skilled specialists at each facility or to adequately train the plant manager in all areas when the facility normally operated at an extremely high onstream factor. Again, as a higher degree of technical knowledge was gained, equipment improvements made, and sophisticated process and machinery monitoring devices introduced, it was found that the periods between major equipment maintenance could be significantly extended without risking costly equipment failures. The use of a relatively small group of mobile, technical specialists from within the company was the key to better plant performance and lower costs. Equipment manufacturers and vendors' representatives have neither the incentive nor the responsibility to provide the prompt technical services required.

Manager's Role

Yet, it was strongly desired to have these specialists report to and work solely under the guidance of the individual plant manager in order not to confuse the chain of command. Thus, a decentralized system of giving the plant manager responsibility for general operations, cost performance, and maintenance performance, but with a strong centralized ap-

proach to all aspects of monitoring plant performance and providing specific maintenance and engineering services as required, was evolved as the fundamental organizational concept. Once this basic concept was reached, efforts were then devoted to understanding and establishing specific methods of accomplishing plant maintenance and engineering services under the general system concept.

Since the plant managers' responsibilities on a decentralized basis represented a rather conventional approach to day-to-day operation, we will dwell on considerations relative to the centralized aspect of plant maintenance and engineering services and the monitoring function. These centralized services were provided by a group of specialists located for the most part at the home office or at the location of the largest affiliated plant. Some advantages of this centralized approach to plant maintenance and engineering services are:

1. Better solutions to important technical problems. With the varied plant problems, the ability to use key specialists will normally result in the best technical solution.
2. More efficient use of talent. With extremely high onstream factors, chemical and mechanical engineering specialists at each facility cannot be fully justified, since the rate of problems and/or severity would not normally warrant their continuous presence. Minimum staffing at each plant to handle normal day-to-day problems, plus a mobile technical and maintenance organization will result in lower overall costs. The question of overstaffing at a particular facility to take care of "first year" startup problems is a very real one. The ability to have this same mobile specialist group help in quickly solving first year operation problems allows a flexible and easy method of reducing a facility to its minimum labor cost at the earliest time.
3. Better communication. Technical solutions, procedures, and other important factors which have a direct and immediate effect on onstream factors and costs can be more readily transmitted from one plant to another. The use of plant shutdown and maintenance reports prepared by the plant manager allows the central technical organization to evaluate and disseminate information pertinent to other facilities.
4. Better response to management and business outlook. Constantly varying market conditions change product demand and value. These important factors often become the overriding consideration in scheduling maintenance work and turnarounds. Centralized overall maintenance planning can more readily assimilate these factors in considering a large number of plants at different locations.

This is an important consideration in minimizing peaks and valleys in major maintenance work and allowing a smaller specialist group to handle a broader scope of activities.

5. More consistent organizational policies, procedures, and better methods of making comparisons on general performance, cost, production, prompt action, and managerial talent.

To keep the centralized organization current on the facts of life at plant facilities, a program of specialist and management visits to each facility must be established. These visits, coupled with careful production monitoring, normal maintenance, and general cost performance are necessary prerequisites for the system discussed herein. The extra travel and communication costs are far outweighed by better personnel utilization.

Maintenance

Total plant profitability is obviously affected both by onstream factors and maintenance costs. One cannot be separated from the other. Any system, therefore, must account for how cheaply maintenance can be performed from an organizational setup, and also what must be done and how often. The ability to update maintenance requirements and improved planning based on experience at a group of plants has a large bearing on overall maintenance costs.

Other than breakdown maintenance, all maintenance work is planned. Some can be done while the plant is operating and the rest during shutdown. The effectiveness of this planned or preventive maintenance (PM) program to reduce breakdowns and the organizational methods used to accomplish the planned major maintenance work will determine maintenance costs. Preventive maintenance as discussed here covers all planned maintenance work, whether major or minor, regardless of whether the plant is running or shut down. The selection of what shall be done as part of the PM program and how often it shall be done is one of the most important factors affecting corporate maintenance costs and the realization of an optimum onstream factor.

It is a generally accepted practice to let each plant manager handle the PM program for his facility. In some plants, this is being done with individual check sheets or production boards using equipment manufacturers' recommendations and the limited experience of plant personnel. However, the demand for plant operation attention often prevents timely maintenance performance. Another defect is that it lacks uniformity and does not provide compliance reports to home office management. And, there is often no effective way to compare the PM performance at similar

plants or equipment at different locations. Most important of all, equipment failures may occur because proper consideration and judgement is not given to maintenance items whose significance is best understood by qualified specialists.

Central Control System

In view of this, major corporations will frequently opt to incorporate a centrally controlled PM system into the Operations Department. This allows mechanical and process specialists to make the key cost decisions on what kind and how often maintenance should be accomplished at all affiliate plants by coupling it to an electronic data processing monitoring system. This will serve as a management tool in evaluating conformance to the maintenance system. Thus, the plant manager is made responsible for efficiently executing the PM work as outlined by the program, and is monitored for performance by centralized management. The data processing system can be easily adapted to any facility, is inexpensive to install and operate, and lends itself to overall reduced costs as the corporation expands. Some of the system advantages are:

1. The PM performance and frequency program is prepared by the centralized group of qualified engineering specialists based on equipment manufacturers' recommendations, experience, and historical records. The program is reviewed and approved by the plant manager. Program updating to take advantage of new technical knowledge and both good and bad experience is important to ensure continued cost savings.
2. A definite schedule is presented to plant managers so they know what is expected of them.
3. Operations management is advised of system conformance and is made aware of rescheduled tasks.
4. The system identifies overall corporate maintenance requirements so that work can be staggered enabling a minimum mobile group of technical and maintenance specialists to handle the overall program.
5. Historical data are accumulated for analysis.
6. Reduction in clerical work more than offsets the cost of computerization.

Principal Applications Areas for the Maintenance Computer

Conceptual discussions of the past and more recent systems development work have concentrated on six general areas of maintenance support. Systems are, of course, called by different names, according to the company which is developing and implementing them. Systems of any one type may also have differing emphasis, according to the specific company's requirements for maintenance support. The general applications areas are:

1. Materials inventory/stock cataloging
2. Preventive maintenance/equipment records
3. Work order costing
4. Fixed equipment inspection
5. Planning/scheduling of major maintenance projects
6. Work order planning and scheduling

The various computer systems have been developed both separately and as integrated groups through exchange of data between systems. Moreover, maintenance systems generally are designed for data exchange with a conventional accounting system.

Materials inventory/stock catalog systems are designed to support maintenance by making certain that required materials and spare parts are available at the right time, at the right place, and at minimum cost. Well-designed systems in this category provide better availability of parts and materials by supplying up-to-date catalogs, generated in multiple sorts.

Some systems allow stock items to be reserved for future usage in major construction projects or for scheduled plant or unit turnaround projects. A well-designed inventory/stock catalog system also may maintain a history of materials and parts usage. This enables maintenance to evaluate service demand patterns or vendor performance and to adjust inventory levels according to materials/parts usage. Some companies place emphasis on the purchasing function in design of inventory systems. Such systems automatically signal the need for materials or parts reorders on whatever basis the purchasing department wishes to establish (such as order point/order quantity or minimum/maximum quantities). The system may also be designed for automatic purchase order generation and to maintain a file of open purchase orders. It also can report unusual situations such as changes in a manufacturer's parts number,

price increases beyond a prescribed limit, or alterations in delivery time requirements.

Ordinarily, an inventory/catalog system produces the majority of its reports on a weekly or monthly basis. Systems also may be run daily for adding new materials or parts, for daily stock status reporting or for processing receipts and issues information.

Maintenance people have long recognized the need for adequate inventory control and cataloging procedures. Without such procedures, the maintenance department runs the risk of having its work planning and scheduling controlled by materials availability. The computerized inventory/catalog system, thus, offers the benefits of improved manpower utilization and unit downtime reduction.

Preventive maintenance and equipment records systems not only bring a highly organized approach to scheduling of periodic inspections and service connected with a preventive maintenance program, but also provide a mechanism for compiling a complete equipment performance and repair history—including costs—for equipment within a processing facility.

The well-designed preventive maintenance and equipment records system is built around failure of equipment description data. Through this file, equipment inspection intervals are assigned according to criticalness or in accordance with laws or safety and environmental protection codes. Service intervals are also assigned—sometimes according to manufacturer's recommendations and sometimes on the basis of experience in extension of equipment life. Overhauls are scheduled in the same way as service intervals. Some types of service and all overhauls must also be backlogged for performance during equipment shutdown periods.

Most preventive maintenance systems produce a periodic listing of PM work to be performed—including specifications, service, and overhauls due. Jobs are entered into the plant's regular work order planning and scheduling system. PM jobs not performed on schedule are then reported—perhaps at a higher priority—for inclusion in the next PM work list.

The equipment records function, a natural extension of the preventive maintenance scheduling function, usually is not limited to equipment covered by the PM program. All equipment may be placed in this system's file. Through feedback cards from the field, the system can compile and maintain a complete repair file on all equipment of interest. Repair history and cost data may be reported in several different ways. Repair history by specific equipment or equipment type, for example, aids maintenance in setting or adjusting inspection, service, or overhaul intervals for equipment. Other reports may aid maintenance in identifying equipment which is costing most to maintain or has the poorest per-

formance history. Some systems also support repair/replace decisions by maintenance or engineering department as well as equipment selection decisions. Equipment interchangeability information, and reports on equipment spare parts, are also available from some systems. The preventive maintenance/equipment records systems is also called the "reliability maintenance system" by some companies and plants.

Work order costing systems are vital for analysis and control of plant maintenance costs. These systems provide a framework for the capture of cost-related information and processing capability for analyzing such information and producing reports required by cost-conscious maintenance management.

Work order cost systems accumulate costs by work order. Usually, cost-related data from time sheets, contractors' invoices, journal vouchers, and spare parts inventory are compiled by the system and analyzed to produce:

1. Detailed and summary listings of costs, by work order.
2. Detailed listings of all current month cost transactions for each work order.
3. Reports which list, for each work order, costs incurred for the current month as well as during the life of the work order.

Using these and other reports, maintenance management can compare actual costs against estimates or budgets and can pinpoint costs which are outside policy guidelines or rising at a rate faster than anticipated.

The work order cost system also may be designed to provide input for other systems. It can generate equipment cost transactions for a preventive maintenance/equipment records system, for example, or can provide summarized accounting entries for a general ledger system.

In summary, work order cost systems provide cost information in a form that is fully usable by maintenance management in identification and definition of cost-related problems within the maintenance function. With this information, control efforts may be concentrated on areas where potential savings exist.

The fixed equipment inspection system adds consistency, comprehension, and effectiveness to a plant's inspection program. It is designed to support the plant inspection department and is structured around a data base of information on equipment critical to a plant's operation, such as piping, pressure vessels, heat exchangers, and furnaces. Fixed equipment may be designated as critical because of its potential for creating safety hazards, its position within the processing train or because of laws or codes governing equipment inspection in certain cases.

The system aids in scheduling inspection activities. Each piece of equipment covered by the system is scheduled for periodic inspection. Inspections that can be performed while the equipment is operating are placed on a monthly schedule for routine execution by the inspection team. Inspections which must await equipment shutdown are placed on a standing work list for coordination with operating and maintenance departments.

Inspection systems also may provide inspection history for particular pieces of equipment, standard inspection procedures for the equipment, forms for recording equipment conditions and thickness measurements, and automatic computation of corrosion rate (based on multiple inspections). The well-designed inspection system also can accommodate thickness measurement data produced by inspection tools such as ultrasonic, infrared, or radiographic devices.

Using results from system computations, inspection groups may report equipment condition to maintenance groups if repair, service, or replacement is required. Maintenance, in turn, would generate a work order consistent with the inspector's requirements. Information also may be routinely provided to engineering personnel to plan equipment replacement or to improve equipment and parts selection as equipment is replaced.

Planning and scheduling major maintenance projects using computer-supported Critical Path Method (CPM) techniques was one of the earliest applications of computers in support of the maintenance function. The central idea behind development and use of such systems was to identify opportunities for parallel execution of tasks associated with a turnaround project so that available manpower and resources may be utilized as efficiently as possible to minimize equipment downtime.

In spite of the CPM system's "head start" in use by maintenance groups, this potentially profitable tool soon was abandoned by a surprisingly large number of plants and companies. Most companies said the available CPM systems were too complex or too cumbersome for effective use in maintenance turnaround projects or small construction jobs.

There is, however, a resurgence of computer-based CPM systems today. Systems currently designed and used for planning and scheduling major maintenance projects are simplified versions of the earlier systems. They are, in fact, designed specifically for use by process industry maintenance personnel. They incorporate terminology readily understood by maintenance people and combine simplicity of operation with flexibility.

Typically, the well-designed CPM system produces reports which show how limited resources may be used to complete a project in the shortest possible time. Alternatively, the system may show the manpower necessary for completion of a project in a given length of time.

Maintenance work order planning and scheduling continues to be a largely manual set of procedures throughout the hydrocarbon processing industry. There are, however, several systems which support daily work planning and scheduling. One such system is a skills inventory file that provides daily information on available personnel for use in manual planning and scheduling of maintenance work. Another is the computer-based file containing standard maintenance procedures that can be retrieved for preparation of work orders and in estimating manpower time requirements.

Additionally, other maintenance-related systems, such as preventive-maintenance systems and inspection-support systems, may generate work orders for inclusion in daily maintenance schedules. Work order planning and scheduling also is supported by materials and parts inventory systems.

The actual computer-based scheduling of daily maintenance manpower resources, however, has remained an elusive goal. Recent systems work has aimed at scheduling shop work where forecasting work requirements is easier than forecasting field work.

Incentives for Computer Systems

The primary incentive for design and implementation of maintenance-related support systems is the potential for reducing maintenance-related costs. The cost of keeping hydrocarbon processing plants running has been on the rise for many years and only during the economic downturn of the 1982–83 period did it see a small decline. Maintenance costs as a percentage of estimated replacement value are reflected in Table 2-1. These figures were taken from reports filed annually with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Justification of Systems

Although process industry companies generally agree that maintenance-support systems are a viable means of reducing maintenance costs, there is no general agreement on the size of benefits available or the source of these benefits.

For this reason, there are probably as many ways to justify computer installation as there are computer applications:

1. Reduced clerical effort.
2. Improved utilization of maintenance work force.
3. Improved equipment reliability.
4. Reduced inventory costs.

Table 2-1
Maintenance Cost in the Chemical Process Industries, 1982*

Chemical companies	1982 (million dollars)	Change 1981–82 (%)	Maintenance cost as percent of plant, property and equipment — Historical cost — Original	Depreciated[1]	Current cost[2]
Du Pont	$1,433.0[3]	22.9%	5.9%	10.2%	8.0%
Union Carbide	579.0	−12.0	5.4	9.6	7.2
Dow Chemical	559.0	−11.2	5.0	9.5	6.1
Monsanto	378.0	−11.8	5.8	11.4	8.9
Allied	292.0	−5.8	5.6	10.2	7.1
PPG Industries	284.8	−2.4	8.5	14.3	10.9
W.R. Grace	200.2	−12.7	4.8	7.4	5.1
Celanese	185.0	−7.0	5.0	11.5	9.1
American Cyanamid	155.1	−11.9	6.0	12.0	7.8
Hercules	135.5	2.5	6.5	14.7	10.1
Diamond Shamrock	110.7	−7.1	3.5	5.2	3.3
Ethyl	95.8	4.0	7.9	14.4	10.2
Stauffer Chemical	83.8	−13.2	4.2	7.0	4.4
Rohm and Haas	78.2	−8.4	6.0	14.3	10.7
Air Products and Chem.	86.4	0.7	3.6	6.2	4.7
Morton-Norwich	42.3	9.6	11.5	20.5	12.2
Pennwalt	33.8	−4.5	5.1	9.9	6.6
Big Three Industries	27.1	−11.2	2.5	3.5	2.6
Other CPI companies					
Exxon	1,927.6	−3.8	3.3	4.9	2.7
U.S. Steel	1,277.0	−22.3	5.8	17.4	6.0
Mobil	991.0	−1.5	3.6	5.8	3.2
Eastman Kodak	673.0	11.2	7.2	13.3	7.8
Texaco	581.0	−14.3	2.5	4.1	2.6
Goodyear Tire	499.6	−1.7	10.5	22.4	13.2
Procter & Gamble	284.0	8.8	5.2	7.2	4.2
Firestone Tire	190.0	−2.6	9.1	17.9	13.8
BF Goodrich	148.8	−2.3	6.6	11.1	8.1
Olin	126.9	−3.8	7.1	15.1	11.2
Int'l. Min. & Chem.	115.5	−9.4	6.0	9.4	6.2
Borden	102.1	−3.1	5.2	8.4	4.8
Uniroyal Tire	76.7	−13.8	6.2	14.6	8.0
National Distillers & Chem.	64.2	−9.3	6.8	13.1	8.4
Esmark	39.7	−5.5	9.1	25.8	6.2
Sherwin-Williams	28.0	−10.5	6.2	12.3	7.8

[1] The asset's remaining service potential. [2] Present cost of acquiring the asset's remaining service potential.
[3] Includes the first full-year operation of Conoco. Source: 10K forms and annual reports filled by companies with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

* *Figures taken from reports filled annually with the Securities and Exchange Commission, compiled by Chemical Week Magazine (July 6, 1983).*

Reduction of clerical effort is used when filing, recording, and retrieving become excessive. Sometimes a reduction in clerical staff may even be possible after a computer system is installed. However, the relief of key personnel from clerical responsibilities is usually more important as a justification point. For example, a major oil company partially justified installation of a fixed equipment inspection system at a large refinery on the basis that inspectors could be relieved of the clerical duties of filing and retrieving inspection information. This company also found record keeping on inspection, thickness measurement, and corrosion rates to be more consistent and far more accessible. As a result, information compiled by this refinery's inspection department is far more useful today than when such information was kept mostly in filing cabinets in the individual inspector's office.

Improved utilization of maintenance manpower is widely used as a means for justifying turnaround scheduling systems, planning/scheduling systems, and inventory control systems. Results from a carefully conducted analysis of work delays created by existing manual procedures are compared against improvements expected from computerized systems. Man hours saved—multiplied by hourly rates for maintenance personnel—sometimes provide substantial justification for computer systems.

Improved equipment reliability, with resulting reductions in equipment downtime and improvements in plant throughput, are obvious justifications for preventive and predictive maintenance systems. Some companies have found that benefits from this source alone can provide a payout as quickly as one year from the initial computer system investment. In the complex process environment of the modern refinery or petrochemical plant, monitoring equipment performance, effective diagnostics, and early recognition of equipment problems require computer speed and support.

Improved management reaction to plant equipment problems also has justified computer systems. This is a difficult area to quantify. However, if previous costly equipment failures can be identified as preventable through timely management information, this becomes a very real justification for system installation.

Materials inventory and stock catalog systems have been justified by many companies based on reduced inventory. Computer systems have improved inventory management and control, reduced overall stock requirements, and improved warehouse response to maintenance requirements for materials and spare parts. Identification of obsolete parts and materials is far easier and far more thorough when computer support is available.

Although many quantitative methods exist for justifying computer-based systems in the maintenance area, many such systems are justified by what is called the "faith, hope, and charity" method. Maintenance management simply has faith that maintenance can be made more effective and can be controlled better if maintenance activities and costs can be measured. Through computers, maintenance management also hopes effective record keeping will preserve effective procedures and the maintenance department will be less vulnerable to loss of key personnel because these procedures are recorded within a computer system. The element of charity exists because the accounting or operations departments may have computers which are not fully utilized and are, thus, available for maintenance-related applications.

Unfortunately, the "faith, hope, and charity" justification technique too often has resulted in installation of systems which were thrown together on a part-time basis by data processing personnel and imposed on the maintenance department in the total absence of any obvious maintenance coverage and/or desire for such systems. The result has been immediate rejection of the system by maintenance personnel and a setback in the maintenance department's acceptance of computer support of any type.

Setting up an Effective System

As previously mentioned, there are a variety of computer systems being installed in processing plants. These systems can be installed either as "stand-alone" systems or as systems which exchange data with other related systems. Just where the first system is installed depends mainly on where help is most needed—or where computerization would produce the most significant benefits.

With any system, however, there are certain "places to start" which are absolutely vital to system success.

The maintenance department which hopes to realize benefits from computer systems must start with a convinced, dedicated management and recognize that system acceptance in the maintenance department must be earned.

The manager who has a system designed and installed as "something we can try to see how it works out" has wasted a lot of company money. If the maintenance manager is not solidly convinced the contemplated system is needed and if he is not dedicated to its success, then the system

is likely doomed to failure or to only partial realization of potential benefits before the first computer program statement is written.

Maintenance management has long recognized that certain management techniques must be used to implement any change. Unfortunately, these techniques are not always applied when the change involves a computer. Communication, participation, involvement, and training all must be used to ensure that need for the system is generally recognized throughout the maintenance department and that the system is accepted by maintenance personnel as a problem solver. One of the more effective techniques for implementing a computerized system is to build upon existing, manual systems in order to permit minimal change in the information input activity even though major improvements are effected in available reports and analyses.

A common misconception is that a computer application requires a large volume of additional routine data. If a good manual system exists for preventive maintenance scheduling, inventory control, or other functions, the computer system often requires no more routine input information. As reports are produced, the volume should be carefully limited to necessary information. Report formats should be developed with the ultimate user's participation. Finally, results should be thoroughly communicated throughout the maintenance organization.

A plant also should be careful to allocate the resources necessary to support the system's implementation effort. Computer applications often require a one-time data entry—such as equipment specifications or material descriptions—which imposes a short-term load on available personnel. These tasks may be assigned to existing personnel or contracted to outside firms. The temptation to use existing personnel on a part-time basis has often proven counter-productive to final system success.

After programming, implementation, and training it is also essential that the system be supported. The new maintenance system's "credibility" among maintenance personnel is extremely fragile during the first few months of its existence. Hardware problems, computer priorities and program "bugs" can be disastrous to system acceptance. Parallel operation of existing manual procedures with the computer system for a period of time has been used to prove the computer system and to demonstrate the improvement in information availability and analysis.

Finally, when implementing a computerized maintenance program, it is important to progress from one system to the next at a speed that will not create confusion or misunderstanding. If multi-system maintenance support is a plant's goal, then a long-time strategy for system implementation is necessary to ensure logical growth compatible with needs (and abilities) of plant personnel. To overcome the "too much, too soon" problem, one major chemical company has designed a modular system

for eventual installation at all of its plant sites. The modules are made available to the plants—but not forced upon them. Each plant is encouraged to formulate a long-term strategy for use of these systems and to use the techniques of communication and personnel involvement in implementing systems at its own pace. This modular, but preplanned concept of computer system installation at plant sites permits growth into a totally integrated system, even if years separate the installation of individual systems.

Manuals Prepared

To accomplish the preventive maintenance control system, in a large multi-plant environment, manuals are prepared by technical specialists listing the specific maintenance tasks for each equipment item at the operating plants. The manufacturer's recommendations and a plant's own experience are considered in determining the extent of coverage for maintenance procedures and frequency. Differentiation between running maintenance and shutdown maintenance is also made. As operating requirements change, these procedures are improved and updated and revised pages are issued to keep the manuals current. A representative PM manual page is shown in Figure 2-1.

Maintenance tasks range in frequency from daily shifts to several years, depending on the equipment type, its loading, and serviceability. Maintenance tasks are monitored by the staff at the home office and passed through the data processing equipment that performs the following functions:

1. Prints schedules and feedback cards.
2. Digests feedback information on completed or rescheduled maintenance.
3. Prints reports showing tasks performed or deferred.
4. Calculates percent compliance.
5. Accumulates actions taken and total time expended.
6. Prints addenda to the schedule and addenda feedback cards for uncompleted tasks.

The percent compliance to the schedule for each plant is separated into "normal" and "downtime" categories. This separation permits evaluation of thc schedule portion controlled by the plant manager—that portion he can do only during an emergency or planned shutdown. Central management is thus automatically given the opportunity to pass judgement on the desirability of rescheduling "downtime" PM items. Compli-

FORM 3513

OPERATIONS DEPARTMENT

DATE 6/14/66

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE MANUAL

PAGE 1 OF 156

LOCATION NO 74 PLANT NO. 3 SECTION NO. 01.10.31

PLACE Sparrows Point TYPE Oxygen - Nitrogen EQUIPMENT Main Air Compressor - Mechanical

EQUIPMENT NAME, SECTION & SUBSECTION NUMBER	ITEM	MAINTENANCE	FREQUENCY: DAILY	WEEKLY	MONTHLY	AS INDICATED	MAN HRS. REQ.
01.10.31 Main Air Compressor (Mechanical) (Items 1-40)	01	Check for unusual noise or vibration at motor, speed increaser, compressor and main oil pump.	X				
	02	Check pressure drop across oil filter. Vent spare filter and switch filters if DP exceeds 35 lbs. Clean and vent dirty filter.	X				
	03	Check level in oil reservoir and add oil to bring to the full mark - Regal Oil A (R&O). Record amount added.	X				
	04	Inspect inlet air filter for proper equipment operation and defects in filter media. Record inches moved from previous inspection.	X				
	05	Check oil flow from compressor, speed increaser and motor bearings for normal operation.	X				
	06	Check intercooler condensate traps for proper operation.	X				
	07	Note any discoloration of the condensate, indicating leaks in the intercooler.			X		
	08	Check lube oil system for leaks and repair all possible.		X			
	09	Inspect air leakage at casing and labyrinth seals for change in leakage.		X			
	10	Check linkage on inlet butterfly valve surge valve, and discharge check valve for proper lubrication and evidence of corrosion.			X		

Figure 2-1. Representative page from preventive maintenance manual or task book.

ance reports are issued monthly and sent to plant managers and the home office.

At the beginning of each month, the computer prints work schedules for all maintenance tasks due in the particular month. These schedules cover machinery and equipment for each plant in the system. Copies are sent to each plant manager and to the home office staff. The schedules list

all the PM tasks that must be done during the coming month. An advance schedule of downtime tasks, covering the next three months, is also included. This advance notice assists the plant manager in planning downtime task performance in case an emergency shutdown occurs. The computer schedules are accurate because maintenance task timing is based on the date they were last performed and the frequency assigned. A typical page from a preventive maintenance schedule is shown in Figure 2-2. A typical page from a projected downtime maintenance schedule for the coming three month period is shown in Figure 2-3.

Along with the schedules, the data processing equipment prints out a deck of cards to feed back completion or rescheduling information. These cards are used by plant maintenance personnel to record actions taken, time expended, date completed, and any pertinent remarks concerning findings when the task was done. The cards issued to the plants at the beginning of the month must be returned to the operations home office for computer processing on the last day of the month. Figure 2-4 shows a representative feedback card.

Performance Reports

The preventive maintenance performance report shows the tasks which are performed on time, performed late, are rescheduled, or remain in a deferred state. It allows the plant manager and home office management

```
74-3 SPARROWS POINT          PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE          PAGE    1
                                      MAR 1967

EQUIP NO. TASK                    DESCRIPTION                        FREQ   DOWN

01.10.31        MAIN AIR COMPRESSOR - MECHANICAL

          07.0      NOTE ANY DISCOLORATION OF THE CONDENSATE,INDICATING    01
                    LEAKS IN THE INTERCOOLER

          10.0      CHECK LINKAGE ON INLET BUTTERFLY VALVE,                01
                    SURGE VALVE,AND DISCHARGE CHECK VALVE FOR
                    PROPER LUBRICATION AND EVIDENCE OF CORROSION.

          13.0      TEST RUN AUXILIARY OIL PUMP.                           01

          14.0      INSPECT FOUNDATIONS AND GROUT FOR CRACKS,              01
                    REPAIR AND SEAL PAINT DEFECTS IN GROUT.

          16.0      CHECK INLET FILTER, COMPRESSOR, MOTOR AND              01
                    AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT FOR REQUIREMENTS OF RUST
                    CLEANING AND TOUCH-UP PAINTING.

01.20.31        OXYGEN COMPRESSOR - MECHANICAL

          10.0      INSPECT FOUNDATION AND GROUT FOR CRACKS.  REPAIR       01
                    AND SEAL PAINT DEFECTS IN GROUT.
```

Figure 2-2. Typical page from preventive maintenance schedule.

74-3 SPARROWS POINT — PROJECTED DOWNTIME MAINTENANCE NOV DEC JAN, 1967-1968 — PAGE 4

EQUIP NO	TASK	DESCRIPTION	FREQ	SCHEDULED
01.40.32		N2 RECYCLE COMPRESSOR - INSTRUMENTS		
	02.0	PIC-124V, HIC-7-V - CHECK STEM, PACKING, DIAPHRAGM, STROKE, POSITICNER.	06	NOV 1967
	04.0	TIS-44, TAL-149, PAL-201, TAL-46, LAL-12, PAL-197, PAL-122, PAL-133. CHECK SETTING, LOG RESULT.	06	NOV 1967
	12.0	SV-43 CHECK SETTING, LOG RESULT.	06	NOV 1967
01.40.33		N2 RECYCLE COMPRESSOR - ELECTRICAL		
	06.0	SYN MOTOR - CHECK CONDITION OF SLIP RINGS. INSPECT BRUSH SHUNTS AND WIRE INSULATION FOR BREAKS OR DETERIORATION. CHECK FOR LOOSE CONNECTIONS AND CLEAN INSULATORS. INSPECT AND REPLACE BRUSHES AS NECESSARY. CHECK BRUSH TENSION AND BRUSHOLDERS FOR PROPER FIT AND FREE PLAY. REVERSE POLARITY OF FIELD LEADS AT BRUSHOLDERS	06	NOV 1967

Figure 2-3. Representative page from projected downtime maintenance schedule for three-month period.

EQUIPMENT: MAIN AIR COMPRESSOR - MECHANICAL — DATE SCHEDULED: MAR 1967 — FREQUENCY (MONTHS): 01 — 0002

TASK: CHECK LINKAGE ON INLET BUTTERFLY VALVE, SURGE VALVE, AND DISCHARGE CHECK VALVE FOR PROPER LUBRICATION AND EVIDENCE OF CORROSION.

FAC PLANT	EQUIPMENT NO	TASK NO	TYPE
74-3	01.10,31	10.0	6

DATE COMPLETED: MONTH 3, DAY 17, YEAR 67 — EXPENDED TIME: HOURS 3.5, MIN

ACTION TAKEN

55 ADJUSTED	62 EVACUATED	69 REPACKED
56 ALIGNED	63 FILLED	70 REPAIRED
57 BLOWN OUT	64 INSPECTED ✓	71 REPLACED
58 CALIBRATED	65 LUBRICATED ✓	72 TESTED
59 CHECKED ✓	66 OVERHAULED	73 TIGHTENED
60 CLEANED ✓	67 PAINTED	74 WASHED OUT
61 DRAINED	68 MACHINE HISTORY RECORDED	

WRITE REMARKS IN BLOCKS PROVIDED BELOW

01
02
03

REASON DEFERRED
75 NO MECHANIC
76 NO DOWN TIME
77 NO SPARES
78 NO TEST EQUIP
79 OUT OF USE

OPERATIONS DEPARTMENT
PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE REPORT

TASK PERFORMED BY: R. McKitrick — 19 APR 7 1967 — AUTHORIZING SIGNATURE: B. Moser

Figure 2-4. Typical feedback card.

to evaluate performance. The number of tasks scheduled, rescheduled, and completed is listed at the end of the report along with the compliance percentages and the total time in hours for normal and downtime categories. A typical plant preventive maintenance performance report is shown in Figure 2-5.

Preventive maintenance tasks that were not completed as scheduled are summarized in addenda to the schedule and sent to plant managers as reminders. The addenda are printed monthly by the computer, based on noncompliance of tasks previously scheduled. Deferred tasks continue to appear on these addenda until completed. A set of feedback cards accompanies the addenda for the reporting of work completed. From the computer angle, the program key is the eight-digit code number given each machine task. The first four digits represent the equipment number. The fifth digit represents the plant number because there are two or three plants at some operating locations. The sixth digit represents the type of craft applicable, such as mechanical, instrumentation, or electrical. The seventh and eighth digits are random sequential numbers identifying each PM task.

Data reported via the feedback cards are accumulated by the computer. This includes time expended for each maintenance task and the number

74-3 SPARROWS POINT — SUMMARY REPORT — MAR 1967

	SCHEDULED	RESCHEDULED	TO COMPL.	COMPL.	PCT. COMPLIANCE
NORMAL TASKS	27		27	27	100.0%
DOWNTIME TASKS	18	14	4	4	100.0%

74-3 SPARROWS POINT — MAR 1967 — PAGE 1

DETAILED (TYPICAL ITEMS)

SEQ NO/TASK	DESCRIPTION	FREQ	SCHEDULED	DOWN	COMPLETED	HOURS
01.10.31	MAIN AIR COMPRESSOR - MECHANICAL					
07.0	NOTE ANY DISCOLORATION OF THE CONDENSATE, INDICATING LEAKS IN THE INTERCOOLER	01	MAR 1967 ACTION TAKEN- CHECKED INSPECTED		03/22/67	.50
10.0	CHECK LINK					
10.0	CHECK LINKAGE ON INLET BUTTERFLY VALVE, SURGE VALVE, AND DISCHARGE CHECK VALVE FOR PROPER LUBRICATION AND EVIDENCE OF CORROSION.	01	MAR 1967 ACTION TAKEN- CHECKED CLEANED INSPECTED LUBRICATED		03/17/67	.75
11.0	RECORD COMPLETE SET OF VIBRATION READINGS ON ALL BEARINGS	.25	CHECKED		03/02/67 03/09/67 03/16/67	1.50 1.50 1.25

Figure 2-5. Preventive maintenance performance report.

of times actions such as cleaning, filling, lubricating, overhauling, or testing are performed. A report of accumulated maintenance statistics is produced by the computer and is used by the operations management to make an audit of work done.

Breakdowns Reduced

Since the incorporation of this system at a large multi-plant corporation, there has been a very definite trend of reductions in breakdowns. This allows nearly all maintenance work to be performed on a planned basis and on an optimized time schedule to provide the best possible on-stream factor.

In the actual performance of planned maintenance work, there can be several approaches. One approach is to have complete in-house maintenance and supervisory ability at each plant with occasional subcontracting for large peaks. A second is to subcontract all maintenance work, thus eliminating the requirement for maintenance personnel at individual plants. Each system has obvious advantages and disadvantages depending on plant size, location relative to other area plants, etc. Recognizing good planning and skilled supervision as the key elements in low cost major maintenance, an intermediate approach has been taken at some plant locations. Some of the main considerations of this approach are:

1. The plant manager is fully responsible for normal maintenance. Each plant employs an absolute minimum number of resident maintenance people consistent with the day-to-day requirements, plus a normal backlog of work which can be accomplished while the plant is running.
2. The responsibility for planning major maintenance and turnarounds would come under the jurisdiction of a corporate maintenance manager working in close conjunction with the plant managers. His group of mobile planners, technicians and maintenance staff represent a well-trained nucleus for supervising major maintenance work to supplement the normal plant maintenance group. These individuals travel from plant to plant as required. This makes it unnecessary to have skilled supervision at each facility capable of handling planned major maintenance work. By scheduling the total corporate maintenance requirements, this same skilled group can handle a large work volume at a number of facilities at overall lower cost and inject a higher than normal experience factor into the supervision aspect of maintenance. The major maintenance work is performed using standard critical path scheduling, manpower and tooling planning, cost control procedures, inspection reports, etc.

3. Supplementary maintenance manpower is provided by using carefully selected local contractors. However, by having a well trained nucleus of supervisory and maintenance personnel available from within the company, overall manpower efficiency is kept at a higher level than normal, thus resulting in lower costs and reduced outage time. Operators are used where possible during turnarounds which involve plant shutdown.
4. The travel and living costs for the flexible, rotating group of maintenance technicians and planners is a minor cost factor compared to the more efficient use of personnel and reduced outage time. In many cases, the technician and central maintenance group are geographically located near key facilities, since this is where they spend most of their time.

Discussion of any maintenance concept is incomplete without including a method of spare parts control. The goal of an effective spare parts program is to keep the investment in capital spares to a minimum without seriously jeopardizing the plant onstream factor, and administering the spare parts program at the lowest possible cost. Only experience, after an extended operating period, will determine the adequacy of decisions made in this regard.

The spare parts program at a multi-plant corporation should most certainly be administered on a centralized basis. The commonality of equipment makes this a prerequisite for low total spare parts investment. The same central mechanical engineering organization responsible for monitoring field mechanical problems is also responsible for the initial selection of spare parts and the approval for reordering major spares. Initial spare selections are based on equipment manufacturer recommendations, operating experiences, and careful analysis of what is in existence. To obtain the best possible price, major spare parts are negotiated as part of the original machinery or equipment purchase.

Central Parts Depot

Specific items not common to other facilities and small, normal spares are maintained at individual facilities. Certain major components common to more than one operating facility and some parts showing high usage are stocked at a centrally located parts depot. This concept allows for a lower total investment in spares. Since spare parts handling, packaging, and long term storage are so critical and require specialized knowledge, it is necessary to provide this capability at only one location. It is possible to ship spare parts from this depot on a 24-hour, seven day a week basis. Transportation arrangements normally keep the total shipping time to less than eight hours. With most maintenance work per-

formed on a planned basis, actual plant startup delays due to the central stocking depot concept are rare.

By careful analysis on ordering of initial spares and the central depot concept, major corporations have been able to lower the investment in spares (expressed as a percentage of equipment investment) from approximately 5% a few years back to under 3% on new plants.

To keep the administration of replacement spare parts at a minimum cost, a central data processing system has been established. The spare parts inventory replenishment system installed at each facility consists of prepunched cards for each part. As parts are used, cards are sent to the corporate office for computer input, which automatically generates the parts replacement purchase order. The authorized parts level is periodically reviewed to prevent reordering of parts with a low turnover. A block diagram showing the spare parts support system is shown in Figure 2-6. A composite listing of all parts in the system is available at the corporate office to facilitate the identification of parts interchangeable with other facilities.

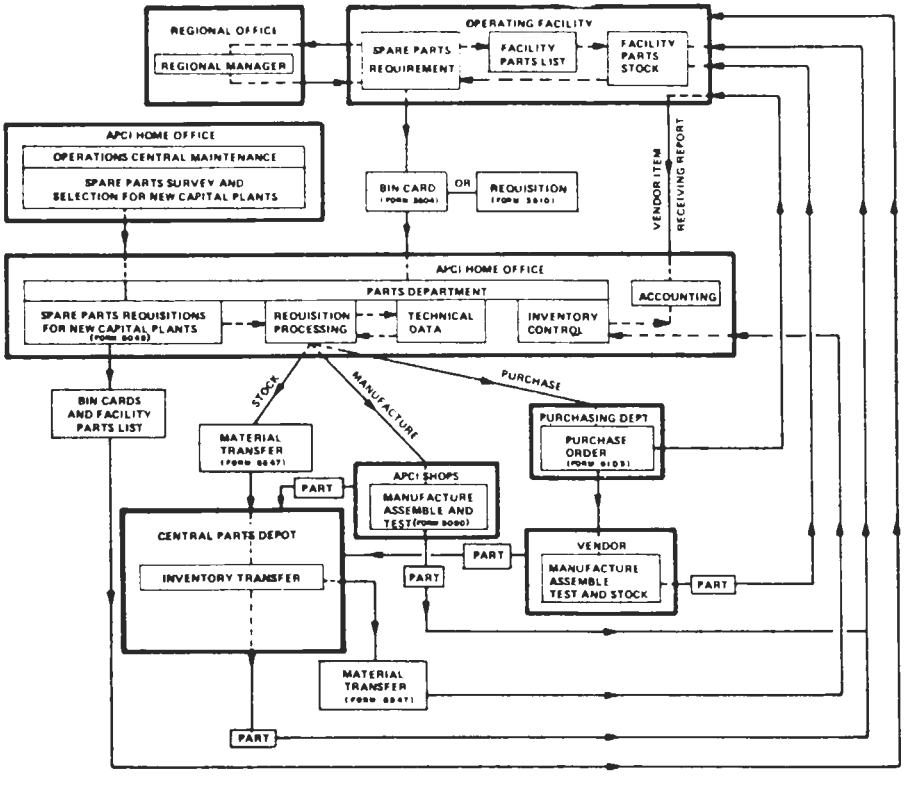


Figure 2-6. Block diagram of operations spare parts support system.

Plant Engineering

Plant engineering referred to here includes those process and mechanical services required for monitoring plant operations, the prompt resolution of special plant problems, normal debottlenecking, and special engineering assistance as required in performing maintenance work. A centralized organization of specialists within the operations department is charged with this responsibility for the network of facilities. Major engineering design and construction work related to new plants and plant expansions is handled by a separate corporate engineering department and will not be discussed in this section. The corporate engineering department is also available for special help to the operations department.

As indicated previously, the interjection of technical specialists for the quick and efficient resolution of problems was one of the key points to a centralized system of engineering services, and the engineering staff at individual plants has, therefore, been kept minimal. In some plants, a certain need for minimum on-site staffing of chemical and mechanical engineers is required for day-to-day problems, but here special emphasis is placed on coordinating problem issues with the centralized staff.

The normal day-to-day minor plant and equipment problems are handled by the plant manager with his staff sized on this minimum basis. The centralized engineering services then encompass these major responsibilities:

1. Aid in resolving specific equipment and process problems as they arise based on information gathered through monitoring techniques or through plant manager request. Suitable engineering or technician help is provided, including site visits when necessary.
2. Getting special services from the corporate engineering department to obtain maximum benefits from understanding the design concepts and to provide a valuable source of field problem feedback for future design considerations. This would also include obtaining recommendations from equipment manufacturers and outside consultants.
3. Monitoring process performance of all facilities including overall production, utility efficiency, and gathering sufficient data to generally identify problem areas. Each facility requires a detailed analysis to determine the minimum key data required. Some monitoring is performed on a daily basis and is transmitted to the home office by telex or a wide-area, inexpensive telephone system. Other monitoring is performed on a weekly or monthly basis. The computer is used to perform routine calculations required for certain evaluations. Many of the facilities are sufficiently complex and have vary-

ing modes of operation, which lends itself to computerized solutions to determine minimum operating costs. Thus, the centralized corporate computer can be economically used on a network of plants whereas each plant on its own basis could not provide a payout for process computer monitoring. This up-to-date process monitoring and reporting allows for prompt management attention to plant problems.

4. Monitoring of machinery and equipment performance. An example would be the periodic collection of data on all large compression equipment to determine stage efficiencies and intercooler performance since utility costs represent a significant portion of the total operating costs in most petrochemical or air separation plants. Where possible, the performance evaluations are translated into dollars so that business decisions can be made. Figure 2-7 shows a simplified computer program used for evaluating compressor efficiencies where the results are translated into cost inefficiencies in dollars/day. Of particular interest, also, is the increased use of field monitoring methods as a key element in evaluating equipment performance. In many cases, this represents the actual guidelines for determining frequency of inspections.
5. Monitoring of plant and equipment performance by regular visits of process and mechanical specialists to the facilities. This provides the necessary final tie of the centralized group with plant personnel.
6. Establishing safety, technical, and operating procedures to provide conformity to all plants.
7. The organization of corporate technical and training sessions for plant personnel based on the management evaluation of need.

Summary

The system of plant maintenance and engineering services outlined has been successful in achieving exceptionally low maintenance costs for a nationwide complex of plants.

The initial operating period of the preventive maintenance system had unusual problems as any new system might, but it has now reached the point where all plants are near 100 percent compliance. The overall maintenance system described herein has allowed a steady reduction in plant personnel with corresponding savings. Actual maintenance costs have steadily decreased as a percentage of original investment costs without any allowance for labor and material escalation. With these factors taken into account, the total maintenance cost reductions are indeed significant. With the system in existence, the effect on future costs should continue in a favorable direction.

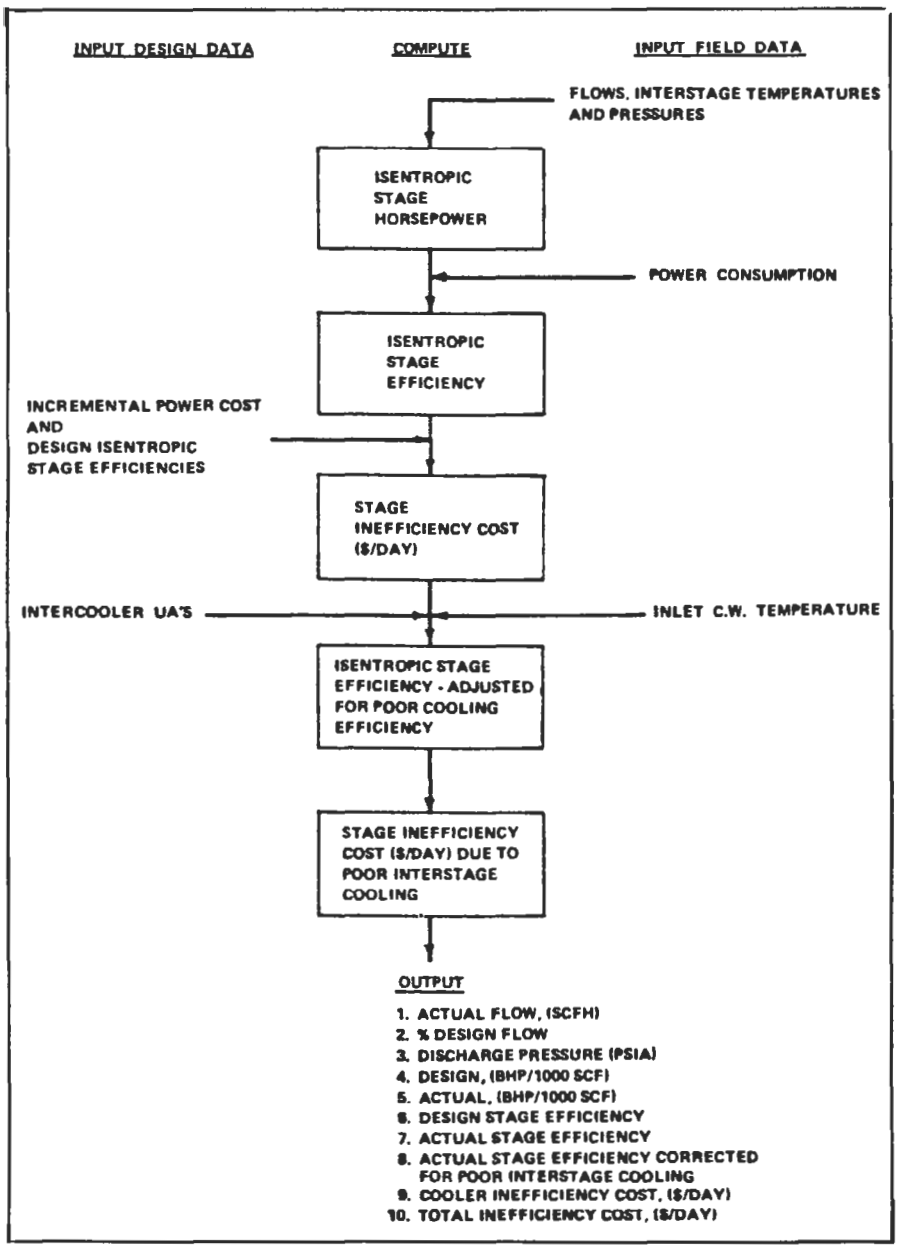

INPUT DESIGN DATA
COMPUTE
INPUT FIELD DATA
FLOWS, INTERSTAGE TEMPERATURES AND PRESSURES
ISENTROPIC STAGE HORSEPOWER
POWER CONSUMPTION
ISENTROPIC STAGE EFFICIENCY
INCREMENTAL POWER COST AND DESIGN ISENTROPIC STAGE EFFICIENCIES
STAGE INEFFICIENCY COST ($/DAY)
INTERCOOLER UA'S
INLET C.W. TEMPERATURE
ISENTROPIC STAGE EFFICIENCY - ADJUSTED FOR POOR COOLING EFFICIENCY
STAGE INEFFICIENCY COST ($/DAY) DUE TO POOR INTERSTAGE COOLING
OUTPUT
1. ACTUAL FLOW, (SCFH)
2. % DESIGN FLOW
3. DISCHARGE PRESSURE (PSIA)
4. DESIGN, (BHP/1000 SCF)
5. ACTUAL, (BHP/1000 SCF)
6. DESIGN STAGE EFFICIENCY
7. ACTUAL STAGE EFFICIENCY
8. ACTUAL STAGE EFFICIENCY CORRECTED FOR POOR INTERSTAGE COOLING
9. COOLER INEFFICIENCY COST, ($/DAY)
10. TOTAL INEFFICIENCY COST, ($/DAY)

Figure 2-7. Simplified computer program used to evaluate compressor efficiencies.

The publishing of monitored data on plant performance and preventive maintenance compliance has allowed for prompt management attention to problems and has stimulated a noticeable spirit of competition among the plants. Needless to say, it also serves as a valuable method of evaluating plant manager performance.

Although the system described herein may not be directly applicable to every large chemical complex for reasons of size or process type, the general trends toward computerization, sophisticated equipment monitoring methods and processes, cheaper transportation and communication costs, are indicative of increasing advantages obtainable in the future from centralized concepts in plant maintenance and engineering for multi-plant corporations.

With this overview behind us, let's get back to the machinery engineer's concerns on an individual plant level. As he of course knows, modern turbomachines can run reliably for many years if designed, applied, and operated correctly. Indeed, the periods between inspection and overhaul, commonly called "turnaround," on machines in clean, noncorrosive service can exceed five years. It is easy to see how plant personnel may have trouble remembering just how much time and effort are required to successfully plan and execute an overhaul of a particular piece of equipment. A proper turnaround involves preplanning and teamwork among plant technical, warehouse, purchasing, safety, operations and maintenance forces, as well as with the original equipment manufacturer and other noncompany sources. In the case of sophisticated problems, consultants and laboratories may also come into play to restore machinery to a reliable, smooth-running, and efficient operation. Managing these resources and documenting the results presents a real challenge to those assigned the task of heading up the overhaul effort.

This segment of our text deals with turnaround management principles that must be understood and considered by maintenance personnel on the plant level.

Assignment of Qualified Personnel*

Major machinery overhauls require not only early planning input, but also early designation of qualified personnel to execute planning and related tasks. High quality machinery overhauls can be more consistently achieved if machinery expertise is directly applied.

---

* Based partly on material prepared by John D. Houghton and originally presented at the Seventh Turbomachinery Symposium, Texas A&M University, College Station, Texas (December 1978). Adapted by permission.

Process plants subscribing to this approach define, in specific outline form, the responsibilities of supervisory and staff personnel involved in turnaround (T/A) of major machinery. The outline explains the various job functions involved in T/A activities and identifies the timing and scheduling requirements which precede the actual shutdown.

The assignment of qualified personnel starts with the designation of an *overall T/A coordinator* no later than nine months before the scheduled shutdown. As of this time, the plant's *senior machinery specialist* is required to maintain formal communications with the T/A coordinator.

Among other duties, the T/A coordinator screens and approves the planning and scheduling efforts of maintenance or contractor personnel involved in major machinery T/A's after the senior machinery specialist has had an opportunity to review these efforts. Working hours and team composition are to be determined jointly by the T/A coordinator and senior machinery specialist.

Experience shows that a *spare parts and materials coordinator* should also be designated no later than nine months before scheduled shutdown. This person will generally be responsible for implementing spare parts procurement requested by the senior machinery specialist and mechanical supervisors. He will be required to forward up-to-date listings of parts on hand to personnel requiring this information.

The *plant senior machinery specialist* is generally charged with responsibility and authority to direct planning and execution of the machinery portion of the T/A. His background and experience should make him uniquely qualified for this job, and as senior resident expert he would be thoroughly familiar with all machinery affected by the planned T/A.

A key job function is to be fulfilled by *turbotrain T/A engineers.* On major machinery T/As it was found essential to have one or more of these engineers assigned the responsibility of verifying the quality of execution of all machinery overhaul tasks. If a given plant does not have enough machinery engineers to man the job around the clock, affiliate loan or contractor engineering personnel should be brought in for the duration. The specific responsibilities of turbotrain T/A engineers have been described as those of a machinery advisor and quality control person who augments the *mechanical supervisor* and reports to the senior machinery specialist for work direction and guidance. His responsibility and authority extends from machine inlet nozzle to machine outlet nozzle and includes lube and seal oil systems. His work begins after all required blinds have been installed and ends after every item of machinery work is complete. He will then turn over the machinery to the mechanical supervisor for removal of blinds.

A turbotrain T/A engineer typically has a degree in an engineering discipline (preferably mechanical engineering) and has had practical machinery engineering experience for a minimum of five years. His past assignments should have included active participation in major machinery erection, commissioning, testing, operation, troubleshooting, and repair. He normally performs work which involves conventional engineering practices but may include a variety of complex features such as resolution of conflicting design requirements, unsuitability of conventional materials, and difficult coordination requirements. His normal sphere of activity requires a broad knowledge of precedents in turbomachinery design and a good knowledge of principles and practices of materials technology, metalworking procedures, instrument-electrical techniques, etc. This person should be a hands-on engineer whose past performance will have established his reputation as a resourceful, highly dependable contributor, a self-starter with sound judgement.

Timing and Basic Definition of Critical Pre-Turnaround Tasks

Senior Machinery Specialist

Immediately following the designation of a T/A coordinator, (approximately nine months before T/A) the senior machinery specialist starts to interface with planners, designated turbotrain T/A engineers, maintenance or mechanical supervisors, and the T/A coordinator. From then on, the following action items and timing will be typical of this function:

Nine Months Before T/A:

- Work list items assembled by maintenance are forwarded to the senior machinery specialist for review purposes. A typical work list page is shown in Figure 2-8.
- He receives the most probable work zone outline for review and comment. (For description of work zones, refer to Volume I of this series.)
- The senior machinery specialist requests up-to-date tabulation of spare parts presently on hand for major machinery trains. The spare parts coordinator must provide this tabulation in a format similar to Figure 2-9.

Eight Months Before T/A:

- The senior machinery specialist determines which replacement parts are required for major machinery T/A.

IRD WORKLIST
Model No.: 9EH 1B MH Steam Turbine
Package No.: 052-02
Work Order No.: 6305

Equipment No.: CT-01

20. Check and record clearances as per Machinery Reliability Program. Use forms in INSPECTION CLEARANCE FORM section.
21. Disassemble governor end and exhaust end packing housings (See Procedures-Packing housings). Take top clearances on both upper halves.
22. Check and Record clearances as per Machinery Reliability Program. Use forms in INSPECTION CLEARANCE FORM section.
23. Remove upper halves of Radial bearings and thrust bearing assembly. Visually inspect, take clearance checks on each bearing, then remove to make rotor ready for removal. (See Procedure-Radial Brg. & Thrust Brg. Assembly.)
24. Check and record as per Machinery Reliability Program. Use forms in INSPECTION CLEARANCE FORM section.
25. Remove rotor from lower half of turbine case. (For proper rigging see Procedure-Rotor Assembly.)
26. Remove all upper & lower half packing, oil seals, etc. mark for position, clean and cover until ready for re-installation. (See Procedure-Interstage Packing).
27. Remove upper and lower half diaphragms, clean, inspect/repair non-destructive test and cover until re-installation (See Procedure-Diaphragms).
28. Remove lower half radial bearings, and thrust assembly housing. (See Procedure-Radial Brgs. & Thrust Brg. Assembly).
29. Clean lower and upper halves of turbine casing and prepare for re-installation of diaphragms.
30. Clean inside of relay box, lower half bearing housings.
31. Clean, inspect/repair, and non-destractive test nozzles.
32. Install terminal strips inside of each end bearing housing for new therma-couple wires.
33. Repair 660# steam extraction leak at flange.
34. Repair horizontal joint leak on CT-02.
35. Install new coupling end oil seals.
36. Install new revised ground brushes.
37. Install new governor.

Page 3 of 6 | MACHINERY RELIABILITY PROGRAM

Figure 2-8. Typical worklist page for major compressor turnaround.

MWO.# 63051			PKG.# 3050-0 &	MATERIAL LIST EC-01	PAGE 1 OF 2	
ITM	QUAN	UNIT	SYMBOL NUMBER	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	PCH/SP ORDER #	STORAGE LOC.
1	2	EA		Seal, Labyrinth, Part #876070-1		
				Item #2		
2	1	EA		Wind-back Seal C.C.W.Rotation		
				Part #876142-1 Item #4		
3	40	EA		Spring Conical Part #845094-1		
				Item #5		
4	2	EA		Contact Seal Sleeve		
				Part #876063-1 Item #7		
5	2	EA		Ring, metal-backed carbon		
				Part#876068-3 Item #8		
6	2	EA		Seal Sleeve Outboard		
				Part #876055-3 Item #10		
7	2	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D459 Item #13		
8	2	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D282 Item #14		
9	32	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D115 Item #15		
10	2	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D449 Item #16		
11	8	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D021 Item #17		
12	2	EA		"O" Ring Part #P700D279 Item #18		
13	8			Seal Part #P832A045 Item #23		
14	1	EA		Wind-back Seal C.W. Rotation		
				Part #876396-1 Item #25		
				FOR ITEMS 1-14 REFER TO DRAWING		
				#X-868846		
15	2	EA		"O" Ring Part #700Y855 Item #30		
REMARKS						
PREPARED BY: Jack M. Perkins				DATE: 9/19/81		

Figure 2-9. Typical spare parts tabulation.

- He issues written requests for the spare parts coordinator to place a "hold" on selected parts, locally stocked parts, or to obtain these from the corporate central storage location.
- He specifies inspection requirements for existing key spare parts and any additional key spares to be procured.

Six Months Before T/A, the senior machinery specialist must:

- Commence refresher training for mechanical supervisors, craftsmen, and designated contract personnel.
- Arrange for vendor assistance.
- Review the machinery T/A schedule.

Three Months Before T/A:

- He meets with designated turbotrain T/A engineers for detailed briefing and solicitation of additional input.

Two Months Before T/A, the senior machinery specialist should:

- Review final (detailed) T/A plan for each train.
- Verify that work procedures are either available or being produced.

One Month Before T/A, his tasks include:

- Review of detailed information package for each train. This package will have been assembled by the mechanical supervisors and planners, as we will discuss later.
- Review of bar charts prepared by maintenance, and include these in package.

Finally, during the actual T/A, the senior machinery specialist must:

- Participate in daily T/A meeting.
- Verify that work procedures are followed.
- Verify that data are taken and logged in as required.
- Address deviations from plan.
- Review test runs.
- Review updated start-up instructions.

Turbotrain Turnaround Engineers

Approximately three months before the scheduled shutdown, designated turbotrain T/A engineers meet with the senior machinery specialist for detailed briefings and reviews of machinery T/A organization, procedures, and preparations. Additional responsibilities are as follows:

Three Months Before T/A:

- Prepare detailed information package for each turbotrain. A typical table of contents for one such package is shown in Figure 2-10. Sample material making up the package is shown in later illustrations.

LIST OF CONTENTS FOR: LC-01

Elliott Centrifugal Compressor 70M 6I

MWO#: 6305 Package No.: 051-02

____ COVER SHEET
____ SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
____ WORKLIST
____ JOB PLAN
____ BAR CHART
____ MATERIAL LIST & EQUIPMENT CATALOG
____ TOOL LIST
____ SPECIAL SERVICE & EQUIPMENT CATALOG
____ BLIND LIST
____ PROCEDURES
ALIGNMENT
BENDIX FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGM COUPLING
INDIKON MONITOR SYSTEM
RADIAL BEARING ASSEMBLY
THRUST BEARING ASSEMBLY
ISO-CARBON SEAL ASSEMBLY
COMPRESSOR CASING
ROTOR ASSEMBLY
COMPRESSOR INTERNALS
INTERSTAGE LABYRINTH SEALS
DESIGN CLEARANCES
____ FIELD NOTES
____ CLEARANCE INSPECTION FORMS
____ COST ESTIMATE
____ CRITICAL PATH METHOD CHART
____ PHOTOGRAPHS

MACHINERY RELIABILITY PROGRAM

Figure 2-10. Table of contents for typical compressor turnaround package.

Two Months Before T/A:
- Review final (detailed) T/A plan for each train.
- Verify that work procedures are satisfactory.

One Month Before T/A:
- Review detailed information package for each train.
- Review bar charts prepared by and forwarded by the senior machinery specialist.

During T/A:
- Participate in daily T/A meeting.
- Verify that work procedures are followed.
- Review condition of used parts as they are removed from the machine.
- Verify that data are taken and logged in as required.
- Take photographs and dictate observations into tape recorder.
- Verify the installation is mechanically correct.
- Resolve deviations from plan.
- Verify machinery alignment.
- Supervise test runs.
- Restart per startup instructions.

Mechanical Supervisors/Planners

Planners, and also mechanical and maintenance supervisors provide machinery related data and support to the senior machinery specialist and turbotrain T/A engineers involved in planning and execution of turbotrain turnarounds.

Again, nine months before the scheduled shutdown for a major machinery T/A, planners and mechanical supervisors will be given initial guidance on anticipated duties and responsibilities prior to and during the actual T/A. From then on, typical action and timing would be:

Nine Months Before T/A:
- Maintenance personnel forward machinery-related work lists to senior machinery specialist for review.
- The most probable work zone outline (see pages 217 and 222, Volume I) is drawn up and forwarded to the senior machinery specialist.

- The mechanical supervisors instruct the spare parts coordinator to assemble up-to-date tabulation of spare parts presently on hand for major machinery trains. After review, they forward the tabulation to the senior machinery specialist.

Eight Months Before T/A:

- The spare parts coordinator and maintenance personnel receive the senior machinery specialist's request to:
  1. Place a "hold" on selected parts
  2. Order additional spare parts

  In response, they issue purchase orders for additional replacement parts.
- Next, maintenance supervisors commence dimensional checking of selected (existing) spare parts per request made by the senior machinery specialist. The results should be documented within eight days.
- Dimensional checking has frequently shown serious discrepancies in parts designation, dimensional configurations, and tolerances. These must be identified early if a smooth turnaround is to result.

Six Months Before T/A:

- Maintenance personnel arrange for vendor assistance.
- Maintenance personnel also work up a more definitive work zone arrangement and commence tabulation of detailed work list for each zone.
- Maintenance or technical department personnel witness check balancing of major turbomachinery rotors.
- Assemble tools and identify missing tools.
- Arrange for scaffolding, etc.
- Forward data to senior machinery specialist regarding status of spare parts ordered six months earlier.
- The planner should now provide final work zone arrangement and detailed work list for each.

One month before T/A, maintenance planners or mechanical supervisors provide bar chart diagrams for machinery-related T/A work.

- They participate in a meeting with the senior machinery specialist and designated turbotrain T/A engineers.

One week before T/A, mechanical supervisors commence meeting with designated turbotrain T/A engineers for briefings on matters relating to machinery work.

Specific Preparation and Planning

When preparing for an overhaul of a major piece of turbomachinery, it is important to know as much as possible about the machine and why it needs to be taken out of service. There are several obvious sources of information, including the operating and maintenance personnel, the equipment file folder and the vibration history record. If sufficient information is not found in the file folder, which is all too often the case, this fact should reinforce the resolve to do a proper job of documenting the planned overhaul in a special manual or "machinery T/A package."

Before proceeding, one question usually arises: Is a complete overhaul really necessary? To properly answer this question, you will need to evaluate the symptoms. Has the vibration steadily increased over a long period of time or have you witnessed a step change? What does an analysis of the vibration signature reveal? Has the performance gradually fallen off or taken a dramatic drop? Problems such as a locked gear coupling or soluble deposits inside the machine can sometimes be corrected without opening the machine and at a considerable savings of time and effort.

Another obvious source of information is the manufacturer's manual. The good ones provide detailed, step-by-step instructions with clear illustrations; others assume prior knowledge or place undue reliance on the manufacturer's service representative. Consequently, it is prudent to develop procedures, installation instructions, or even detailed commissioning instructions for inclusion in the turnaround package. See Figure 2-10 for typical requirements.

Since a detailed manual is often too bulky for constant reference, we might reduce portions of it to a critical item list. Certain steps, clearances, and methods are vital to doing a good job. These items should be summarized and kept for ready reference during the course of the overhaul. In fact, one complete turnaround package should be on the compressor platform and should be used while the job is in progress.

It is important to assign the responsibility for the overhaul to one person so that conflicting positions do not occur. As indicated earlier, we recommend the appointment of a turbotrain T/A engineer to oversee the job and believe that all decisions and compromises should be made by him. He should be responsible for the engineering coverage, interface with the maintenance and operating departments, interface between user company and original equipment manufacturer, and for documenting the overhaul. It is a responsible assignment, one that requires judgment, maturity, and initiative on the part of the engineer. It is strongly recommended that the turbotrain T/A engineer assume responsibility for the development of data packages and checklists, some of which are shown later in sample form, but which must of course be adapted to fit a specific machine or turnaround situation.

Safety

Work safely. Be sure all power is off, blinds in, purging procedures followed, etc. A prework safety item checklist is strongly recommended, as is a list of all blind locations. The latter item is important at the beginning of a job to ensure all necessary lines are secure, and, at the end of the job, to check off the removal of all installed blinds. Failure to install or remove a blind at the appropriate time could lead to a disaster.

It is important to establish teamwork and proper communication among the operations, safety, engineering, and maintenance personnel at the start of the job so that each can fulfill his role in the total effort. A list of key players and where or how they can be reached during the overhaul period should be made available at the start of the job.

Planning

If this is a planned overhaul, as opposed to a forced outage, so much the better. Take full advantage of the planning period to make a visual inspection of the machine before the shutdown. Pay particular attention to the condition of the foundation, anchor bolts, piping, instruments, and look for leaks. It is a good idea to keep an "evergreen" list of required maintenance items in the equipment folder. Encourage personnel who frequently go on the machinery deck to make written note of any problems.

Take a final check of vibration, performance, alignment, and mechanical health data just prior to the shutdown. A small shirt-pocket size tape recorder is particularly useful to record notes; it leaves the hands free to manipulate instruments, etc. The data can then be transferred to paper back in the office. If you are working a forced outage, the most recent set of data will have to do. Compare the most recent information to previous readings and develop a list of anticipated problems. Translate all of this information into a detailed job plan as shown in Figures 2-11 and 2-12.

In our experience, machines are normally shut down for overhaul due to fouling (restricted performance); excessive vibration (ingestion of a liquid slug, a loose piece of hardware, the failure of a mechanical component or misalignment); misoperation (surge, lube oil supply failure, etc.); or when the whole process unit is shut down for a T/A. In general, we do not open machines that are running satisfactorily just for inspection. At every convenient opportunity one should inspect externally accessible components, such as couplings, and also check items such as rotor float and shaft alignment, and all tripping devices and general instrumentation.

	JOB PLAN: Overhaul/Inspection and Modifications	MWO#: 63051 PKG#: 3051-02			
	EQUIPMENT NO.: LC-01-B	PAGE 3 OF 8			

SEQ	DESCRIPTION	CRAFT	NO.	HRS	MHR
38	Turn upper half of casing over with the aid of 80-ton	MW	3	2	6
	crane, load onto truck, take to cleaning site and offload.				
39	Make sure all diaphragms and guide vanes are properly	MW	2	2	4
	marked for position in compressor case.				
40	Remove all anti-rotation locks on shaft and impeller	MW	2	2	4
	labyrinths and diaphragms and guide vanes.				
41	Remove upper half labyrinths and make ready for storage	MW	4	2	8
	or dispose of properly.				
42	Order DROTT/"Go Devil" crane and operator to pull upper	DROTT	1	4	4
	half diaphragms at cleaning site.	EQ OPER	1	4	4
43	Remove upper half diaphragms with DROTT; clean, inspect	MW	4	4	16
	and make ready for storage.				
44	Remove upper halves of seal housing end walls on each end	MW	4	2	8
	of compressor.				
45	Pull lower halves of end walls up against casing in their	MW	4	1	4
	original position on each end.				
46	Re-assemble radial bearings and thrust bearing to make	MW	4	2	8
	compressor ready for rotor wheel clearances.				
47	Push rotor against active side of thrust and take all	MW	2	3	6
	axial and radial clearances on diaphragms, shaft and im-				
	peller labyrinths, etc.				
48	Check and record clearances.	MW	1	1	1
49	Dis-assemble radial bearings and thrust bearing to make	MW	4	2	8
	ready for rotor lift.				
50	Using nylon slings or soft rope chokers, lift rotor out	MW	4	1	4
	of casing, keeping it level to lower half of case.				
51	Lower rotor downstairs in crane bay, put in rotor stand.	MW	3	1	3
52	Order truck and trailer and driver to take rotor to	FLATBED	1	1	1
	cleaning area.	DRIVER	1	1	1
53	Load onto truck, take to cleaning site and offload.	MW	2	1	2
	Clean, inspect and make ready for storage; record data.	MW	2	2	4
55	Order flatbed and driver to take cleaned and preserved	FLATBED	1	2	2
	rotor and diaphragms to final plant destination.	DRIVER	1	2	2
		MW	2	1	2

Figure 2-11. Sample sheet of turbomachinery turnaround job plan.

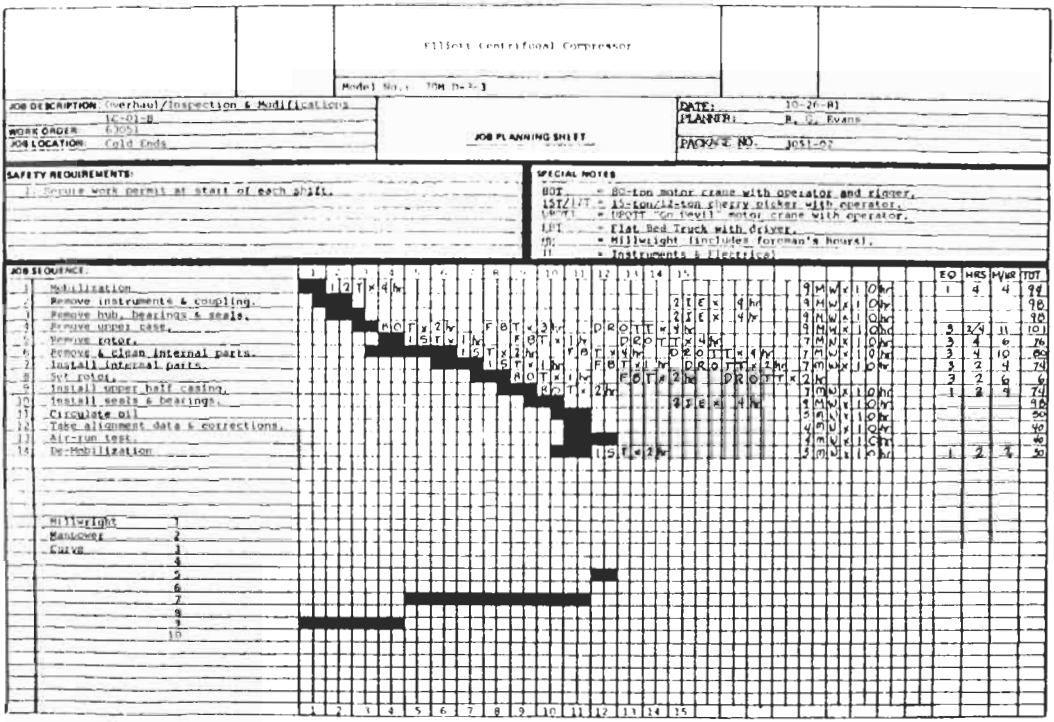


Figure 2-12. Bar charts are part of the job plan for major machinery turnaround.

In the case of steam turbines, the overspeed trip bolt and the steam trip and throttle valve have proven to be the least reliable—and yet most important—safety devices in the train. A check of these two components is mandatory during major shutdowns, and checks should be made at every other opportunity. We believe these are the most important checks performed during a shutdown. In addition, one should "exercise" the trip and throttle valve weekly by moving the stem in and out manually several turns on the hand wheel to preclude the buildup of deposits that would prevent the machine from tripping during a shutdown condition.

Consider an example of the penalty associated with the failure of a trip circuit at one plant. A 10,000 horsepower, steam turbine-driven compressor train failed to trip during a condition which had caused the compressor to fill with liquid while at full speed. The resulting loads led to catastrophic failure of both the compressor and coupling and allowed the steam turbine to overspeed to destruction. The repair bill for parts and

labor came to well over $1,000,000. The cause of the wreck was eventually traced to the buildup of deposits on a brass piston in the hydraulic shutdown system which was in a hot dead-ended oil circuit. The heat caused the oil to decompose over a long period of time, in turn causing the piston to stick. As a result, the plant now checks trip circuits more frequently. They have also installed backup trip devices on many trains, and are developing new design and operating practices.

Spare Parts

The time to check spare parts is not in the middle of the night following an emergency phone call from the operating department manager. Most large companies have some degree of computer control on the warehousing and reordering of spare parts. But how many times have you been lied to by a computer? There is no substitute for a hands-on check of parts by a knowledgeable individual. Part numbers must be checked because the item on the shelf is not necessarily the one you expected to find.

Many major plants allocate special boxes to major machinery spare parts storage. The boxes have individual compartments for labyrinths, seals, bearings, etc. A list on the lid details all parts inside, their location in the box, the manufacturer's part number and the company's stock number. Once filled, the box is sealed and stored in the usual manner. During an overhaul, the box is taken to the field and some or all of the parts consumed. The box is then returned to the warehouse with a list of consumed parts to be replaced. A call-file system should be used to keep tabs on rotors that are out of the plant for repairs and delivery of other critical spare parts.

When checking spare parts, it is important to recognize that not only must the part be the right size, it also must be in good condition. Handling and improper storage, as well as deterioration with time, are a few of the hazards associated with a warehousing operation. A nicked O-ring or a carbon seal face out of flatness could require a second shutdown to correct the problem. The use of an optical flat, a set of micrometers, and a knowledgeable pair of eyes can be invaluable in detecting a defective part.

Also, remember that just because the part came from the factory, doesn't necessarily mean it is the right one for your machine. While equipment manufacturers have various quality control procedures, they too rely on human beings, and errors do occur. In addition, some parts have a finite shelf life (case split line sealant is an example) and must be fresh when the time comes to use them.

This is also the time to check on the availability of special (custom fabricated) tools. These should be kept in a separate box, inventoried at reg-

ular intervals, and generally treated as a valuable spare part or essential resource. Delaying an overhaul for several hours to fabricate a special seal nut wrench is time and money wasted. Alignment brackets and coupling "solo" plates fall into this category.

The Spare Rotor

By far the most critical single spare part is the spare rotor. Most companies purchase the spare rotor at the time the machine is purchased and require a four-hour mechanical test to ensure integrity prior to acceptance of the machine. It would be prudent to check the spare rotor after every movement. This means a runout or rotor bow check upon receipt from the manufacturer, as well as a check of the preservative used for long-term storage. A runout check is also performed at the time the rotor is check-balanced and prepared for installation. Be sure to obtain a rotor runout diagram and balance report at that time.

Rotors of all sizes are often stored vertically in a remote temperature controlled storage building as shown in Figure 2-13. If a user opts for horizontal storage, the rotors must be placed on substantial stands and should be turned 180° two to four times a year. These stands must employ rollers rather than lead or Teflon® material at the support points. In cases where sheet Teflon® is placed between the storage cradle and the rotor there is some risk of filling the microscopic pores of a shaft journal which could prevent the formation of an adequate oil film on startup and could cause bearing failure.

Rotors must, of course, be handled with great care. Nylon slings should be used to prevent damage and all lifts should be made under the watchful eye of a competent individual. Never hesitate to call a halt to a lifting operation if the possibility of damage exists. You are being paid to look out for the company's interests and a rotor worth $100,000 to $1,000,000 or more is well worth a lot of care and concern. The rotor must be slung so that it is horizontal and its center of gravity is located under the hook, and it must be moved very slowly. Consider your vibration monitoring probes when removing a rotor from storage in preparation for installation. Record the rotor's serial number and verify that it is not positioned in a way that will interfere with a thrust position eddy current probe. Some users also report success with degaussing and/or micropeening techniques to minimize electrical runout in the areas viewed by the radial eddy current probes. Others report some success rolling the rotor on a balance stand with the areas under the probes directly on the balance rollers.

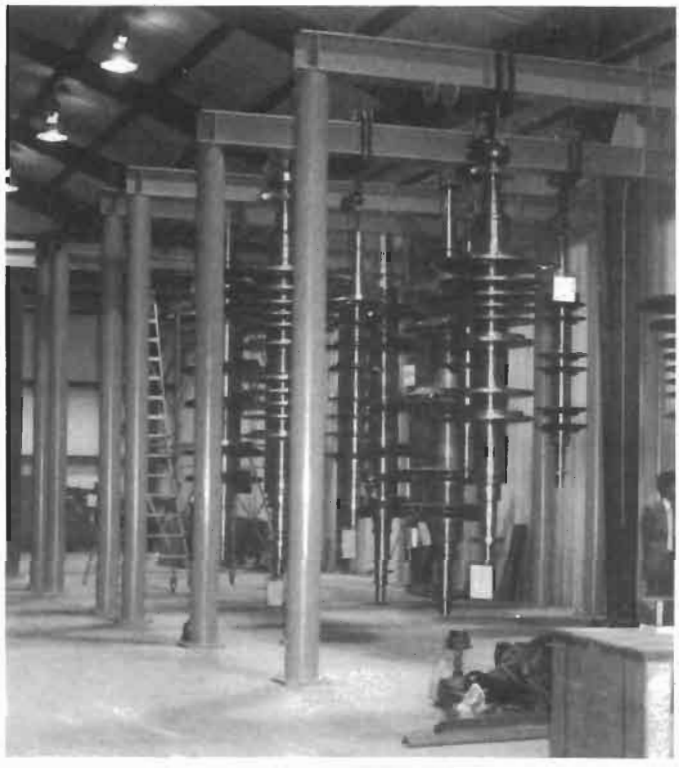


Figure 2-13. Spare rotors must be removed from storage and cleaned and inspected prior to the turnaround.

Diagrams

A critical dimension diagram (Figure 2-14) and associated tabular records (Figures 2-15 through 2-17) have proven invaluable in the middle of the night during a complicated overhaul. A critical dimension diagram is a tabulation or sketch recording critical data such as bearing and labyrinth clearances, rotor float, seal clearances, coupling advance, coupling bolt torque, etc. The document must clearly show maximum and minimum values, as well as spaces for "as found" and "as left" conditions. Any warning notes such as internal bolts, left-hand threads, or other critical steps should be clearly flagged on this sheet. Clearances should be properly labeled as to diametral or radial, metric or English units, to avoid confusion.

An alignment diagram, as shown in the chapter on machinery alignment, complete with estimated thermal growth and desired readings, is

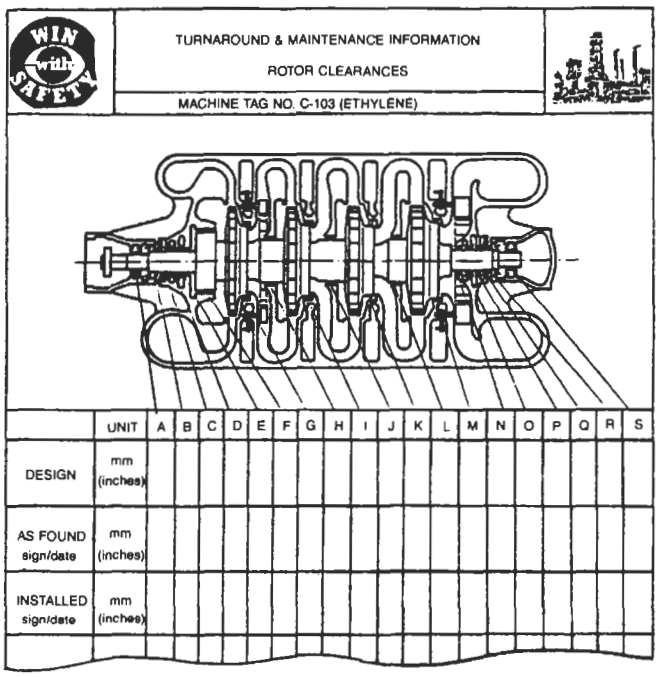


Figure 2-14. Critical dimension diagram for centrifugal compressor.

mandatory. This should be available from previous alignment work. If it is not, and if reverse dial indicator alignment techniques are not well known and practiced at your plant, we would strongly recommend implementation of such a program. The techniques and procedures have been the subject of many papers.

The records and documents described thus far have proven to be time saving and hence, money saving, and are well worth the effort. Another useful item involves preplanning the allowable limits on the desired shaft position. It is impractical to expect the field crew to place a compressor or turbine in the exact position as shown on the alignment graph. If allowable limits are known in advance (not necessarily by the field crew, but by the engineer in charge of the overhaul), a decision or compromise can be made in a rational manner depending on need for the machine and

GENERAL

MACHINE NO. K-6251 DATES OF OVERHAUL _____ (INCLUSIVE)
SERIAL NO. 2-6-2264
INSTALLED ROTOR SERIAL NO. _____
REMOVED ROTOR SERIAL NO. _____
ENGINEER IN CHARGE _____

MISCELLANEOUS

WEIGHTS: TOP HALF OF CASE 11,700 LBS. ROTOR 1390 LBS.
ROTOR: LENGTH (O.A.) 78 IN. LARGEST DIA. 25 1/2 IN.
ROTOR: 1ST CRITICAL 4000 RPM 2ND CRITICAL _____ RPM
ACCEPTABLE CLEANING MATERIALS: BLASTING: WALNUT HULLS
CLEANING: INHIBITED COLD CLEANER

CASE BOLT TORQUE:	DIAMETER	ELONGATION	TORQUE (FT.LBS.)
MAIN	2 1/4 IN.	0.025 IN.	8000
ENDS	1 5/8 IN.	0.018 IN.	3500

CASE SEALANT COMPOUND: RTV-60
DATE OF MANUFACTURE _____ AMOUNT REQUIRED FOUR 1/4 LB

COUPLING

	SPECIFICATION	CHECK	
		INITIALS	AMOUNT
DRIVER HUB: ADVANCE	0.144 IN.		
BOLT TORQUE	27 FT LBS		
BLU CHECK	85%		
DRIVEN HUB: ADVANCE	0.168 IN.		
BOLT TORQUE	27 FT LBS		
BLU CHECK	85%		
SHAFT END SPACING	18 IN ± 1/64		

MAXIMUM HYDRAULIC PRESSURE 25000 PSIG EXP./4000 PSIG PUSH

Figure 2-15. Critical data tabulation.

time available to achieve acceptable alignment. Under no circumstances should alignment be compromised beyond a few thousandths off the desired position nor excessive pipe strain be permitted on the machine. The search for absolute perfection will, however, generally be rewarded with time consuming frustration and an ultimate compromise in any case.

Miscellaneous Items

Any good shutdown/overhaul plan should include an inspection of auxiliary components. During the overhaul period is the time to clean lube oil coolers, replace filters, overhaul lube oil pumps, etc. But beware of introducing dirt into the system. Many a clean lube set and newly over-

hauled machine have been damaged by a few seconds of careless maintenance activity.

The instrumentation associated with the machinery train should also be checked and calibrated. Again, a list and adequate record keeping practices are a must. The list should include all set points and complete information on any rebuilt instruments placed back in service. The engineer in

JOURNAL BEARINGS

	SPECIFICATION	CHECK	
		INITIALS	AMOUNT
H.P. END: DIAMETER	4.125 IN.		
CRUSH	0.000 TO -0.001		
CLEARANCE	0.005 TO 0.0075		
L.P. END: DIAMETER	4.125 IN.		
CRUSH	0.000 TO -0.001		
CLEARANCE	0.005 TO 0.0075		

NOTES: 1. USE MANDRIL TO CHECK CLEARANCE
2. CLEARANCES ARE DIAMETRAL

THRUST BEARING

	SPECIFICATION	CHECK		
		BEFORE	AFTER	INITIALS
AXIAL CLEARANCE	0.015 TO 0.022			
COLLAR RUN OUT	0.0005 MAX			
COLLAR FIT	0.000 TO -0.001			
OIL CONTROL RING CLEARANCE	0.005 TO 0.009			
TOTAL ROTOR FLOAT	0.480 IN.			
% TO H.P. END	60%			
% TO L.P. END	40%			

ACTIVE DIRECTION: OUTBOARD
THRUST NUT THREAD: LEFT HAND

OIL SEALS

	SPECIFICATION		CHECK	
	DIAMETER	CLEARANCE	AMOUNT	INITIALS
LABYRINTHS				
LP INNER STEP	5.250 IN.	0.008 TO 0.0105		
LP OUTER STEP	5.000 IN.	0.008 TO 0.0105		
HP	5.000 IN.	0.008 TO 0.0105		
SEALS				
HP INNER RING	4.500 IN.	0.003 TO 0.004		
HP OUTER RING	4.500 IN.	0.015 TO 0.017		
LP INNER RING	4.500 IN.	0.003 TO 0.004		
LP OUTER RING	4.500 IN.	0.015 TO 0.017		

NOTE: CLEARANCES ARE DIAMETRAL

Figure 2-16. Critical dimension tabulation.

DIAPHRAM LABYRINTH CLEARANCE

	SPECIFICATION		CHECK	
	DIAMETER	CLEARANCE	AMOUNT	INITIAL
STAGE 1 LARGE	17.125 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 2 LARGE	15.575 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 2 SMALL	7.500 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		
STAGE 3 LARGE	14.200 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 3 SMALL	7.000 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		
STAGE 5 LARGE	14.200 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 5 SMALL	7.500 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		
STAGE 6 LARGE	12.950 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 6 SMALL	7.500 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		
STAGE 7 LARGE	12.950 IN.	0.022 TO 0.027		
STAGE 7 SMALL	7.500 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		

		BEFORE	AFTER	INITIAL
BALANCE PISTON	14.375 IN.	0.012 TO 0.016		

		AMOUNT	INITIAL
FINAL MID SPAN RUN OUT	0.001 TIR MAX		

NOTE: CLEARANCES ARE DIAMETRAL

SPECIAL NOTES OR PRECAUTIONS:

Figure 2-17. Clearance tabulation.

charge of the overhaul will normally delegate this task to the *instrument group* after collaborating on the list with this group and the operating department to pinpoint any troublesome items. Key shutdown instruments such as low oil pressure and high discharge temperature should, of course, receive as accurate a test as practical.

The Factory Serviceperson

Most machinery manufacturers' manuals recommend the use of a factory serviceperson. It is most important to know whom you are getting and what his qualifications are. One maintenance manager had the unsettling experience of shaking the hand of a serviceman from a major supplier of gas turbines who then mentioned that he normally worked on steam turbines and this would be his first gas turbine. The point is, after several years in the field, assuming continuity of plant personnel, the user many times will know more about the machine than its manufac-

turer. Factory field servicemen lead a rough life: 16–20 hour or more shifts are common, as well as frequently being away from home. Attrition is high. You will find some very good and some very bad ones. Keep a list of those to invite back, as well as those you would rather not use again.

The Overhaul

During the course of the overhaul, it is very important to keep track of the job on an hour-to-hour, shift-to-shift basis. Companies using a shift log or diary for this purpose have found it to be an invaluable communications tool. The critical dimension diagram and the alignment diagram should likewise be kept available for ready reference, as should the turnaround book or T/A package mentioned earlier.

The use of a good quality camera and a capable photographer to document details of the overhaul is strongly recommended. A good T/A package will include a pictorial sequence of assembly and disassembly steps, as we will show later. After all, if you do a good job, it will be three to five years or longer before anyone sees the inside of the machine again. Consider using both a 60-second instant color picture and 35-mm single lens reflex camera, and keep in mind the merits of video taping to provide training films for the maintenance department.

Before the actual shutdown of the machine is the time to take a final set of hot alignment data, if such a program is currently in use at your plant. There are, of course, several accepted methods for checking hot alignment. One is the use of eddy current probes, either inside the coupling guard or on the machine cases. A second is the optical method using a transit and targets on the machine train. A third is the use of a telescoping measuring rod with reference points on each machine and benchmarks on the foundation. A fourth method may involve laser optics.

If you don't currently check running hot alignment (as opposed to the old method requiring a shutdown/alignment check, which has proven to be both inaccurate and unreliable), we would strongly recommend evaluating the various systems to see which one best fits your needs. As with reverse dial indicator alignment, a good hot alignment method can be a real money saver. Several items should be checked after the machine has stopped turning, but before the actual disassembly begins:

1. The coupling: If it is a gear coupling, is it free to move on the gear teeth?
2. Look for broken coupling bolts. Broken bolts can indicate several problems, the most likely being incorrect bolt torque on installation, the wrong bolt material, or mismachined coupling flanges.

3. Get a sample of coupling grease, if a grease-packed coupling is used.
4. When removing the coupling, remember to turn the nuts and prevent the bolt head from turning so as to avoid wearing the body-fitted bolts. In a double-keyed coupling, be sure to check that the keys are marked as to their location.
5. Be sure to keep the coupling bolts and nuts together as individual assemblies. Do not plan to reuse the nuts more than twice. If any doubt exists in this area, a new set of match-weighed nut and bolt assemblies is cheap insurance.
6. Check and record rotor float within the thrust bearings, and note also the spacing between shaft ends.
7. Check the total rotor float with the thrust bearing removed, and note the rotor position relative to the machine case. Check nozzle stand-off in the case of a steam turbine, or position between diaphragms in the case of a compressor.
8. When removing the thrust bearing, be sure to measure and tag any thrust shims used for thickness and location (inboard or outboard).

Opening the Machine

Before actually opening a major piece of machinery, take time to review the critical steps in the operation. Attempting to remove an upper half casing without first removing internal (nonexposed) bolting or lifting the casing without using guide pins can result in a much longer and more expensive overhaul. Be especially careful when opening lube oil lines. The loss of a flow control orifice or the introduction of dirt into the system can cause serious problems during the machine startup.

As the machine comes apart, take lots of pictures, make written notes, and/or use a tape recorder to document what you see. It's amazing how much detail will be lost and how difficult it is to accurately reconstruct events hours or days—let alone years—after they have occurred.

One major petrochemical company operates four identical 20,000 horsepower steam turbines which, due to a series of blade problems, had to be opened a total of 31 times in an eight-year period. They recognize the importance of rotor charts to keep track of rotor movements and modifications, as shown in Figure 2-18. When the first blade in the first rotor failed, it was not apparent that they were in for such a lengthy problem. The rotor movement chart was laboriously constructed from memory when they were halfway into the program and had added a sixth rotor to the system (four installed and two spares).

DATE	MACHINE NUMBER				SPARE
	300	350	500	550	
5/70 (NEW)	A-1	B-1	C-1	D-1	E-1
7/70			E-1		C-2
9/70		B-2			C-2
10/70			C-2		E-2
10/70				E-2	D-3
10/70			D-3		C-3
10/70				C-3	E-3
11/70				E-3	C-4
1/71		B-3			C-4
4/71				C-4	E-4
5/71		E-4			B-4
6/71			B-4		D-5
6/71			D-5		B-5
7/71	B-5			C-5	A-7
8/71		E-5			A-7
9/71	B-6				A-7
6/72	A-7		C-5	F-8	B-10, D-9
2/74		D-9	B-10		C-9, E-12
9/75	C-9				A-12, E-12
12/75	C-9/6				A-12, E-12
6/76	A-12		E-12		B-12, C-12
10/78		B-12		C-12	D-12, F-12

NOTE: LETTER CORRESPONDS TO MFG. ROTOR SERIAL NO.
NUMBER REFERS TO SPECIFIC DESIGN MODIFICATION

Figure 2-18. Rotor History Chart

If you plan to remove compressor diaphragms, be sure to match mark them as to their position in the case. Inadvertent mixing of inlet guide vanes could alter machine performance! Be careful to stone down any match marks which are placed in a machined area, such as the casing split line. When the top half of a horizontally split compressor is removed, it is a good idea to position the rotor with its thrust bearing as it was before shutdown and check to see if the impellers are centered with the diffuser flow passages.

Inspection

As the machine is being opened, pay particular attention to visible deposits. On machined sealing surfaces you may find telltale tracks of a leak or wire drawing. Such leaks may indicate a need to check the flatness and fit of the surfaces with lead wire or Plasti-Gage®, or simply better attention to bolt torquing requirements. Fouling inside the flow passages of the machine will likely not be distributed uniformly from one end to another. In a compressor, the gas will get hotter with each successive stage. With some gases this will bake the deposits in the latter stages; with other gases, heavy, wet deposits will form in the first stages of the machine. Get a sample of the deposits to determine, first, what they are in order to see if they can be eliminated from the process. Failing that, test to see if they can be dissolved in some suitable solvent, for either on-

line or off-line washing, in order to delay a subsequent machine overhaul. While compressor manufacturers shy away from on-line full-speed washing, knowledgeable users have had very good luck with both this technique and with off-line washing when the machine is slow rolled while half full of the wash liquid. When choosing a wash fluid be sure it is compatible with all components in the machine, such as O-rings, as well as the process. On-line abrasive cleaning with walnut hulls, etc., has found wide acceptance with gas turbine users, but is not without its problems. Plugged orifices, airbleed passages, and the like are common. The total subject of on-line or off-line cleaning is beyond the scope of this text, but it is well worth considering in specific situations as it is a real time and money saver.

The bearings, journals, and seals should be visually checked for signs of distress. One frequent problem has been that of babbitt fatigue. While the aftermarket has been offering bearings with babbitting less than 0.010 in. thick for a number of years, some machinery manufacturers have resisted change in this area. Nevertheless, industry experience with thin babbitt bearings has been excellent to date.

Labyrinths can also tell a story which needs to be read and analyzed. Deep grooves in the impellers or shaft spacers are indications of a shaft excursion at some time in the operating cycle. Worn or corroded labyrinths indicate loss of efficiency, and, if found over the balance piston, could lead to a thrust bearing failure. As with bearings, new materials able to combat the corrosion problem are now coming into the aftermarket. Rubs could indicate misoperation, such as running at or near a rotor critical speed or in surge; a rotor dynamics problem; a thermal bow, or similar difficulty. Observations regarding location, depth, and distribution of the rubs are the keys to a proper analysis.

Cleaning

When cleaning fouled components—rotors, diaphragms, etc.—make sure the work is done in a remote location. Sand or nut hulls used for this purpose will usually find a way of invading the wrong parts of the machine, such as bearings and seals. The rotor should be carefully checked at this time for debris lodged in the gas passages. We know of instances where a rag or piece of metal was jammed in an inaccessible place in an impeller. The use of a small dental mirror and a thorough inspection by hand can reveal much of this debris.

It is fairly common practice to inspect a rotor using magnetic particle or dye penetrant techniques. This is a strongly recommended step; it can turn up defects which could otherwise prove to be highly damaging during a subsequent running period. In one such instance we uncovered an

undesirable manufacturing technique which has been practiced for many years. The magnetic particle and subsequent dye penetrant inspections showed several cracks around the eye of the fifth stage impeller in a multistage barrel compressor rotor installed in relatively clean hydrogen service. Up to this point the overhaul had been a routine matter, but now took on far more serious implications. It seems that this particular compressor manufacturer had been in the habit of overspeed testing impellers and then trimming the eye labyrinth area to size, thus weakening the most critical structural area of the impeller. The explanation given (to compensate for bore stretch during overspeed) is, of course, unacceptable. Most manufacturers will now readily guarantee maximum allowable expansion in the diameter of the eye of an impeller as a function of the diameter before the overspeed test. This is the only acceptable way to buy compressor impellers, either as part of a new machine or as a replacement part.

Reassembly

Once the machine has been opened and all parts cleaned and inspected, the reassembly procedure can begin. There are many critical phases involved with this operation, one of the most important being care in handling the rotor. Large heavy rotors (over approximately 2,500 lbs) require special handling and, in some cases, special guide fixtures should be fabricated to avoid damaging components. This is particularly necessary with gas turbines which have many exposed, fragile parts. A solid rotor cradle is also a very necessary item. Do not jeopardize your most valuable spare part by failing to protect it during the course of an overhaul or during transit to or from the storage warehouse.

When fitting housings and other components with multiple O-rings in blind areas, we have found that it is usually beneficial to first remove the O-rings and fit the housing by hand to check the alignment of the assembly. Blind dowels or concealed shims can be located in this manner with pencil marks. The O-ring fits should be touched lightly with Grade 600 wet or dry emery paper to remove any burrs, and then checked carefully by hand. Lubricate the O-rings with a suitable grease or oil. A cut O-ring, worth very little in itself, can bear heavily on the success of an overhaul.

Bearing clearance is one of the most important checks during reassembly. We have found that after several years of operation, the pads of a tilting pad journal bearing will wear small depressions in the support ring or housing which can open the clearance beyond specifications. Also, replacement pads may not be within tolerance. The only proper way to

check bearing clearance with this type of bearing is by using a mandrel the size of the journal and a flat plate. The clearance in a sleeve-type journal bearing can be checked with Plasti-Gage®. Be sure to torque the bearing cap bolts correctly or you may get a false reading.

When assembling bearings be sure the anti-rotation dowels are in place and look to be sure the oil dam (if used in that particular bearing) is in the correct direction of rotation. Some of these steps will sound obvious, but each one results from a problem experienced in the field. It is also useful to check the alignment of oil supply holes in the housing with oil feed grooves in the bearing. For want of a 3/8-in. groove in the housing of a replacement bearing, one user lost a high speed shaft and impeller assembly in a plant air compressor package.

Before the upper half of the casing of a horizontally split machine is bolted in place, a final rotor mid-span bow check is recommended. This is particularly useful if you, as the responsible engineer on an overhaul, have not been able to personally witness all rotor movements during the course of the job.

Coupling hub fit is another area requiring consideration. The assumption that the taper is correct provides a false sense of security. By lightly bluing the shaft and transferring the bluing to the coupling bore, the fit can be properly checked. It is prudent to require at least 85 percent contact. If the contact pattern is not acceptable, the question of whether to lap or not to lap needs to be addressed. We will not lap using the coupling half for obvious reasons, but will lap using a ring and plug gauge set. The advance of the coupling on the taper must be correct and should be witnessed and recorded by a knowledgeable individual. Coupling bolts must be torqued to the coupling manufacturer's specifications as the clamping force, not the bolt body, is generally the means of transmitting the torque.

As the machine goes back together, fill in the information in the critical dimension diagram. Labyrinth and bearing clearances, total rotor float, thrust clearance, coupling advance, bolt torque, etc., should all be measured and logged. Shaft alignment and cold baseline data for comparison with hot growth data taken after startup should also be logged on the appropriate sheet. Remember to check the shaft end gap, as not all rotors are created equal and the wrong dimension could damage your coupling. When leaning into an open machine, it is well to remember to remove all loose objects from shirt pockets!

There are some other checks which may or may not have been incorporated in the critical dimension diagram, most notable of them being whether the rotor is free to turn and whether oil is flowing to and from the proper places. This latter item can be viewed just prior to bolting bearing caps or covers in place, assuming the oil lines have been recon-

nected. On some machines with internal oil tubing, it is possible to have oil flow showing in the main oil drain sight flow indicator while no oil is reaching the bearings or seals!

Documenting What You've Done

Following the overhaul, the startup will need to be monitored. If you don't have a fixed-base monitoring system, use a portable real time analyzer and a multichannel FM tape recorder to obtain baseline vibration data for comparison with previous operating information. Hot alignment readings can usually be taken several hours after startup. Machine performance will normally be checked after the process has stabilized which, on some machines, can be as long as several days after startup. All of this information provides a very useful check on the success of the overhaul and should be taken at the outset of a run and not delayed until a "convenient" time several weeks from startup.

As soon as the machine is operating satisfactorily, do the paper work. Many engineers shy away from this duty and use the excuse of day-to-day business pressures to delay or even forget this very necessary chore. While the events are still fresh in your mind, sit down and finish the job. In documenting an equipment overhaul, consider using the following format:

1. *Basic Machine Data*—A brief description of the machine, including manufacturer, model number, number of stages and other physical parameters, serial number, date purchased, date of last overhaul and reason for current overhaul.
2. *Performance, Vibration, and Mechanical Health Data*—A comparison of pre- and post-overhaul levels. Performance and vibration data for the train, including process flow, pressure and temperature, machine case, and eddy current probe vibration levels, as well as oil supply pressure, temperature, and oil return temperature. The performance data should be sufficient to accurately assess the machine's condition. Calibrated instruments are required.
3. *Spare Parts*—A complete list of spare parts for the machine, as well as a list of parts actually consumed. Include machine manufacturer's part number, as well as company warehouse stock number.
4. *Critical Dimension Diagram*—Complete with factory specifications, as-found dimensions (logged during disassembly), and as-overhauled dimensions. This information must include items such as total rotor float, thrust clearance, rotor position within the total

float, labyrinth clearance, radial bearing clearance, nozzle standoff, coupling bluing check, and coupling advance.

5. *Rotor run-out diagram and balance report.*
6. *Shaft Alignment Diagram*—A shaft alignment diagram showing desired readings based on anticipated thermal growth data, "as found" readings (prior to overhaul), "as left" readings after overhaul, and actual measured thermal growth data.
7. *Photographs of the overhaul.*
8. *A discussion of the overhaul.* Refer to appropriate photographs throughout.
9. *Recommendations:*
   - For future overhauls.
   - For reconditioning worn but reusable parts.
   - For on-line cleaning, if applicable.
   - For redesigned parts, if applicable.
10. *Shift logs and backup data as required.*

In writing a report, decide what went right and what went wrong. Fully identify the causes in each case so that your successor can benefit from your experiences. Send a list of spare parts used in the overhaul to the warehouse controller. While you hope you won't need parts in a hurry, don't bet on it! Decide if you plan to invite the factory serviceperson back for a subsequent overhaul. In either case, put his name on your report so no confusion exists on this point. Go back to the machine manual and make notes in the margin on any errors that may have appeared in the printed material.

Nonstandard Parts

Once a new machine has operated for a year, it is well to remember that the guarantee has probably elapsed. In addition, bear in mind that the original equipment manufacturer's parts were generally a design compromise which took into account a competitive marketplace and existing, available designs in the manufacturer's shop. Any parts that fail to stand up should not necessarily be replaced by standard parts. There are many excellent aftermarket manufacturers of components and many specialized tools such as multiplane milling machines and overspeed spin pits for individual components. Aerospace technology and materials are beginning to filter down to the aftermarket also. None of the above should be construed as an indictment of the equipment manufacturer, but when his spare part pricing, policies, and failure to solve design problems mount to a point where it becomes necessary to put properly engineered aftermarket components into a machine, do not hesitate to do what is best for your company.

Chapter 3

Machinery Foundations and Grouting*

What's An Epoxy?

According to the Handbook of Epoxy Resins[1], the term *epoxy* refers to a chemical group consisting of an oxygen atom bonded with two carbon atoms already united in some other way. The simplest epoxy is a three-membered ring. There is no universal agreement on the nomenclature of the three-membered ring. There is division even on the term epoxy itself—the Europeans generally prefer the term *epoxide*, which is doubtless more correct than the American *epoxy*.

In addition to providing a history of the development of epoxy resins, the handbook states that the resins are prepared commercially thus:

1. By dehydrohalogenation of the chlorohydrin prepared by the reaction of epichlorohydrin with a suitable di- or polyhydroxyl material or other active-hydrogen-containing molecule.
2. By the reaction of olefins with oxygen-containing compounds such as peroxides or peracids.
3. By the dehydrohalogenation of chlorohydrins prepared by routes other than by route 1.

At the present time more than 25 distinct types of resins are commercially available, and the term *epoxy resin* is generic. It now applies to a wide family of materials. Both solid and liquid resins are available.

* E. M. Renfro, P. E. Adhesive Services Company, Houston, Texas

There are other liquid resins such as phenolics, polyesters, acrylics, etc., which cure in similar fashion, but the epoxy resins possess a rather unique combination of properties. The liquid resins and their curing agents form low-viscosity, easy-to-modify systems. They can cure at room temperatures, without the addition of external heat and they cure without releasing by-products. They have low shrinkage compared to other systems. They have unusually high bond strengths, excellent chemical resistance, high abrasion resistance, and good electrical insulation properties. The basic properties can be modified by blending resin types, by selection of curing agents (hardeners), the addition of modifiers, and by adding fillers.

Perhaps the most valuable single property of the epoxy resins is their ability to cure, thus converting from liquids to tough, hard solids. This is accomplished by the addition of a curing agent. Some agents promote curing by catalytic action, while others participate directly in the reaction and become part of the resin chain. Depending upon the particular agent, curing may be accomplished at room temperature with heat produced by exothermic reaction, or may require application of external heat. The epoxies will react with over 50 different chemical groupings, but the basic curing agents employed in the epoxy resin technology are Lewis bases, inorganic bases, primary and secondary amines, and amides.

An entire spectrum of properties can be obtained in a cured epoxy resin system by careful selection of resins, careful selection of curing agents, varying the ratio of resin to curing agent and by including additives or fillers. The resins and curing agents, themselves, may even be blends. As an illustration of the spectrum of obtainable properties, a cured epoxy system may be as soft as a rubber ball or so hard that it will shatter when dropped. Epoxies can be formulated to be either sticky or tack free. They can be formulated to either melt or char when heated; to release tremendous amounts of heat when curing or they may require heat for curing; to bond tenaciously to sandblasted steel, even under cryogenic conditions, or have relatively little bond; or to be either tough or friable.

Epoxy Grouts

Grout is a broad term covering all of those materials used in a wide variety of applications which include chinking for cracks, fissures, or cavities; a mortar for tile and other masonry; a support for column footings; a sealant for built-in vessels; or a mortar for setting heavy machinery. This text, however, is concerned with those epoxy-based materials

used in setting heavy machinery and in repairing concrete foundations. Specifications for Portland cement grouting and epoxy grouting of rotating equipment, as well as a checklist for baseplate grouting, can be found in the appendices at the end of this chapter.

The need for a machinery grout is created by a combination of circumstances occurring in the construction of foundations. Many of these circumstances are unfavorable to concrete, thereby complicating its use. This condition is brought about primarily because it is impossible to pour a concrete foundation to within the tolerances usually required for precision leveling and alignment of dynamic equipment. Even if such exact placement were possible it would be further complicated by the fact that concrete shrinks while curing.

Furthermore, the laitance or weak surface created when simple concrete is cast or troweled would not provide sound support for machinery requiring precision alignment. It has therefore become a standard practice in construction of foundations to pour the concrete to a level slightly above the desired grade, and after curing, chip away the surface to remove the laitance. The machinery is then positioned on the foundation, leveled and aligned to within proper tolerances with the aid of jack screws, wedges, shims, etc., and the gap grouted in solidly to establish integrity between the machine base and the concrete foundation below.

When improperly installed machinery breaks loose, the static forces to which the foundation is subjected do not act alone. Vibratory forces of high magnitude will also exist. Given enough time, this will usually cause cracks in the foundation that allow lubricating oil to penetrate deep into the foundation and proceed to degrade the concrete. It therefore becomes necessary to repair the cracked foundation, remove or repair oil-soaked concrete and regrout in order to re-establish the integrity of the system. Epoxy grouting materials have long been used for these repairs.

The specific use for which grout is intended should be taken into consideration when evaluating the properties of a prospective grout. It is equally important to ascertain the conditions under which a manufacturer obtained his test data. This will allow the user's engineer to correlate these data with actual operating conditions. For example, most ASTM test procedures do not specify the test temperature for determining the properties of epoxy grout. In contrast to cement-based mortars, the properties of epoxy grouts are considerably different at the high temperatures of operating machinery than at standard ambient temperatures. A list of ASTM test procedures often used in testing epoxy grout properties is shown in Table 3-1. Furthermore, in comparing compression test data it is also important that the test specimens be of the same size and shape because test data from cylindrically-shaped specimens is considerably

Table 3-1
A List of ASTM Standard Methods Used in Testing Epoxy Grouts

DESIGNATION	TITLE
ASTM C-109	Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or 50-mm Cube Specimens)
ASTM C-177	Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate
ASTM C-190	Tensile Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars
ASTM C-307	Tensile Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars
ASTM C-308	Working and Setting Times of Chemical Resistant Resin Mortars
ASTM C-321	Bond Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars
ASTM C-413	Absorption of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacings
ASTM C-531	Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacings
ASTM C-579	Compressive Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars and Monolithic Surfacings
ASTM C-702	Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size
ASTM D-256	Impact Resistance of Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials
ASTM D-531	Rubber Property - Pusey & Jones Indentation
ASTM D-635	Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position
ASTM D-638	Tensile Properties of Plastics
ASTM D-648	Deflection Temperature of Plastics Under Flexural Load
ASTM D-746	Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact
ASTM D-790	Flexural Properties of Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials
ASTM D-905	Strength Properties of Adhesive Bonds in Shear by Compressive Loading
ASTM D-1002	Strength Properties of Adhesives in Shear by Tension Loading
ASTM D-2566	Linear Shrinkage of Cured Thermosetting Casting Resins Curing Cure
ASTM D-2583	Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor

higher than data obtained from cube-shaped specimens of equal cross-sectional area. Very few independent testing laboratories have universal testing equipment with environmental chambers capable of maintaining test temperatures. A photograph of a universal testing machine equipped with a convection current type environmental chamber is shown in Figure 3-1.

Some properties contribute to the long service life or performance of a grout while others facilitate the ease of installation or grout placement. In evaluating a prospective grout, performance characteristics should take

Figure 3-1. A universal testing machine equipped with a convection current type environmental chamber (Courtesy Tinius Olsen Testing Machine Co., Inc.).

preference over ease of placement characteristics. These properties are of key importance:

- Nonfoaming—Without a doubt, the single most important characteristic of a grout from a performance standpoint is its ability to stabilize and disperse any air introduced with the aggregate or entrained during normal, nonviolent mixing. Otherwise, a weak, foamy surface would develop soon after pouring, and be unable to maintain alignment. Surface foam can always be eliminated by selecting the proper aggregate and maintaining viscosity of the mixed grout with proper aggregate ratio. This ratio cannot be fixed for all temperature conditions because the viscosities of the liquid ingredients change with temperature as do other hydrocarbons. The aggregate ratio will increase as the temperature of the ingredients becomes higher. Incorporating air release agents and surface defoamers in the grout formulations does improve the *appearance* of the exposed foundation shoulders, but does not prevent entrapment of air bubbles under the equipment base. Even with a time lapse between grout mixing and grout placement, air cannot be properly released because of the difference in rise rates of various size air bubbles, particularly in "soupy" mixes.
- Dimensional Stability—Three causes of dimensional change in grouts are shrinkage while curing, thermal expansion or contraction from temperature changes, and stress deformation or creep. Shrinkage in epoxy grout systems can occur if the formulation contains nonreactive volatile solvents that can, with time, gradually evaporate from the grout. This material loss usually results in shrinkage or cracking. Shrinkage is also theoretically possible in cases where improper ratio of resin to curing agent exists as a result of dispensing error or as a result of poor or incomplete mixing. Shrinkage is virtually nonexistent in properly formulated and properly mixed epoxy grout.
- Grout expansion—Thermal expansion coefficients of grouts should be compared with the rate of thermal expansion of concrete and steel since it will be sandwiched between the two materials. Concrete and steel have about the same linear coefficient of thermal expansion. Unfilled epoxy resin systems expand or contract at about ten times the rate of concrete and steel. The high rate of expansion of unfilled epoxy does not cause problems when the epoxy is of a nonbrittle formulation and is present only in thin films, as in pressure grouting. When aggregate is added to the liquid epoxy/curing agent mixture to form a mortar, the linear coefficient of thermal expansion can be reduced to the range of $1.2–1.4 \times 10^{-5}$ in./in.°F, or about twice the

rate for concrete or steel. When reviewing properties of a grout, compressive strengths should be considered along with the modulus of elasticity (the slope of the stress-strain curve). Generally, the more rigid the material, the steeper the slope and the higher the modulus of elasticity. Rubber, for example, is elastic according to the lay definition, but relatively nonelastic according to the technical definition.

- Strength—There are several methods of measuring strength of a grout. It can be measured under compression, tension, impact, and under flexure. Bond strength, shear strength and cleavage are measurements of adhesion rather than strength. Usually when strength of a grout is mentioned, it is the ultimate compressive strength that is implied. The term yield strength should be reserved for tensile tests of metals which work-harden before reaching the ultimate strength. Grouting materials do not work-harden, and there is but one peak in the stress-strain curve. More important than the ultimate strength, however, is the proportional limit, because beyond that level of stress, the material is permanently distorted and will not return to its original dimension after the load is removed. Data from compression tests can be used for design calculations because static loads are usually known and dynamic loads can be reasonably estimated. Grout is seldom placed under tension, except at rail ends, etc., during start-up. The tensile strength of the grout is important, because if it is known at the operating temperature, the maximum distance between expansion joints can be calculated. In addition to the tensile strength, tensile modulus of elasticity, operating temperature range, and linear coefficient of thermal expansion must be known.

This should illustrate that epoxy grouts are sophisticated products. There are literally thousands of possible resin/curing agent combinations. It is not realistic to believe that a good epoxy grout can be developed from scratch on a small budget utilizing independent testing laboratories for screening and obtaining data. The process is simply too expensive. Even if all necessary equipment, including that shown in Figure 3-1, should be available in one's laboratory, the efforts of a development chemist must be directed by someone knowledgeable in concrete, loading requirements of machinery, and the degree of precision necessary to maintain machinery alignment. Developing, manufacturing, and marketing of epoxy grouts is *not* the business for small time formulators with bath tub and boat paddle type equipment. Prospective epoxy grout suppliers should be screened on the basis of their technology and capabilities. If the reader retains nothing more than this one fact, he will have learned within a short period what others have learned through great anguish over a long period and at considerable expense.

Proper Grout Mixing is Important[2]

Epoxy grouts must be properly mixed if adequate strength is to be maintained at operating temperatures. The strength of epoxy grouts is the result of dense cross-linkage between resin and hardener molecules. Dense cross-linkage cannot occur in either resin-rich or resin-poor areas. Poorly mixed grout, which may appear to be strong at room temperature, can soften and creep under load at temperatures in the operating range.

Epoxy grouts are three-component products. They have an epoxy resin, a hardener, and a graded aggregate. The resin and hardener serve as an adhesive in the mortar while the aggregate serves as a filler to reduce costs. The addition of an aggregate will lower the coefficient of thermal expansion of the mortar to more closely approach that of concrete and steel. Aggregates also serve as heat sinks to absorb the heat released by curing, and thereby, allow thicker pours.

Both resin and hardener molecules are surface-active, which means that either is capable of clinging to a surface. That is why it is so critical that the resin and hardener be premixed for a minimum of three minutes before adding aggregate. Use of a paint mixer for premixing these adhesive components is preferred over the stick-and-bucket method because it provides more thorough mixing and will not usually whip air into the mix.

The aggregate used in preparing an epoxy grout mortar is a key factor in minimizing the loss of load bearing area caused by the rising of entrapped air after grout placement. Aggregate quality is also a key in minimizing the potential for run-away curing, edge lifting of the grout on foundation corners, loss of bond to the machinery base and stress cracking of the grout.

Most aggregates have about 25–30 percent voids regardless of particle sizes or gradation. The liquid components of an epoxy grout have a density of about 9 lbs per gallon while the aggregate exhibits a bulk density of about 14–16 lbs per gallon. The particle density is much higher. Because of this difference in densities, the aggregate falls to the bottom of the mix and is not immediately wetted. When the liquid and aggregate are blended together, air that was present in the aggregate as well as air introduced into the mortar during mixing has a tendency to rise. The rate at which air bubbles rise is governed by both the size of the bubble as well as the viscosity of the mortar. At any given viscosity, the rise rate increases as the size of the bubble increases; therefore, it is important to keep the size of the bubbles as small as possible. The size of the bubbles is determined by the space between aggregate particles.

The linear coefficient of thermal expansion of unfilled epoxy grout is about ten times greater than that of concrete or steel or $6–8 \times 10^{-5}$ in./in. °F. When aggregate is added to form a mortar, the linear coefficient of thermal expansion is reduced, and the more aggregate added, the closer it approaches the coefficient of concrete and steel. It is important that the thermal expansion coefficient of epoxy mortar approach that of concrete and steel in order to minimize edge lifting on foundation corners and to minimize stress cracking of the grout when temperatures fall below the curing temperature. The ratio of aggregate to epoxy adhesive in the mortar should be as high as possible without exceeding the point at which the mortar becomes permeable. As stated earlier, most commercial epoxy grout mortars have a thermal expansion coefficient of about $1.2–1.4 \times 10^{-5}$ in./in. °F.

Most epoxy adhesives cure by exothermic reaction, i.e., they release heat on curing. If an epoxy grout cures too fast, high curing temperatures are reached and locked-in stresses may be created after heat dissipation. Aggregate serves as a heat sink. Consequently, it is usually desirable to have as high an aggregate loading as possible. Because the hydroxide ion accelerates the curing of epoxy resins and because water contains hydroxide ions, it is important that the aggregates used in preparing the mortar be kiln dried. As little as one ounce of water per cubic foot of mortar will dramatically increase curing rates. This small amount of moisture is not detectable by sight or touch. Kiln drying is a common practice with bagged aggregates. Even low cost blasting sands are kiln dried.

The viscosity of the mortar is determined by the viscosity of the liquid (which is determined by temperature), the shape and the amount of aggregate as well as the amount of surface area present in the aggregate. The greater the surface area the greater the viscosity of the mortar. While high viscosity in an epoxy mortar is helpful in reducing the rise rate of air bubbles it also reduces the fluidity of the mortar. A powder aggregate would certainly eliminate air rising problems, but unfortunately, a paste consistency would be reached long before an adequate quantity of aggregate is added to significantly reduce the linear coefficient of the mortar expansion.

A high aggregate loading can be accomplished in mortar without eliminating its fluidity and without creating a permeable mortar by careful grading of near-spherical aggregates. Theoretically, the selection of each particle size should be the largest that will fit in the space beween particles of the next larger size. The amount of each grade present should be that which fills these spaces without significantly increasing total volume of the aggregate. The variation in particle size should not be so great as to cause classification of the aggregate in the mortar before curing;

otherwise, a gradient in coefficients of thermal expansion may be created between the top and bottom of the grout. The diameter of the largest particles should be no more than 1/10 to 1/15 the thickness of the grout under the load bearing surface of the machinery. The largest particle size in most commercial epoxy grouts is about 1/8 in. Epoxy grout manufacturers usually recommend a minimum grout thickness of 1 1/2 in.

Because the adhesive components are organic materials, the viscosities change with temperature. More aggregate is sometimes required when preparing mortar in hot climates than is required when mixing at conventional room temperatures. The proper consistency or viscosity of the mortar is observed when the divot falls free and does not cling to a clean mortar hoe when a gentle chop is made in the mix.

When utilizing a concrete mixer or a mortar mixer for preparing the grout, it is important that mixing after aggregate addition be carried out only long enough to coat all aggregate particles uniformly. Otherwise, a froth may be generated from air whipped into the mix. Ideal mixer speeds are usually about 20 rpm.

Job Planning

If the equipment is being installed in original construction, grouting should be scheduled for a time compatible with critical path sequences. If the equipment to be grouted is in service, it may be advantageous to schedule regrouting during a normal downtime or during a turnaround period. In either case, work planning should be carried out in detail well in advance of the actual time the work is to be done. Proper planning reduces job site problems.

The equipment manufacturer should be informed well in advance in order to alert his service personnel if their presence is required to supervise leveling and alignment prior to grouting. The grout manufacturer should also be alerted if field supervision of grouting is expected. Early communication with these parties will allow them to make necessary arrangements with minimum inconvenience. Last minute notification seldom accomplishes these objectives.

A clear understanding of what is expected from a contractor will minimize extra charges which usually arise after the work is complete. Contract details should include provisions identifying parties responsible for furnishing utilities, materials, etc. The extent of work should also be accurately defined. For example, responsibility for disposal of waste, dressing and painting the foundation, backing-off on the jack screws, and torquing the anchor bolts should be considered.

It would also be prudent to prepare simple, itemized field checklists to be used by personnel involved in equipment installation and grouting. Typical sample checklists can be found in the appendices at the end of this chapter.

Table 3-2 is a materials check list for epoxy grouting. Orders for materials not available locally should be placed with lead time reserved for order processing, packaging, shipping, etc. A good rule-of-thumb is to place orders sufficiently in advance to allow three times the normal time required for unencumbered transit, if it can be anticipated that materials are available from stock.

All grouting materials should be stored indoors in a dry area and preferably at room temperature. Containers stored outside may in the summertime reach temperatures as high as 140°F, particularly if the containers and bags are in direct sunlight. The speed of most chemical reactions is doubled with each 10°C (18°F) rise in temperature. Consequently, it is quite probable that epoxy grout that has been stored outside in the summertime will have an excessively hot cure. When this occurs, the grout cures in a thermally expanded state, and after cooling, creates locked-in stresses. Excessive cracking will result as these stresses are relieved.

Most epoxy formulations do not cure well without accelerators at temperatures below 60°F, and not at all at temperatures below 35°F. Consequently, grouting materials stored at cold ambient temperatures require several days to cure. When this occurs, it is possible that equipment alignment conditions will change before the mortar has set, resulting in a poor installation. Furthermore, when the mortar is cold, it is viscous and very difficult to place.

Conventional Grouting

Concrete Characteristics

Foundation design and machinery installation require more expertise and precision than are usually practiced. Perhaps due to a shortage of skilled manpower, the construction industry has given less attention to technical details. Since there is generally some knowledge—"Everybody knows a little bit about concrete; and aren't foundations just big blocks of concrete?"—grouting is often taken for granted. Consequently, a high percentage of compressors are installed improperly. Many foundations must be renovated or the equipment regrouted long before the life of the equipment is exhausted. Here are a few common problems that can be avoided by putting a little effort into proper design and installation.

Table 3-2
Materials Checklist for Epoxy Grouting

Item	Conventional Grouting & Regrouting	Pressure-Injection Regrouting by the Shoulder Removal Method	Pressure-Injection Regrouting. Thru-the-case Method	Foundation Repairs
Air compressor, manifold and hoses	x	x	x	x
Auxiliary lighting	x	x	x	x
Bolt studs, couplings and dies (for repairing broken anchor bolts)	x	x	-	-
Carpenter tools	x	x	-	x
Copper tubing, tubing cutters compression fittings, grease fittings, automatic injection equipment & grease guns equipment and grease guns	-	x	x	x
Exhaust blower or fan	x	x	x	x
Fire extinguishers	x	x	x	x
Flash lights (for gas atmospheres)	x	x	x	x
Gas detection equipment	x	x	x	x
Grouting materials (epoxy grout, aggregate, accelerators & cleaning solvent)	x	x	x	x
Housekeeping equipment (broom, mop, rags pails, shovel & industrial vacuum cleaner)	x	x	x	x
Lumber for forms, plywood, Celotex (for casting expansion joints, drop-in anchors, chamfer strips, nails, electricians putty (DuxSeal), body putty & wax	x	x	-	-
Mechanics tools	x	x	x	x

Mortar mixing equipment (mortar mixer, wheel barrow, hoes & shovels)	x	x	-	-
No. 6 Rebar for pinning grout corners	x	x	-	-
No. 11 Rebar for pining block to mat	-	-	-	x
Paint mixer (for mixing resin & curing agent)	x	x	x	x
Pneumatic drill, bits, taps & tap wrench	-	-	x	-
Pneumatic right angle grinders, stones, & paint (for dressing & painting the foundation)	x	x	-	x
Pneumatic rivet busters, spare parts and chisels	x	x	-	x
Pneumatic rock drill,extensions and bits	x	x		x
Post-tensioning assemblies, epoxy putty anchors)	-	-	-	x
Protective covering (equipment & floor)	x	x	x	x
Safety equipment (dust mask, face shields, hard hats, safety glasses, ear protection, rubber gloves & first aid kit)	x	x	x	x
Sand blaster with dead man control, blasting grit and ventilated hood	x	x	-	-
Shelter (for heating grouting area in cold weather or for containing dust)	x	x	x	x
Silicone rubber (for expansion joints and sealing the engine base)	x	x	x	x
Space heating equipment & fuel	x	x	x	x
Torque wrench and sockets	x	x	x	x
Tubular insulation for isolating anchor bolts	x	x	-	-
Urethane foam (for isolating oil pan)	x	x	-	-

Communication links between the equipment manufacturer, grout manufacturer, design engineers, and construction and maintenance personnel are poor. Equipment manufacturers sometimes provide minimum foundation mass and unbalanced forces data but they do not design foundations. Data provided by grout manufacturers are often misinterpreted. Design engineers seldom are provided feedback data on performance of their design once the project is completed. Maintenance personnel rarely have the opportunity to provide input during the planning stage.

The consequences of improper installation are severe. Machinery installation costs can approach $1,000 per horsepower and the loss of revenue due to idle machinery has advanced at a pace even higher than the rise in fuel costs. Large reciprocating compressor crankshafts are prone to break if the machine is poorly supported on its foundation. Crankshafts are not "hardware store" items. With some equipment manufacturers now relying on foreign sources for their larger crankshafts, logistics of spare parts supply are getting more complex. All the more reason, then, to protect the machinery by doing an adequate grouting job.

Concrete is the most widely used construction material in the world. Because it is so common it is often taken for granted, and therefore it has also become one of the most abused materials. For good foundation design, these factors must be considered:

- Proper chemistry
- Proper water/cement ratio
- A quality aggregate
- Low amount of entrained air
- Proper placement
- An acceptable temperature range for curing
- Moist curing conditions

A detailed analysis of each of these considerations would be beyond the scope of this text; however, the listing serves to illustrate the fact that concrete is a complex material. For our purposes, a brief description of the mechanism of concrete curing will suffice.

Concrete is composed of a graded aggregate, held together by a hardened paste of hydraulic cement and water. The thoroughly mixed ingredients, when properly proportioned, make a plastic mass which can be cast or molded to shape, and upon hydration of the cement, becomes rock-like in strength and hardness and has utility for many purposes, including machinery foundations. Fresh cement paste is a plastic network of cement particles in water. Once the paste has set, its volume remains approximately constant. At any stage of hydration the hardening paste consists of hydrates of the various ingredients in the cement which are referred to

collectively as the "gel." It also contains crystals of calcium hydroxide, unhydrated cement, impurities, and water-filled spaces called capillary pores. The gel water is held firmly and cannot move into the capillaries, so it is not available for hydration of any unhydrated cement. Hydration can take place only in water within the capillaries. If the capillary pores are interconnected after the cement paste has cured, the concrete will be permeable. The absence of interconnected capillaries is due to a combination of suitable water to cement ratio and sufficiently long moist curing time. At least seven uninterrupted days of moist curing time are required for machinery foundations. Even test cylinders of concrete taken at the jobsite from the pours are often allowed to cure under water for twenty-eight days before testing.

Concrete which has not been allowed to cure properly, even though ingredients are properly mixed in the correct ratio, may be weak and friable or it may be only slightly under ultimate strength, depending upon the humidity and ambient temperature present when curing. Improperly cured concrete will also be permeable and therefore less resistant to degradation from lubricating oils or other materials that may be present.

An illustration of hairline cracks caused by shrinkage of concrete during curing can be seen in Figure 3-2 and Figure 3-3. Figure 3-2 is a photograph of the cambered surface of an airport runway which has been grooved with a diamond saw to facilitate draining of rain water in an attempt to reduce hydroplaning of aircraft in wet weather. In this photograph a 50% solution of epoxy grout liquid (without aggregate) in acetone was poured on the surface of the runway. Note the degree of penetration into the concrete between furrows as the solution drains away. In the photograph of Figure 3-3 the highly volatile solvent has all but evaporated from the surface, exposing the wetted crack openings like a fingerprint. Before wetting with the solution, cracks were invisible to the naked eye. This condition exists in most concrete machinery foundations and is caused by water loss from the capillary pores in the concrete while curing. This water loss causes shrinkage which would not be experienced if the concrete had been immersed in water for 28 days like the samples from each pour that are usually sent to the laboratory for testing. While such shrinkage cracks do not constitute structural failure in machinery foundations, they do provide a path for the penetration of lubricating oils into the foundation. One interesting fact was that cored concrete samples from this runway typically had 6,000 psi compressive strength.

It is good construction practice to seal the surface of a foundation with a good quality epoxy paint as soon as the forms are removed. This sealing of the foundation accomplishes two objectives. First, it seals in water and encourages more complete curing of the concrete, and second, it pre-

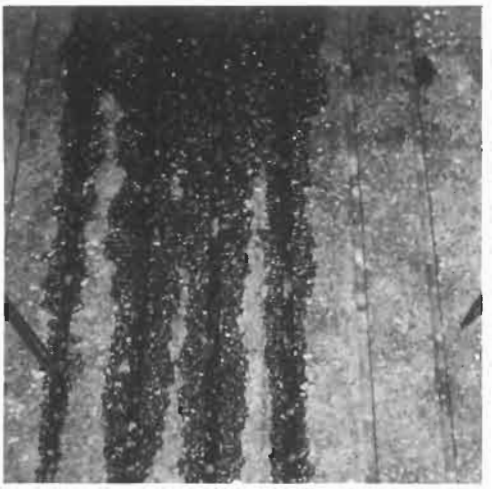


Figure 3-2. A photograph of a cambered and grooved surface of an airport runway. Note the degree of penetration between furrows as a low viscosity solution of epoxy adhesive in acetone is poured on and drained away from the surface (Courtesy of Adhesive Services Company).

Figure 3-3. Hairline curing cracks become visible as the solvent in Figure 3-2 evaporates from the surface (Courtesy of Adhesive Services Company).

vents penetration of lubricating oils into the foundation after start-up. This sealing is particularly important in areas such as around the oil pan trough which are usually flooded with oil. Paint will not usually stick to concrete unless the surface has been sandblasted to remove the laitance or unless a penetrating primer has been applied before painting. Some specialty coating manufacturers provide special primers for epoxy coatings when used on concrete. Most of these special primers contain either acetone or ketone solvents which are low in viscosity and water soluble. When utilizing these primers, care must be taken to prevent build-up of flammable vapors and breathing or contact with eyes or skin. Read the warning labels on the containers.

Methods of Installing Machinery[1]

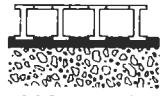
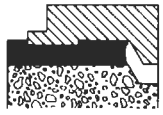
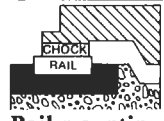
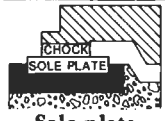
The four common methods of installing compressors in the order of increasing foundation load requirements are shown in Table 3-3. Static load ranges shown in the first column are relatively low compared with the strength of the supporting concrete. What complicates the situation is the combination of additional anchor bolt load, dynamic load and dramatically lowered epoxy grout strength due to rising temperatures.

Skid mounting is an equipment packaging concept whereby partial erection of the compressor and its related equipment are carried out under shop conditions where quality control can be closely monitored. This concept is ideal for equipment destined for offshore or remote locations where accessibility and accommodations are limited or where skilled manpower is not available. Packaging works well on portable units in the lower horsepower range.

Job-site skid installation is progressively more difficult with increasing compressor size because of the number of structural members required. Most packagers do not provide access holes to permit grouting of internal structural members. Those internal "I" beams anchored to the equipment above are critical. Consequently, with typical factory design, grout placement must be accomplished from the edges of the skid. Placement of grout prepared to the proper consistency is difficult and often the critical members are left unsupported. When this occurs, a suspension bridge effect is created, allowing excessive vibration to occur when the equipment is operating. The obvious solution to this grouting problem is to cut access holes in the field. This should be done only with the manufacturer's approval, since otherwise the warranty may be voided. After grouting, all access holes should be covered.

As mentioned earlier, most compressors leak oil. Because skids are fabricated by strip welding rather than seal welding, oil gradually seeps

Table 3-3
Typical Loadings for the Various Methods of Installing Compressors

Type of installation	Typical static load from equipment weight on load bearing surface[1]	Typical total load on load bearing surfaces[2]	Minimum compressive strength of epoxy grout at operating temperature necessary to prevent creep
 **Skid mounting (equipment not shown)**	5 — 10 psi	50 — 100 psi	300 psi
 **Base embedment mounting**	20 — 40 psi	200 — 400 psi	1200 psi
 **Rail mounting**	50 — 100 psi	500 — 1000 psi	3000 psi
 **Sole plate mounting**	100 — 200 psi	1000 — 2000 psi	6000 psi

[1] Data are calculated from weight of equipment and do not include additional load due to anchor bolts.
[2] Total load estimate is the sum of static load + dynamic load + anchor bolt load.

into the skid cavities. To reduce this fire hazard it is common to provide openings between cavities for oil drainage. With the usual inconsistencies in grout level, complete oil drainage is not possible. Oil degradation of cement grouts and concrete has long been recognized. With this in mind, skids which are to be permanently installed should be installed with epoxy grout. Bond strength of epoxy grout helps to anchor internal structural members that have no anchor bolts in the concrete.

The embedment method of installing machinery is by far the oldest method. For short crankshaft gas engine compressors in the middle horsepower range, this method is preferred because it provides a "key" to resist laterial movement. On long crankshaft equipment in the higher horsepower range, thermal expansion of the foundation can cause crankshaft distortion problems. Foundation expansion is uneven due to heat losses around the outer periphery of the foundation and results in center "humping." The effects of humping can be avoided by installing the equipment on rails or sole plates. The air space between the foundation and equipment provides room for thermal growth without distorting the equipment frame. The air space also allows some heat dissipation through convection.

Exercise caution when installing equipment on sole plates—grout properties are taxed to the absolute maximum when sole plates are designed for static loads in the 200 psi range and then installed under equipment with high operating or oil sump temperatures. This is particularly true during the first few hours of operation until the grout passes through its period of secondary curing. Refer to the typical physical properties of epoxy grouts as shown in Table 3-4. Rails should be as short as possible and all rails and sole plate corners should be rounded to a 2-in. radius to minimize stress risers in the grout.

In recent years there has been a concerted effort to replace steel chocks with epoxy chocks. This involves the use of liquid epoxy grout which is poured in place, and after curing, forms a nonmetallic chock. One of the advantages of this method of installing machinery is that it is not necessary to have a machined surface on the engine base in contact with the chock. This method of engine installation has been utilized for many years in the marine industry on diesel engines. The forces imparted by Diesel engines driving propulsion systems are quite different from the forces imparted by integral gas engine compressors. For example, in the Diesel engine propulsion system, the forces are primarily those involving torque as imparted by the crankshaft at the output end of the engine. In integral gas engine compressors, cyclic lateral forces, created primarily by the compressor stages, are involved. On some compressors, the lateral forces are so great that the engine base is fretted by steel chocks. It

Table 3-4
Typical Physical Properties of Epoxy Grouts

Compressive strengths After curing 7 days at 77° F. and testing at 77° F.	8,000 — 10,000 psi.
After curing 7 days at 77° F., heating for 8 hrs. at 160° F. and testing at 160° F.	1,000 — 3,000 psi.
After curing 7 days at 77° F., heating for 7 days at 160° F. and testing at 160° F.	4,000 — 7,000 psi.
After curing 7 days at 77° F., heating for 7 days at 160° F., cooling to 77° F. and testing at 77° F.	12,000 — 18,000 psi.
Tensile strengths After curing at 77° F for 7 days	1,600 — 2,000 psi.
After curing 7 days at 77° F., heating to 160° F. for 7 days, cooling to 77° F. and testing at 77° F.	2,300 — 3,000 psi.
Linear coefficient of thermal expansion Unfilled grout cured for 7 days at 77° F. and tested at 77° F.	6 — 8 x 10^{-5} in./in. °F.
Filled grout cured for 7 days at 77° F. and tested at 77° F.	1.2 — 2.0 x 10^{-5} in./in. °F.
Bond strength Cured at 77° F. for 7 days at tested at 77° F.	200 — 400 psi.
Modulus of elasticity Cured at 77° F. for 7 days and tested at 77° F.	320,000 psi.

stands to reason that epoxy chocks would be much less abrasion resistant than steel chocks.

While there are numerous reports of "satisfactory installations" involving integral gas engine compressors on epoxy chocks, the fact is that this technique has not been utilized long enough to ascertain life expectancy. The authors are not aware of any installations where the anchor bolts have been retorqued after several months of operation or where follow-up data have been taken from bench marks or other datum points such as tooling balls. In other words, the creep characteristics of epoxy chocks have not at this time been evaluated to the satisfaction of the authors. Further, some manufacturers do not provide test temperatures for

the physical properties reported in their technical literature. Remember, the physical properties of epoxy grouts, unlike cement-based grouts, are reduced drastically with rising temperatures. Because of the lack of good data and experience, this method of installation should be classed as experimental and utilized only at the equipment owner's risk.

Anchor Bolts

The stretching of an anchor bolt between the bottom of the sleeve and the bottom of the nut (Figure 3-4) is desirable to create a spring effect that will absorb impact without fatiguing when the bolt is tightened to proper torque. Isolating the bolt from the epoxy grout prevents bonding that can cause temporary stretching over a short section, resulting in loose bolts soon after start-up as the bond fatigues. Isolating the bolts also prevents short radius flexing of the bolt if lateral movement develops. Anchor bolts are designed for hold-down purposes and not as pins to restrict lateral movement.[4]

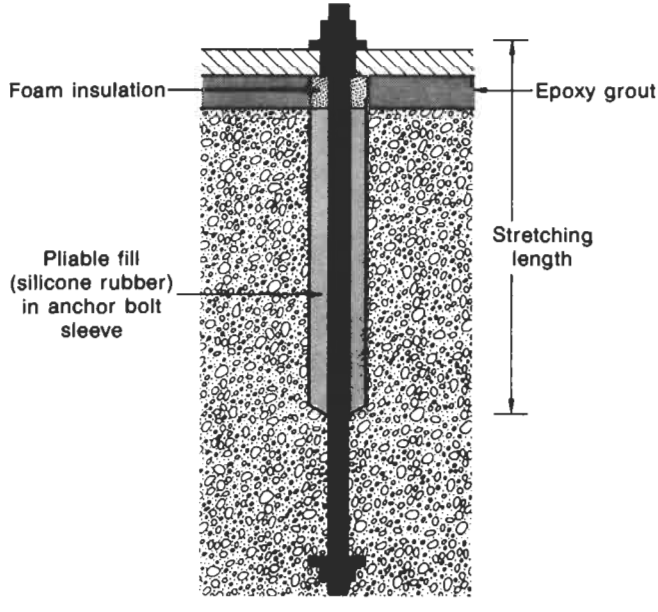


Figure 3-4. A typical anchor bolt installation which allows freedom for equipment growth from thermal expansion.

It is believed that many foundation cracking problems and broken anchor bolts are caused by improper bolt installation. Anchor bolt sleeves should be filled with a pliable material such as silicone rubber molding compound. When sleeves are filled with a rigid material, and the equipment is grouted without isolating the anchor bolts, extremely high stresses are imposed on the foundation as the equipment grows from thermal expansion. Growth on a 20-ft machine can be as much as 0.200 in. when thermal equilibrium is reached. Anchor bolts near each end of the equipment are placed under the greatest stress.

Outdoor Installations

Because epoxy grout and concrete absorb and dissipate heat rather slowly, cyclic temperatures cause uneven thermal expansion or contraction. This unequal expansion produces unequal stresses. The weak link is the tensile strength of the concrete, and cracking occurs in the corners where stress risers exist (Figure 3-5). In Condition A, the system is in thermal equilibrium and no stresses exist. During the cooling cycle shown in Condition B, the grout surface contracts first. This causes a thermal gradient within the grout which produces stress that promotes edge lifting. As the temperature conditions are reversed during the heating cycle, as shown in Condition C, cracks have a tendency to close. As the cycle is repeated, cracking progresses until it reaches a point under the edge of the equipment where compressive loading exists. Because tension is required for cracking, cracking cannot continue into an area which is under compression. Thicker grout increases the tendency for cracking until the cross-sectional dimensions of grout and shoulder are about equal. After grout thickness equals or exceeds the shoulder width,

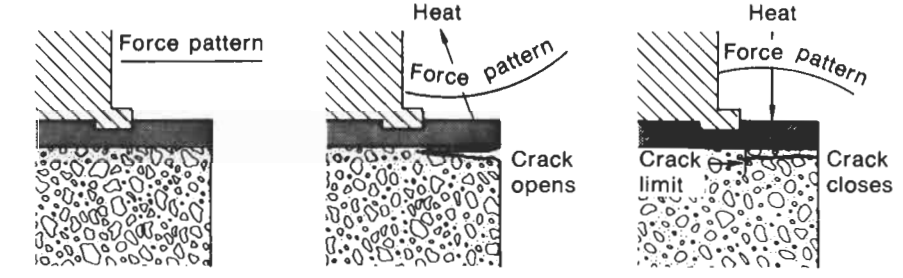
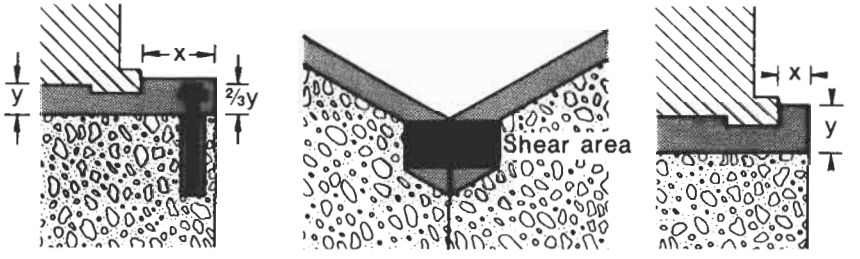


Figure 3-5. Stresses at foundation corners caused by cyclic temperature.



Solution A
Bolt with attached washer cemented in with unfilled epoxy grout when x is greater than y to transfer stress away from corner

Solution B
Keying the corners with epoxy grout to transfer stress to shear area

Solution C
Changing dimensions of shoulder to x less than y

Figure 3-6. Designs to eliminate stress risers in foundation corners.

tendency for cracking is greatly reduced due to the inflexibility of this configuration. While cracking of this nature does not cause immediate operating problems, it does provide a path for oil to penetrate into the foundation. Over an extended period of time support will be diminished as oil degradation of the concrete proceeds.

Cracks of this nature can be virtually eliminated by utilizing one of the design techniques illustrated in Figure 3-6. Solution A is based on the transfer of stress away from the corner. This technique also changes the stress from tension to shear. Solution B transfers the stress away from the corner to a shear area on the back side of the key. Solution C changes the usual cross section dimensions of the shoulder, making a relatively inflexible configuration. Other designs, such as feather edging the grout, can be used, but all are based on eliminating stress risers at the foundation corners.

Expansion Joints

The small differences in thermal expansion rates between concrete or steel and an aggregate-filled epoxy grout become increasingly important as the length of the grouted equipment increases. Cracking can be expected near regions of anchor bolts or at rail or sole plate ends, unless care is taken in the design to eliminate stress risers. This is particularly true during equipment startup or shutdown where a temperature gradient might be created or when brittle grouting materials are employed. For example, during startup of rail-mounted equipment, the rails begin to

grow first as a result of thermal expansion because they are in contact with the equipment base and conduct heat well. In order to prevent rail growth, opposing forces must be created equal to the compressive strength of the steel in the rail. Such forces would be well over 50 times the tensile strength of the grout. If the grout has enough elasticity to allow rail growth without extensive cracking, it is probably too soft to maintain support without creep. The grout should have adequate compressive strength to maintain alignment without creep.

The obvious solution is to install expansion joints. Expansion joints, as shown in Figure 3-7, can be cast into the foundation when the epoxy grout is poured. After the foundation has been dressed, the surface of the expansion joint and the outer periphery of the machine base is sealed with silicone rubber. A photograph of the finished work is shown in Figure 3-8.

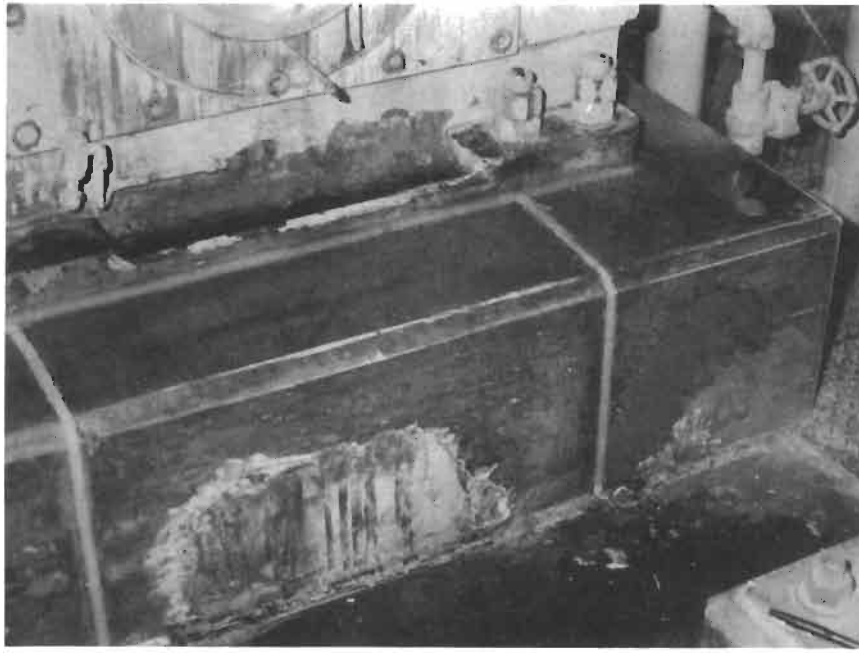


Figure 3-7. An oblique view of a foundation shoulder illustrating cast-in expansion joints which have been sealed with silicone rubber. The outer periphery of the machine base is also sealed with a fillet of silicone rubber (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

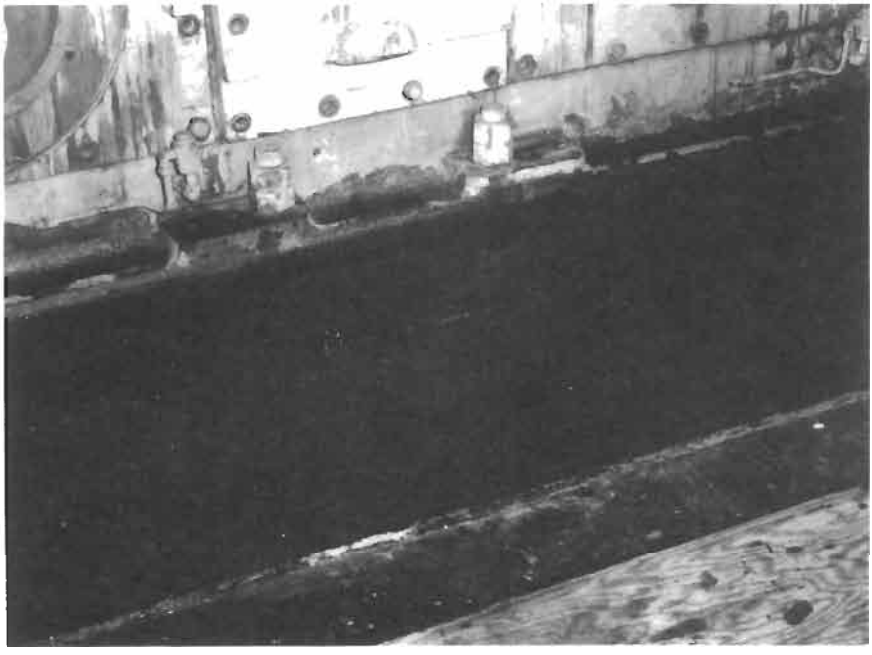


Figure 3-8. An oblique view of the foundation shoulder shown in Figure 3-7 after it has been dressed and painted (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

Grouting of Oil-Degraded Concrete

In establishing guidelines for the use of epoxy materials on oil-saturated concrete, the expected results should be compared with the properties of good concrete because these were the criteria invoked when the installation was originally designed.

The compressive strength of good concrete will vary from 2500 to 7000 psi depending upon its cement content, curing conditions, etc. The internal tensile strength should be about 8 to 10 percent of the compressive strength or 200 to 700 psi. The tensile strength at the surface of formed concrete may be as low as 75 psi and the surface of a steel-troweled floor may be as low as 50–100 psi due to laitance on the surface. Consequently, good surface preparation must be carried out before a satisfactory bond of epoxy to concrete can be obtained.

Experience has definitely shown that the best method of preparing a concrete surface for bonding is through mechanical scarification to remove surface laitance. This scarification can be accomplished by chip-

ping away the surface, sandblasting or grinding in this order of preference. At one time acid washing was widely respected as a means of surface preparation, but this practice has not proved reliable. When contaminants, such as oil or grease, are present, special consideration should be given to surface preparation and epoxy thickness.

Although concrete can absorb oil, the process is, fortunately, relatively slow. Once oil has been absorbed a gradual degradation in both tensile and compressive strengths will follow and given enough time the compressive strength of the concrete may be reduced to the point where it can be crumbled between the fingers. Preventive measures, such as sealing the concrete with an epoxy sealer to provide a barrier, can avoid this problem. This is usually done at the time of original construction. Remedial measures can also be used once the problem has occurred. Most of these remedial techniques involve surface preparation, patching, or transfer of loading.

The importance of epoxy grout thickness is better understood when it is recognized that in solid materials, forces resulting from compressive loading are dispersed throughout the solid in a cone-shaped pattern with the apex at the point of loading. In tensile point loading the force pattern is such that, on failure, a hemispherically shaped crater remains. Consequently, the weaker the concrete, the thicker the epoxy covering should be in order that loading can be sufficiently distributed before force is transferred to the concrete. For example, a severely oil degraded foundation may be capped with a thick layer of epoxy grout in much the same manner as a dentist caps a weak tooth. If you can contain a weak material, you can maintain its strength.

There have been many repair jobs with epoxy grout on foundations of reciprocating machinery where oil degradation was so severe that it was impossible to remove all oil-soaked concrete before regrouting. In such cases, regrouting can sometimes be done with the equipment in place. Such repairs are accomplished by chipping away the oil grout from the foundation shoulder and as far as one-half of the load bearing area under the equipment. It is important that enough grout remain to support the equipment while repairs are being conducted. The advantage of removing some of the old grout under the equipment is to provide a structurally sound area after repairs, equivalent to that supporting area which would be available had the equipment originally been installed on rails or sole plates. Once this is done, the equipment can be pressure-grouted as discussed later in this chapter. Enough concrete is removed to round off the shoulders to a cross-sectional radius of 1½ to 2 ft. Then vertical holes can be drilled into the exposed concrete with a pneumatic rock drill. Usually these holes are placed two ft (about 60 cm) apart and are drilled to a depth to provide penetration through the remaining oil-soaked concrete

and at least two ft into the undamaged concrete below. In addition, holes can be drilled in the remaining part of the foundation shoulders at such angles so as to cross below the oil pan at an elevation of approximately two to three ft below the pan or trough. Afterward, additional horizontal reinforcing steel can be installed and wired to the vertical members which were earlier cemented into the good concrete with an epoxy adhesive. The purpose of the new reinforcing steel is to transfer as much load as possible to an area where the concrete was unaffected by oil degradation.

Pressure-Injection Regrouting

Pressure-grouting is a repair process whereby equipment can be reaffixed on the foundation without lifting the equipment, without completely chipping away the old grout, and without repositioning and complete regrouting. Pressure grouting should not, however, be considered a panacea. Nevertheless, when properly used it can be a valuable tool.

Shoulder Removal Method

Pressure-injection regrouting techniques offer equipment operators important advantages of reduced downtime, lower labor costs, and less revenue lost from idle equipment. These techniques make possible satisfactory and long life regrouts with machine downtime at a minimum.

Figure 3-9 shows typical damage before making repairs. Figure 3-10 is the first step in conducting repairs where the old grout is chipped away

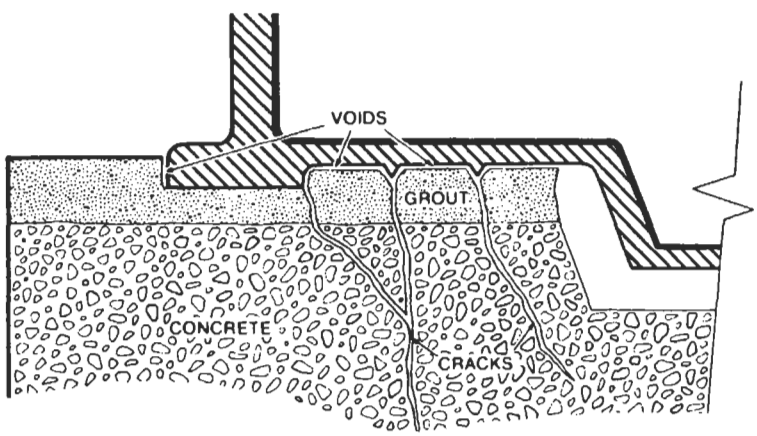


Figure 3-9. Illustrating the damage done to a compressor foundation before making repairs by pressure-injection regrouting, shoulder removal method (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

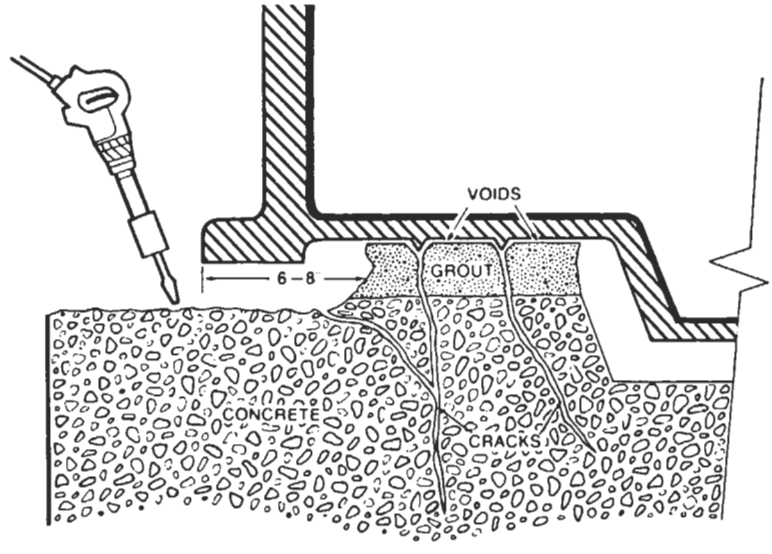


Figure 3-10. The first step of repair is to remove the shoulder and about ½ of the load-bearing area using a pneumatic jumbo rivet buster (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

along with any damaged or oil soaked concrete. It is desirable to remove enough old grout from beneath the machine so that a load bearing area equivalent to a rail or sole plate mounting can be provided by the epoxy grout once it has been poured. If the foundation itself is cracked, it should be repaired before proceeding further. Otherwise, the effectiveness of the regrout will not be maintained over a long period of time.

After the old grout has been chipped away, holes are drilled into the remaining grout for the installation of injection tubes, and are usually spaced 18 in., or approximately 45 cm, apart. (see Figure 3-11). The copper tubing installed in these holes should be sealed with epoxy putty or electrician's putty as illustrated in Figure 3-12.

Before installing forms, all anchor bolts should be isolated to provide at least a ¼ in. barrier. This minimizes the possibility of later stress cracking of the grout shoulder and also allows stretching of the anchor bolt from the bottom of the nut to the bottom of the anchor bolt sleeve when torquing the anchor bolts. Forms should be designed to provide a grout level of at least one in. above the machine base (see Figure 3-13). This raised shoulder acts as an effective horizontal restraint for the machine and thereby reduces lateral movement. Forms should be near liquid

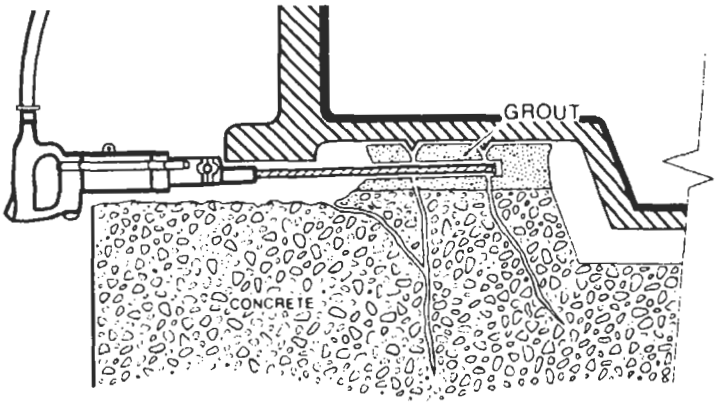


Figure 3-11. Drilling of injection holes into the old grout using a pneumatic drill (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

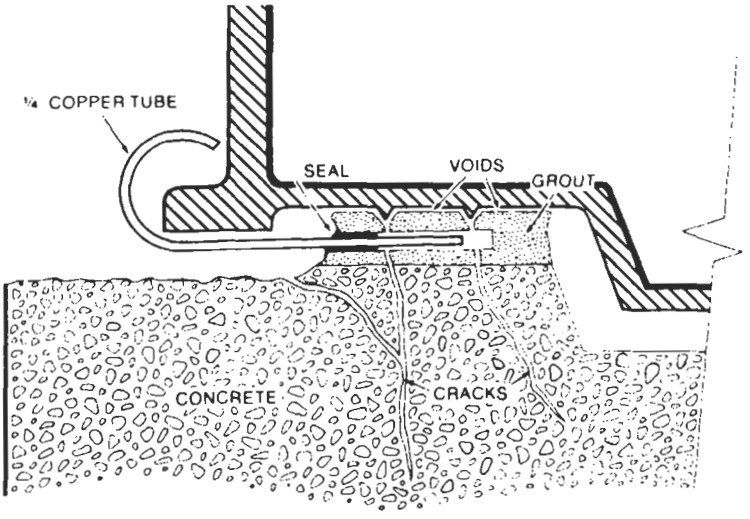


Figure 3-12. Installing copper tubes for pressure-injection (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

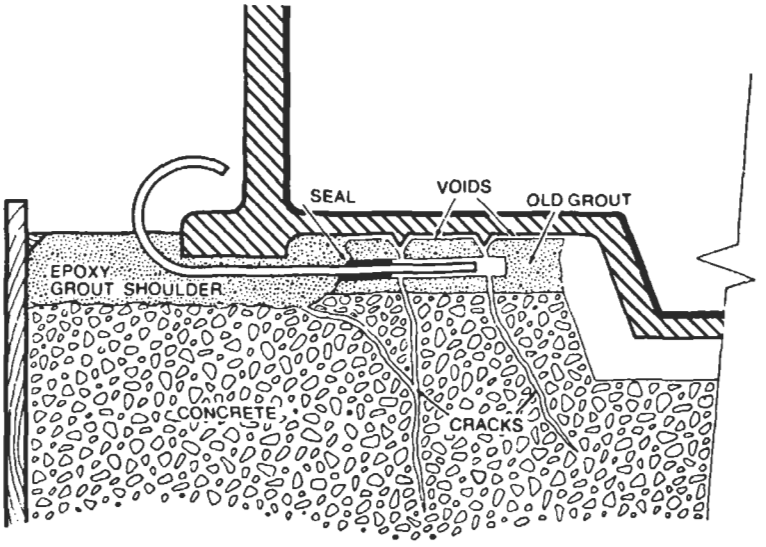


Figure 3-13. Installing forms and repouring the shoulder with an epoxy grout (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

tight to contain the epoxy grout mortar. Any holes in the forms can be plugged with electrician's putty before pouring the mortar. Forms should be waxed with a quality paste wax before installation in order to facilitate easy removal.

Once the forms have been poured and the grout cured for approximately 24 hours, pressure-injection regrouting is carried out to provide a liquid shim of epoxy between the remaining old grout and the equipment base as illustrated in Figure 3-14. Once this shim of grout has cured, the forms are removed and the foundation dressed and painted according to Figure 3-15.

Through-the-Case Method

Occasionally, in spite of the best intentions, proper techniques are not used and grout failure results. The cause might be air trapped under the equipment when grouting, or foam under the equipment because of improper grout preparation, or loss of adhesion caused by improper surface preparation. Whatever the cause, there is movement that must be stopped. If the grout and foundation are in good structural condition, pressure-grouting through the case may be a practical solution to the

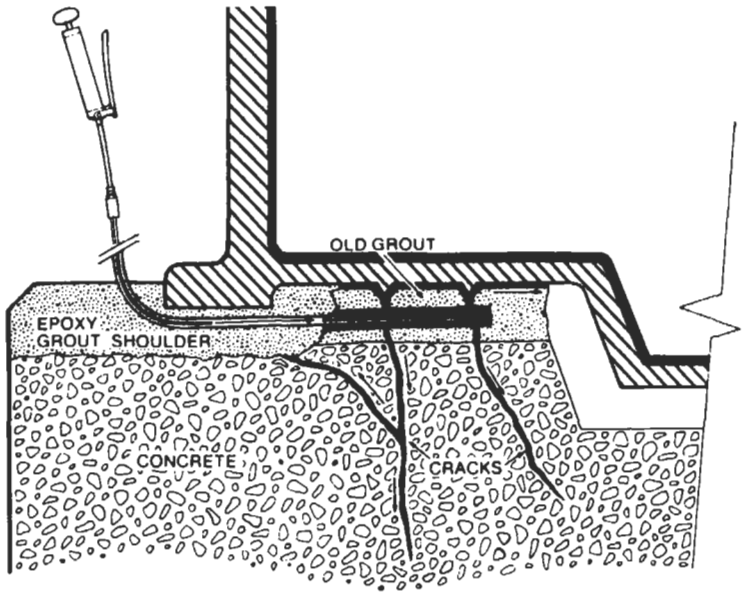


Figure 3-14. Removing forms and pressure-injecting an epoxy adhesive into the cracks and voids under the machine base. Excess epoxy is drained into the trough under the oil pan (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

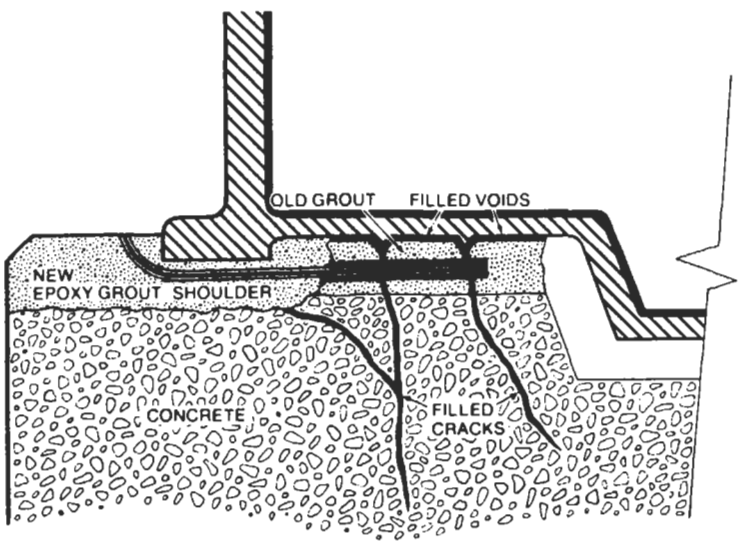


Figure 3-15. The foundation is dressed and painted, thereby completing the repairs (Courtesy Adhesive Services Company).

problem. Refer to Figure 3-16 for a good illustration of this grouting method.

With this procedure, the equipment is shut down and the oil removed and cleaned from the crankcase. Holes are drilled through the case and tapped to accommodate grease fittings. Usually, holes are drilled on about two-ft centers. Alignment is then checked and corrected as necessary. A grease fitting is installed in one of the holes near the center and pressure grouting is begun. Dial indicator gauges should be used to confirm that pressure grouting is being accomplished without lifting the equipment. Pressure grouting should proceed in both directions from the center. As soon as clear epoxy escapes from the adjacent hole, a grease fitting is installed and injection is begun at the next location. This stepwise procedure is continued until clear epoxy is forced from all sides of the equipment. After curing, alignment is rechecked and the equipment returned to service.

Pressure Grouting Sole Plates[3]

Occasionally when installing sole plates, a contractor will fail to clean them properly before grouting. Later this will cause loss of adhesion and result in excessive movement. Pressure grouting of sole plates can be accomplished with a relatively high degree of success if proper techniques are used. Refer to Figure 3-17 for an illustration of this procedure.

A small pilot hole is drilled through the sole plate at a 45° angle beginning about one-third of the distance from the end of the sole plate. The hole is then counterbored. The pilot hole is reamed out and tapped to accommodate 1/8 in. pipe. Fittings are installed and epoxy can be injected while the equipment is running until the epoxy begins to escape around

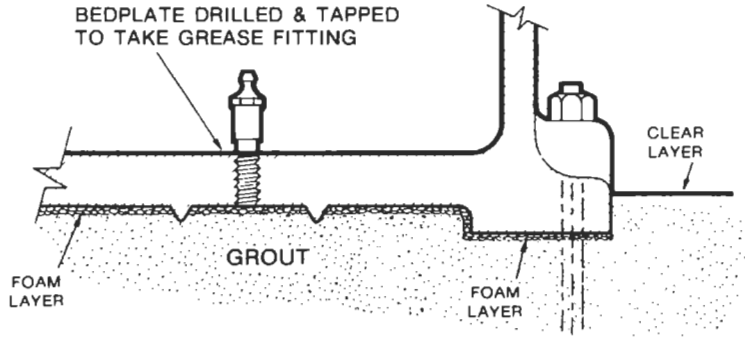


Figure 3-16. Method of rectifying grout installation where surface foam was present.[3]

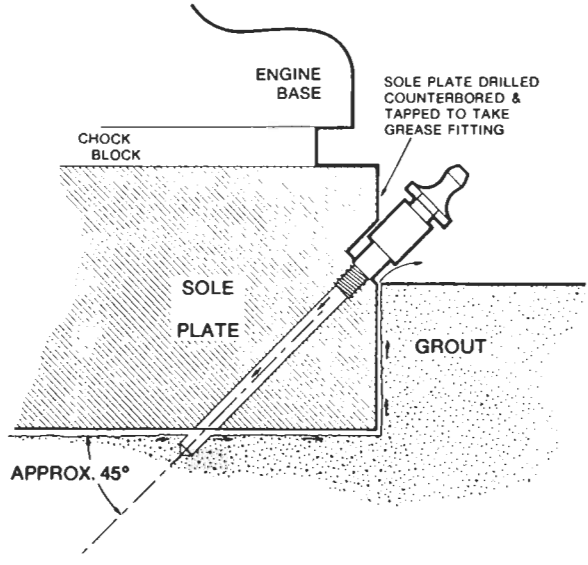


Figure 3-17. Pressure grouting of sole plates.[3]

the outer periphery of the sole plate as illustrated. Usually, oil is flushed out from beneath the sole plate along with the epoxy. Flushing should be continued until clear epoxy appears. It is not uncommon that flow will channel to the extent that epoxy will escape from only 30 to 40% of the sole plate circumference during the first injection. The epoxy will begin to gel in about 15 minutes at the operating temperature of 160 to 180°F. A second injection is carried out after sufficient gelling has been accomplished to restrict flow to ungrouted areas. Two or three injections at about 15 minute intervals are usually required to effect 100% coverage under the sole plate. Epoxy will bond through a thin lubricating oil film at about 150 to 200 psi.

One person should be assigned for every two to three sole plates that are loose. To the extent possible, pressure grouting of all sole plates should proceed at the same time. Once the grouting is complete, the equipment should be shut down for at least 6 hours to allow the epoxy to cure. Alignment should be checked and chocks machined or shimmed, if necessary, before the equipment is returned to service.

This technique has also been used without shutting the equipment down. However, it is somewhat less reliable under these circumstances. Nevertheless, if for some unknown reason a sole plate comes loose after it has been grouted, the process can be repeated. It is a simple matter to

remove the fittings, rebore and retap the hole, and thereby use the same injection site.

Pressure grouting sole plates seldom changes alignment. We attribute this to the fact that excess epoxy is squeezed from beneath the sole plate by the weight of the equipment. For purposes of illustration, assume the equipment is being aligned with the aid of jack screws having hexagonal heads and ten threads per in. One revolution of the screw would raise or lower the equipment $^{100}/_{1000}$; moving the screw one face would create a change of $^{1}/_{6}$th this amount or $^{16}/_{1000}$. However, one face change on a jack screw is scarcely detectable when measuring web deflections. Nevertheless, the film thickness of epoxy under the sole plate should be far less than $^{16}/_{1000}$. Thus, alignment should not be changed when equipment is pressure-grouted.

Foundation Repairs[2]

Deciding what to do about cracked concrete foundations is no longer the headache it was. Epoxy technology and application techniques have evolved to where repairs are quite reliable. Equipment downtime is reduced from weeks or months to days. In some cases, repairs can even be effected without a shutdown.

Types of Cracking

The tensile strength of concrete is only about 10 percent of its compressive strength. Because of this weakness in tension, reinforcing steel is embedded in concrete to carry the tensile loads. This addition of steel inhibits one form of cracking and at the same time promotes another form.

Concrete shrinks slightly on curing. Typical drying shrinkages of reinforced concrete structures are in the range of 0.02 to 0.03 percent. The addition of reinforcing steel does not prevent shrinkage, but it does restrict the shrinkage. This shrinkage produces both tension in the concrete and compression in the steel, and given enough steel, cracking of the concrete can result. The resulting cracks are often referred to as curing cracks. They are not considered serious because they are randomly located and there is seldom any movement between adjacent segments. They nevertheless provide a path for more rapid penetration of lubricating oil spilled later on the concrete. Such damage can easily be prevented by sealing the concrete with the proper epoxy system after foundation construction has been completed and before the equipment has been installed.

Those cracks which appear as a result of externally applied dynamic forces are characterized by continuous progression through the block and by movement between the segments. Once movement begins between the segments, it promotes further propagation through the entire block. These constitute structural failures and are considered serious.

Movement of the block can place the equipment frame in tension. Fortunately, fatigue of the grout bond to the equipment base usually occurs before the casting itself fatigues and cracks. Failure of the grout bond, which allows movement of the machine base, is easily detectable either visually or by dial indicators. If such movement is allowed to continue for long periods of time, crankshaft failure, failure of the main bearing supports, or both can be the result.

Causes of Foundation Failure

Failures in concrete machinery foundations can be attributed to improper or inadequate foundation design, poor construction practices and/or poor operating conditions.

Criteria for the design of machinery foundations vary widely. In simple analyses, mass is estimated by rules-of-thumb with allowance made for local soil conditions, whereas highly sophisticated analyses use a wide range of computer tools. In either case, it is common practice to place reinforcing steel in the block in accordance with the same design principles that apply to reinforced concrete members in general. Hence, it is common practice to place reinforcing steel in a symmetrical pattern throughout the block. It would be prudent, however, to place reinforcing steel with due consideration to source and direction of external forces applied to the foundation. Accordingly, the preponderance of reinforcing steel in a reciprocating engine/compressor foundation should be placed in the upper portion of the block in a direction perpendicular to the crankshaft. Preferential placement of steel in this location would reduce the tendency for cleavage-type failures that sometimes begin at the top of the foundation in the notch below the oil pan and extend through the block to the mat below. These cracks are always parallel to the crankshaft and are caused by forces set up by the power pistons or compressor stages.

Obtaining a good concrete foundation is not, however, the result of good design only. Good construction practices must be followed as well. After the reinforcing steel has been installed and the forms constructed, the concrete is poured. Concrete must be properly prepared and poured while the mixture is fresh. Ideally, the pour should be monolithic and vibrated in the process to remove voids. Where the mass is quite large or where ambient temperatures are at either extreme, curing temperature control measures must be employed. Finally, moist curing conditions

must be maintained to assure proper hydration of the cement. All of this seems to be relatively simple; but even a slight deviation on any step can result in a poor quality foundation.

The United States and other industrialized countries have no shortage of quality construction materials, good construction equipment, capable labor pools and excellent transportation networks. When foundation problems occur and are attributed to faulty construction, the root cause is often overconfidence or lack of proper supervision.

When construction is carried out in the developing countries or in remote areas of the world, problems associated with maintaining good construction practices can greatly increase. Good equipment and spare parts may be difficult to find, and then only at great expense. The local labor force may be semi-skilled or unskilled and there may be language barriers. Local laws may restrict the importation of quality construction materials. Suitable means of transportation may be in short supply and delivery times increased many times. Proper supervision may be difficult to obtain. The equipment owner should recognize these potential problems and arrange for appropriate coverage. It may not be realistic to design foreign plants with only U.S. construction capabilities in mind.

Many foundations fail because of operating conditions. When equipment is modified to increase its service rating, it may no longer be in balance. Failure to maintain the ignition system can cause severe unbalanced forces and rough-running equipment. Failure to regrout when necessary can multiply the dynamic forces exerted on the foundation because of progressing vibration. Any or all of the conditions which deviate from the original design concept can, in time, damage the underlying foundation.

Methods of Repair

Because foundation cracks are seldom noticed until they are called to the owner's attention by the regrouting contractor, repairs are usually carried out at the time of regrouting. There are many variations in repair technique. The best choice usually depends upon access to the foundation, availability of alloy steel stud bolts and the urgency of returning equipment to service.

On compressors and gas engines, cracks parallel to the crankshaft occur most frequently at the trough below the oil pan and extend through the block to the mat below. Figure 3-18 illustrates a method of repairing such cracks by drilling horizontal holes equally spaced from one end of

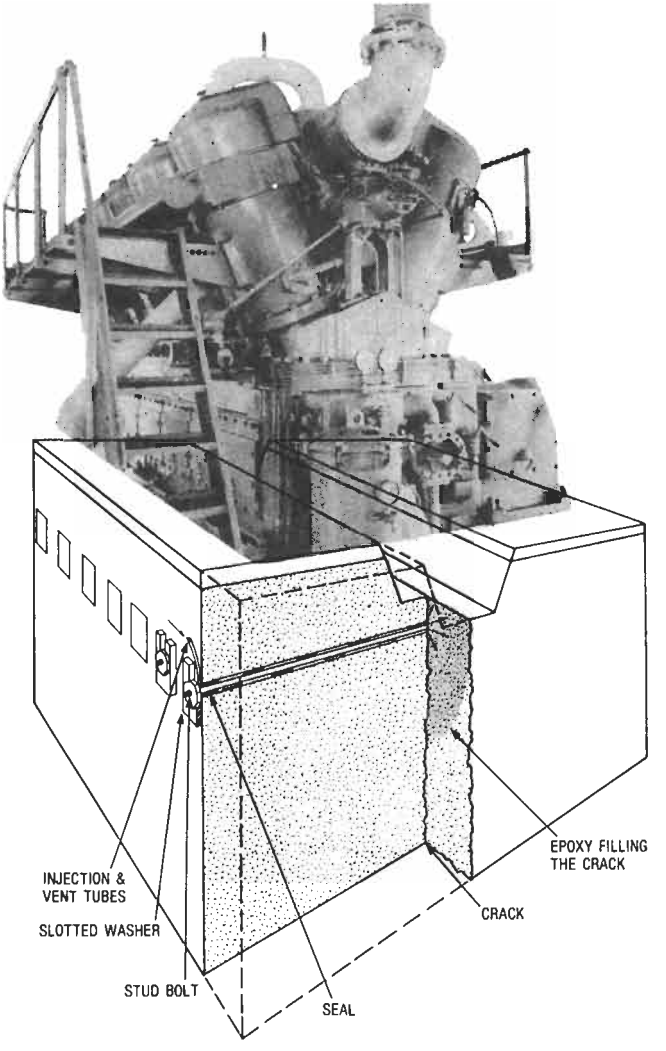


Figure 3-18. Method of repairing cracks parallel to the crankshaft. Here, a stud bolt is placed through the foundation to cross the crack.

the foundation to the other end. This series of holes is placed at an elevation of approximately two feet below the oil pan trough. High tensile alloy steel stud bolts are inserted in the holes along with small-diameter copper injection and vent tubes. The ends of the hole are then sealed and overcome before the crack could possibly recur. In this case, the repair relies not only on bond of the adhesive between the two segments but also on the prestressed condition of the concrete. As a result, the repaired foundation is often much stronger than the original foundation. This technique is frequently used when the concrete is of poor quality.

When access to the foundation is limited or downtime is critical and stud bolts are not immediately available, an alternate method can be used where holes are drilled after the existing grout has been removed. These holes are drilled into the foundation perpendicular to the crankshaft and at an angle to intersect the crack at an elevation of approximately two feet below the oil pan trough. Heavy reinforcing steel, usually 1½ in. in diameter, is inserted into the hole along with the small-diameter copper injection and vent tubes. The entrance is then plugged and the equipment regrouted. After equipment regrouting, the annular space around the reinforcing steel is filled, the vent tube plugged and the crack pressure injected from the inside out.

A similar procedure for repairing cracks perpendicular to the crankshaft can be carried out by rotating the drilling angle 90° (Figure 3-19). The reinforcing steel in this case would be in positions skew to the crankshaft.

Figure 3-20 illustrates a method of repairing cracks between concrete pours. These cracks often appear between the block and the mat below or between the pours when blocks are so large that a monolithic pour cannot be easily made.

As one word of caution to equipment owners, these techniques require special epoxy formulations and a great deal of care. Repairs should be carried out by experienced specialists using products manufactured specifically for such applications. Note that there are approximately 100 different types of curing agents available to the epoxy formulator. Only a few impart satisfactory properties to the cured epoxy resin. The choice of curing agent is based on such criteria as pot life time, nonshrink capability, ability to bond through oil films, creep resistance at the operating temperature, etc. Because all jobs are slightly different, the applicator should be experienced with available products.

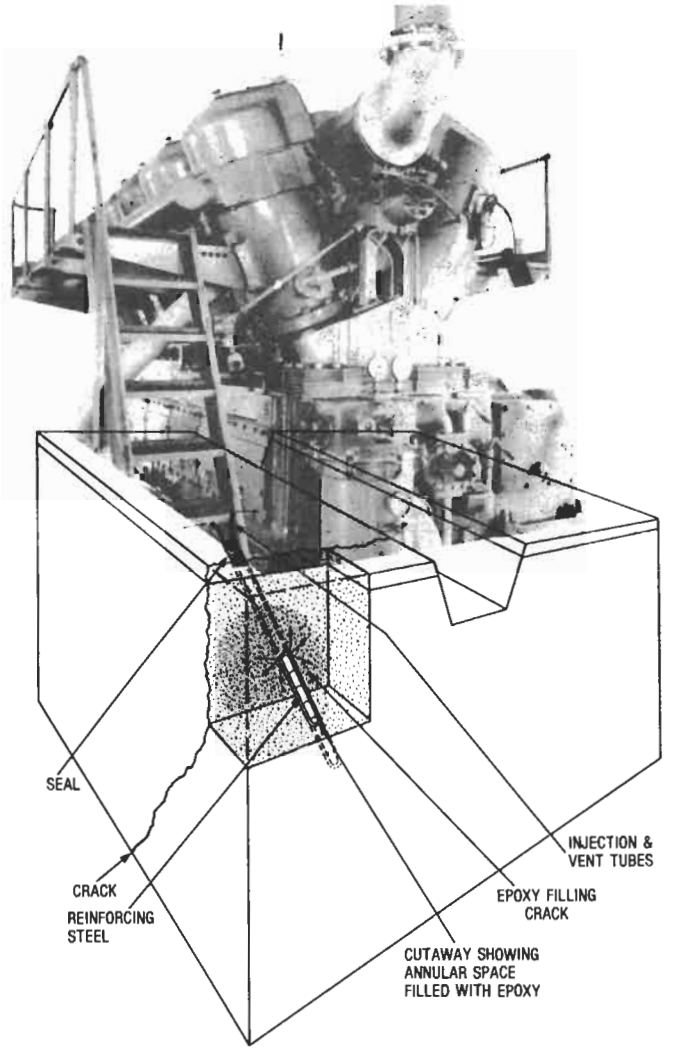


Figure 3-19. Method of repairing cracks perpendicular to the crankshaft. Here, reinforcing steel is placed at a position skew with relation to the crankshaft to cross the crack.

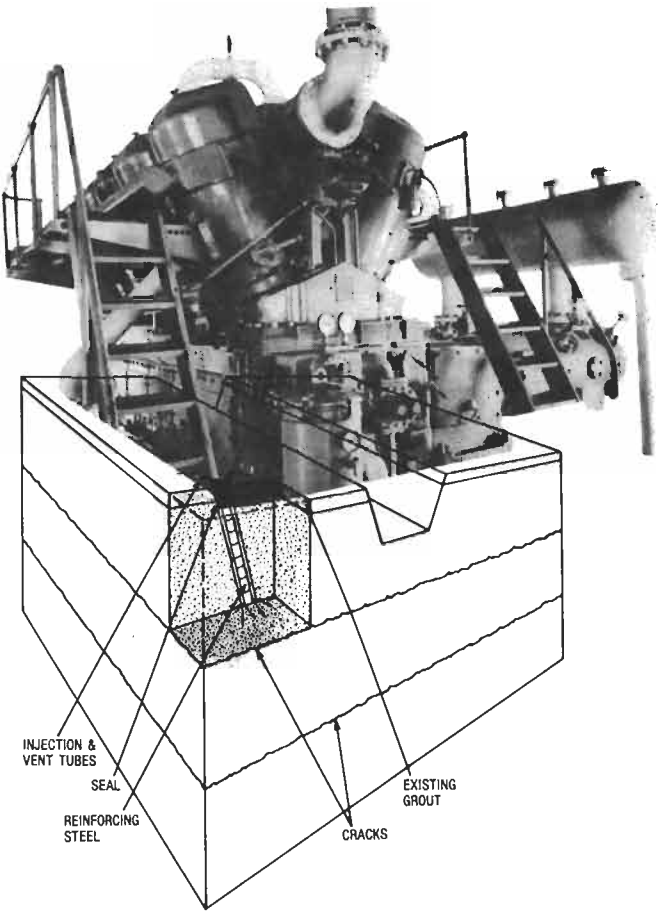


Figure 3-20. Method of repairing cracks which develop between concrete pours. Note the reinforcing steel crossing the crack at a location directly below the load-bearing area.

Pump Baseplate Installation and Epoxy Grouting*

The goal of this section is to present a proven method of pump baseplate installation using epoxy grout with zero voids. While this method is not the only way to achieve a 100 percent void-free grout job, it has been designed to shorten pump installation and alignment time by employing a "one pour" grout procedure.

* Source: Perry C. Monroe, Monroe Technical Services, Houston, TX 77062.

The question has been asked, "Why should a \$75–\$110/ft^3 epoxy grout be used in place of a \$30/ft^3 cementitious grout?" There are two reasons to pay the additional "one time cost." Epoxy grout applied to a properly prepared baseplate bonds with a tensile strength of 2,000 psi. This transforms the baseplate into a monolith with the concrete foundation. Formation of a single block lowers the natural frequency of the pump baseplate, which reduces pump shaft vibration caused by resonance. Observation of pumps that had been installed with the new grouting procedure revealed longer "mean time between failure" (MTBF) over existing pumps. Older pumps had vibration levels from 0.3 to 0.5 in./sec (IPS) as compared to less than 0.15 IPS for the new pumps.

The second reason to use epoxy grout is that it seals the concrete foundation to prevent damage from moisture and oil seepage. Since there is no bond when cementitious grout is used, it is likely that moisture or oil will get between the underside of the baseplate and foundation.

Baseplate Leveling Procedures

It is necessary to discuss the baseplate leveling procedure first in order to fully understand certain baseplate and foundation preparations. These preparations must be performed before placement of the baseplate on the foundation.

The following assumptions are made concerning the pump foundation:

- The foundation should rest on solid or stabilized earth, completely independent of other foundations, pads, walls, or operating platforms. A minimum of 3,000-psi steel-reinforced concrete should be used.
- The foundation should be adequately designed to support the pump. Foundation mass for centrifugal pumps should be at least three times the mass of the pump, driver, and baseplate. The reciprocating pump foundation mass should be at least five times the pump system mass.
- The foundation should be designed to avoid resonant vibration conditions originating from normal excitation forces at operating speed or multiples of the rotating speed.
- The pump, gearbox (if used), and driver should rest on a common foundation.
- The foundation should be designed for uniform temperatures to reduce distortion and misalignment (boiler feedwater pump applications).

Do not take these assumptions for granted. Check the foundation at the design stage, not after it has been poured. There are some good computer programs available for foundation designs.

There are four popular methods used to support the pump baseplate while the grout is poured and cured. Figure 3-21 illustrates the four

methods, which include the use of a single wedge (not recommended); double or parallel wedges; a jack screw; and a shim pack with chock to level the pump baseplate. A single wedge supports the pump baseplate with line contact, which could shift the level during the grouting process. Using parallel wedges provides surface contact, an improvement over the single wedge, but the use of wedges complicates the grout form design. Provisions must be made to pull the wedges and fill the voids made by the wedges. The reversed jack screw shown in Figure 3-21 is used by a major European manufacturer to support reciprocating compressors during grouting and remains in the grout. Method four, the shim pack with chock, is used by many U.S. manufacturers to support large, heavy, rotating equipment (see Figure 3-22).

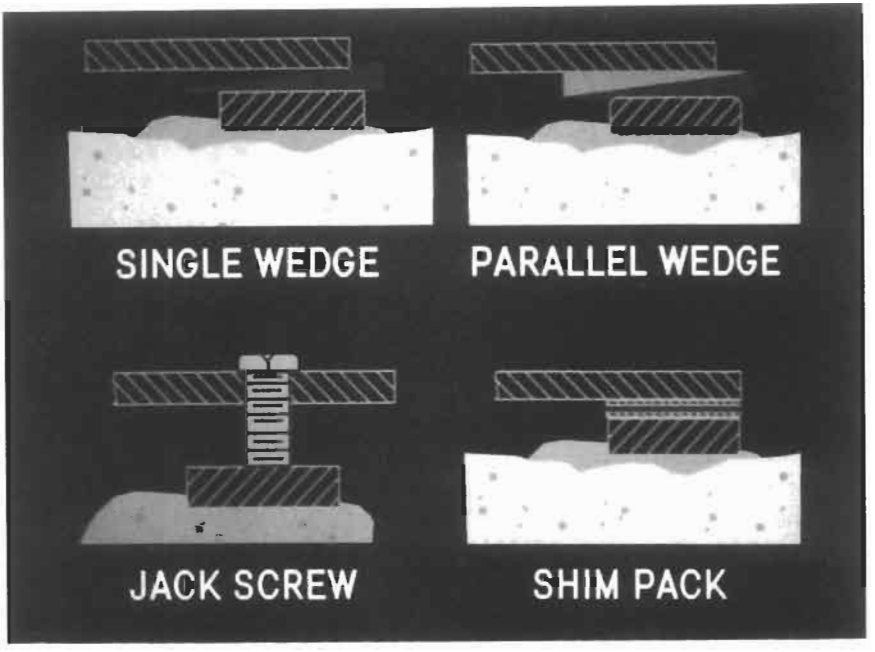


Figure 3-21. The four most common methods used to level pump baseplates are a single wedge, double or parallel wedges, jack screws, and shim packs with chocks.

The major complaint about using these methods to level and support the pump baseplate is that if left in the grout, the sharp corners of the wedges and rectangular steel plates will cause the epoxy grout to crack. Also, grout is designed to be in 100 percent contact with the underside of the pump baseplate and the concrete foundation. Think of the grout as an

adaptor that matches the irregular-shaped pump baseplate to the top of the irregular-shaped concrete. The ideal pump baseplate installation is one that is 100 percent supported by the grout, i.e., all leveling devices are removed.

This ideal pump baseplate installation can be achieved by using the method illustrated in Figure 3-23. Jack screws located on both sides of each anchor bolt are used to elevate the pump baseplate to the level position, while the anchor bolt lightly holds the baseplate firm. It may not be necessary to use both jack screws if the baseplate is flat, but both are required if an attempt is made to influence the flatness of machined support surfaces. Notice that circular plates cut from 2.0-in. to 2.5-in. diameter steel-bar stock, approximately 0.250-in. thick, are used to prevent

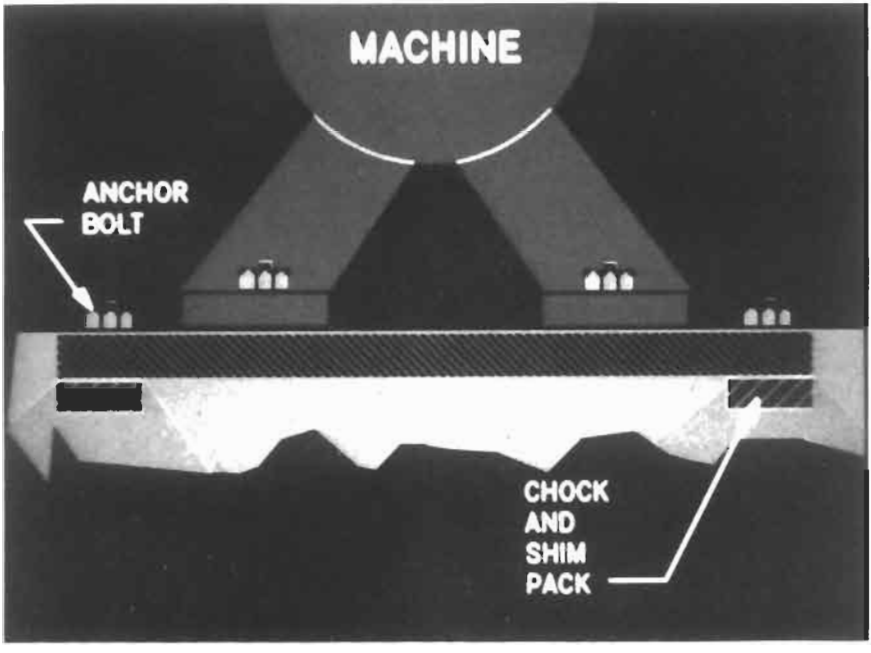


Figure 3-22. The shim pack with chock plate method is used by many U.S. manufacturers to support large, heavy rotating equipment prior to grouting.

the points of the jack screw from digging into the concrete and altering the level. The sharp edges of the circular steel disks should be ground to remove any stress concentration points. It is best to use just enough tightening force on the jack screws and anchor bolts to hold the baseplate in position until the grout has been poured and cured.

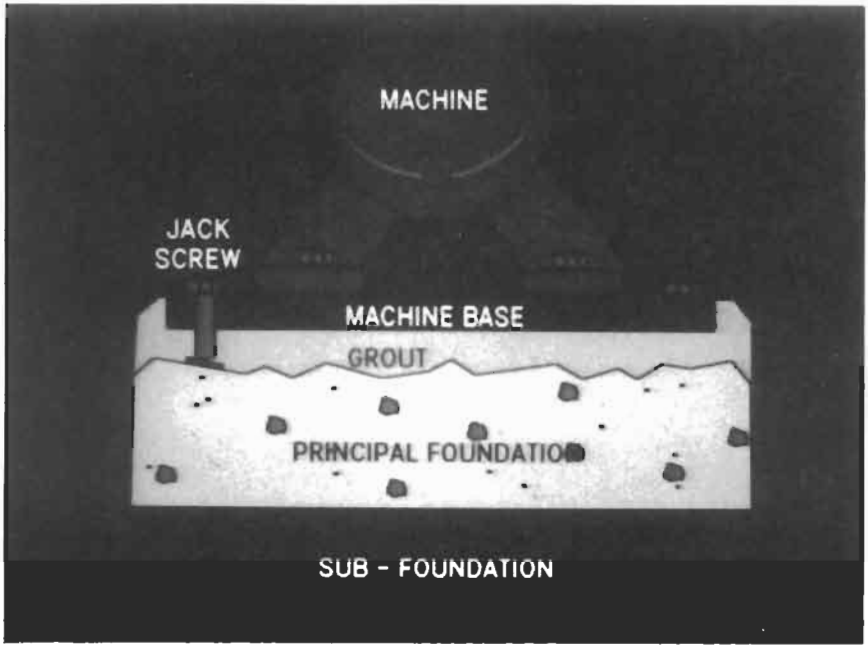


Figure 3-23. Jack screws resting on circular disks are the preferred method of pump baseplate support prior to grouting.

Prior to the baseplate placement on the foundation, the concrete must be chipped to remove the cement-rich concrete (called laitance) and to expose the aggregate. This provides a strong concrete/epoxy grout bond, because the strength of the concrete depends on the aggregate. The chipped surface must be blown clean with oil-free air and kept dry. *Moisture and oil are the big enemies of good epoxy grout/concrete bonding.*

Experience shows that 2.0 to 3.0 in. of epoxy grout are required under the pump baseplate flanges to reach the desired compressive strength. Thinner pours do not generate enough exothermic reaction heat to fully cure the epoxy. Before leveling, the baseplate should be high enough for the 2.0 to 3.0 in. of grout.

Using jack screws for leveling is much faster than the more common application of square steel plates and shims. Jack screws also eliminate the problem of removing the leveling shims after grout placement. As mentioned, the baseplate should be totally supported by the epoxy grout and not point-supported at the leveling shims. Sharp-cornered shims should not be left in epoxy grout because they form stress concentrations that cause cracking. Once the epoxy grout has cured, the jack screws are

removed and the holes degreased and filled with epoxy or sealant. *The jack screws are greased prior to installation to facilitate removal.*

Baseplate leveling begins with the pump and driver removed, after checking the pump suction and discharge flanges for proper location and elevation. Piping should not be attached to the pump until the baseplate has been leveled, grouted, and the driver/pump aligned. *The piping comes to the pump, not the pump to the piping.* The use of a good machinist's level mounted on the machined surfaces for the driver is illustrated in Figures 3-24 and 3-25. The jack screws and anchor bolts are adjusted until a level of 0.0005 in./ft is obtained in two directions 90° apart. The machined surfaces for the pump receive the same treatment, with a maximum elevation variation across the length of the baseplate of 0.010 in. A precision-ground bar should be used across the mounting surfaces to check for coplanarity. The mounting surfaces should be coplanar within 0.002 in.

If the baseplate is long (over 15 ft), an optical level similar to the one shown in Figure 3-26 might be used to speed up the leveling operation. Once the baseplate is leveled, the grouting operations can begin. If epoxy grouting is to be done during hot weather (above 90°F), it should be

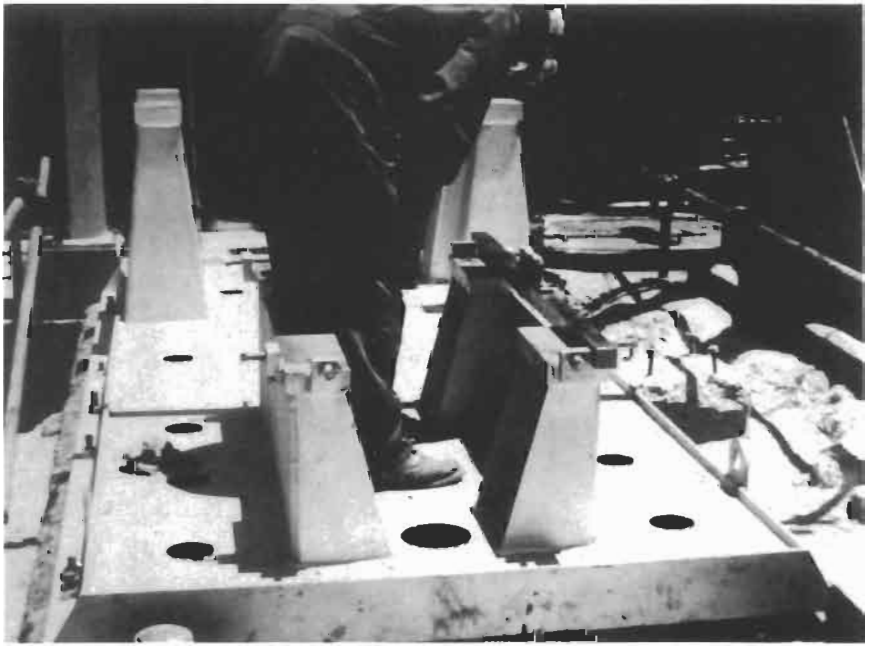


Figure 3-24. A precision-ground square steel bar and a Starrett 98 machinist's level are used to obtain a baseplate level of 0.0005 in./ft in the axial direction.

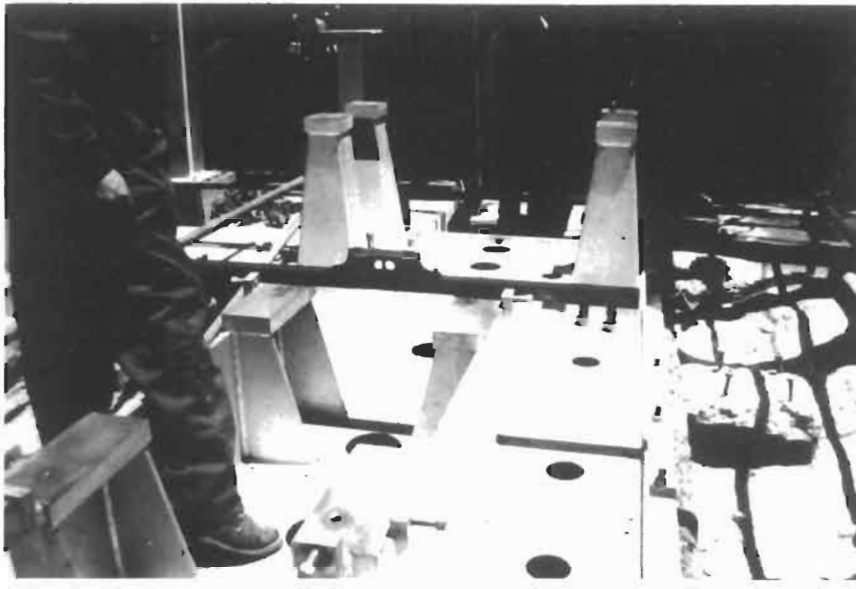


Figure 3-25. The baseplate must be leveled in two directions 90° apart.

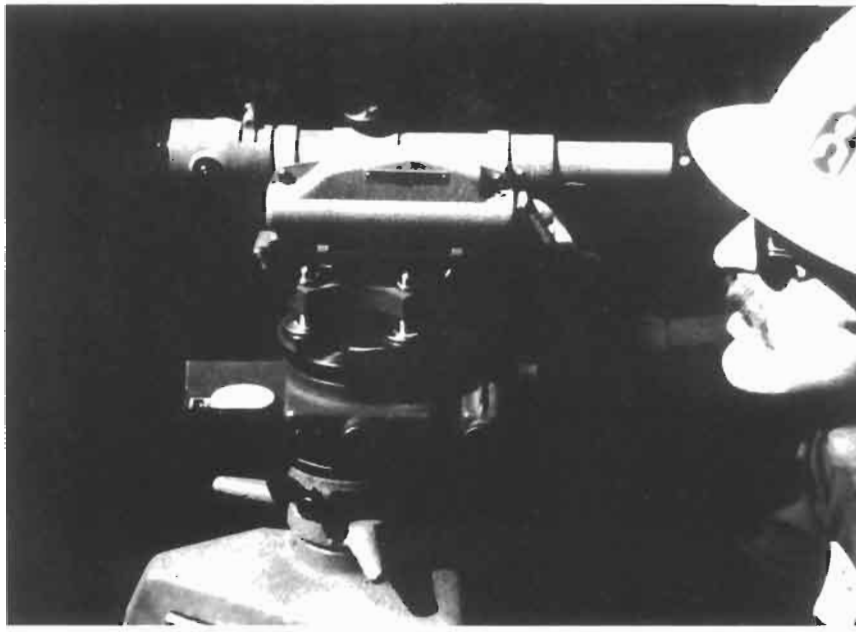


Figure 3-26. An optical level can be used on long pump baseplates (over 15 ft) to speed up the leveling operation.

started early in the morning while the baseplate is level. Levels should be verified after the baseplate temperature has stabilized overnight. Note that the baseplate should be shielded from direct sunlight for 24 hours prior to epoxy grouting and 48 hours after grouting. Figure 3-27 illustrates the use of a cover to protect baseplate and foundation from both sun and rain. If epoxy grouting is to be done in cold weather (below 45°F), baseplate and foundation must be shielded and heated.

Baseplate Preparation

Now that the baseplate leveling procedure has been discussed, the baseplate requirements listed will be understood more clearly. These requirements should be spelled out in the purchaser's pump specification or purchase order. Although pump manufacturers often provide these requirements, it is best to negotiate and review them prior to placing an order.

- All welding on the baseplate shall be completed and stress relieved (if required) prior to machining the pump and driver mounting surfaces.
- All machined mounting surfaces shall be coplanar to 0.002 in.
- All baseplate welds shall be continuous (no skip welding) and free of cracks.
- Underside of baseplate shall be sandblasted to white metal and coated with 0.003-in. wet thickness of epoxy coating (not epoxy paint) as specified by purchaser.
- All cross bracing on the underside of the baseplate shall have a 2.0 in. × 6.0-in.-wide opening to allow for grout flow.
- Vent holes (0.5-in. diameter) shall be provided for each bulkhead compartment at all corners, high points, and perimeter edges of bulkhead. Perimeter vent holes in baseplate shall be on 18-in. centers minimum. Any angle iron or "C" channels added for stiffeners will require vent holes on both sides.
- Radius all sharp corners on baseplate flanges, minimum 1.0-in. radius.
- Provide 1/8 in. minimum shim adjustment under driver feet for mechanical alignment.
- Provide eight alignment positioning screws for the driver.
- Machined mounting surfaces shall extend 1.0 in. beyond pump and driver mounting feet on all sides.
- Drill and tap two holes on the baseplate flanges, one on each side of the anchor bolt holes, for 1/2-in. diameter (minimum) jack/leveling screws.

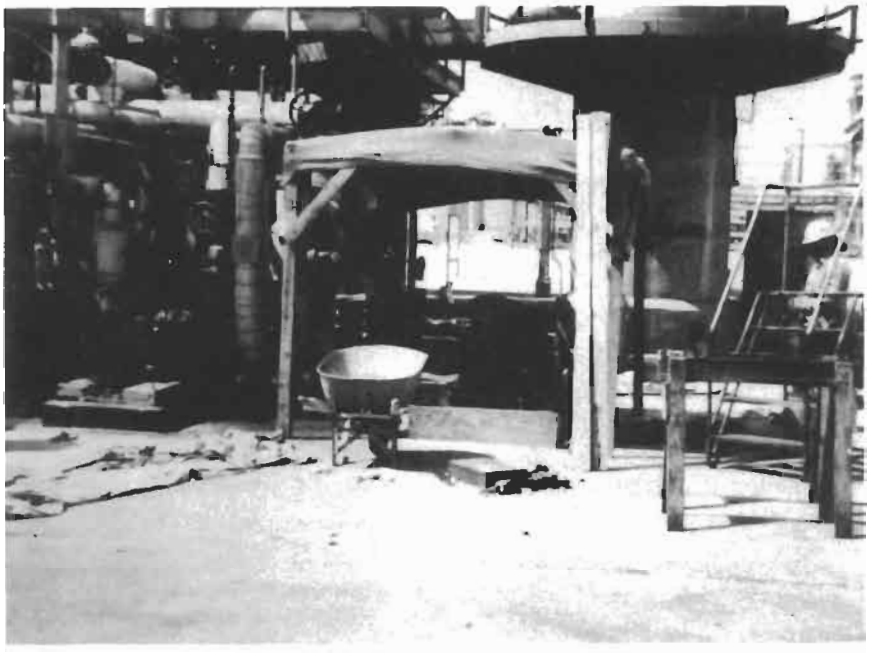


Figure 3-27. In hot or rainy weather, shade the baseplate/foundation for 24 hours before and 48 hours after pouring the grout.

If the mounting surfaces are machined to 0.002-in. coplanar after welding has been completed, the same tolerance can be repeated in the field. This helps to eliminate "soft feet" and speeds up alignment. The common practice of machining steel plate mounting surfaces and welding them to the baseplate causes skewed surfaces that cannot be leveled in the field.

A void-free grout job is ensured by providing vent holes at the baseplate periphery and in each compartment. Some pump purchasers never look under the baseplate to see how cross-bracing makes a good grout job impossible. Notice in Figure 3-28 that the center compartment is blocked by cross braces and would not receive grout though only inches from two grout holes. In this case, an additional 6-in. pour hole for the grout was cut into the center of the compartment, along with additional vent holes.

The request for a 1-in. wider mounting surface on each side of the equipment feet can be of enormous benefit if baseplate leveling is required with pump and driver in place. The additional cost of a few more inches of steel plate is insignificant compared to the advantage of allowing baseplate leveling with the equipment mounted. And, while placing a

Figure 3-28. Always check the underside of the baseplates. Notice the center compartment is blocked by cross braces and would receive no grout.

machinist's level on the additional border around the pump and driver may not be the preferred method of leveling, it will work.

New Concrete Preparation

Freshly poured concrete must be allowed to cure before epoxy grout is applied. As mentioned, even the small amount of moisture from green concrete will ruin the epoxy grout/concrete bond. It is good practice to run an ASTM-157-80 Concrete Shrinkage Test to determine when the shrinkage drops to a minimum. This will indicate the end of the chemical reaction of the cement and water, which causes the concrete to cure. If no shrinkage test is run, the following rules of thumb for cure time can be used:

Standard concrete (five-bag mix)	28 days
Hi-early concrete (six- to seven-bag mix)	7 days

An additional test for moisture can be made by taping a 1-ft^2 piece of plastic over the new concrete and allowing it to stay overnight. If there is

moisture on the underside of the plastic the next day, the concrete is not ready for the placement of epoxy grout. Repeat the test until there is no moisture. Unprotected cured concrete will absorb moisture from rain, so give it the moisture test also.

During the placement of concrete for the pump foundation, samples of the concrete should be taken to make slump and compressive strength tests. During a routine compressive strength test for a 600 HP pump, a 3,000-psi concrete mix, which had passed the slump test earlier, cracked at 1,400 psi. The foundation was chipped out and the job started over at the expense of the concrete supplier. The concrete mix had been in the truck too long and additional water had been added to pass the slump test. This re-tempering of the concrete made it much weaker.

Surface preparation of the new concrete can begin after curing by chipping away the laitance with a light-duty pneumatic hammer and a sharp, pointed chisel. Jackhammers may crack the foundation and should not be used. At least the top 1/2 in. of concrete should be chipped until all laitance is removed and the aggregate is exposed (see Figure 3-29). Foundation edges should be chamfered at least 2 to 4 in. at a 45° angle in order

Figure 3-29. All laitance must be chipped off the surface of the foundation so as to expose the aggregate.

to remove stress concentration (see Figure 3-30). Similarly, dust, dirt, chips, oil, water, and any other contaminants should be removed and the foundation covered.

It is good practice to coat the clean, dry, chipped concrete with a coating of epoxy. This protective coating is a layer of unfilled (without aggregate) epoxy grout, applied with a brush or broom (see Figure 3-31). Once the coating has cured, the concrete is sealed from moisture and oil. If there is a delay in grouting, the surface can be easily cleaned with degreaser sprayed from an air gun.

Old Concrete Preparation

Since old concrete has already cured, only visual checking for foundation cracks is needed after chipping the surface to expose the aggregate. All oil-soaked concrete must be chipped away and all cracks repaired. The edges of the old foundation are chamfered, as with new concrete, for 2-in. to 4-in. at a 45° angle. It is good practice to trepan a test core of the

Figure 3-30. Chamfer all the foundation edges at a 45° angle to remove stress concentrations.

Figure 3-31. Coat the clean, dry, chipped concrete with a coating of unfilled (without aggregate) epoxy grout.

old concrete and perform a compressive strength test. If the compressive strength is under 3,000 psi, the foundation should be replaced.

Anchor Bolts

The free length of anchor bolts should equal 10 to 15 times the bolt diameter. This permits the bolt to stretch sufficiently to develop the desired holding force. If epoxy grout is allowed to grip the anchor bolt, the bolt may break at the grout surface even when tightened to the design torque. It is therefore prudent to use bolt sleeves in the concrete. If sleeves are used, they must be filled with a non-binding material, such as flexible foam, to prevent the epoxy grout from filling the sleeves and

bonding to the anchor bolt. The exposed length of anchor bolt from the top of the concrete to the bottom of the baseplate should be wrapped with an appropriate sealant or weather stripping and one layer of duct tape. Figure 3-32 illustrates this method.

Grout Forms

Forms containing epoxy grout must be of heavy-duty design because epoxy grout is approximately 2½ times as heavy as concrete. Forming material should be a minimum of ¾-in. plywood, with 2 × 4 bracing. All surfaces coming in contact with the epoxy grout should receive three coats of wax to prevent bonding to wood. Time should be allowed for the wax to penetrate into the wood and dry before applying the next coat (Figure 3-33).

Forms are to have ¾ to 10-in., 45° chamfer strips at all vertical corners and at the horizontal surface of the grout. A liquid-tight form is made by using a room-temperature vulcanizing sealant at all joints and at the mating surface of the foundation.

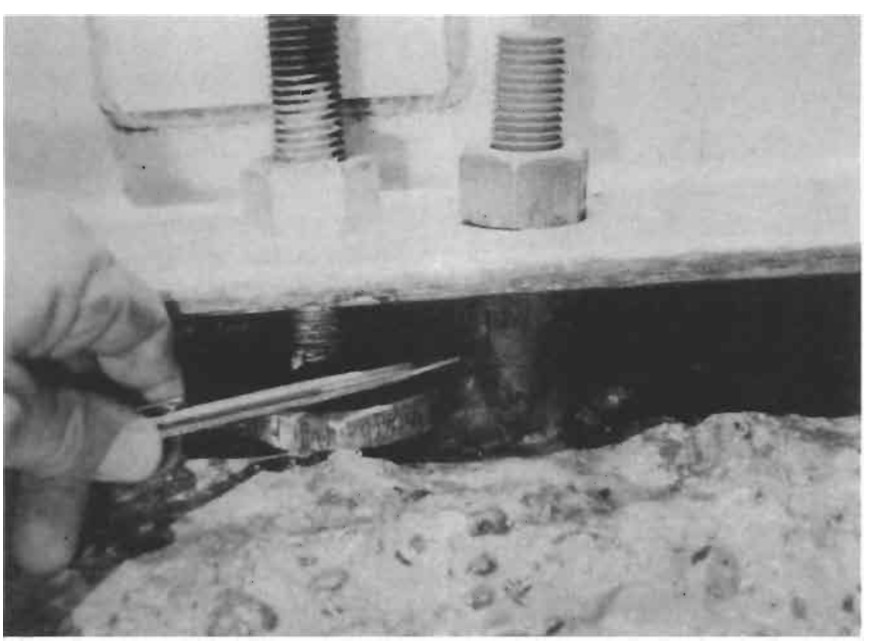


Figure 3-32. Use an appropriate seal to protect the free length of the anchor bolt from the epoxy grout. Bolt breakage is common if not protected.

Figure 3-33. Three coats of paste wax must be applied to all grout form surfaces coming in contact with grout.

Up until this point, all the requirements for the grout forms have been those used for many years. Most API-designed baseplates require two grout pours, one to fill the void between the concrete and the baseplate flanges, and the second to fill the void between the baseplate flange to the top of the baseplate (Figure 3-34). If the free surfaces of the grout at the baseplate flanges are confined, the 6- to 7-in. higher grout level at the top of the baseplate can be filled in one pour (Figure 3-35). A wooden-top form, shown in Figure 3-36, is attached to the sides of the grout forms and the top of the baseplate flanges. Vent holes (0.38-in. diameter) are drilled in the top form on 18- to 24-in. centers to allow air to escape as the grout flows from the center of the baseplate to the edges. When the grout begins to run out of the vent holes, duct tape is used to cover the holes and the filling operation continues (Figure 3-37). The use of this method allows a "one pour" grout job, which should be completed in 45 minutes and forms removed 24 hours later. If the temperature at the time of the pour is above 80°F, the pump and driver can be mounted when the forms are removed. A "two pour" grout job doubles the labor cost for grouting and lengthens the completion time of the installation.

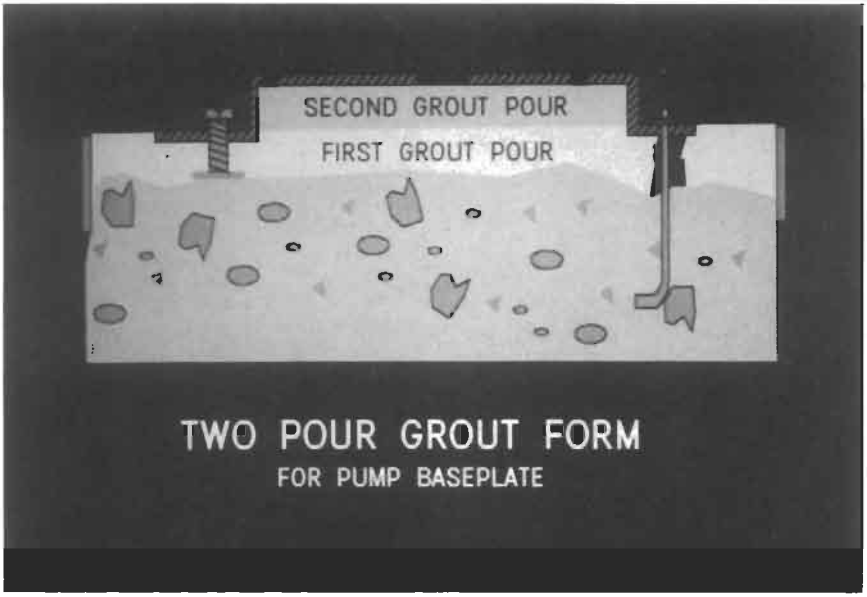


Figure 3-34. A two-pour grout job is required with standard type grout forms.

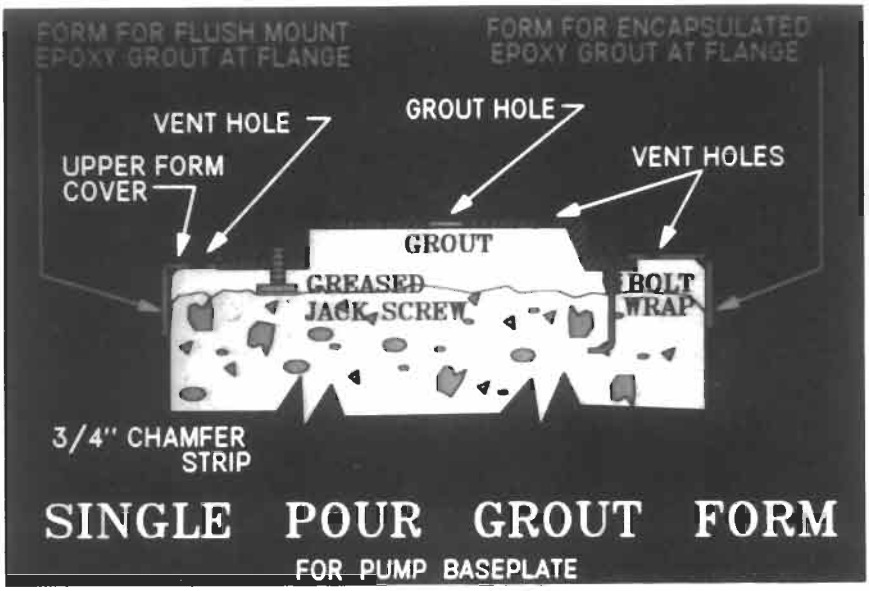


Figure 3-35. A single-pour grout job is possible when the grout-free surfaces at the baseplate flanges are sealed with a vented top form.

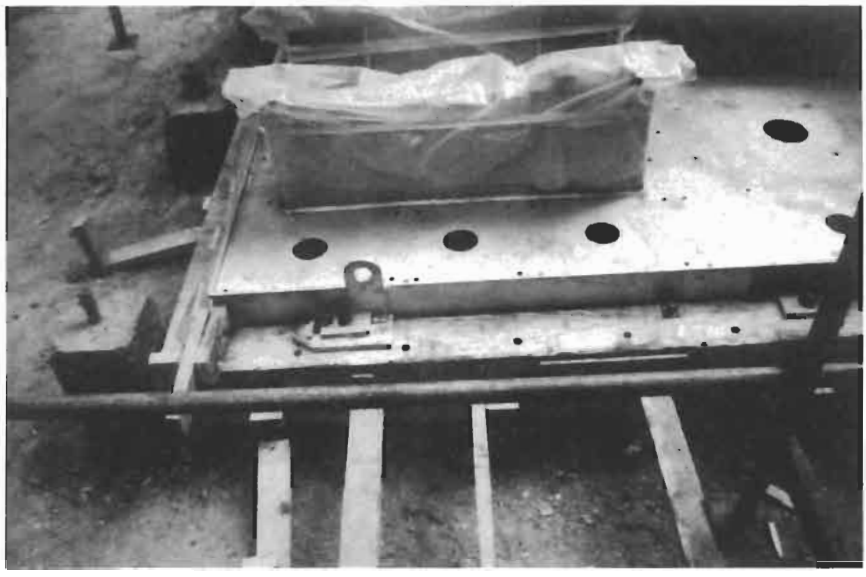


Figure 3-36. An API pump baseplate formed up for a single-pour grout job. Notice the vented top form attached to the side forms and baseplate flanges.

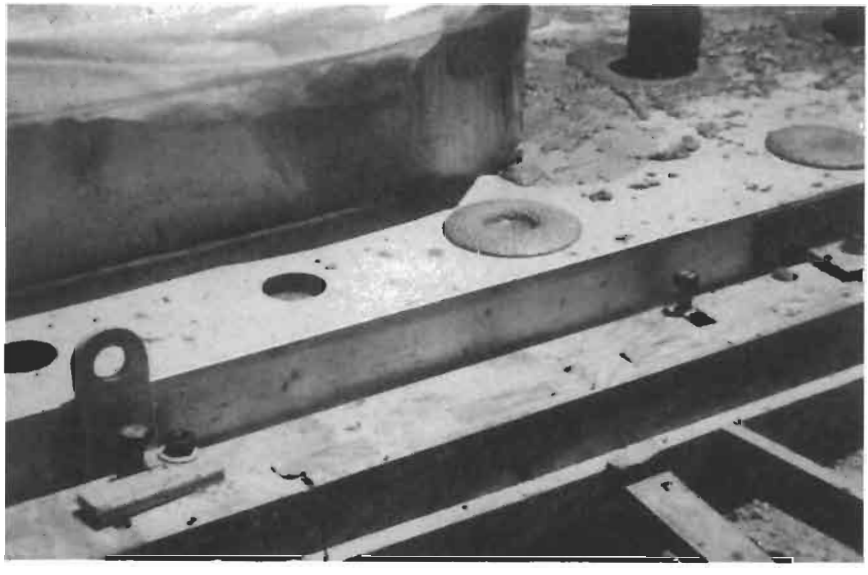


Figure 3-37. Duct tape was used to stop the flow of grout out vent holes as the baseplate grouting continued.

Epoxy Grout Placement

The pump baseplate is ready for grouting after the following last minute checks are made:

- Baseplate under surface is free of oil, scale, dirt, or moisture and sealed with a coating of unfilled epoxy grout.
- Concrete surface is clean, free of oil, dirt, and moisture. It is sealed with a coating of unfilled epoxy grout.
- Anchor bolt sleeves are filled with non-bonding material.
- Exposed surfaces of anchor bolts are covered with sealant or wax.
- Jack screws are lubricated for easy removal.
- Circular steel plates are under each jack-screw point.
- Vent holes are in correct locations and unobstructed.
- Forms in contact with grout are properly waxed (three coats).
- Grouting materials are in unopened containers, dry, and stored at 70°F to 80°F for 24 hours prior to placement.
- Sufficient quantities of grout materials are on hand at site to complete work. (Add 25 percent to calculated grout requirement.)

Epoxy grouts have a narrow temperature range for mixing and placement. This range is from 50°F to 90°F for best pot life, flowability, and curing. Can epoxy grout be poured at temperatures below or above these limits? The answer is yes, but special procedures must be followed and the grout manufacturer should be consulted. Low temperature accelerators can be added for cold weather pours with the foundation and baseplate covered and heated. In parts of the world, the problem is with temperatures above 95°F. Consider storing epoxy grout and aggregate in air-conditioned offices for 48 hours to increase the pot life on hot days. In hot weather, construct temporary shelters over the baseplate to provide shade 24 hours before and 48 hours after the grout placement. It is a good practice to rope off a work area in congested construction sites to set up the grouting operation. Grouting material and tools should be located inside the roped-off area just before the job starts.

With temperature-conditioned grout at the pump site and all the checklist items completed, it is time to mix the grout. There are two ways to mix the grout:

- In a wheelbarrow with a mortar mixing hoe.
- In a motorized mortar mixer.

Both methods work well, but for a large grout job (10 units or more) the motorized mixer should be used. If the hand-mixing method is used, have two wheelbarrows and stagger their mixing sequence to provide a continuous supply of grout to the people making the pour. The hand-mixing

method is often preferred because of better control of the mixing and less tendency to over-mix. When using a motorized mixer, limit the mixer blade speed to a maximum of 25 rpm. A mortar hoe used to mix grout is shown in Figure 3-38, while a typical motorized mortar mixer is shown in Figure 3-39.

Most grout manufacturers furnish epoxy-resin containers large enough to hold both the "A" part (resin) and the "B" part (hardener), so use this container for mixing. Add the hardener to the resin and mix by hand with a paddle for 3 to 5 minutes (Figure 3-40). Mix slowly to prevent air entrainment, because this causes the grout to foam and have air bubbles. A "jiffy mixer" (Figure 3-41) can be used with a variable-speed drill, because it is designed to mix without entraining air. A stopwatch should be used to time the epoxy resin mixing and to record the total time required for grout placement.

When the epoxy has been mixed, place it into a wheelbarrow or motorized mixer and remove all the epoxy from the can. Use a putty knife to remove the last drop. Slowly pour the aggregate into the epoxy to allow the air trapped in the aggregate to escape. Approximately 1 gallon of air

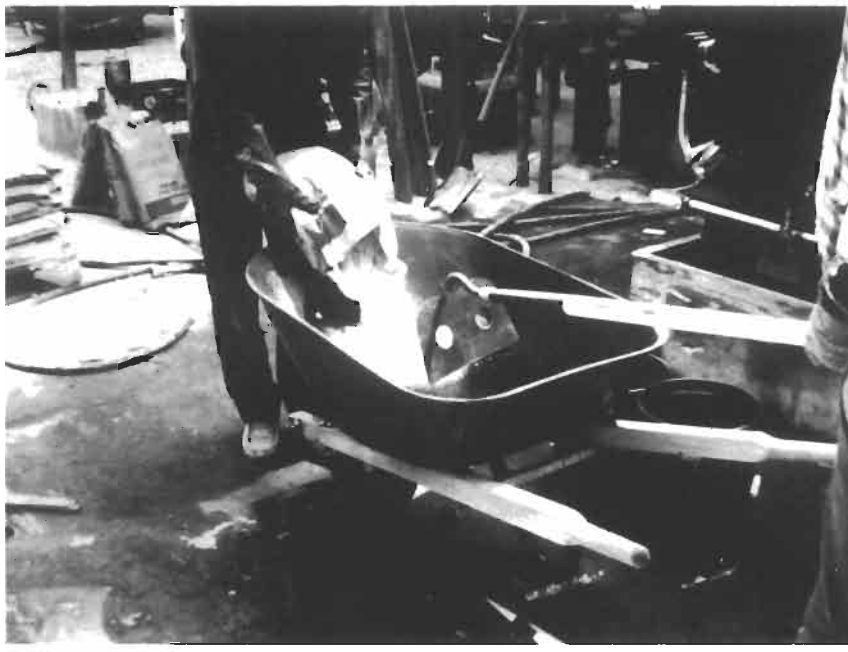


Figure 3-38. One method of epoxy grout-mixing is by hand, using a wheelbarrow and mortar hoe. Aggregate is slowly added to the liquid epoxy.

Figure 3-39. A second method of epoxy grout-mixing is with a motorized mortar mixer with a mixer blade speed of 15 rpm.

Figure 3-40. The epoxy resin and hardener can be mixed by hand in the resin container. Mixing time should be three to five minutes.

Figure 3-41. A second method of mixing the epoxy resin and hardener is with a "jiffy mixer" driven by a variable-speed drill.

is entrained in each bag of aggregate, which causes air bubbles in the cured grout. Fold the aggregate into the epoxy until the aggregate is completely wet. Add all the bags of aggregate and mix until completely wet. Consider using the containers in which the epoxy resin was mixed for placement of grout. Slowly pour the grout into the baseplate grout holes to allow air to escape. Pour from the center of the baseplate and allow the grout to flow to the outside edges, displacing the air through the vent holes (Figure 3-42). *Do not use vibrators or rodding to place epoxy grout.* Continue to fill the baseplate until the grout runs out the vent holes on the wooden-top form at the baseplate flanges (Figure 3-37). Cover the

Figure 3-42. The resin containers are used to place grout in the center baseplate grout holes.

vent holes with duct tape and continue to fill the baseplate until grout escapes from the vent holes at the top of the baseplate. A large funnel located 2 or 3 ft above the baseplate can be used to provide the force necessary to push the grout out of the vent holes as shown in Figures 3-43 and 3-44. In a homemade positive-displacement pump, the grout-pump cylinder (Figure 3-45) is being used as a funnel to fill the baseplate. Figure 3-46 shows the grout-pump piston being placed in the pump cylinder prior to being pushed down to force the grout out the vent holes. All the air being displaced under the baseplate by grout is shown in Figure 3-47.

Random grout samples should be taken during the grout pour and placed in waxed 4-in. wooden cubes for compression strength testing at 24-hour, three-day, and seven-day intervals. Record the time, date, ambient temperature, and location of the grout pour on the samples. Allow the grout sample to cure at the job site to duplicate the ambient-temperature cure conditions. Ambient-cured samples will not be the same strength as the manufacturer's published data since ASTM procedures include post-curing the samples. This information should be retained for future reference.

Immediately after the completion of the grout pour, clean all tools and mixing equipment. Water can be used to remove the wet grout as illus-

(Text continued on page 128)

Figure 3-43. An elevated funnel was used on this grout job to provide the head necessary to push grout out the baseplate vent holes.

Figure 3-44. Observe air and grout flowing from the baseplate vent holes. A vent hole was drilled on each side of the cross braces.

Figure 3-45. The cylinder of a homemade grout pump was used as a funnel to fill the baseplate.

Figure 3-46. Once the grout pump cylinder is filled, the grout pump piston can be installed and pressed down.

(Text continued from page 125)
trated in Figure 3-48 by the use of a fire water monitor. After grouting, clean-up operations are made easier if the machined surfaces of the baseplate have been greased or covered with plastic, and sand sprinkled on the slab in the path from the mixer prior to the pour. There will be grout spills in the process of grouting, and they are easy to shovel up when mixed with sand.

As the epoxy grout begins to harden, form a dome of grout over the baseplate grout holes to prevent a low spot that might hold water (Figure 3-49). The grout extrusions at the baseplate vent holes can be removed at this time or broken off flush with the baseplate when they have cured. Wait 24 hours before removing the grout forms, and three days before removing the jack screws. Clean the thread lubricant from the jack-screw holes with a degreaser and fill the holes with epoxy or liquid rubber to seal out moisture and oil. A small but important point that has not been covered is the greasing and insertion of the coupling guard bolts into the baseplate. Epoxy grout will use those tapped holes as air vent holes if not plugged. It is very hard to drill and tap the holes after being filled with grout.

Figure 3-47. "Grout worms" pressured out of the vent holes around the anchor bolts by the grout pump.

Figure 3-48. Epoxy grout can be removed from motorized mixers and tools with water if done immediately after grout placement.

Figure 3-49. When the epoxy grout begins to stiffen, mold a dome over the grout hole to prevent forming a pool for water.

After the jack screws have been removed, torque all the anchor bolts to their designed load. This should be the first and last time the anchor bolts are tightened. Check the grout job for voids by ringing the baseplate with a hammer (Figure 3-50). A good grout job will sound like you are hitting a lead plate, and voids will ring like a bell. If this procedure is followed to the letter, there will be no voids in the grout.

Figure 3-50. A hammer is used to test the baseplate grout job for voids.

References

1. Lee, Henry and Neville, Kris, *Handbook of Epoxy Resins*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1967, page 1-1.
2. Adhesive Services Company Sales Literature and Advertising Copy "The Foundation Report" as issued 1983 and 1984.
3. Renfro, E. M., "Five Years with Epoxy Grouts," 19th annual meeting of The Gas Compressor Institute, Liberal, Kansas, Preprint, April 4–5, 1972.
4. Bemiller, Clifford C., "Advances in Setting and Grouting Large Compressor Units," Cooper-Bessemer Company.

Bibliography

Exxon Chemical Company, "Escoweld 7505 Epoxy Grout," OFI 68-251, Houston, Texas.

Exxon Chemical Company, U.S.A., Product Publication Number OFC-A-74-1500, 1974, p. 12.

Renfro, E. M., "Foundation repair techniques," *Hydrocarbon Processing*, January, 1975.

Renfro, E. M., "Good foundations reduce machinery maintenance," *Hydrocarbon Processing*, January 1979.

Renfro, E. M., "Preventative design/construction criteria for turbomachinery foundations," C9/83, *Institute of Mechanical Engineers*, London, February 1983.

U.S. Department of Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, *Concrete Manual*, Eighth Edition, 1975, p. 1.

Waddell, Joseph J., *Concrete Construction Handbook*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1968, p. 6–12.

Appendix 3-A

Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Horizontal Pump Baseplate Checklist

		DATE/BY
1.	CONCRETE FOUNDATION ROUGHED UP TO PROVIDE BOND FOR GROUT.	
2.	CONCRETE FOUNDATION CLEAN AND FREE OF OIL, DUST AND MOISTURE. BLOWN WITH OIL FREE COMPRESSED AIR.	
3.	FOUNDATION BOLT THREADS UNDAMAGED.	
4.	FOUNDATION BOLT THREADS WAXED OR COVERED WITH DUCT SEAL.	
5.	BASEPLATE UNDERSIDE CLEAN AND FREE OF OIL, SCALE, AND DIRT.	
6.	EIGHT POSITIONING SCREWS, TWO PER DRIVER PAD.	
7.	BASEPLATE WELDS CONTINUOUS AND FREE OF CRACKS.	
8.	MOUNTING PADS EXTEND 1 INCH BEYOND EQUIPMENT FEET EACH DIRECTION.	
9.	MOUNTING PADS MACHINED PARALLEL WITHIN 0.002 INCH.	
10.	SHIM PACKS OR WEDGES ON TWO SIDES OF EACH FOUNDATION BOLT. SHIMS ARE STAINLESS STEEL.	
11.	BASEPLATE RAISED TO PROPER HEIGHT PER DRAWING.	
12.	PAD HEIGHTS PERMIT 1/8" MINIMUM SHIM UNDER DRIVER FEET.	
13.	ALL LEVELING DEVICES MAKE SOLID CONTACT WITH CONCRETE AND BASEPLATE.	
14.	ALL MACHINED SURFACES ON BASE LEVEL WITH 0.0005 IN/FOOT IN TWO DIRECTIONS 90° OPPOSED USING "MASTER LEVEL" (0.0005 IN./DIVISION) WITH ANCHOR BOLT NUTS SNUGGED DOWN.	
15.	FOUNDATION AND BASEPLATE PROTECTED FROM DIRT AND MOISTURE CONTAMINATION.	

WHEN ALL OF ABOVE ACCEPTED, BASEPLATE LEVELING IS ACCEPTED AND BASEPLATE CAN BE GROUTED.

Appendix 3-B

Specification for Portland Cement Grouting of Rotating Equipment

I. SCOPE

1. THIS SPECIFICATION COVERS PORTLAND CEMENT GROUTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT ON CONCRETE FOUNDATIONS.

II. MATERIALS

1. PORTLAND CEMENT SHALL CONFORM TO ASTM C-150.

2. FILLER SAND AGGREGATE SHALL CONFORM TO ASTM C-33 FINE AGGREGATE.

3. ONLY CLEAN, FRESH WATER SHALL BE USED IN PREPARING THE GROUT.

4. ALL MATERIALS SHALL BE STORED INDOORS AND KEPT DRY, FREE OF MOISTURE IN ITS OWN ORIGINAL SHIPPING CONTAINERS.

5. STORAGE TEMPERATURE SHALL BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN 40°F AND 90°F. GROUTING SHALL NOT BE DONE DURING FREEZING WEATHER.

III. PREPARATION OF FOUNDATION

1. FOUNDATION BOLT THREADS SHALL BE EXAMINED FOR STRIPPED OR DAMAGED THREADS. THESE THREADS SHALL BE RE-CHASED TO CLEAN-UP OR THE FOUNDATION BOLTS REPLACED IF NECESSARY. THE FOUNDATION BOLTS AND THEIR THREADS SHALL BE PROTECTED DURING THE LEVELING AND GROUTING OPERATIONS.

2. THE CONCRETE FOUNDATION SHALL BE DRY AND FREE OF OIL. IF OIL IS PRESENT IT SHALL BE REMOVED WITH SOLVENT PRIOR TO CHIPPING.

3. THE CONCRETE SHALL BE CHIPPED TO EXPOSE ITS AGGREGATE, APPROXIMATELY 1/2 INCH DEEP SO AS TO REMOVE ALL LAITACE AND PROVIDE A ROUGH SURFACE FOR BONDING. LIGHT HAND TOOLS SHALL BE USED IN CHIPPING.

4. AFTER CHIPPING, THE EXPOSED SURFACE SHALL BE BLOWN FREE OF DUST USING OIL-FREE COMPRESSED AIR FROM AN APPROVED SOURCE.

5. AFTER THE FOUNDATION HAS BEEN CHIPPED AND CLEANED, IT SHALL BE COVERED SO AS TO PREVENT IT FROM BECOMING CONTAMINATED WITH OIL OR DIRT.

6. FOUNDATION BOLTS SHALL BE WAXED OR COVERED WITH DUCT SEAL OVER THEIR ENTIRE EXPOSED LENGTH. IF THE BOLTS ARE SLEEVED, THE SLEEVES SHALL BE PACKED WITH NON-BONDING MATERIAL TO PREVENT THE ANNULAR SPACE AROUND THE BOLT FROM BEING FILLED WITH GROUT.

IV. PREPARATION OF BASEPLATE

1. SURFACES OF THE BASEPLATE WHICH WILL COME IN CONTACT WITH THE GROUT SHALL BE CLEAN AND FREE OF ALL OIL, RUST, SCALE, PAINT, AND DIRT. THIS CLEANING SHALL BE DONE SHORTLY BEFORE THE LEVELING OF THE BASEPLATE AND PLACEMENT OF THE GROUT.

V. FORMING

1. ALL FORMING MATERIAL COMING INTO CONTACT WITH THE GROUT SHALL BE COATED WITH COLORED PASTE WAX -- THE COLORING TO CONTRAST WITH THE FORMING MATERIAL COLORS.

2. FORMS SHALL BE MADE LIQUID TIGHT TO PREVENT LEAKING OF GROUT MATERIAL. CRACKS AND OPENINGS SHALL BE SEALED OFF WITH RAGS, COTTON BATTING, FOAM RUBBER OR CAULKING COMPOUND.

3. CARE SHALL BE TAKEN TO PREVENT ANY WAX FROM CONTACTING THE CONCRETE FOUNDATION OR THE BASEPLATE.

4. LEVELING SCREWS, IF USED, SHALL BE COATED WITH WAX.

VI. WETTING THE FOUNDATION

1. AT LEAST EIGHT (8) HOURS PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF THE GROUT THE CONCRETE SHALL BE WETTED WITH FRESH WATER AND KEPT WET UP TO THE ACTUAL PLACEMENT OF THE GROUT.

2. EXCESS WATER IS TO BE REMOVED FROM THE CONCRETE JUST PRIOR TO THE PLACEMENT OF THE GROUT.

VII. MIXING THE GROUT

1. THE MIXING EQUIPMENT SHALL BE CLEAN AND FREE OF ALL FOREIGN MATERIAL, SCALE, MOISTURE, AND OIL.

2. THE CEMENT AND SAND FILLER SHALL BE HAND BLENDED DRY TO FORM A HOMOGENEOUS MIXTURE.

3. FRESH WATER SHALL BE ADDED TO THE DRY MATERIALS AND HAND BLENDED TO WET ALL THE DRY MATERIAL. WATER QUANTITY SHALL BE THE LESSER OF THE AMOUNT SPECIFIED BY THE CEMENT MANUFACTURER OR 50% OF THE CEMENT BY WEIGHT.

4. THE RATE OF BLENDING SHALL PREVENT AIR ENTRAINMENT IN THE GROUT MIXTURE.

VIII. PLACEMENT

1. A SUITABLE HEAD BOX SHALL BE PREPARED TO HYDRAULICALLY FORCE THE GROUT INTO THE BASEPLATE CAVITIES.

2. GROUTING SHALL BE CONTINUOUS UNTIL THE PLACEMENT OF GROUT IS COMPLETE UNDER ALL SECTIONS OR COMPARTMENTS

OF THE BASEPLATE. IF MORE GROUT IS NEEDED THAN CAN BE PREPARED IN ONE MIXING BOX, A SECOND BOX SHALL BE EMPLOYED. SUBSEQUENT BATCHES OF GROUT SHOULD BE PREPARED SO AS TO BE READY WHEN THE PRECEDING BATCH HAS BEEN PLACED.

3. NO PUSH RODS OR MECHANICAL VIBRATORS SHALL BE USED TO PLACE THE GROUT UNDER THE BASEPLATE.

4. ONE (1) 4" X 4" X 4" TEST CUBE SHALL BE MADE FROM EACH UNIT OF GROUT PLACED. THE SAMPLE(S) SHALL BE TAGGED WITH THE EQUIPMENT NUMBER ON WHICH THE BATCH WAS USED AND WHERE IN THE FOUNDATION THE BATCH WAS PLACED.

IX. FINISHING

1. WHEN THE ENTIRE FORM HAS BEEN FILLED WITH GROUT, EXCESS MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED AND THE EXPOSED SURFACES TROWELLED SMOOTH. THE TROWEL SHALL BE WETTED WITH FRESH WATER. CARE SHALL BE TAKEN TO PREVENT BLENDING WATER INTO THE GROUT SURFACE.

2. FORMS SHALL BE LEFT IN PLACE UNTIL THE GROUT HAS SET AND THEN REMOVED.

3. IF WEDGES WERE USED TO LEVEL THE BASEPLATE, THEY SHALL BE REMOVED WHEN THE GROUT HAS SET BUT NOT CURED. AFTER THE GROUT HAS CURED THE WEDGE VOIDS SHALL BE FILLED WITH ESCOWELD 7501 PUTTY.

4. THE REMAINING CEMENT GROUT SURFACES SHALL BE TROWELLED SMOOTH WITH A TROWEL WETTED WITH FRESH WATER. SHARP GROUT EDGES SHALL BE STRUCK TO GIVE A 1/4" CHAMFER.

5. THE GROUT SHALL BE KEPT WETTED WITH FRESH WATER FOR THREE (3) DAYS.

6. THE GROUT SHALL CURE FOR SEVEN (7) DAYS WITH THE AMBIENT TEMPERATURE NOT LESS THAN 50°F PRIOR TO MOUNTING ANY EQUIPMENT ON THE BASEPLATE.

7. THE TOP OF THE BASEPLATE SHALL BE SOUNDED FOR VOIDS. AFTER ALL THE VOIDS HAVE BEEN DEFINED AND THE GROUT CURED, THE BASEPLATE SHALL HAVE TWO HOLES DRILLED THROUGH TO EACH VOID IN OPPOSITE CORNERS OF THE VOID. ONE OF THE PAIR OF HOLES SHALL BE TAPPED AND FITTED WITH A PRESSURE GREASE FITTING. THE OTHER HOLE SHALL BE USED AS A VENT HOLE FOR ITS VOID. THE VOID SHALL BE FILLED WITH UNFILLED ESCOWELD 7505 EPOXY WITH HAND GREASE GUN. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO PREVENT LIFTING THE BASEPLATE SHOULD A BLOCKAGE OCCUR BETWEEN THE GREASE FITTING AND THE VENT. WHEN THE VOID HAS BEEN FILLED, THE GREASE FITTING SHALL BE REMOVED AND BOTH HOLES DRESSED SMOOTH.

8. ALL EXPOSED GROUT AND CONCRETE SURFACES SHALL BE SEALED WITH ONE COAT OF UNFILLED ESCOWELD 7505 EPOXY HAND APPLIED WITH A PAINT BRUSH. THE EPOXY SEALER SHALL BE TINTED TO CONTRAST WITH THE CONCRETE AND GROUT.

X. CLEAN-UP

1. IMMEDIATELY AFTER GROUTING IS COMPLETED ALL TOOLS AND MIXING EQUIPMENT SHALL BE CLEANED USING FRESH WATER.

Appendix 3-C

Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Baseplate Grouting

		DATE/BY
1.	BASEPLATE SURFACES FREE OF OIL, SCALE, AND DIRT.	_____
2.	CONCRETE CLEAN AND FREE OF OIL, DUST, AND MOISTURE.	_____
3.	FOUNDATION BOLT SLEEVES PACKED WITH NON-BONDING MATERIAL.	_____
4.	FOUNDATION BOLTS WAXED OR COVERED WITH DUCT SEAL.	_____
5.	VENT HOLES UNOBSTRUCTED.	_____
6.	FORMS TO PROPER HEIGHT.	_____
7.	FORMS PROPERLY BRACED.	_____
8.	FORMS IN CONTACT WITH GROUT WAXED.	_____
9.	GROUTING MATERIALS IN UNOPENED CONTAINERS; DRY AND STORED AT APPROXIMATELY 80°F.	_____
10.	SUFFICIENT QUANTITY OF MATERIAL ON HAND AT SITE TO COMPLETE WORK.	_____
11.	MIXING BOXES AND TOOLS CLEAN.	_____
THE FOLLOWING SECTIONS APPLY TO EPOXY GROUTING ONLY		
12.	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE ABOVE 65°F DURING MIXING, POUR AND CURE.	_____
13.	NO PARTIAL UNITS OF EPOXY, CONVERTER OR SAND AGGREGATE USED.	_____
14.	EPOXY AND CONVERTER HAND BLENDED THREE TO FIVE MINUTES MAXIMUM.	_____

		DATE/BY
15.	FULL UNITS OF AGGREGATE SLOWLY ADDED TO BLENDED LIQUID AND HAND MIXED TO JUST COMPLETELY WET AGGREGATE.	_____
16.	EPOXY/AGGREGATE MIXTURE NOT EXCESSIVELY MIXED SO AS TO ENTRAIN AIR.	_____
17.	BATCH PLACED WITHIN ITS POT LIFE. AMBIENT TEMP AT POUR OF _____°F. POUR TIME - START OF LIQUID BLENDING TO END OF POUR _____ MINUTES.	_____
18.	NO VIBRATOR OR RODDING USED TO PLACE GROUT.	_____
19.	POUR RATE SLOW ENOUGH TO PERMIT AIR TO ESCAPE.	_____
20.	GROUT FILLS GROUT HOLES AND VENTS.	_____
21.	FORMS REMOVED AFTER GROUT CURES.	_____
	THE FOLLOWING APPLIES TO CEMENT GROUT ONLY	
22.	FOUNDATION WETTED WITH FRESH WATER AT LEAST EIGHT HOURS PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF GROUT AND KEPT WET WITH FRESH WATER UNTIL POUR BEGINS. EXCESS WATER TO BE REMOVED JUST PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF GROUT.	_____
23.	WATER TO CEMENT RATIO NOT MORE THAN 50% BY WEIGHT. WATER TO BE MEASURED AMOUNT PER VENDOR INSTRUCTIONS.	_____
24.	SAND-CEMENT MIXED DRY TO HOMOGENEOUS BLEND.	_____
25.	WATER ADDED TO SAND-CEMENT MIXTURE.	_____
26.	GROUT MIXED TO WET SAND AND CEMENT. NO AIR ENTRAINED.	_____
27.	POUR SLOW ENOUGH TO PERMIT AIR TO ESCAPE.	_____
28.	NO VIBRATOR OR RODDING USED TO PLACE GROUT.	_____
29.	GROUT FILLS GROUT HOLES AND VENTS.	_____
30.	FORMS REMOVED AFTER GROUT SETS.	_____
31.	SET GROUT TRIMMED AND TROWELLED SMOOTH.	_____
32.	SEVEN DAY CURING TIME WITH AMBIENT TEMPERATURE NOT LESS THAN 50°F.	_____
33.	GROUTED SURFACES KEPT WET WITH FRESH WATER FOR THREE DAYS AFTER PLACEMENT.	_____
	THE FOLLOWING APPLIES TO BOTH GROUTS	
34.	WEDGES REMOVED AND VOIDS FILLED. IF SHIMS USED. DO NOT REMOVE.	_____
35.	BASEPLATE SOUNDED FOR VOIDS. VOIDS FILLED WITH UNFILLED ESCOWELD 7505 INJECTED THROUGH GREASE FITTING.	_____

WHEN ALL OF ABOVE ARE ACCEPTED, GROUTING IS ACCEPTED AND EQUIPMENT CAN BE PLACED ON BASEPLATE.

Appendix 3-D

Specifications for Epoxy Grouting of Rotating Equipment

I. SCOPE

THIS SPECIFICATION COVERS EPOXY GROUTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT ON CONCRETE FOUNDATIONS.

II. MATERIALS

1. EPOXY SHALL BE ESCOWELD 7505 TWO PART LIQUID (EPOXY RESIN AND CONVERTER).

2. FILLER SHALL BE ESCOWELD 7530 SAND AGGREGATE.

3. ALL MATERIALS SHALL BE STORED INDOORS AND KEPT DRY, FREE OF MOISTURE IN ITS ORIGINAL SHIPPING CONTAINERS.

4. STORAGE TEMPERATURES SHALL BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN 40°F AND 90°F. GROUTING MATERIAL SHALL BE KEPT AT 65°F MINIMUM FOR 48 HOURS PRIOR TO MIXING AND PLACEMENT.

III. PREPARATION OF FOUNDATION

1. FOUNDATION BOLT THREADS SHALL BE EXAMINED FOR STRIPPED OR DAMAGED THREADS. THESE THREADS SHALL BE RECHASED TO CLEAN UP OR THE FOUNDATION BOLT REPLACED IF NECESSARY. THE FOUNDATION BOLTS AND THEIR THREADS SHALL BE PROTECTED DURING THE LEVELING AND GROUTING OPERATIONS.

2. THE CONCRETE FOUNDATION SHALL BE DRY AND FREE OF OIL. IF OIL IS PRESENT IT SHALL BE REMOVED WITH SOLVENT PRIOR TO CHIPPING.

3. THE CONCRETE SHALL BE CHIPPED TO EXPOSE ITS AGGREGATE APPROXIMATELY 1/2 INCH DEEP SO AS TO REMOVE ALL LAITANCE AND PROVIDE A ROUGH SURFACE FOR BONDING. LIGHT HAND TOOLS SHALL BE USED IN CHIPPING.

4. AFTER CHIPPING, THE EXPOSED SURFACES SHALL BE BLOWN FREE OF DUST USING OIL FREE COMPRESSED AIR FROM AN APPROVED SOURCE.

5. AFTER THE FOUNDATION HAS BEEN CHIPPED AND CLEANED, IT SHALL BE COVERED SO AS TO PREVENT IT FROM BECOMING WET.

6. FOUNDATION BOLTS SHALL BE WAXED OR COVERED WITH DUCT SEAL OVER THEIR ENTIRE EXPOSED LENGTH. IF THE BOLTS ARE SLEEVED, THE SLEEVES SHALL BE PACKED WITH NON-BONDING MATERIAL TO PREVENT THE ANNULAR SPACE AROUND THE BOLT FROM BEING FILLED WITH GROUT.

IV. PREPARATION OF BASEPLATE

1. SURFACES OF THE BASEPLATE WHICH WILL COME IN CONTACT WITH THE EPOXY GROUT SHALL BE CLEAN AND FREE OF ALL OIL, RUST, SCALE, PAINT AND DIRT. THIS CLEANING SHALL BE DONE IMMEDIATELY PRIOR TO THE LEVELING OF THE BASE-PLATE AND PLACEMENT OF THE EPOXY GROUT.

2. IF THE GROUTING IS TO BE DELAYED BY MORE THAN EIGHT (8) HOURS AFTER THE BASEPLATE IS CLEANED, THE CLEANED BASEPLATE SHALL BE PAINTED WITH ONE COAT OF UNFILLED ESCOWELD 7505 TO GIVE A DRY FILM THICKNESS OF THREE (3) MILS. THIS COAT SHALL BE FULLY DRIED PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF GROUT.

3. IF THE EPOXY COATED BASEPLATE IS NOT GROUTED WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS AFTER BEING PAINTED, THE EPOXYED SURFACE SHALL BE ROUGHED UP WITH A WIRE BRUSH TO REMOVE THE BLOOM OR SHINE. ALL DUST PRODUCED BY BRUSHING SHALL BE WIPED OFF USING A WATER DAMPENED RAG. THESE SURFACES SHALL BE AIR DRIED PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF GROUT.

V. FORMING

1. ALL FORMING MATERIAL COMING INTO CONTACT WITH THE GROUT SHALL BE COATED WITH COLORED PASTE WAX. THE COLORING TO CONTRAST WITH THE FORMING MATERIALS COLORS.

2. FORMS SHALL BE MADE LIQUID TIGHT TO PREVENT LEAKING OF GROUT MATERIAL. CRACKS AND OPENINGS SHALL BE SEALED OFF WITH RAGS, COTTON BATTING, FOAM RUBBER OR CAULKING COMPOUND.

3. CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN TO PREVENT ANY WAX FROM CONTACT-ING THE CONCRETE FOUNDATION OR THE BASEPLATE.

4. ANY LEVELING WEDGES THAT ARE TO BE REMOVED AFTER THE GROUT HAS CURED SHALL BE COATED WITH WAX. WEDGES AND/OR SHIMS WHICH ARE TO REMAIN EMBEDDED IN THE GROUT SHALL NOT BE COATED.

5. LEVELING SCREWS, IF USED, SHALL BE COATED WITH WAX.

VI. MIXING

1. AS EPOXY COMPOUNDS HAVE LIMITED POT LIFE AFTER MIX-ING, BOTH THE ELAPSED TIME FROM BEGINNING OF MIXING TO THE COMPLETION OF THE POUR AND THE AMBIENT TEMP-ERATURES AT THE BEGINNING OF MIXING AND AT THE COMPLETION OF POUR SHALL BE RECORDED AND GIVEN TO THE TURBOMACHINERY ENGINEER WHO WILL RECORD THE DATA IN THE PERMANENT EQUIPMENT RECORDS.

2. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SHALL BE AT LEAST 65°F DURING MIXING, PLACEMENT AND CURING OF THE EPOXY GROUT.

3. MIXING EQUIPMENT SHALL BE CLEAN AND FREE OF ALL FOREIGN MATERIAL, SCALE, MOISTURE AND OIL.

4. ALL PERSONNEL HANDLING OR WORKING WITH THE GROUTING MATERIALS SHALL FOLLOW SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS PRINTED ON THE CAN LABELS.

5. ONLY FULL UNITS OF EPOXY RESIN, CONVERTER AND AGGREGATE SHALL BE USED IN PREPARING THE GROUT.

6. THE EPOXY RESIN (PART A - BLUE LABEL) AND THE CONVERTER (PART B - RED LABEL) SHALL BE HAND BLENDED FOR AT LEAST THREE (3) MINUTES BUT NO MORE THAN FIVE (5) MINUTES PRIOR TO ADDING THE AGGREGATE FILLER.

7. IMMEDIATELY AFTER THE LIQUID BLENDING HAS BEEN COMPLETED, THE AGGREGATE SHALL BE SLOWLY ADDED AND GENTLY HAND BLENDED SO AS TO FULLY WET THE AGGREGATE. THE RATE OF BLENDING SHALL PREVENT AIR ENTRAINMENT IN THE GROUT MIXTURE.

VII. PLACEMENT

1. A SUITABLE HEAD BOX SHALL BE PREPARED TO HYDRAULICALLY FORCE THE GROUT INTO THE BASEPLATE CAVITIES.

2. GROUTING SHALL BE CONTINUOUS UNTIL THE PLACEMENT OF GROUT IS COMPLETE UNDER ALL SECTIONS OR COMPARTMENTS OF THE BASEPLATE. IF MORE THAN ONE UNIT OF GROUTING MATERIALS IS REQUIRED FOR A GIVEN PIECE OF EQUIPMENT, TWO MIXING BOXES SHALL BE EMPLOYED. SUBSEQUENT BATCHES OF GROUT SHOULD BE PREPARED SO AS TO BE READY WHEN THE PRECEDING BATCH HAS BEEN PLACED.

3. NO PUSH RODS OR MECHANICAL VIBRATORS SHALL BE USED TO PLACE THE GROUT UNDER THE BASEPLATE.

4. ONE (1) 4" X 4" X 4" TEST CUBE SHALL BE MADE FROM EACH UNIT OF GROUT PLACED. THE SAMPLE(S) SHALL BE TAGGED WITH THE EQUIPMENT NUMBER ON WHICH THE BATCH WAS USED AND WHERE IN THE FOUNDATION THE BATCH WAS PLACED.

VIII. FINISHING

1. WHEN THE ENTIRE FORM HAS BEEN FILLED WITH GROUT, EXCESS MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED AND THE EXPOSED SURFACES TROWELLED SMOOTH. THE TROWEL SHALL BE WETTED WITH A SMALL AMOUNT OF ESCOWELD 9615 CLEAN-UP SOLVENT. CARE SHALL BE TAKEN TO PREVENT BLENDING THE SOLVENT INTO THE GROUT SURFACE.

2. ANY AIR BUBBLES RISING TO THE SURFACE OF THE GROUT SHALL BE REMOVED BY LIGHTLY SPRAYING THE BUBBLED SURFACE WITH ESCOWELD 9615 CLEAN-UP SOLVENT USING A HAND SPRAYER.

3. FORMS SHALL BE LEFT IN PLACE FOR TWENTY-FOUR (24) HOURS TO PERMIT THE GROUT TO CURE. THE SURFACE OF THE GROUT SHOULD BE FIRM AND NOT TACKY TO THE TOUCH.

4. IF WEDGES WERE USED TO LEVEL THE BASEPLATE, THEY SHALL BE REMOVED AT THIS TIME AND THEIR VOIDS IN THE GROUT FILLED WITH ESCOWELD 7501 PUTTY. SHIMS SHALL BE LEFT IN PLACE.

5. THE TOP OF THE BASEPLATE SHALL BE SOUNDED FOR VOIDS. AFTER ALL THE VOIDS HAVE BEEN DEFINED THE BASEPLATE SHALL HAVE TWO HOLES DRILLED THROUGH TO EACH VOID IN OPPOSITE CORNERS OF THE VOIDS. ONE OF THE PAIR OF HOLES SHALL BE TAPPED AND FITTED WITH A PRESSURE GREASE FITTING. THE OTHER HOLD SHALL BE USED AS A VENT HOLE FOR ITS VOID. THE VOID SHALL BE FILLED WITH UNFILLED ESCOWELD 7505 WITH A HAND GREASE GUN. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO PREVENT LIFTING THE BASEPLATE SHOULD A BLOCK-AGE OCCUR BETWEEN THE GREASE FITTING AND THE VENT. WHEN THE VOID HAS BEEN FILLED THE GREASE FITTING SHALL BE REMOVED AND BOTH HOLES DRESSED SMOOTH.

6. ALL EDGES OF THE EPOXY GROUT SHALL BE DRESSED SMOOTH BY GRINDING TO A 1/4 INCH CHAMFER.

IX. CLEAN-UP

1. IMMEDIATELY AFTER GROUTING IS COMPLETED ALL TOOLS AND MIXING EQUIPMENT SHALL BE CLEANED USING EITHER WATER OR ESCOWELD 9615 CLEAN-UP SOLVENT.

2. ALL UNUSED MIXED EPOXY MATERIALS SHALL BE DISPOSED OF IN ACCORDANCE WITH INSTRUCTIONS ON THE EPOXY CONTAINERS.

Chapter 4
Process Machinery Piping*

Fundamentals of Piping Design Criteria

It is certainly not within the scope of this text to deal extensively with piping design and installation criteria; however, there are certain fundamentals which can have an impact on machinery reliability. These must be appreciated by the machinery engineer if he is to retain a good overview of the integrated machinery system. Some key installation procedures and verification criteria are, therefore, included for the machinery engineer's benefit.

The design of a piping system consists of the design of pipe, flanges, bolting, gaskets, valves, fittings, and other pressure components such as expansion joints. It also includes *pipe supporting elements* but does not include the actual support structures such as building steel work, stanchions or foundations, etc.

Piping Design Procedure

These steps need to be completed in the design of any piping system:

- Selection of pipe materials.
- Calculation of minimum pipe wall thickness for design temperatures and pressures (generally per ANSI B31.3).

* We gratefully acknowledge the help received from Wolfgang Schmidt, Essochem Europe (Brussels, Belgium) in compiling this section.

- Establishment of acceptable layout between terminal points for the pipe.
- Establishment of acceptable support configuration for the system.
- Flexibility stress analysis for the system to satisfy the design criteria stipulated by ANSI B31.3.

This flexibility analysis is intended to verify that piping stresses, local component stresses and forces/moments generated at the terminal points are within the acceptable limits throughout all anticipated phases of normal and abnormal operation of the plant during its life.

Design Considerations

A piping system constitutes an irregular space frame into which strain and attendant stress may be introduced by initial fabrication and erection, and also may exist due to various circumstances during operation. Example: three pumps taking suction from and/or discharging into a common header, as shown in Figure 4-1. One or two of the three pumps removed for shop repair.

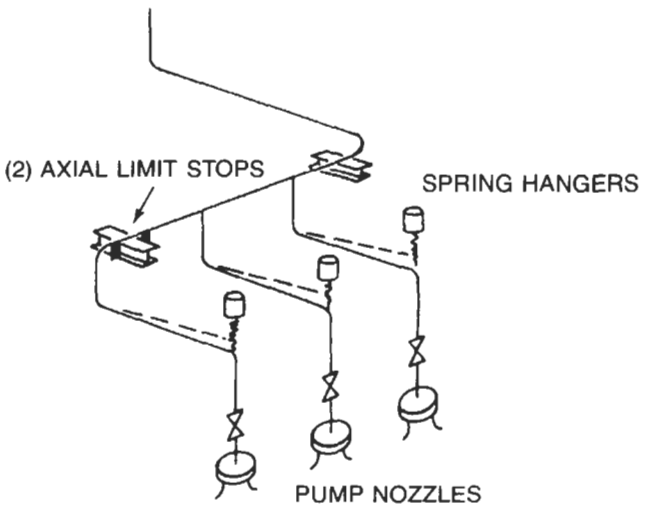


Figure 4-1. Flexibility analysis must consider:
- All pumps operating simultaneously
- Effect of any pump used as nonrunning standby spare, or blocked off for maintenance.

Each piping system must be designed with due consideration to these circumstances for the most severe conditions of coincident loading. The following summarizes possible imposed loads that typically need to be considered in a piping design:

Design Pressure Loads

The pressure at the most severe condition of coincident internal or external pressure and temperature expected during normal operation.

Weight Loads

- Dead weight loads including pipe components, insulation, etc.
- Live weight loads imposed by service or test fluid, snow and ice, etc.

Dynamic Loads

- Design *wind* loads exerted on exposed piping systems.
- *Earthquake* loads must be considered for piping systems where earthquake probability is significant.
- *Impact* or *surge* loads typically due to water hammer, letdown, or discharge of fluids.
- *Excessive vibration* arising from pressure pulsations, resonance caused by machinery excitations or wind loads.

Thermal Expansion/Contraction Effects

- Thermal and friction loads due to restraints preventing free thermal expansion.
- Loading due to severe temperature gradients or difference in expansion characteristics.

Effects of Support, Anchor, and Terminal Movements

- Thermal expansion of equipment.
- Settlement of equipment foundations and/or piping supports.

The When, Who, What, and How of Removing Spring Hanger Stops Associated with Machinery

Initial Tasks Prior to Machinery Commissioning

- Align machinery without pipe attached.
- Adjust pipe for proper fit-up and make connection.

- Observe alignment of machinery with pipe being attached. If excessive movement is noted, the pipe is to be disconnected and modified until misalignment is brought within the limits permitted.
- If the pipe is greater than 8 in. NPS, one may need to add sandbags or similar weights to the pipe at the hanger adjacent to machinery to simulate the operating condition of the pipe.
- Pull stops on all system hangers.
- Check to determine that no hanger travel indicator moves out of the "1/3 total travel" cold setting zone. If travel is excessive, refer immediately to the design contractor for modifications of support.
- Adjust the hanger to return travel marker to the "C" position.
- Record alignment of machinery.
- Reinstall piping system hanger stops.

Final Check, Immediately Prior to Machinery Operation

- Break piping as necessary.
- Flush and/or steam blow.
- Repipe and realign.
- Weight the hanger adjacent to the machinery.
- Pull system pins, check "C" settings and fine tune hangers. If travel is excessive (out of the 1/3 total "C" zone) contact the designated piping engineer for resolution.

Flange Jointing Practices

These steps can be written up in checklist format allowing field personnel to use piping-related guidelines in an efficient manner, as shown in the appendices at the end of this chapter.

The importance of getting flanged joints right the first time cannot be overemphasized if trouble-free performance during startup is desired. In order to obtain an adequate joint the first time we must assure ourselves that the contractor, subcontractor, and the working crews appreciate the importance of quality workmanship needed during each stage of the flange joint building process. This includes materials handling and storage operations, piping prefabrication, erection, and bolting-up procedures. Time spent in covering preventive measures, supervision and crew guidance, and/or training (if needed), and assuring adequate quality control will pay dividends.

Primary Causes of Flange Leakage

Several common causes of flange leakage are hereby outlined to create an awareness of the effects of poor inspection procedure or materials:

Uneven Bolt Stress. Flanges bolted up unevenly cause some bolts to be nearly loose while others are so heavily loaded that they locally crush the gasket. This causes leaks, particularly in high-temperature service where the heavily-loaded bolts tend to relax with subsequent loosening of the joint.

Improper Flange Alignment. Unevenly bolted joints, improper alignment, and especially lack of parallelism between flange faces can cause uneven gasket compression, local crushing, and subsequent leakage. Proper centerline alignment of flanges is also important to assure even compression of the gasket. See Figure 4-2 for general guidance.

Improper Centering of Gasket. A gasket which is installed so that its centerline does not coincide with the flange centerline will be unevenly compressed, thereby increasing the possibility of subsequent leakage. Spiral-wound and double-jacketed asbestos gaskets are provided with a centering ring or gasket extension to the ID of the bolt circle to facilitate centering of the gasket. Even so, the gasket should be centered with respect to the bolt circle. Asbestos gaskets should be cut so that the OD extends to the ID of the bolt circle.

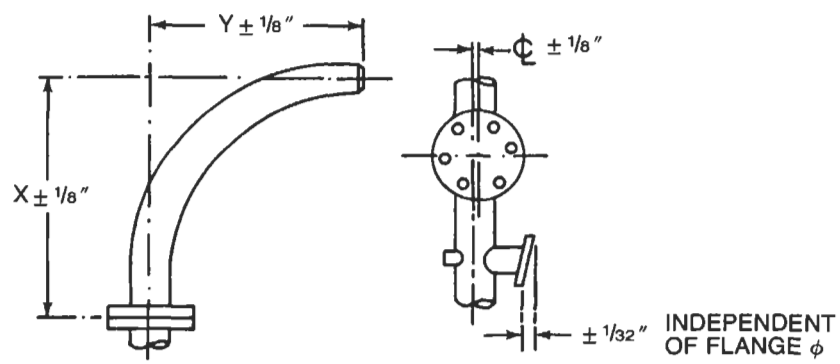


Figure 4-2. Dimensional variations permitted for piping and flanges are independent of pipe size.

Dirty or Damaged Flange Faces. These are obvious causes for leakage since damage or dirt (including scale) can create a leakage path along the flange face. Damage includes scratches, protrusions (e.g., weld spatter) and distortion (warpage) of the flange.

Excessive Forces in the Piping System at Flange Locations. This can occur because of improper piping flexibility design, or by excessive application of force to attain flange alignment. Improper location of temporary or permanent restraints or supports will also cause high flange bending moments and forces.

The Importance of Proper Gasket Selection

The following discussion covers some of the more important factors relating to gasket size and type. Flanges are designed to accommodate specific sizes and types of gaskets. When the gasket does not meet the requirements necessary to ensure good seating, or is crushed by the bolt load, leakage will result. Heat exchanger girth flanges are more closely tailored to one specific gasket than are piping flanges per ANSI B16.5. Therefore, somewhat greater latitude is possible with the latter.

Gasket Width

The width of a gasket is considered in the design of a flange. For a given bolt load, a narrow gasket will experience a greater unit load than a wide gasket. It is, therefore, important to determine that the proper width gasket has been used.

- For asbestos piping gaskets consult Group I, Appendix E of ANSI B16.5.
- For double-jacketed, corrugated asbestos gaskets consult API 601.
- For spiral-wound gaskets consult API 601.
- For heat exchanger girth flanges, consult the exchanger drawings.

A common reason for gasket leakage is the use of gaskets which are too wide because of the erroneous impression that the full flange face must be covered. This is not true. The above standards should always be followed.

Gasket Thickness

Gasket thickness determines its compressibility and the load required to seat it. The thicker the gasket, the lower the load necessary for seating.

All piping flanges are designed to take 1/16 in. thick asbestos gaskets. The 1/16 in. thickness assures sufficient compressibility to accommodate slight facing irregularities while having a sufficiently high seating load to prevent blowout. One-sixteenth in. thick asbestos gaskets should always be used with ANSI B16.5 flanges unless a specific design check has been made to verify another thickness.

Spiral-wound and double-jacketed asbestos gasket thickness should comply with API 601.

Flange Bolt-Up

General Installation and Inspection Procedure

This segment covers recommended procedures relating to the preparation and inspection of a joint prior to the actual bolt-up. Obviously, high temperature piping joints in hydrogen-containing streams are less forgiving than those in more moderate service. Critical flanges are defined as joints in services in excess of 500°F and in sizes above six in. in diameter:

- Identify critical flanges and maintain records. A suitable record form is attached in Figure 4-3. A suggested identification procedure is to use the line identification number and proceed in the flow direction with joints #1, #2, etc.

Prior to Gasket Insertion

- Check condition of flange faces for scratches, dirt, scale, and protrusions. Wire brush clean as necessary. Deep scratches or dents will require refacing with a flange facing machine.
- Check that flange facing gasket dimension, gasket material and type, and bolting are per specification. Reject nonspecification situations. Improper gasket size is a common error.
- Check gasket condition. Only new gaskets should be used. Damaged gaskets (including loose spiral windings) should be rejected. The ID windings on spiral-wound gaskets should have at least three evenly spaced spot welds or approximately one spot weld every six in. of circumference (see API 601).
- Use a straightedge and check facing flatness. Reject warped flanges.

DATE: _____ CREW: _____

RECORDER: _____ LINE NO.: _____

Joint No. (in Flow Direction Sequence)	Flange One		Flange Two		Joint Alignment (3)					Gasket Condition			Bolts		Remarks
	Face (1) Condition	Warpage Check (2)	Face (1) Condition	Warpage Check (2)	a	b	a-b	c	d	New Gasket?	Proper Type?	Any Defects	Lubri-cated?	Length Checked?	
1															
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															

Notes:

1) Note any scratches, dents, weld spatter or scale. Note if facing was wire brushed. Note if facing was refaced or any other repairs made.
2) Use a straight edge and check for any deviation of facing from straight edge.
3) See sketches.

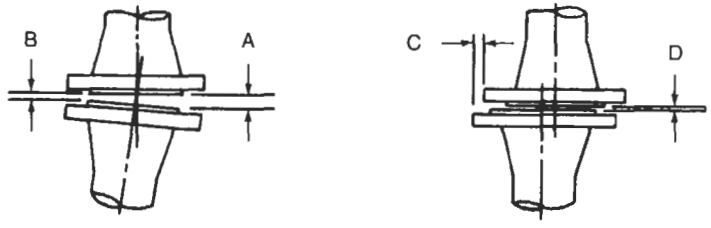


Figure 4-3. Typical flanged joint record form.

- Check alignment of mating flanges. Avoid use of force to achieve alignment. Verify that:

  1. The two flange faces are parallel to each other within 1/32 in. at the extremity of the raised face
  2. Flange centerlines coincide within 1/8 in.

Joints not meeting these criteria should be rejected.

Controlled Torque Bolt-Up of Flanged Connections

Experience shows that controlled torque bolt-up is warranted for certain flanged connections. These would typically include:

- All flanges (all ratings and sizes) with a design temperature > 900°F.
- All flanges (all ratings) 12 in. diameter and larger with a design temperature > 650°F.
- All 6 in. diameter and larger 1500 pound class flanges with a design temperature > 650°F.
- All 8 in. diameter and larger 900 pound class flanges with a design temperature > 650°F.
- All flanges not accessible from a maintenance platform and > 50 ft above grade.

In addition, it is generally appropriate to apply the above criteria to flanged connections on equipment and other components such as:

- Valve bonnets, where the valve is positioned to include the above referenced design temperature/size/flange rating category.
- Flanged equipment closures where they qualify for inclusion in the above categories.
- All flanged connections which will eventually be covered with low temperature insulation within the above reference criteria.

Adherence to the following procedure is recommended for controlled torquing of line flanges, bonnet joints, etc., when specified.

Preparation

- Thoroughly clean the flange faces and check for scars. Defects exceeding the permissible limits given in Table 4-1 should be repaired.

Table 4-1
Flange Face Damage/Acceptance Criteria

Type	Gasket Type Used	Damage	Critical Defect	Permissible Limits
1	Ring Joint	Scratch-like	Across seating surface	1–2 mils deep-one seatin surface only.
		Smooth depression		3 mils deep-one seating surface only.
2	Spiral wound in tongue & groove joint	Scratch-like	> 1/2 of tongue/ groove width	1 mil maximum
3	Spiral wound in raised face joint	Scratches, smooth depressions & gen'l metal loss due to rusting.	> 1/2 of seated width (min of 1/4″ intact surface left).	Up to 1/2 of serrated finish depth
4	Asbestos	″	> 1/2 of seated width	Up to 1/2 of serrated finish depth

For gasket types 1 & 2 refacing required if more than 3–5 (permissible) defects found. Seatin surface taken as center 50% of groove face.

- Check studs and nuts for proper size, conformance with piping material specifications, cleanliness, and absence of burrs.
- Gaskets should be checked for size and conformance to specifications. Metal gaskets should have grease, rust, and burrs completely removed.
- Check flange alignment. Out-of-alignment of parallelism should be limited to the tolerance given in Figure 4-2.
- Number the studs and nuts to aid in identification and to facilitate applying crisscross bolt-up procedure.
- Coat stud and nut thread, and nut and flange bearing surfaces with a liberal amount of bolt thread compound.

Equipment

For studs larger than 1½ in. in diameter, use "Select-A-Torq" hydraulic wrench (Model 5000 A) supplied by N-S-W Corp. of Houston, the "Hydra-Tork" wrench system (Model HT-6) supplied by Torque System, Inc. (or an approved similar torquing system), or a hand torque wrench on small flanges, with stud diameters less than 1½ in. The torque wrenches should be calibrated at least once per week.

Torquing Procedure

- "Snug-up" bolts with a small hand wrench using a crisscross pattern. Apply load evenly to all bolts. Check that the gasket is properly centered and there is a minimum of one thread extending beyond the nut on either side.
- Set the torque wrench at the initial torque per Table 4-2 or 4-3 and apply the torque wrench in the crisscross pattern until all bolts have

Table 4-2
Torque Values (Foot-Pounds) to Achieve 50,000 PSI Bolt Stress with Lubricated Bolts, Nuts, and Bearing Surfaces*

Bolt Diameter (In.)	Initial Torque	Intermediate Torque	Final Torque	
			Torque ft-lbs	Tension lbs
1/2	30	40	50	7,000
5/8	50	70	100	11,000
3/4	70	100	150	17,500
7/8	100	170	250	24,200
1	150	250	350	31,800
1 1/8	200	350	500	41,500
1 1/4	250	500	700	52,500
1 3/8	400	700	1,000	64,700
1 1/2	500	800	1,300	78,300
1 5/8	800	1,400	2,100	93,500
1 3/4	900	1,700	2,600	109,200
1 7/8	1,000	2,200	3,600	126,500
2	1,200	2,500	4,000	145,400
2 1/4	1,500	3,000	5,800	186,900

* *Based upon USA B 16.5 1968 & API Std. 6D Mar 1970*

Table 4-3
Torque Values (Foot-Pounds) to Achieve 40,000 PSI Bolt Stress with Lubricated Bolts, Nuts, and Bearing Surfaces.*

Bolt Diameter (In.)	Initial Torque	Intermediate Torque	Final Torque	
			Torque ft-lbs	Tension lbs
5/8	30	45	60	8,080
3/4	40	70	100	12,080
7/8	80	120	160	16,760
1	100	170	240	22,040

* **NOTE:** Use values for joints which contain *Aluminum (Type 6061-T6) flanges.*

been tightened once. Repeat this operation as many times as necessary until the No. 1 bolt torque is not less than 80% of the initial torque setting after the last crisscross tightening sequence.

- Set the torque wrench to the next increment and continue tightening in the crisscross pattern and resetting until the final torque has been reached in all bolts. However, after completing the last tightening sequence at the final torque setting, the No. 1 bolt torque shall not be less than 90% of the final torque value. Always use the crisscross pattern and each tightening sequence must terminate at the last numbered bolt.
- When a flanged joint is torqued and accepted, a car seal shall be placed from bolt end to bolt end and both flanges shall be sprayed with white paint in such a position that it can be seen from grade.

Hot Bolting and Leakage Control

Hot bolting during startup and during process runs has been found to be an important factor in minimizing flange leakage. During heat-up and because of temperature changes, the bolts and gaskets deform permanently. This causes a loss of bolt stress after the temperature changes have smoothed out. Hot bolting helps correct this.

Hot Bolting Procedure

The objective of hot bolting is to restore the original bolt stress which has dropped due to yielding and/or creep of the flange joint components. If possible, this should be done with a bolt tensioning device. Hot bolting should start at the point of leakage and proceed in a crisscross pattern as described previously. Seized bolts sometimes present a problem when hot bolting. In such cases, it is necessary to use a wrench on both nuts.

Using Bolt Tensioners

There exists considerable experience with the use of various bolt tensioners for hot bolting. These procedures typically involve first running a die over the stud projections to facilitate subsequent installation of the tensioner heads. Mechanics are instructed to leave the heads in place for the minimum time necessary so as to prevent leakage of hydraulic fluid at the seals. Past procedures called for immersion of heads in water between applications; however, this is no longer necessary.

Using Hammer and Wrench or Torque Wrench

If leaks occur, it may be necessary to employ a 7 lb or heavier hammer to stop the leak. Tightening should first be done where the leakage has originated and the crisscross pattern should be used from there. Joints with spiral-wound gaskets can be tightened only to the limit of the steel centering ring thickness. Further tightening is fruitless if a spiral-wound gasket has already been tightened to this point.

If Hot Bolting Does Not Stop Leak

If leakage cannot be stopped by tightening, the line must be isolated and the joint broken to determine the cause:

- Examine flange facings for damage, distortion (warping), or foreign matter.
- Check flange alignment, cut and realign piping if necessary.
- Check gasket for proper material, dimensions, and type. Use a new gasket for reassembly of the joint.
- Check gasket deformation to determine if it was centered. This is best done by noting the position of the gasket *before* it is withdrawn and examining it immediately after withdrawal.
- Reassemble the joint.

- If leakage persists, piping support and flexibility must be examined. It may be necessary to revise the support system or install spring hangers to lower bending moments.
- If leakage occurs during rainstorms, it will be necessary to install sheet metal rain shields, which may cover the top 180° of the flange, to prevent such leakage. These should be located about four inches away from the flange surface and should have sufficient width to cover the bolts plus two inches on each side.
- If leakage occurs during sudden changes in process temperatures, examine the process sequence to determine if steps can be taken to minimize rapid heat-up or cooling of lines. It may only be necessary to open a valve more slowly.

Recommendations for the Installation, Fabrication, Testing and Cleaning of Air, Gas or Steam Piping*

The importance of starting any compressor with clean piping, particularly on the intake to any cylinder, cannot be over-emphasized. This is particularly important with multi-stage high-pressure compressors where special metallic packing is required and parts are much more expensive than in a low-pressure compressor. Any dirt, rust, welding beads or scale carried into the compressor will cause scored packing rings, piston rods, cylinder bores, and pitted, leaky valves.

It is important that the piping be fabricated with sufficient flange joints so that it can be dismantled easily for cleaning and testing. It is far better to clean and test piping in sections before actual erection than after it is in place.

If it is necessary to conduct the final test when the piping is in position, care should be taken to provide vents at the high spots so that air or gas will not be trapped in the piping. Make provision for complete drainage after the test is completed. These connections should be planned in advance.

When piping is cleaned in sections before erection, it is possible to do a thorough job of eliminating all acid. This is difficult to do with piping erected and in position, because carry-over of acid into the cylinders is almost certain to occur when the machine is started. This can cause extensive damage.

The use of chill-rings for butt welds in piping is recommended. This prevents welding beads from getting into the pipe to carry through, not only on the original starting, but later on during operation.

* Refer to appendices at the end of this chapter for typical checklists.

After hydrostatic tests have been made and the pipe sections have been cleaned as thoroughly as possible on the inside, the piping should be pickled by this procedure:

1. Pickle for 14 hours with hydrochloric acid. Circulate the acid continuously by means of a small pump. Use a five to 12 percent solution of hydrochloric acid, depending upon the condition of the pipe.
2. Neutralize with caustic.
3. Blow hot air through for several hours.
4. Fill with mineral seal oil and drain.
5. Blow out with hot air.
6. Pipe is now ready to use. If the pipe section is not to be assembled immediately, seal the ends tightly until ready for use. Then, before installation, pull through a swab saturated with carbon tetrachloride.

Even though this procedure has been carefully followed; on reciprocating compressor piping, a temporary filter (such as Type PT American Filter, Type PS Air-Maze, or equal) should be installed in the suction line to the suction bottle to remove particles 230 microns* (.009 in. diameter) or larger. Provision must be made in the piping to check the pressure drop across the filter and to remove the filter cell for cleaning. Filter cell should be removed and left out only when the inlet line is free of welding beads, pipe scale, and other extraneous matter.

On large piping (where a man can work inside), the pickling procedure can be omitted if the piping is cleaned mechanically with a wire brush, vacuumed and then thoroughly inspected for cleanliness. Time and trouble taken in the beginning to ensure that the piping is clean will shorten the break-in period, and may save a number of expensive shutdowns.

Pickling Procedure For Reciprocating Compressor Suction Piping (Method I)

General Recommendations

1. The job should be executed by experienced people.
2. Operators must wear adequate safety equipment (gloves and glasses).
3. Accomplish entire pickling operation in as short a time as possible.

---

* 140 microns (0.0055 in. diameter) for nonlubricated cylinders.

Preliminary Work

1. Install an acid-resistant pump connected to a circulating tank.
2. Provide 1 1/2 in. (or greater) acid resistant hoses for the connections (prepare suitable assembly sketch).
3. For ensuring the filling of the system, flow must go upward and vents must be installed.
4. Provide method for heating the solutions (e.g., a steam coil).

Pretreatment

Pretreatment is required only when traces of grease are present.

1. Fill the system with water at 90°C (194°F).
2. Add 2 percent sodium hydroxide and 0.5 percent sodium metasilicate (or sodium orthosilicate if cheaper). If these compounds are not available and only a small amount of grease is present 2 percent of NaOH and 3 percent of Na_2CO_3 may be used.
3. Circulate for 20–30 minutes at 90°C (194°F).
4. Dump the solution and wash with water until pH = 7.

Acid Treatment

1. Fill the system with water at 50°C (122°F).
2. Add 4% of Polinon 6A® and circulate to ensure its complete distribution.
3. Add hydrochloric acid to reach the concentration of 7%.
4. Circulate intermittently for about 45 minutes or more until the pickling has been accomplished.

Notes:

1. In order to avoid corrosion:

   (a) Keep the flow rate lower than 1 m/sec.
   (b) Take samples of the solution and check for the Fe^{+++} content: if $[Fe^{+++}] > 0.4\%$, dump solution.

2. In order to determine when the system has been adequately pickled, put a piece of oxidized steel in the circulation tank and inspect it frequently.

Neutralization

1. Add sodium hydroxide for neutralizing the acid, and water to avoid a temperature rise.
2. Circulate for 15–30 minutes.
3. Dump the solution and wash with water until pH = 7.

Note:

The concentration must be calculated on the overall volume of the solution.

Passivation

1. Fill the system with water at 40°C (104°F).
2. Add 0.5% of citric acid and circulate to ensure complete mixing.
3. Check the pH of the solution: if pH < 3.5, slowly add ammonia to raise pH to 3.5.
4. Circulate for 15–20 minutes.
5. Slowly add ammonia to raise pH to 6 in 10 minutes.
6. Add 0.5 % sodium nitrite (or ammonium persulfate).
7. Circulate for 10 minutes.
8. Add ammonia to raise pH to 9.
9. Circulate for 45 minutes.
10. Stop the pump and hold the solution in the system for at least three hours.
11. Dump the solution.

Cleaning of Large Compressor Piping: Method II

Cleaning of the piping may be done by commercial companies with mobile cleaning equipment or by the following recommended cleaning procedure. After hydrostatic tests have been made and the pipe sections have been cleaned as thoroughly as possible on the inside, the piping should be pickled by the following (or equivalent) procedure:

1. Remove all grease, dirt, oil, or paint by immersing in a hot, caustic bath. The bath may be a solution of eight ounces of sodium hydroxide to one gallon of water with the solution temperature 180–200°F. The time of immersion is at least thirty minutes, depending on the condition of the material.
2. Remove pipe from caustic and *immediately rinse with cold water.*

3. Place pipe in an acid pickling bath. Use a 5 to 12 percent solution of hydrochloric (muriatic) acid, depending upon the condition of the pipe. Rodine inhibitor should be added to the solution to prevent the piping from rusting quickly after removal from the acid bath. The temperature of the bath should be 140–165°F. The time required in the acid bath to remove scale and rust will vary, depending on the solution strength and condition of piping; however, six hours should be a minimum. The normal time required is about 12 to 14 hours.
4. Remove pipe from acid bath and *immediately wash with cold water* to remove all traces of acid.
5. Without allowing piping to dry, immerse in a hot neutral solution. A one to two ounce soda ash per gallon of water solution may be used to maintain a pH of 9 or above. The temperature of the solution should be 160 to 170°F. Litmus paper may be used to check the wet piping surface to determine that an acidic condition does not exist. If acidic, then repeat neutral solution treatment.
6. Rinse pipe with cold water, *drain thoroughly and blow out with hot air until dry.*
7. *Immediate steps must be taken to prevent rusting,* even if piping will be placed in service shortly. Generally, a dip or spray coating of light water displacement mineral oil will suffice; however, if piping is to be placed in outdoor storage for more than several weeks, a hard-coating water displacement type rust preventative should be applied.
8. Unless piping is going to be placed in service immediately, suitable gasketed closures must be placed on the ends of the piping and all openings to prevent entrance of moisture or dirt. Use of steel plate discs and thick gaskets is recommended for all flanges. Before applying closures, the flange surfaces should be coated with grease.
9. Before installation, *check that no dirt or foreign matter has entered piping and that rusting has not occurred.* If in good condition, then pull through a swab saturated with carbon tetrachloride.
10. For nonlubricated (NL) units where oil coating inside piping is not permissible (due to process contamination), even for the starting period, consideration should be given to one of the following alternatives:

    (a) Use of nonferrous piping materials, such as aluminum.
    (b) Application of a plastic composition or other suitable coating after pickling to prevent rusting.

(c) After rinsing with water in step six, immerse piping in a hot phosphoric bath. The suggested concentration is three to six ounces of iron phosphate per gallon of water, heated to 160–170°F, with pH range of 4.2 to 4.8. The immersion time is three to five minutes or longer, depending on density of coating required. *Remove and dry thoroughly, blowing out with hot air.*

CAUTION: Hydrochloric acid in contact with the skin can cause burns. If contacted, *acid should be washed off immediately with water.* Also, if indoors, adequate ventilation, including a vent hood, should be used. When mixing the solution, always *add the acid to the water, never the water to the acid.*

On large piping (where a man can work inside), the pickling procedure can be omitted if the piping is cleaned mechanically with a wire brush, vacuumed and then *thoroughly inspected for cleanliness.* Time and trouble taken in the beginning to insure that the piping is clean will shorten the break-in period, and may save a number of expensive shut downs.

Temporary Line Filters

When first starting, it is advisable to use a temporary line filter in the intake line near the compressor to catch any dirt, chips, or other foreign material that may have been left in the pipe. But clean the pipe first. Do not depend on a temporary line filter. If the gas or air being compressed may, at times, contain dust, sand, or other abrasive particles, a gas scrubber or air cleaner must be *installed permanently and serviced regularly.*

Even though the previous cleaning procedure has been carefully followed on the compressor piping, a temporary filter (such as Type PT American Filter or equal) should be installed in the suction line to the suction bottle to remove particles 230 microns (0.009 in.) in diameter or larger. If the compressor is an "NL" (nonlubricated) design, the filter should be designed to remove particles 140 microns (0.0055 in.) in diameter or larger. Provision must be made in the piping to check the pressure drop across the filter and to remove the filter cell for cleaning. If the pressure drop across the filter exceeds 5 percent of the upstream line pressure, remove the filter, *clean thoroughly* and reinstall. The filter cell should be removed and left out only when the inlet line is free of welding beads, pipe scale, and other extraneous matter.

Appendix 4-A

Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Machinery Piping*

		DATE/BY
1.	CHECK PUMP DISCHARGE FLANGE FOR LEVEL IN TWO DIRECTIONS 90° APART. MAXIMUM OUT OF LEVEL .002"/FOOT.	_____
2.	CHECK PARALLELISM OF SUCTION AND DISCHARGE PIPE FLANGES TO PUMP FLANGES. MAXIMUM OUT OF PARALLELISM .030" AT GASKET SURFACE.	_____
3.	CHECK CONCENTRICITY OF SUCTION AND DISCHARGE PIPING TO PUMP FLANGES. FLANGE BOLTS TO SLIP INTO HOLES BY HAND.	_____
4.	CHECK TO SEE IF PROPER PIPE SUPPORTS ARE INSTALLED.	_____
5.	CHECK FOR 5 PIPE DIAMETERS OF STRAIGHT PIPE BEFORE SUCTION AND AFTER DISCHARGE FLANGES OF PUMP.	_____
6.	TIGHTEN PIPING FLANGE BOLTS IN CRISS-CROSS PATTERN TO PROPER TORQUE. COAT BOLT THREADS WITH ANTI-SEIZE COMPOUND BEFORE TIGHTENING.	_____
7.	CHECK PUMP SHAFT DEFLECTION USING FACE AND RIM METHOD DURING FLANGE BOLT TIGHTENING. MAXIMUM ALLOWED DEFLECTION IS .002" TIR.	_____

NOTE: PREFERRED METHOD OF PIPING PUMP IS TO BRING THE PIPING TO THE PUMP. AFTER PUMP IS GROUTED AND ALIGNED, SUCTION AND DISCHARGE FLANGES WITH GASKETS ARE 4-BOLTED TO PUMP. PIPING IS THEN FIELD FITTED AND WELDED TO THE FLANGES.

* Source: P.C. Monroe, as originally presented at First International Pump Symposium, and Short Course, Texas A & M University, Houston, Tx., May 21-24, 1984.

8. PROVIDE A DROP OUT SPOOL PIECE AT THE SUCTION FLANGE FOR A CONICAL TYPE TEMPORARY MECHANICAL STRAINER. SEE FIGURE 1. _____

9. TEMPORARY MECHANICAL STRAINER INSTALLED. _____

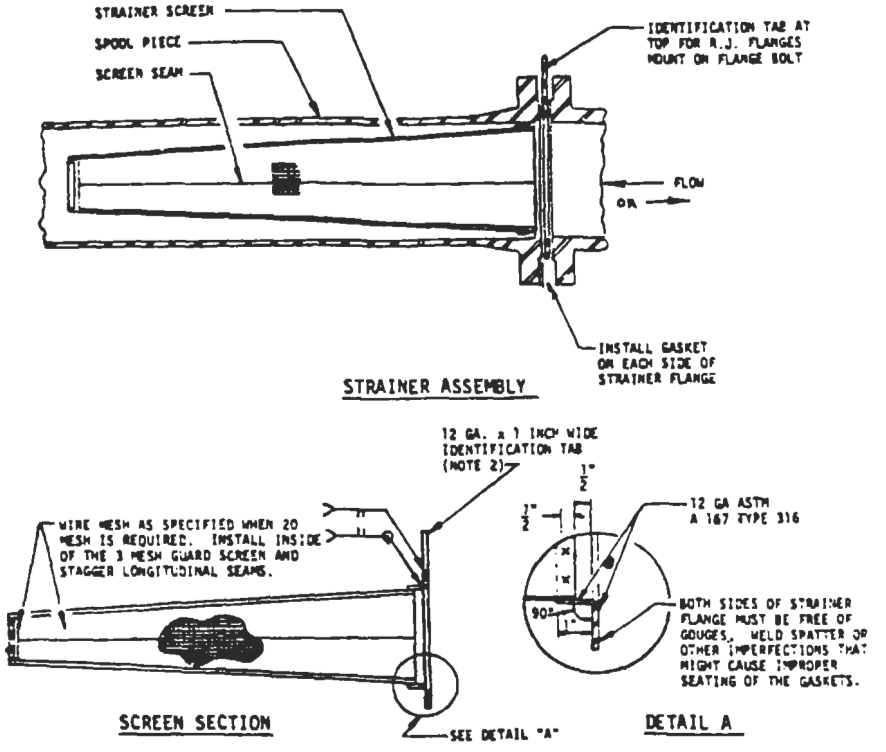

STRAINER SCREEN
SPOOL PIECE
SCREEN SEAM
IDENTIFICATION TAB AT TOP FOR R.J. FLANGES MOUNT ON FLANGE BOLT
FLOW
OR
INSTALL GASKET ON EACH SIDE OF STRAINER FLANGE
STRAINER ASSEMBLY
12 GA. x 1 INCH WIDE IDENTIFICATION TAB (NOTE 2)
WIRE MESH AS SPECIFIED WHEN 20 MESH IS REQUIRED. INSTALL INSIDE OF THE 3 MESH GUARD SCREEN AND STAGGER LONGITUDINAL SEAMS.
SCREEN SECTION
SEE DETAIL "A"
1/2"
1"
12 GA ASTM A 167 TYPE 316
90°
BOTH SIDES OF STRAINER FLANGE MUST BE FREE OF GOUGES, WELD SPATTER OR OTHER IMPERFECTIONS THAT MIGHT CAUSE IMPROPER SEATING OF THE GASKETS.
DETAIL A

FIGURE 1

Appendix 4-B

Specifications for Cleaning Mechanical Seal Pots and Piping for Centrifugal Pumps

I. SCOPE

1. THIS SPECIFICATION COVERS THE INSPECTION, CLEANING, AND PRESERVATION OF MECHANICAL SEAL POTS AND THEIR ASSOCIATED PIPING ON NEW PUMPS PRIOR TO START-UP AND COMMISSIONING, AND ON EXISTING PUMPS WHICH HAVE THEIR MECHANICAL SEAL PIPING MODIFIED.

2. THIS WORK SHALL BE DONE CONCURRENTLY WITH CLEANING AND SETTING OF MECHANICAL SEALS ON NEW PUMPS.

II. MATERIALS

1. THE FOLLOWING MATERIALS WILL BE REQUIRED FOR THIS WORK:

FRESH WATER
SODIUM HYDROXIDE
SODIUM METASILICATE
TRISODIUM PHOSPHATE
*NON-IONIC DETERGENT
*HYDROCHLORIC ACID
*AMMONIUM BIFLOURIDE
*ARMOHIB 28 OR EQUIVALENT
*CITRIC ACID
*SODA ASH
*SODIUM NITRITE
10 MICRON FILTER SCREENS

*THESE CHEMICALS ARE NOT USED TO CLEAN STAINLESS STEEL PIPING OR SEAL POTS.

2. QUANTITIES WILL VARY BASED ON THE SIZE AND AMOUNT OF PIPING TO BE CLEANED.

III. DISASSEMBLY

1. ALL INSTRUMENTATION IN THE SEAL PIPING SHALL BE REMOVED PRIOR TO DISASSEMBLY OF THE PIPING AND SEAL POTS.

2. THE INSTRUMENTATION SHALL BE TAGGED AND STORED IN A SAFE MANNER.

3. THE SEAL PIPING SHALL BE BROKEN AT THE TWO CLOSEST FLANGED OR UNION CONNECTIONS TO THE PUMP OR GLAND AND TAKEN TO THE SHOP IN ONE PIECE.

4. IF THE PIPING CAN BE BROKEN DOWN INTO SHORTER SEGMENTS FOR EASIER CLEANING IT MAY BE DONE IN THE SHOP.

5. OPENINGS ON THE PUMP AND/OR GLAND SHALL BE PLUGGED OR CAPPED TO PREVENT ENTRY OF DIRT INTO THE PUMP WHILE THE PIPING IS IN THE SHOP.

IV. CLEANING

1. ALL PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL BE FLUSHED WITH 170°F TO 200°F ALKALINE SOLUTION CONTAINING THREE (3) PERCENT NaOH, ONE (1) PERCENT SODIUM METASILICATE, ONE (1) PERCENT TRISODIUM PHOSPHATE AND ONE TENTH (0.1) PERCENT NON-IONIC DETERGENT IN FRESH WATER. THIS SOLUTION IS TO BE CIRCULATED FOR AT LEAST SIX (6) HOURS. THE PIPING AND POTS SHALL THEN BE DRAINED AND FLUSHED WITH FRESH WATER UNTIL THE pH LEVEL IS LESS THAN 8.0. WATER FOR STAINLESS STEEL PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL CONTAIN LESS THAN 50 PPM CHLORIDE.

2. STAINLESS STEEL PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL BE FURTHER FLUSHED WITH 160°F FRESH WATER CONTAINING LESS THAN 50 PPM CHLORIDE AT A HIGH ENOUGH VELOCITY TO REMOVE ALL DIRT. THE PIPING RUNS SHALL BE POSITIONED AND SUPPORTED SO AS TO HAVE NO DEAD SPOTS WITH THE WATER ENTERING AT THE LOWEST POINT IN THE PIPING AND EXITING AT THE HIGHEST POINT. THE CIRCULATED WATER SHALL BE FILTERED THROUGH TEN (10) MICRON FILTER SCREENS AND RETURNED TO AN OPEN STORAGE TANK BEFORE BEING RECIRCULATED. WHEN THE FILTER SCREENS REMAIN CLEAN FOR FIVE (5) MINUTES, CIRCULATION MAY BE TERMINATED AND THE PIPING AND SEAL POT AIR DRIED.

3. CARBON STEEL PIPING AND POTS SHALL BE FLUSHED IN THE SAME MANNER AS THE STAINLESS STEEL PIPING AND SEAL POTS EXCEPT THAT SIX (6) TO TEN (10) PERCENT INHIBITED HYDROCHLORIC ACID BY WEIGHT WITH TWENTY-FIVE HUNDRETHS (0.25) PERCENT AMMONIUM BIFLORIDE BY WEIGHT INHIBITED WITH TWO (2) GALLONS PER 1000 GALLONS ARMOHIB 28, RODINE 213, OR EQUIVALENT IN FRESH WATER SHALL BE USED.

4. THE ACID SOLUTION SHALL BE HEATED TO 160°F AND CIRCULATED AT A SLOW RATE FOR SIX (6) HOURS OR UNTIL THE REACTION IS COMPLETE.

5. SAMPLES OF THE ACID SOLUTION SHALL BE TAKEN AT HOURLY INTERVALS AND TESTED FOR ACID STRENGTH AND TOTAL IRON CONCENTRATION. IF THE ACID CONCENTRATION DROPS BELOW THREE (3) PERCENT, ACID SHALL BE ADDED TO RAISE THE CONCENTRATION TO FIVE (5) PERCENT. CLEANING SHALL CONTINUE UNTIL IRON AND ACID CONCENTRATION REACH EQUILIBRIUM.

6. AFTER ACID FLUSHING HAS BEEN COMPLETED, THE PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL BE DRAINED AND FLUSHED WITH FRESH WATER CONTAINING ONE TENTH (0.1) PERCENT BY WEIGHT CITRIC ACID.

7. THE PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL THEN BE NEUTRALIZED WITH ONE (1) PERCENT BY WEIGHT SODA ASH Na_2CO_3 PLUS FIVE TENTHS (0.5) PERCENT BY WEIGHT SODIUM NITRITE $NaNO_2$ SOLUTION IN FRESH WATER CIRCULATED FOR TWO HOURS HEATED TO 175°F TO 190°F.

8. AFTER NEUTRALIZATION THE PIPING AND SEAL POT SHALL BE RINSED WITH FRESH WATER AND AIR DRIED.

V. PRESERVING

1. IMMEDIATELY AFTER DRYING, THE PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL BE FLUSHED OR SPRAYED WITH THE SAME OIL AS WILL BE USED IN THE SEAL SYSTEM.

2. AFTER THE OIL TREATMENT THE PIPING SHALL BE REASSEMBLED IF IT WAS DISASSEMBLED IN THE SHOP. ALL OPENINGS SHALL BE PLUGGED OR CAPPED TO PREVENT ENTRY OF ANY CONTAMINATING MATTER.

3. AS SOON AS ALL WORK ON THE MECHANICAL SEALS HAS BEEN COMPLETED, THE PIPING AND SEAL POTS SHALL BE RE-INSTALLED AND THE LINES FILLED WITH PROPER SEAL OIL.

4. THE INSTRUMENTATION SHALL BE RE-INSTALLED AT THIS TIME.

5. AFTER FILLING THE LINES WITH OIL AND RE-INSTALLING THE INSTRUMENTATION THE PUMP SHALL BE TAGGED TO INDICATE THAT THE SEAL SYSTEM IS READY FOR SERVICE.

Appendix 4-C

Detailed Checklist for Rotating Equipment: Pump Piping

		DATE/BY
1.	VALVES ACCESSIBLE.	_____
2.	INSTRUMENTATION VIEWABLE AND ACCESSIBLE.	_____
3.	VALVES, GLANDS, AND INSTRUMENTATION TAGGED.	_____
4.	SEAL POTS AND PIPING ADEQUATELY SUPPORTED.	
	MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED SPANS:	
	1/2 INCH LINE - 2' 0"	_____
	3/4 INCH LINE - 2' 6"	_____
	1 INCH LINE - 3' 0"	_____
5.	SEAL FLUSH PIPING PER API PLAN _____. SKETCH ATTACHED.	_____
6.	AUXILIARY FLUSH PIPING PER API PLAN _____. SKETCH ATTACHED.	_____
7.	COOLING WATER PIPING PER API PLAN _____. SKETCH ATTACHED.	_____
8.	SEAL POT(S) AND PIPING FREE OF SCALE AND DIRT.	_____
9.	SEAL POT(S) FILLED TO MIDDLE OF SIGHT GLASS.	_____
10.	PIPE THREAD SEAL WELD COVERS ALL THREADS, 1/4 INCH MINIMUM WELD.	_____

		DATE/BY
11.	SUCTION LINE STRAINER INSTALLED _____. MESH.	_____
12.	SUCTION LINE STRAINER TABBED.	_____
13.	HORIZONTAL SUCTION LINE REDUCER, IF USED, IS ECCENTRIC, FLAT SIDE UP.	_____
14.	3/4 INCH VALVED CONNECTION ON EACH SIDE OF STRAINER.	_____
15.	PIPE FLANGE RATINGS: SUCTION INCH, LB. DISCHARGE INCH, LB.	_____
16.	DISCHARGE LINE INCREASER, IF USED, IS CONCENTRIC.	_____
17.	DISCHARGE CHECK VALVE INSTALLED, FLOW DIRECTION CORRECT.	_____
18.	VALVED BYPASS AROUND CHECK VALVE. (FOR HOT SERVICES).	_____
19.	CHECK VALVE DRILLED IF NO BYPASS IS INSTALLED IN HOT SERVICES.	_____
20.	ONE INCH VALVED WARM-UP LINE BETWEEN DISCHARGE AND SUCTION LINES.	_____
21.	DOUBLE BLOCK VALVED LINES HAVE BODY DRAIN VALVES IN BLOCK VALVES OR VALVED DRAIN IN SPOOL BETWEEN BLOCK VALVES.	_____
22.	PIPE NIPPLES THREADED ON ENDS ONLY.	_____
23.	NO PIPE BUSHINGS.	_____
24.	CARBON STEEL PIPE SCH 160, 1/2 INCH NPS MINIMUM.	_____
25.	STAINLESS STEEL PIPE SCH 80S, 1/2 INCH NPS MINIMUM.	_____
26.	PIPE NIPPLES AT BRANCH CONNECTIONS GREATER THAN 2 INCH LONG BUT LESS THAN 4 INCH LONG.	_____
27.	PIPING HIGH POINTS HAVE VALVED VENTS.	_____
28.	LOW POINTS, GAUGE GLASSES AND PRESSURE GAUGES HAVE VALVED DRAINS.	_____
29.	BLOCK VALVES INSTALLED BETWEEN INSTRUMENT AND LINE.	_____

Part II

Alignment and Balancing

Chapter 5

Machinery Alignment*

For most rotating machines used in the process industries, the trend is toward higher speeds, higher horsepowers per machine, and less sparing. The first of these factors increases the need for precise balancing and alignment. This is necessary to minimize vibration and premature wear of bearings, couplings, and shaft seals. The latter two factors increase the economic importance of high machine reliability, which is directly dependent on minimizing premature wear and breakdown of key components. Balancing, deservedly, has long received attention from machinery manufacturers and users as a way to minimize vibration and wear. Many shop and field balancing machines, instruments, and methods have become available over the years. Alignment, which is equally important, has received proportionately less notice than its importance justifies.

Any kind of alignment, even straightedge alignment, is better than no alignment at all. Precise, two-indicator alignment is better than rough alignment, particularly for machines 3600 RPM and higher. It can give greatly improved bearing and seal life, lower vibration, and better overall reliability. It does take longer, however, especially the first time it is done to a particular machine, or when done by inexperienced personnel. The process operators and mechanical supervisors must be made aware of this time requirement. If they insist on having the job done in a hurry, they should do so with full knowledge of the likelihood of poor alignment

* Main source: Malcolm G. Murray, Jr., *Alignment Manual for Horizontal, Flexibly-Coupled Rotating Machines*—Third Edition, 1983; available from publisher, Murray and Garig Tool Works, 220 E. Texas Avenue, Baytown, TX 77520; Tel. (713) 427-5923. Adapted by permission. Certain portions of this chapter, e.g. laser-optic alignment and some of the alignment tolerance criteria, are from other sources.

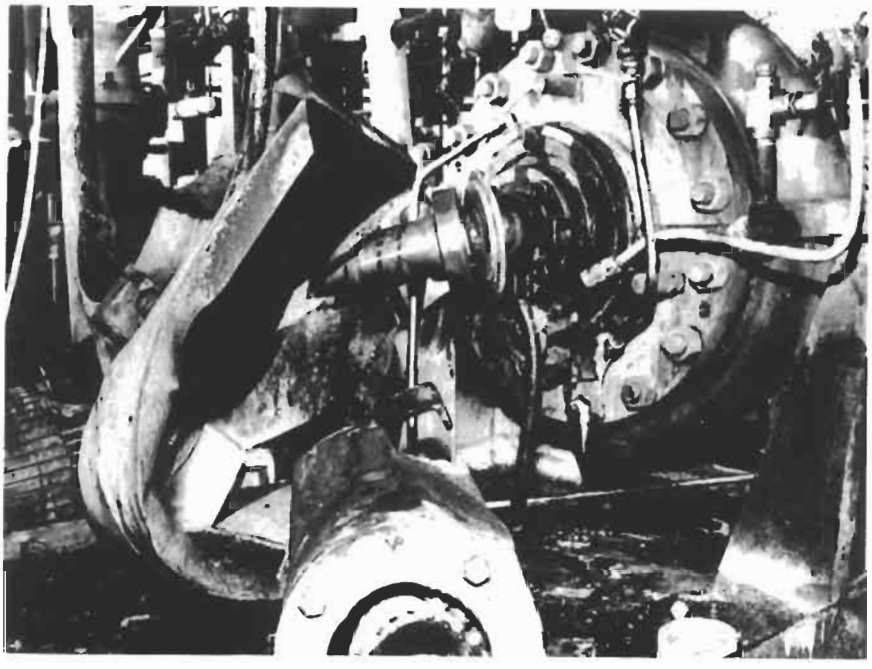


Figure 5-1. Machinery damage caused by bearing seizure. Bearing seizure was the result of gear coupling damage, and gear coupling damage was caused by excessive misalignment, caused by piping forces.

and reduced machine reliability. Figure 5-1 shows a serious machinery failure which started with piping-induced misalignment, progressed to coupling distress, bearing failure, and finally, total wreck.

Prealignment Requirements

The most important requirement is to have someone who knows what he is doing, and cares enough to do it right. Continuity is another important factor. Even with good people, frequent movement from location to location can cause neglect of things such as tooling completeness and prealignment requirements.

The saying that "you can't make a silk purse out of a sow's ear" also applies to machinery alignment. Before undertaking an alignment job, it is prudent to check for other deficiencies which would largely nullify the

benefits or prevent the attainment and retention of good alignment. Here is a list of such items and questions to ask oneself:

Foundation Adequate size and good condition? A rule of thumb calls for concrete weight equal to three times machine weight for rotating machines, and five times for reciprocating machines.

Grout Suitable material, good condition, with no voids remaining beneath baseplate? Tapping with a small hammer can detect hollow spots, which can then be filled by epoxy injection or other means. This is a lot of trouble, though, and often is not necessary if the lack of grout is not causing vibration or alignment drift.

Baseplate Designed for adequate rigidity? Machine mounting pads level, flat, parallel, coplanar, clean? Check with straightedge and feeler gauge. Do this upon receipt of new pumps, to make shop correction possible—and maybe collect the cost from the pump manufacturer. Shims clean, of adequate thickness, and of corrosion- and crush-resistant material? If commercial pre-cut shims are used, check for actual versus marked thicknesses to avoid a soft foot condition. Machine hold-down bolts of adequate size, with clearance to permit alignment corrective movement? Pad height leaving at least 2 in. jacking clearance beneath center at each end of machine element to be adjusted for alignment? If jackscrews are required, are they mounted with legs sufficiently rigid to avoid deflection? Are they made of type 316 stainless steel, or other suitable material, to resist field corrosion? Water or oil cooled or heated pedestals are usually unnecessary, but can in some cases be used for onstream alignment thermal compensation.

Piping Is connecting piping well fitted and supported, and sufficiently flexible, so that no more than 0.003 in. vertical and horizontal (measured separately—not total) movement occurs at the flexible coupling when the last pipe flanges are tightened? Selective flange bolt tightening may be required, while watching indicators at the coupling. If pipe flange angular misalignment exists, a "dutchman" or tapered filler piece may be necessary. To determine filler

piece dimensions, measure flange gap around circumference, then calculate as follows:

$$\text{1/8 in.} + (\text{Max. Gap} - \text{Min. Gap}) \left[\frac{\text{Gasket O.D.}}{\text{Flange O.D.}}\right] = \text{Maximum Thickness of Tapered Filler Piece}$$

1/8 in. = Dutchman Minimum Thickness (180° from Maximum Thickness). Dutchman OD and ID same as gasket OD and ID.

Spiral wound gaskets may be helpful, in addition to or instead of a tapered filler piece. Excessive parallel offset at the machine flange connection cannot be cured with a filler piece. It may be possible to absorb it by offsetting several successive joints slightly, taking advantage of clearance between flange bolts and their holes. If excessive offset remains, the piping should be bent to achieve better fit. For the "stationary" machine element, the piping may be connected either before or after the alignment is done—provided the foregoing precautions are taken, and final alignment remains within acceptable tolerances. In some cases, pipe expansion or movement may cause machine movement leading to misalignment and increased vibration. Better pipe supports or stabilizers may be needed in such situations. At times it may be necessary to adjust these components with the machine running, thus aligning the machine to get minimum vibration. Sometimes, changing to a more tolerant type of coupling, such as elastomeric, may help.

Coupling Installation

Some authorities recommend installation on typical pumps and drivers with an interference fit, up to .0005 in. per in. of shaft diameter. In our experience, this can give problems in subsequent removal or axial adjustment. If an interference fit is to be used, we prefer a light one—say .0003 in. to .0005 in. overall, regardless of diameter. For the majority of machines operating at 3600 RPM and below, you can install couplings with .0005 in. overall diametral clearance, using a setscrew over the keyway. For hydraulic dilation couplings and other nonpump or special categories, see manufacturers' recommendations or appro-

priate section of this text. Many times, high-performance couplings require interference fits as high as .0025 in. per in. of shaft diameter.

Coupling cleanliness, and for some types, lubrication, are important and should be considered. Sending a repaired machine to the field with its lubricated coupling-half unprotected, invites lubricant contamination, rusting, dirt accumulation, and premature failure. Lubricant should be chosen from among those recommended by the coupling manufacturer or a reputable oil company. Continuous running beyond two years is inadvisable without inspecting a grease lubricated coupling, since the centrifuging effects are likely to cause caking and loss of lubricity. Certain lubricants, e.g., Amoco and Koppers coupling greases, are reported to eliminate this problem, but visual external inspection is still advisable to detect leakage. Continuous lube couplings are subject to similar problems, although such remedies as anti-sludge holes can be used to allow longer runs at higher speeds. By far the best remedy is *clean* oil, because even small amounts of water will promote sludge formation. Spacer length can be important, since parallel misalignment accommodation is directly proportional to such length.

Alignment Tolerances

Before doing an alignment job, we must have tolerances to work toward. Otherwise, we will not know when to stop. One type of "tolerance" makes *time* the determining factor, especially on a machine that is critical to plant operation, perhaps the only one of its kind. The operations superintendent may only be interested in getting the machine back on the line, *fast.* If his influence is sufficient, the job may be hurried and done to rather loose alignment tolerances. This can be unfortunate, since it may cause excessive vibration, premature wear, and early failure. This gets us back to the need for having the tools and knowledge for doing a good alignment job efficiently. So much for the propaganda—now for the tolerances.

Tolerances must be established before alignment, in order to know when to stop. Various tolerance bases exist. One authority recommends 1/2-mil maximum centerline offset per in. of coupling length, for hot running misalignment. A number of manufacturers have graphs which recommend tolerances based on coupling span and speed. A common tolerance in terms of face-and-rim measurements is .003-in. allowable face

gap difference and centerline offset. This ignores the resulting accuracy variation due to face diameter and spacer length differences, but works adequately for many machines.

Be cautious in using alignment tolerances given by coupling manufacturers. These are sometimes rather liberal and, while perhaps true for the coupling itself, may be excessive for the coupled machinery.

A better guideline is illustrated in Figure 5-2, which shows an upper, absolute misalignment limit, and a lower, "don't exceed for good long-term operation limit." The real criterion is the running vibration. If excessive, particularly at twice running frequency and axially, further alignment improvement is probably required. Analysis of failed components such as bearings, couplings, and seals can also indicate the need for improved alignment.

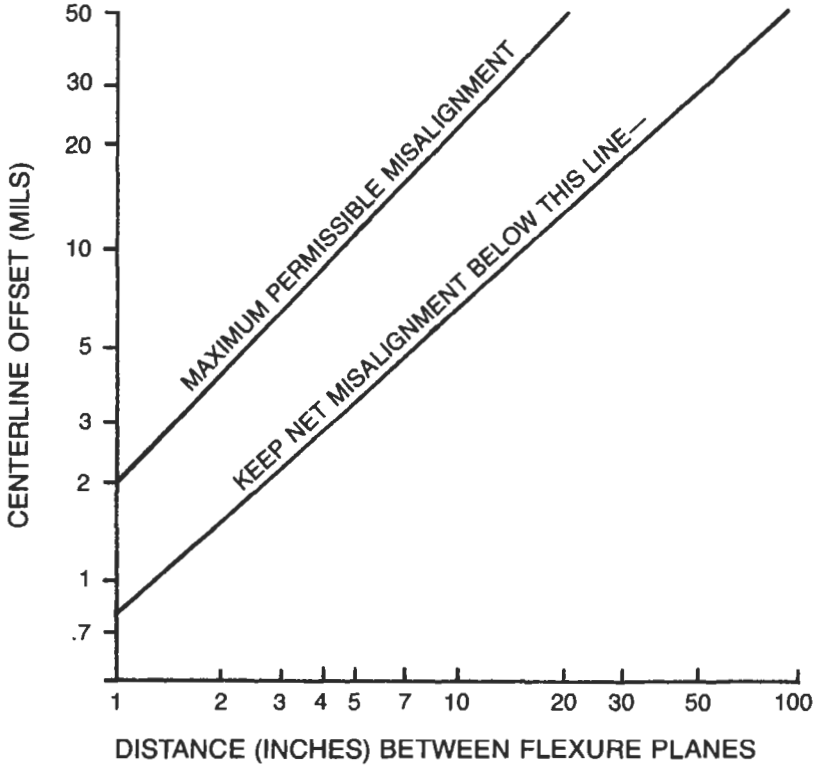


Figure 5-2. Misalignment tolerances.

Figure 5-2 can be applied to determine allowable misalignment for machinery equipped with nonlubricated metal disc and diaphragm couplings, up to perhaps 10,000 rpm. If the machinery is furnished with gear-type couplings, Figure 5-2 should be used up to 3,600 rpm only. At speeds higher than 3,600 rpm, gear couplings will tolerate with impunity only those shaft misalignments which limit the sliding velocity of engaging gear teeth to less than perhaps 120 in. per minute. For gear couplings, this velocity can be approximated by $V = (\pi DN) \tan\alpha$, where

D = gear pitch diameter, in.
N = revolutions per minute
$2 \tan \alpha$ = total indicator reading obtained at hub outside diameter, divided by distance between indicator planes on driver and driven equipment couplings.

Say, for example, we were dealing with a 3560 rpm pump coupled to a motor driven via a 6-in. pitch diameter gear coupling. We observe a total indicator reading of 26 mils in the vertical plane and a total indicator reading of 12 mils in the horizontal plane. The distance between the flexing member of the coupling, i.e., flexing member on driver and flexing member on driven machine, is 10 in. The total net indicator reading is $[(26)^2 + (12)^2]^{1/2} = 28.6$ mils. Tan $\alpha = (1/2)(28.6/10) = 1.43$ mils/in., or 0.00143 in./in. The sliding velocity is therefore $[(\pi)(6)(3560)(0.00143)] = 96$ in. per minute. Since this is below the maximum allowable sliding velocity of 120 in. per minute, the installation would be within allowable misalignment.

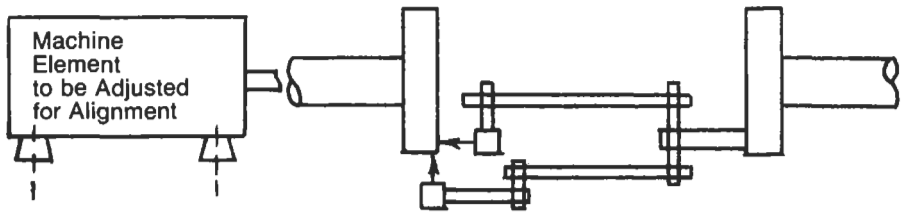
Choosing an Alignment Measurement Setup

Having taken care of the preliminaries, we are now ready to choose an alignment setup, or arrangement of measuring instruments. Many such setups are possible, generally falling into three broad categories: face-and-rim, reverse-indicator, and face-face-distance. The following sketches show several of the more common setups, numbered arbitrarily for ease of future reference. Note that if measurements are taken with calipers or ID micrometers, it may be necessary to reverse the sign from that which would apply if dial indicators are used.

Figures 5-3 through 5-8 show several common arrangements of indicators, jigs, etc. Other arrangements are also possible. For example, Figures 5-3 and 5-4 can be done with jigs, either with or without breaking the coupling. They can also sometimes be done when no spacer is present,by using right-angle indicator extension tips. Figures 5-6 and 5-7 can be set up with both extension arms and indicators on the same side,

(Text continued on page 180)

Setup 1—
Two-Indicator Face-and-Rim



Setup 1A—
Two Indicator
Face-and-Rim with Stationary
Shaft Not Rotatable by Hand

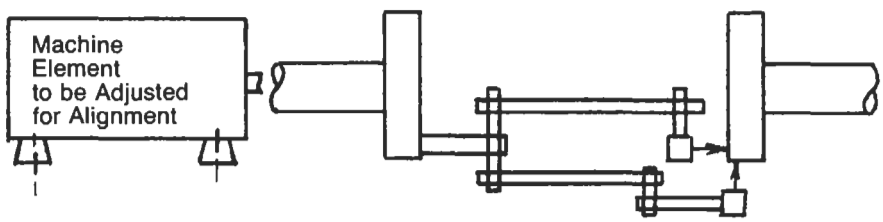


Figure 5-3. Two-indicator face-and-rim alignment method.

Setup 2—
Three Indicator Face-and-Rim

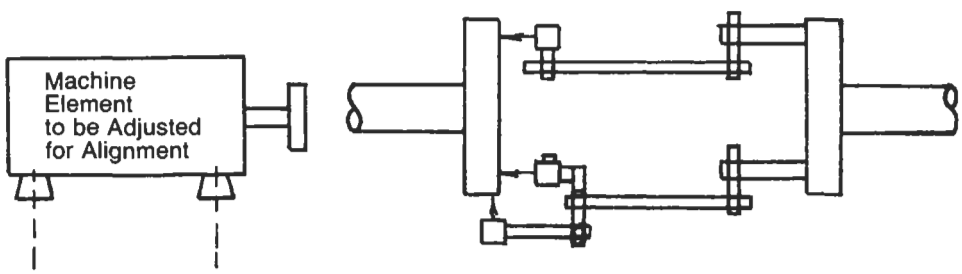


Figure 5-4. Three-indicator face-and-rim alignment method.

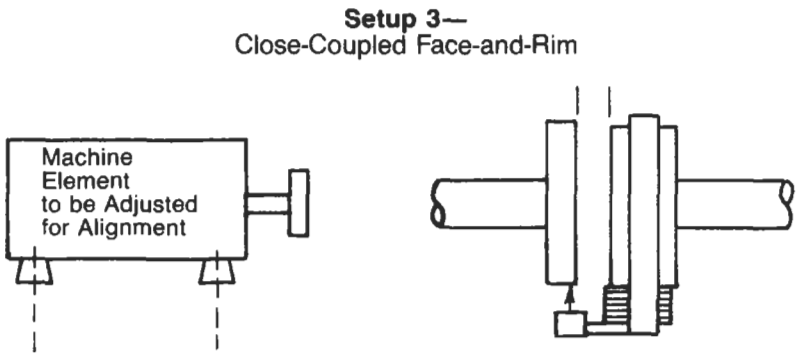


Figure 5-5. Close-coupled face-and-rim alignment method.

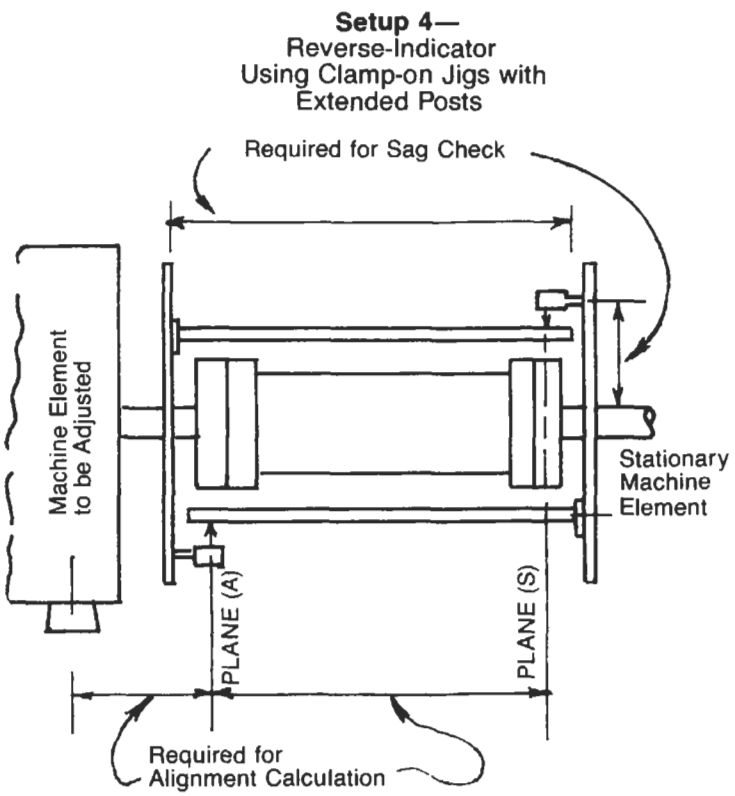


Figure 5-6. Reverse-indicator alignment using clamp-on jigs.

Setup 5

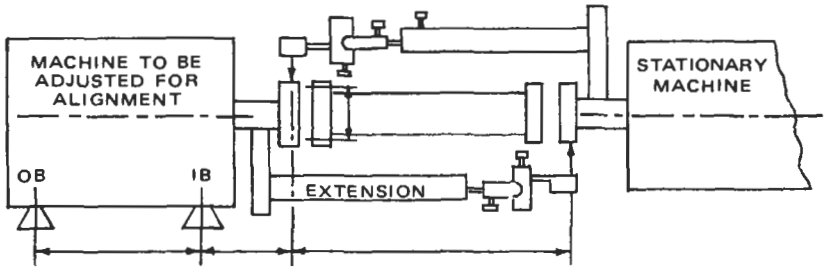


Figure 5-7. Reverse-indicator alignment using face-mounted brackets or any other brackets which hold the indicators as shown.

Setup 6

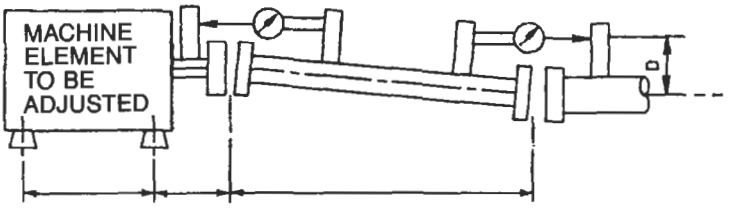


Figure 5-8. Two-indicator face-face-distance alignment method.

(Text continued from page 177)

rather than 180° opposite as shown. In such cases, however, a sign reversal will occur in the calculations. Also, we can indicate on back of face, as for connected metal disc couplings. Again, a sign reversal will occur.

In choosing the setup to use, personal preference and custom will naturally influence the decision, but here are some basic guidelines to follow.

Reverse-Indicator Method

This is the setup we prefer for most alignment work. As illustrated in Figure 5-9, it has several advantages:

1. Accuracy is not affected by axial movement of shafts in sleeve bearings.
2. Both shafts turn together, either coupled or with match marks, so coupling eccentricity and surface irregularities do not reduce accuracy of alignment readings.

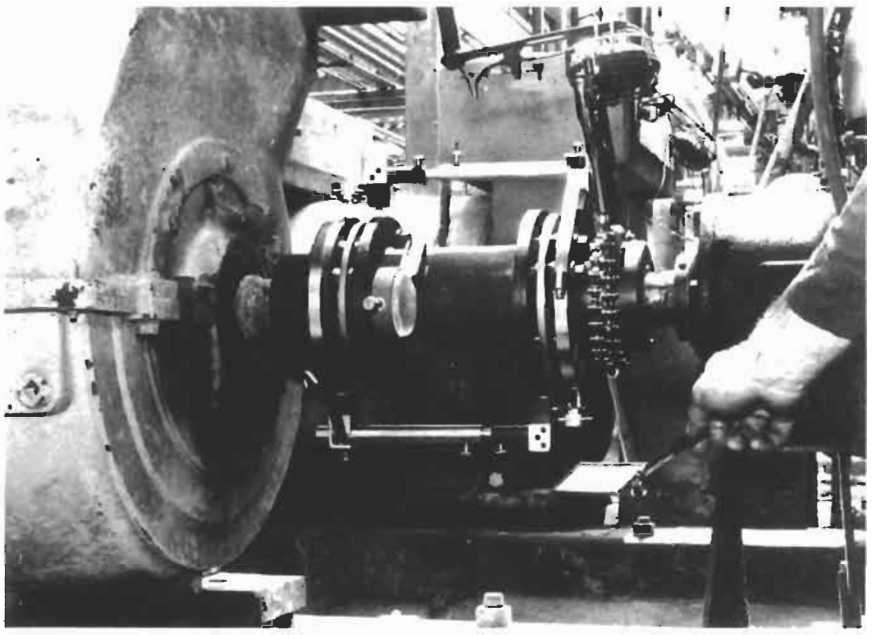


Figure 5-9. Reverse indicator setup.

3. Face alignment, if desired, can be derived quite easily without direct measurement.
4. Rim measurements are easy to calibrate for bracket sag. Face sag, by contrast, is considerably more complex to measure.
5. Geometric accuracy is usually better with reverse-indicator method in process plants, where most couplings have spacers.
6. With suitable clamp-on jigs, the reverse-indicator method can be used quite easily for measuring without disconnecting the coupling or removing its spacer. This saves time, and for gear couplings, reduces the chance for lubricant contamination.
7. For the more complex alignment situations, where thermal growth and/or multi-element trains are involved, reverse-indicator can be used quite readily to draw graphical plots showing alignment conditions and moves. It is also useful for calculating optimum moves of two or more machine elements, when physical limits do not allow full correction to be made by moving a single element.
8. When used with jigs and posts, single-axis leveling is sufficient for ball-bearing machines, and two-axis leveling will suffice for sleeve-bearing machines.

9. For long spans, adjustable clamp-on jigs are available for reverse-indicator application, without requiring coupling spacer removal. Face-and-rim jigs for long spans, by contrast, are usually nonadjustable custom brackets requiring spacer removal to permit face mounting.
10. With the reverse-indicator setup, we mount only one indicator per bracket, thus reducing sag as compared to face-and-rim, which mounts two indicators per bracket. (Face-and-rim can do it with one per bracket if we use two brackets, or if we remount indicators and rotate a second time, but this is more trouble.)

There are some limitations of the reverse-indicator method. It should not be used on close-coupled installations, unless jigs can be attached behind the couplings to extend the span to 3 in. or more. Failure to observe this limitation will usually result in calculated moves which overcorrect for the misalignment.

Both coupled shafts *must* be rotatable, preferably by hand, and preferably while coupled together. If only one shaft can be rotated, or if neither can be rotated, the reverse-indicator method cannot be used.

If the coupling diameter exceeds available axial measurement span, geometric accuracy will be poorer with reverse-indicator than with face-and-rim.

If required span exceeds jig span capability, either get a bigger jig or change to a different measurement setup such as face-face-distance. Cooling tower drives would be an example of this.

Face-and-Rim Method

This is the "traditional" setup which is probably the most popular, although it is losing favor as more people learn about reverse-indicator.

Advantages of face-and-rim:

1. It can be used on large, heavy machines whose shafts cannot be turned.
2. It has better geometric accuracy than reverse-indicator, for large diameter couplings with short spans.
3. It is easier to apply on short-span and small machines than is reverse-indicator, and will often give better accuracy.

Limitations of face-and-rim:

1. If used on a machine in which one or both shafts cannot be turned, some runout error may occur, due to shaft or coupling eccentricity.

2. If used on a sleeve bearing machine, axial float error may occur. One method of avoiding this is to bump the turned shaft against the axial stop each time before reading. Another way is to use a second face indicator 180° around from the first, and take half the algebraic difference of the two face readings after 180° rotation from zero start. Figure 5-10 illustrates this alignment method. Two 2-in. tubular graphite jigs are used for light weight and high rigidity.
3. If used with jigs and posts, two or three axis leveling is required, for ball and sleeve bearing machines respectively. Reverse-indicator requires leveling in one less axis for each.
4. Face-and-rim has lower geometric accuracy than reverse-indicator, for spans exceeding coupling or jig diameter.
5. Face sag is often insignificant, but it can occur on some setups, and result in errors if not accounted for. Calibration for face sag is considerably more complex than for rim sag.
6. For long spans, face-and-rim jigs are usually custom-built brackets requiring spacer removal to permit face mounting. Long-span reverse-indicator jigs, by contrast, are available in adjustable clamp-on models not requiring spacer removal.
7. Graphing the results of face-and-rim measurements is more complex than with reverse-indicator measurements.

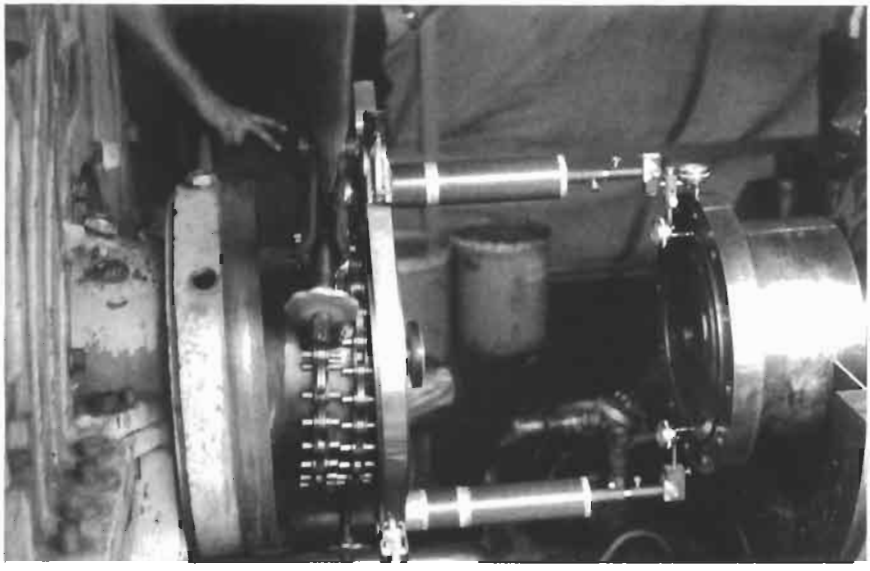


Figure 5-10. Face-and-rim indicator setup using lightweight, high-rigidity tubular graphite fiber-reinforced epoxy jigs.

Face-Face-Distance Method

Advantages of face-face-distance:

1. It is usable on long spans, such as cooling tower drives, without elaborate long-span brackets or consideration of bracket sag.
2. It is the basis for thermal growth measurement in the Indikon proximity probe system, and again is unaffected by long axial spans.
3. It is sometimes a convenient method for use with diaphragm couplings such as Bendix and Koppers, allowing mounting of indicator holders on spacer tube, with indicator contact points on diaphragm covers.

Limitations of face-face-distance:

1. It has no advantage over the other methods for anything except long spans.
2. It cannot be used for installations where no coupling spacer is present.
3. Its geometric accuracy will normally be lower than either of the other two methods.
4. It may or may not be affected by axial shaft movement in sleeve bearings, but this can be avoided by the same techniques as for face-and-rim.

Laser-Optic Alignment

In the early 1980's, by means of earth-bound laser beams and a reflector mounted on the moon, man has determined the distance between earth and the moon to within about 6 inches.

Such accuracy is a feature of optical measurement systems, as light travels through space in straight lines, and a bundled laser ray with particular precision.

Thus, critical machinery alignment, where accuracy of measurement is of paramount importance, is an ideal application for a laser-optic alignment system.

The inherent problems of mechanical procedure and sequence of measuring have been solved by Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, of 8045 Ismaning (West Germany), whose OPTALIGN® system comprises a semiconductor laser emitting a beam in the infrared range (wavelength 820 mm), along with a beamfinder incorporating an infrared detector. The laser beam is refracted through a prism and is caught by a receiver/detector.

These light-weight, nonbulky devices are mounted on the equipment shafts, and only a cord-connected microcomputer module is external to the beam emission and receiver/detector devices.

The prism redirects the beam and allows measurement of parallel offset in one plane and angularity in another, thus simultaneously controlling both. In one 360° rotation of the shafts all four directional alignment corrections are determined.

The receiver is a biaxial analog photoelectric semiconductor position detector, yielding mathematical results to within one micron. Data for computation are entered automatically through a cable direct from the receiver/detector. The only information still to be entered manually is the relative position, 4 times, at 0, 90, 180 and 270°.

With the data automatically obtained from the receiver/detector, the microcomputer instantaneously yields the horizontal and vertical adjustment results for the alignment of the machine to be moved.

Physical contact between measuring points on both shafts is no longer required, as this is now bridged by the laser beam, eliminating the possibilities for error arising from gravitational hardware sag as well as from sticky dial indicators, etc. The system's basic attachment is still carried out with a standard quick-fit bracketing system, or with any other suitable attachment hardware.

If the reader owns an OPTALIGN® system, he does not have to be concerned with sag. Other readers must continue the checkout process.

Checking for Bracket Sag

Long spans between coupling halves may cause the dial indicator fixture to sag measurably because of the weight of the fixture and the dial indicators. Although sag may be minimized by proper bracing, sag effects should still be considered in vertical alignment. To determine sag, install the dial indicators on the alignment fixture in the same orientation and relative position as in the actual alignment procedure with the fixture resting on a level surface as shown in Figure 5-11. With a small sling and scale, lift the indicator end of the fixture so that the fixture is in the horizontal position. Note the reading on the scale. Assume for example that the scale reading was 7.5 lbs. Next, mount the alignment fixture on the coupling hub with the dial indicator plunger touching the top vertical rim of the opposite coupling hub. Set the dial indicator to zero. Next, locate the sling in the same relative position as before and, while observing the scale, apply an upward force so as to repeat the previous scale reading (assumed 7.5 lbs in our example). Note the dial indicator reading while

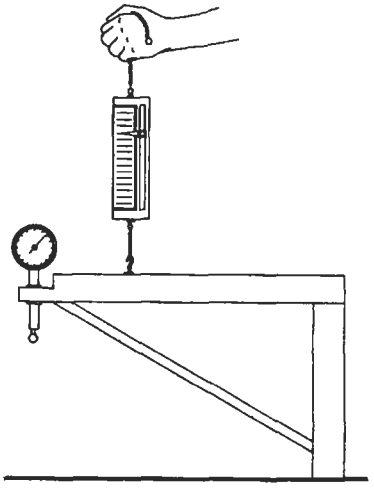


Figure 5-11. Testing for bracket sag.

holding the upward force. Let us assume for example that we observe a dial indicator reading of -0.004 in. Using this specific methodology, sag error applies equally to the top and bottom readings. Therefore, the sag correction to the total indicator reading is double the indicated sag and must be *algebraically* subtracted from the bottom vertical parallel reading, i.e., $-(2)(-.004) = +.008$ correction to bottom reading.

This method is a clever one for face-mounted brackets. For clamp-on brackets, however, it would be easier and more common to attach them to a horizontal pipe on sawhorses, and roll top to bottom. Figure 5-12 shows this conventional method which, except for the sag compensator device, is almost universally employed. The sag compensator feature incorporates a weight-beam scale which applies an upward force when the indicator bracket is located at the top of the machine shaft, and an equal, but opposite, force when the indicator bracket and shaft combination is rotated to the down position, 180° removed.

In any event, let us assume that we obtain readings of 0 and $+0.160$ in. at the top and bottom vertical parallels respectively. We correct for sag in the following manner:

Using the first method of sag determination, we observe bottom parallel reading	+.160 in.
Sag correction $-2(-.004) = +.008$	+.008 in.
Corrected bottom parallel reading	+.168 in.

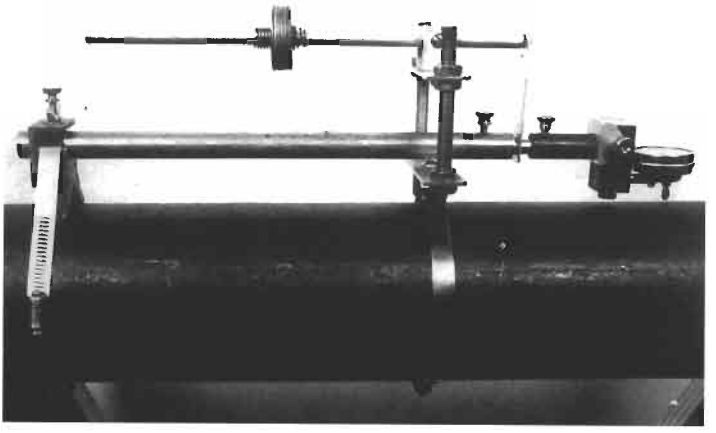


Figure 5-12. Sag compensator.

Bracket Sag Effect on Face Measurements

Bracket sag is generally thought to primarily affect rim readings, with little effect on face readings. Often this is true, but some risk may be incurred by assuming this without a test. Unlike rim sag, face sag effect depends not only on jig or bracket stiffness, but on its geometry.

Determining face sag effect is fairly easy. First get rim sag for span to be used (we are referring here to the full indicator deflection due to sag when the setup is rotated from top to bottom). This may be obtained by trial, with rim indicator only, or from a graph of sags compiled for the bracket to be used. Then install a setup with rim indicator only, on calibration pipe or on actual field machine, and "lay on" the face indicator and accessories, noting additional rim indicator deflection when this is done. Double this additional deflection, and add it to the rim sag found previously, if both the face and rim indicators are to be used simultaneously. If the face and the rim indicators are to be used separately, to reduce sag, use the original rim sag in the normal manner, and use this same original rim sag as shortly to be described in determining face sag effect—in this latter case utilizing a rim indicator installed temporarily with the face indicator for this purpose. If the face indicator is a different type (i.e., different weight) from the rim indicator, obtain rim sag using this face indicator on the rim, and use this figure to determine face sag effect.

Now install face and rim setup on the actual machine, and zero the indicators. With indicators at the top, deflect bracket upward an amount equal to the appropriate rim sag, reading on the rim indicator, and note the face indicator reading. The face sag correction with indicators at bottom would be this amount with opposite sign. If zeroing the setup at the bottom, the face sag correction at the top would be this amount with same sign (if originally determined at top, as described).

Face Sag Effect—Examples

Example 1

Face and rim indicators are to be used together as shown in Figure 5-3. Assume you will obtain the following from your sag test:

Rim sag with rim indicator only = .004 in.
Rim sag with two indicators = .007 in.

Mount the setup on the machine in the field, and with indicators at top, deflect the bracket upward .007 in. as measured on the rim indicator. When this is done, the face indicator reads plus .002 in. Face sag correction at the bottom position would therefore be minus .002 in. If you wish to zero at the bottom for alignment, but otherwise have data as noted, the face sag correction at the top would be plus .002 in.

Example 2

Face and rim indicators are to be used separately to reduce sag. Both indicators are the same type and weight. Other basic data are also the same.

Install face indicator and temporary rim indicator on the machine in the field, and place in top position. Zero indicators and deflect upward .004 in. as measured on rim indicator. Face indicator reads plus .0013 in. Face sag correction at the bottom would therefore be minus .0013 in. If zeroing at the bottom for alignment, but otherwise the same as above, face sag correction at top would be plus .0013 in.

Example 3

This will determine sag for "3-Indicator Face-and-Rim Setup" shown in Figure 5-4.

Set up the jig to the same geometry as for field installation but with rim indicator only and roll 180° top to bottom on pipe to get total single indicator rim sag _____ (Step 1).

Zero rim indicator on top and add or "lay on" face indicator, noting rim indicator deflection that occurs ____ (Step 2). Double this ____ (Step 3).

Add it to original total single indicator rim sag (Step 1). ____ (Step 4).

This figure, preceded by a plus sign, will be the sag correction for the rim indicator readings taken at bottom.

With field measurement setup as shown, zero all indicators, and deflect the indicator end of the upper bracket upward an amount equal to the total rim sag (Step 4). Note the face sag effect by reading the face indicator. This amount, with opposite sign, is the face sag correction to apply to the readings taken at the lower position ____ (Step 5).

Now deflect the upper bracket back down from its "total rim sag" deflection an amount equal to Step 3.

The amount of sag remaining on the face indicator, preceded by the *same* sign, is the sag correction for the single face indicator being read at the top position ____ (Step 6).

All of the foregoing refers of course to *bracket* sag. In long machines, we will also have *shaft* sag. This is mentioned only in passing, since there is no need to do anything about it at this time. Our "point-by-point" alignment will automatically take care of shaft sag. For initial leveling of large turbogenerators, etc., especially if using precision optical equipment, shaft sag must be considered. Manufacturers of such machines know this, and provide their erectors with suitable data for sag compensation. Further discussion of shaft sag is beyond the scope of this text.

Leveling Curved Surfaces

It is common practice to set up the "rim" dial indicators so their contact tips rest directly on the surface of coupling rims or shafts. If gross misalignment is not present, and if coupling and/or shaft diameters are large, which is usually the case, accuracy will often be adequate. If, however, major misalignment exists, and/or the rim or shaft diameters are small, a significant error is likely to be present. It occurs due to the measurement surface curvature, as illustrated in Figures 5-13 and 5-14.

This error can usually be recognized by repeated failure of top-plus-bottom (T + B) readings to equal side-plus-side (S + S) readings within one or two thousandths of an inch, and by calculated corrections resulting in an improvement which undershoots or overshoots and requires repeated corrections to achieve desired tolerance. A way to minimize this error is to use jigs, posts, and accessories which "square the circle." Here we attach flat surfaces or posts to the curved surfaces, and level

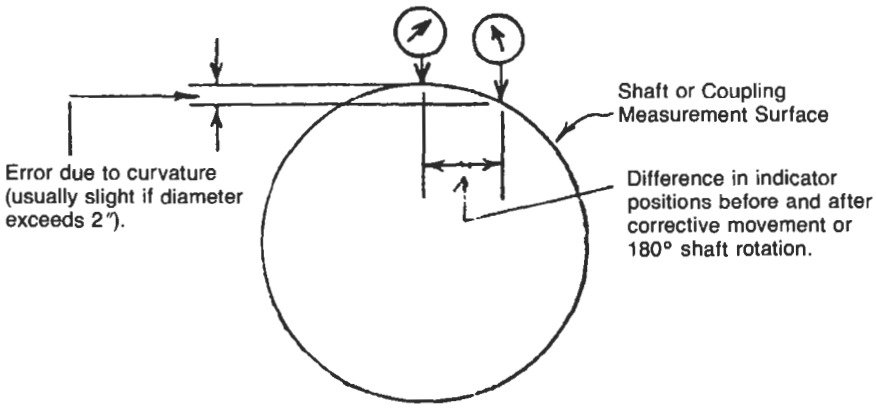


Figure 5-13. Error can be induced due to curvature effect on misaligned components.

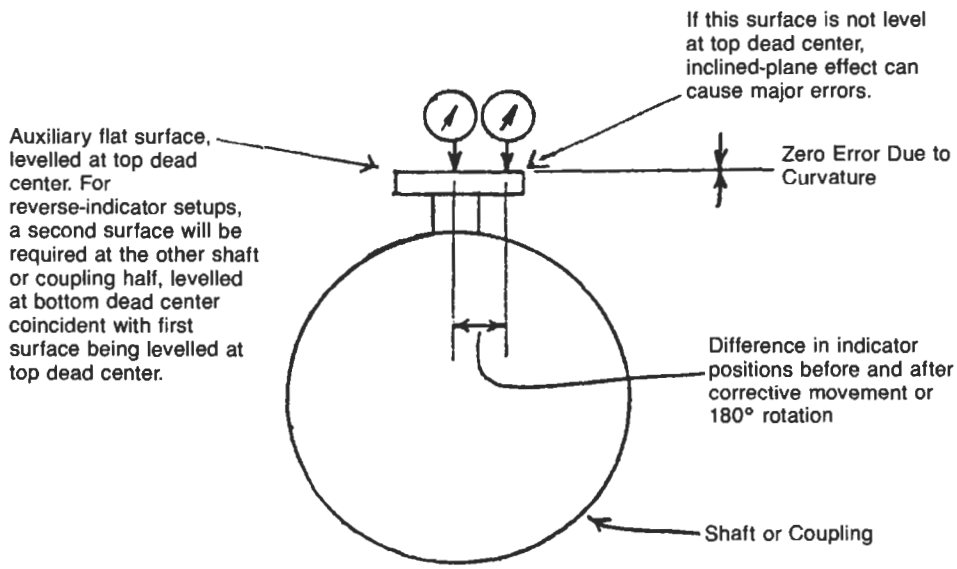


Figure 5-14. Auxiliary flat surface added to avoid curvature-induced measurement error.

them at top and bottom dead center. This corrects the error as shown in Figure 5-14.

For this method to be fully effective, rotation should be performed at accurate 90° quadrants, using inclinometer or bubble-vial device.

In most cases, however, this error is not enough to bother eliminating—it is easier just to make a few more corrective moves, reducing the error each time.

Jig Posts

The preceding explanation showed a rudimentary auxiliary surface, or "jig post," used for "squaring the circle." A more common reason for using jig posts is to permit measurement without removing the spacer on a concealed hub gear coupling. If jig posts are used, it is important that they be used properly. In effect, we must ensure that the surfaces contacted by the indicators meet these criteria:

- As already shown, they must be leveled in coordination at top and bottom dead centers, to avoid inclined plane error.
- If any axial shaft movement can occur, as with sleeve bearings, the surfaces should also be made parallel to their shafts. This can be done by leveling axially at the top, rotating to the bottom, and rechecking. If bubble is not still level, tilt the surface back toward level for a half correction.
- If face readings are to be taken on posts, the post face surfaces should be machined perpendicular to their rim surfaces. In addition to this, and to steps 1 and 2 just described, rotate shafts so posts are horizontal. Using a level, adjust face surfaces so they are vertical. Rotate 180° and recheck with level. If not still vertical, tilt back toward vertical to make a half correction on the bubble. This will accomplish our desired objective of getting the face surface perpendicular to the shaft in all measurement planes.

The foregoing assumes use of tri-axially adjustable jig posts. If such posts are not available, it may be possible to get good results using accurately machined nonadjustable posts. If readings and corrections do not turn out as desired, however, it could pay to make the level checks as described—they might pinpoint the problem and suggest a solution such as using a nonpost measurement setup.

Interpretation and Data Recording

Due to sag as well as geometry of the machine installation, it is difficult and deceptive to try second-guessing the adequacy of alignment solely from the "raw" indicator readings. It is necessary to correct for sag, then note the "interpreted" readings, then plot or calculate these to see the overall picture—including equivalent face misalignment if primary readings were reverse-indicator on rims only. Sometimes thermal offsets must be included, which further complicates the overall picture.

As a way to systematically consider these factors and arrive at a solution, it is helpful to use prepared data forms and stepwise calculation.

Suppose we are using the two-indicator face-rim method shown in Figure 5-3; let's call it "Setup #1." To start, prepare a data sheet as shown in Figure 5-15. Next, measure and fill in the "basic dimensions" at the top. Then, fill in the orientation direction, which is *north* in our example. Next, take a series of readings, zeroing at the top, and returning for final readings which should also be zero or nearly so. Now do a further check: Add the top and bottom readings algebraically (T + B), and add the side readings (S + S). The two sums should be equal, or nearly so. If the checks are poor, take a new set of readings. Do the checks *before* accounting for bracket sag. Now, fill in the known or assumed bracket sag. If the bracket does not sag (optimist!), fill in zero. Combine the sag algebraically with the vertical rim reading as shown, and get the net reading using (+) or (−) as appropriate to accomplish the sag correction. A well-prepared form will have this sign printed on it. If it does not, mentally figure out what must be done to "un-sag" the bracket in the final position, and what sign would apply when doing so.

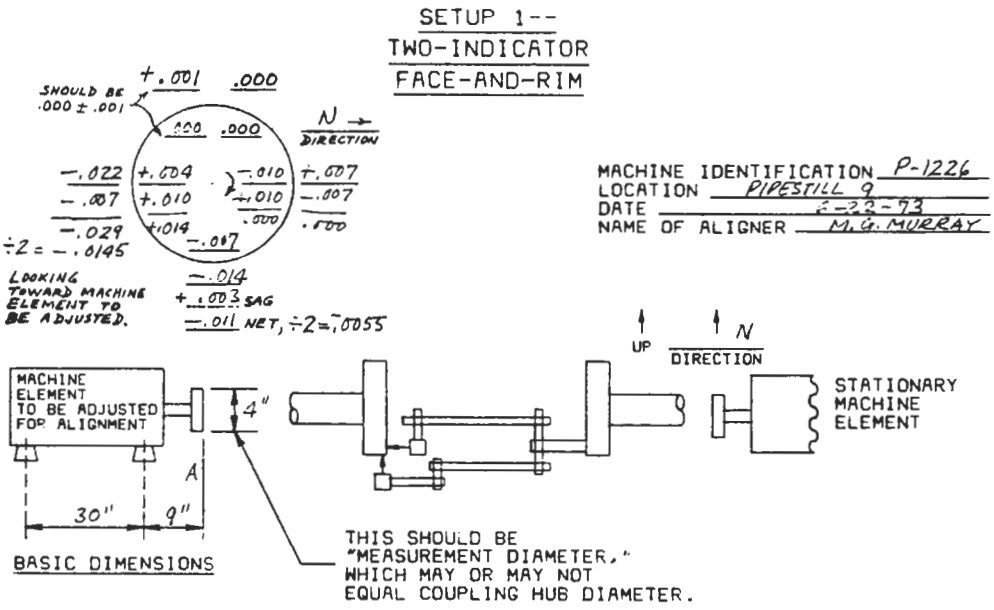
Now we are ready to interpret our data in the space provided on the form. To do this, first take half of our net rim reading:

$$\frac{-.011}{2} = -.0055$$

This is because we are looking for centerline rather than rim offset. Since its sign is minus, we can see from the indicator arrangement sketch that the machine element to be adjusted is *higher* than the stationary element, at the plane of measurement. This assumes the use of a conventional American dial indicator, in which a positive reading indicates contact point movement into the indicator.

By the same reasoning, we can see that the bottom face distance is .007 in. wider than the top face distance.

Going now to the horizontal readings, we make the north rim reading zero by adding −.007 in. to it. To preserve the equality of our algebra,



Check totals:
(T + B should approx. equal S + S, before sag correction.)

	FACE	RIM
T + B =	−.007	−.014
S + S =	−.006	−.015

INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: _____ *(higher) (lower)* at plane **S**.
versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .0055 *(higher)* ~~*(lower)*~~ at plane **A**.
versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.
FACE GAP IS: .007 wider at the ~~*(top)*~~ *(bottom)*.
versus: _____ wider at the *(top) (bottom)* desired.

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* at plane **S**.
versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .0145 *(N)* ~~*(S) (E) (W)*~~ at plane **A**.
versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.
FACE GAP IS: .014 wider at *(N)* ~~*(S) (E) (W)*~~.
versus: _____ wider at *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

~~*(Raise)*~~ *(Lower)* inboard feet .022. Move inboard feet .0165 *(N)* ~~*(S) (E) (W)*~~.
~~*(Raise)*~~ *(Lower)* outboard feet .076. Move outboard feet .1206 *(N)* ~~*(S) (E) (W)*~~.

DESIRED OFFSETS:

Set inboard feet _____ *(high) (low)*. Set inboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)*.
Set outboard feet _____ *(high) (low)*. Set outboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)*.

CALCULATED NET CORRECTIVE MOVEMENTS WITH OFFSETS APPLIED:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet _____. Move inboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)*.
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet _____. Move outboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)*.

Figure 5-15. Basic data sheet for two-indicator face-and-rim method.

we also add −.007 in. to the south rim reading, giving us −.029 in. Taking half of this, we find that the machine element to be adjusted is .0145 in. north of the stationary element at the plane of measurement.

Finally, we do a similar operation on our horizontal face readings, and determine that the north face distance is wider by .014 in.

The remaining part of the form provides space to put the calculated corrective movements. Although these have been filled in for our example, let's leave them for the time being, since we are not yet ready to explain the calculation procedure. We will show you how to get these numbers later. If you think you already know how, go ahead and try—the results may be interesting.

You have now seen the general idea about data recording and interpretation. By doing it systematically, on a prepared form corresponding to the actual field setup, you can minimize errors. If you are interrupted, you will not have to wonder what those numbers meant that you wrote down on the back of an envelope an hour ago. We will defer consideration of the remaining setups, until we have explained how to calculate alignment corrective movements. We will then take numerical examples for all the setups illustrated, and go through them all the way.

Calculating the Corrective Movements

Many machinists make alignment corrective movements by trial and error. A conscientious person can easily spend two days aligning a machine this way, but by knowing how to calculate the corrections, the time can be cut to two hours or less.

Several methods, both manual and electronic, exist for doing such calculations. All, of course, are based on geometry, and some are rather complicated and difficult to follow. For those interested in such things, see References 1 through 15. Also, the alignment specialist should be aware of programmable calculator solutions. These make use of popular calculators such as the TI 59 and HP 67. By recording the alignment measurements on a prepared form, and entering these figures in the prescribed manner into the calculator, the required moves come out as answers. A variation of this is the TRS 80 pocket computer which has been programmed to do alignment calculations via successive instructions to the user telling him what information to enter.

By far the simplest calculator is the one described earlier in conjunction with the laser-based OPTALIGN® system. Next to it, we rank the IMS calculator.[14] This is designed specifically "from the ground up" for the more common face-and-rim and reverse-indicator calculations, rather than being a standard commercial calculator or computer adapted for alignment. For the more complex multi-element trains, larger central computers can be used directly with telephone linkups. Ray Dodd's book

(*Total Alignment*, Reference 3) describes one such system. Another that we saw demonstrated provides not only the numerical data, but a diagrammatic representation of the machines and their alignment relationship, on a cathode ray tube.

The foregoing electronic systems are popular, and have advantages in speed, accuracy, and ease of use. They have disadvantages in cost, usability under adverse field and hazardous area conditions, pilferage, sensitivity to damage from temperature extremes and rough handling, and availability to the field machinist at 2:00 A.M. on a holiday weekend. They also, for the most part, work mainly with numbers, and the answers may require acceptance on blind faith. By contrast, graphical methods inherently aid visualization by showing the relationship of adjacent shaft centerlines to scale.

Manual calculation methods have the advantage of low investment (pencil and paper will suffice, but a sliderule or simple calculator will be faster). They have the disadvantage, some say, of requiring more thinking than the programmed electronic solutions, particularly to choose the plus and minus signs correctly.

The graphical methods, which we prefer, have the advantage of aiding visualization and avoiding confusion. Their accuracy will sometimes be less than that of the "pure" mathematical methods, but usually not enough to matter. Investment is low—graph paper and plotting boards are inexpensive. Speed is high once proficiency is attained, which usually does not take long.

In this text, we will emphasize the graphical approach. Before doing so, let's highlight some common manual mathematical calculations.

Nelson[11] published an explanation of one rather simple method a number of years ago. A shortened explanation is given in Figure 5-16. For our given example, this would work out as follows:

Gap difference:	.007 in.
Foot distance:	30 in.
Coupling measurement diameter:	4 in.

$$(.007) \times \frac{(30)}{(4)} = 0.0525 \text{ in.}$$—say .053 in. shim addition beneath inboard feet, or removal beneath outboard feet, or a combination of the two, for a total of .053 in. correction.

Then, using rim measurements, determine parallel correction, and add or remove shims equally at all feet. Now do horizontal alignment similarly, and repeat as necessary.

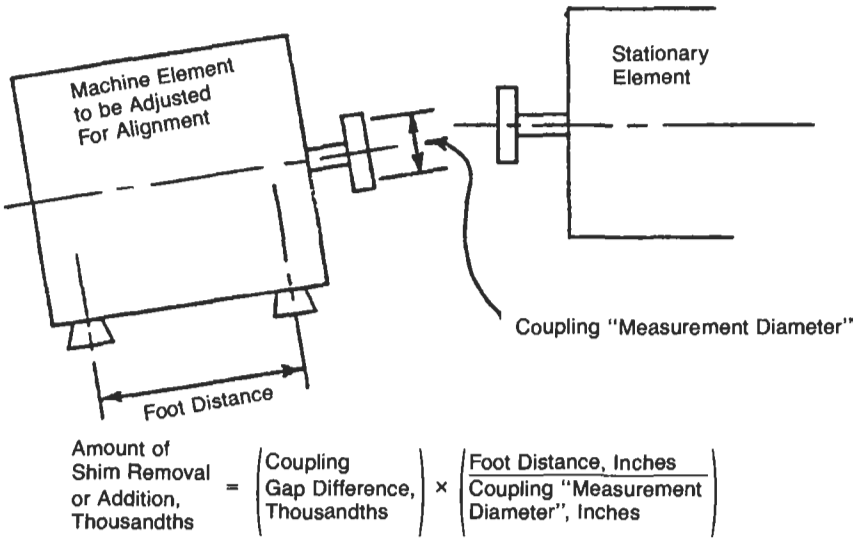


Figure 5-16. Basic mathematical formula used in determining alignment corrections.

Nelson's method is easy to understand, and it works. It is basically a four-step procedure in this order:

1. Vertical angular correction.
2. Vertical parallel correction.
3. Horizontal angular correction.
4. Horizontal parallel correction.

It has three disadvantages, however. First, it requires four steps, whereas the more complex mathematical methods can combine angular and parallel data, resulting in a two-step correction. Secondly, it is quite likely that initial angular correction will subsequently have to be partially "un-done," when making the corresponding parallel correction. Nobody likes to cut and install shims, then end up removing half of them. Finally, it is designed only for face-and-rim setups, and does not apply to the increasingly popular reverse-indicator technique.

We will now show two additional examples, wherein the angular and parallel correction are calculated at the same time, for an overall two-step correction. Frankly, we ourselves no longer use these methods, nor do we still use Nelson's method, but are including them here for the sake

of completeness. Graphical methods, as shown later, are easier and faster. In particular, the alignment plotting board should be judged extremely useful. Readers who are not interested in the mathematical method may wish to skip to page 192, where the much easier graphical methods are explained. But, in any event, here is the full mathematical treatment.

In our first example, we will reuse the data already given in our setup No. 1 data sheet.

First, we will solve for vertical corrections:

Using Nelson's method, we found it necessary to make a 0.053 in. shim correction. Let us arbitrarily say this will be a shim addition beneath the inboard feet. At the coupling face, we then get a rise of:

$$\left(\frac{39}{30}\right)(.053) = .069 \text{ in.}$$

Since we were already .0055 in. too high here, this puts us

$$.069 \text{ in.} + .0055 \text{ in.} = .0745 \text{ in.}$$

too high. Therefore, subtract .0745 in. (call it .075 in.) at all feet. Thus our net shim change will be:

Inboard feet:	.053 in. − .075 in.	=	.022 in. shim removal
Outboard feet:			.075 in. shim removal

For the horizontal corrections, we proceed similarly:

$$(.014) \times \frac{30}{4} = .105 \text{ in.}$$

Outboard (west) feet must move north, inboard (east) feet must move south, or a combination of the two, for angular alignment.

Let us say the outboard feet move north 0.105 in. This makes the coupling face move south, pivoting about the inboard feet:

$$\frac{9}{30}(.105) = .0315 \text{ in.}$$

Since it was already .0145 in. too far north, it is now:

$$.0315 - .0145 = .0170 \text{ in.}$$

too far south, as are the feet. Therefore, net correction will be:

Move outboard feet .105 in. + .017 in.	=	.122 in. north
Move inboard feet		.017 in. north

It can be seen that our answers agree closely with those on the data sheet, which were obtained graphically. The differences are not large enough to cause us trouble in the actual field alignment correction.

Alternatively, this first example could be solved with another similar "formula method." To begin with, we draw the machine sketch, Figure 5-17. Then, we proceed by jotting down the relevant formulas:

$$\text{Correction at IB} = \pm \left(\text{Face Gap Difference}\right)\left(\frac{B}{D}\right) \pm \begin{matrix}\text{Net Parallel Offset of Shaft}\\ \text{Centerlines at}\\ \text{Plane A}\end{matrix}$$

$$\text{Correction at OB} = \pm \left(\text{Face Gap Difference}\right)\left(\frac{B + C}{D}\right) \pm \begin{matrix}\text{Net Parallel Offset of Shaft}\\ \text{Centerlines at}\\ \text{Plane A}\end{matrix}$$

For our example, the solutions would be as follows:

Vertical

$$\text{At IB, } -(.007)\left(\frac{9}{4}\right) - \left(\frac{.011}{2}\right) = -.0157 - .0055 = -.0212$$

say lower IB .021 in.

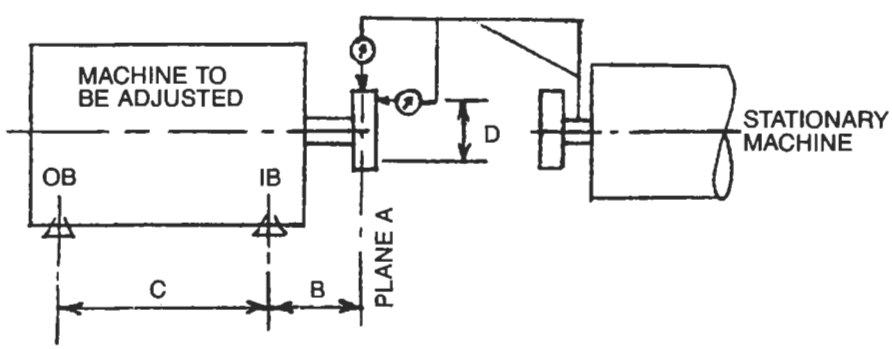


Figure 5-17. Machine sketch for face-and-rim alignment method.

$$\text{At OB, } -(.007)\left(\frac{9+30}{4}\right) - \left(\frac{.011}{2}\right) = -.0683 - .0055 = -.0738$$

say lower OB .074 in.

Horizontal

$$\text{At IB, } (.014)\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\text{N} \pm \left(\frac{.029}{2}\right)\text{S}$$

$$= .0316\ \text{N} - .0145\ \text{S}$$

$$= .0171\ \text{N};\ \text{say move IB .017 in. north}$$

$$\text{At OB, } (.014)\left(\frac{9+30}{4}\right)\text{N} \pm \left(\frac{.029}{2}\right)\text{S}$$

$$= .137\ \text{N} - .0145\ \text{S}$$

$$= .1225\ \text{N}$$

say move OB .122 in. or 123 in. north

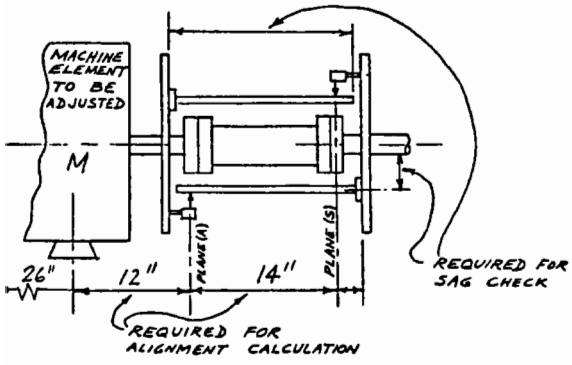
As you can see, the values found this way are close to those found earlier. The main problem people have with applying these formulas is choosing between plus and minus for the terms. The easiest way, in our opinion, is to visualize the "as found" conditions, and this will point the way that movement must proceed to go to zero misalignment. For example, our bottom face distance is wide—therefore we need to *lower* the feet (pivoting at plane A) which we denote with a minus sign. The machine element to be adjusted is *higher* at plane A—so we need to lower it some more, which takes another minus sign. For the horizontal, our north face distance is wider, so we need to move the feet north (again pivoting at plane A). The machine element to be adjusted is *north* at plane A, so we need to move it south. Call north plus or minus, so long as you call south the opposite sign. Not really hard, but a lot of people have trouble with the concept, which is why we prefer to concentrate on graphical methods, where direction of movement becomes more obvious. We will get into this shortly, but first let's do a reverse-indicator problem mathematically.

For our reverse-indicator example, we will use the setup shown earlier as Figure 5-6. Also, we must now refer to the appropriate data sheet, Figure 5-18. Finally, we resort to some triangles, Figures 5-19 and 5-20, to assist us in visualizing the situation.

(Text continued on page 202)

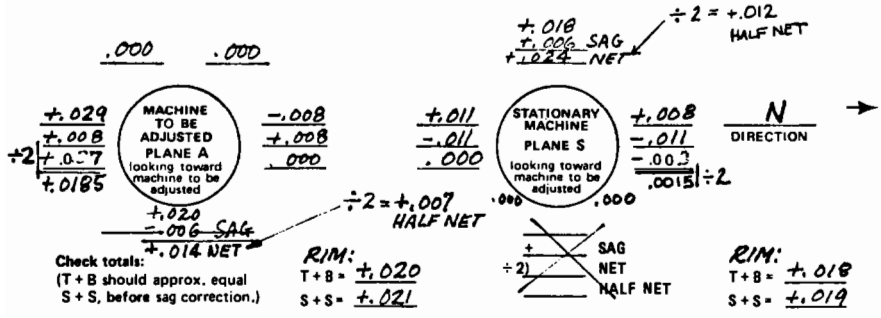
SETUP 4: REVERSE-INDICATOR USING CLAMP-ON JIGS AND EXTENDED POSTS

MACHINE IDENTIFICATION #2 AIR
LOCATION #2 POWER PLANT
DATE 6-22-73
NAME OF ALIGNER JACK BATES



UP

N
DIRECTION



Check totals:
(T + B should approx. equal S + S, before sag correction.)

INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: +.012 *(higher)* ~~(lower)~~ at plane S.
versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: +.007 *(higher)* ~~(lower)~~ at plane A.
versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.
FACE GAP IS: _____ wider at the *(top) (bottom)*.
versus: _____ wider at the *(top) (bottom)* desired.

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .0015 ~~(N)~~ *(S)* ~~(E) (W)~~ at plane S.
versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .0185 *(N)* ~~(S) (E) (W)~~ at plane A.
versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.
FACE GAP IS: _____ wider at *(N) (S) (E) (W)*.
versus: _____ wider at *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

~~*(Raise)*~~ *(Lower)* inboard feet .003. Move inboard feet .0355 ~~(N)~~ *(S)* ~~(E) (W)~~.
(Raise) ~~*(Lower)*~~ outboard feet .0065. Move outboard feet .073 ~~(N)~~ *(S)* ~~(E) (W)~~.

Figure 5-18. Data sheet for reverse-indicator alignment method.

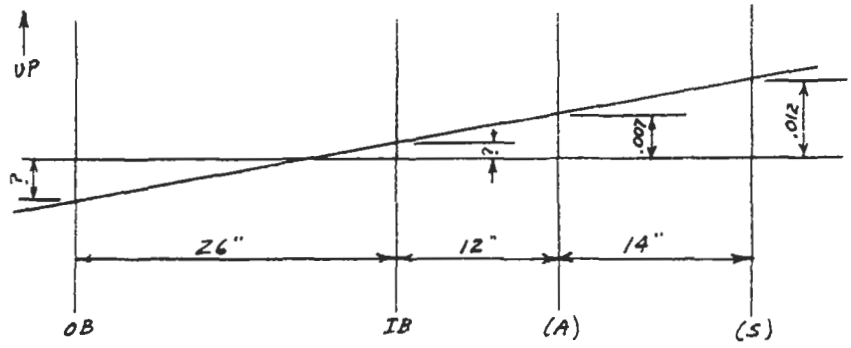


Figure 5-19. Elevation triangles for reverse-indicator alignment example.

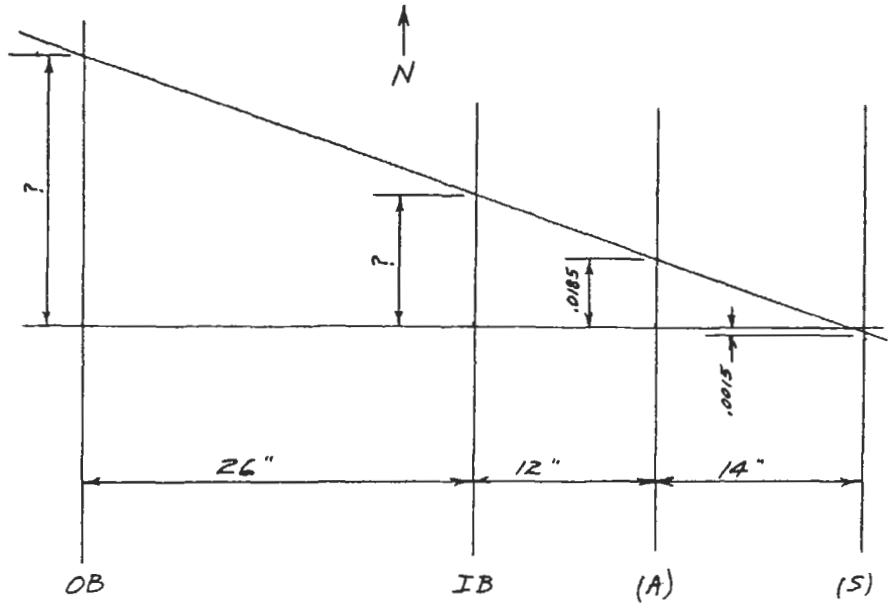


Figure 5-20. Plan view triangles for reverse-indicator alignment example.

(Text continued from page 199)

Figure 5-19 represents the elevation view. Solving, we obtain:

$$.007 \text{ in.} - (.012 \text{ in.} - .007 \text{ in.}) \left(\frac{12}{14}\right)$$

$$= .0027 \text{ in. too high at inboard feet.}$$

$$.007 \text{ in.} - (.012 \text{ in.} - .007 \text{ in.}) \left(\frac{12 + 26}{14}\right)$$

$$= .0066 \text{ in. too low at outboard feet.}$$

Figure 5-20 represents the plan view. Here,

$$.0185 + (.0185 + .0015) \left(\frac{12}{14}\right)$$

$$= .0357 \text{ in. too far north at inboard feet.}$$

$$.0185 + (.0185 + .0015) \left(\frac{12 + 26}{14}\right)$$

$$= .0729 \text{ in. too far north at outboard feet.}$$

Summarizing, we should:

Lower inboard feet .003 in.
Lower outboard feet .0065 in., say .007 in.
Move inboard feet south .036 in.
Move outboard feet south .073 in.

These results obviously agree closely with our graphical results. Again, the same results could have been obtained mathematically. To begin with, we have to provide a machine sketch, Figure 5-21. Then:

$$\text{Correction at Inboard} = \pm \left[\text{Centerline Offset at S} \pm \text{Centerline Offset at A}\right] \left(\frac{B + C}{B}\right) \pm \text{Centerline Offset at S.}$$

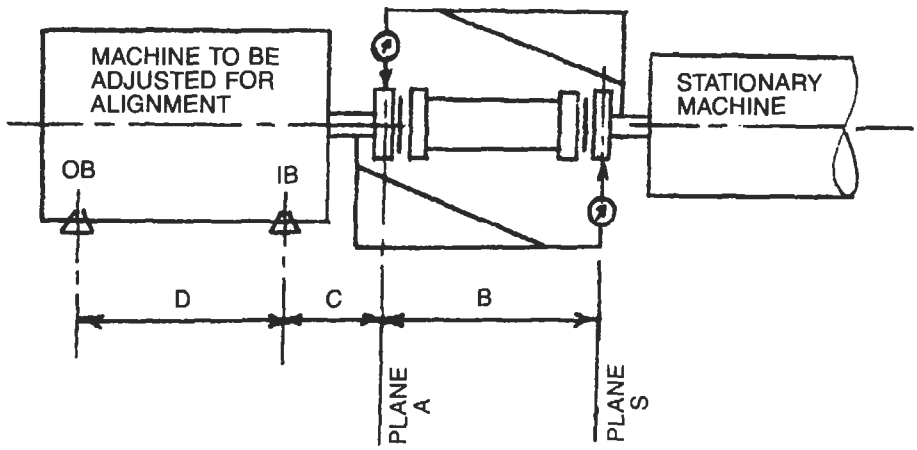


Figure 5-21. Machine sketch for reverse-indicator alignment example.

$$\text{Correction at Outboard} = \pm \left[\text{Centerline Offset at S} \pm \text{Centerline Offset at A}\right]\left(\frac{B + C + D}{B}\right) \pm \text{Centerline Offset at S.}$$

Using numbers from our example:

$$+[.012 - .007]\left(\frac{14 + 12}{14}\right) - .012 = .0093 - .012 = -.0027$$

say lower IB .003 in.

$$+[.012 - .007]\left(\frac{14 + 12 + 26}{14}\right) - .012 = +.0066 \text{ in.}$$

say raise OB .007 in.

$$-[.0015 + .0185]\left(\frac{14 + 12}{14}\right) + .0015 = -.0371 + .0015 = -.0356$$

say move IB .036 in. south

$$-[.0015 + .0185]\left(\frac{14 + 12 + 26}{14}\right)$$

$$+ .0015 = -.074 + .0015 = -.0725$$

say move OB .072 in. or .073 in. south

Again, the answers come out all right if you get the signs right, but the visualization is difficult unless you make scale drawings or graphical plots representing the "as found" conditions.

Graphical Techniques

Now let's see how we can do the same thing more easily. To do this, we will turn to graphical techniques. Reference 7 shows one version of this in an article on alignment of barrel-type centrifugal compressors. Its author stretches a strip-chart out on a drafting table, and rules in the machine element shafts, to scale, oriented as shown by reverse-indicator readings, much as we did in our previous example. Movements to achieve zero offset, or to compensate for thermal growth, can then be plotted on the same sheet. This technique has the advantage of giving a complete and permanent written visual record of what is happening, and is especially useful on multi-element machinery trains such as the article discusses.

Another graphical technique, which we prefer for most situations, is the Alignment Plotting Board. It is fast, easy, and accurate, particularly on the simple two-element trains comprising the majority of all machines. It can be used on multi-element trains, but is less efficient than graph paper beyond two elements. To our knowledge, the plotting board is the only method which handles *both* the face-and-rim and reverse-indicator setups with equal ease and can convert from R-I to F&R. An additional advantage is its portability—it is only $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ in. and is made from an "indestructible" polycarbonate plastic. Figure 5-22 shows it in use.

Let's return to our first example. For convenience, we will refer to the data sheet in Figure 5-15, then show how to find the corrections on the plotting board. This is graphically explained in Figure 5-23. By flipping back and forth between data sheet and plotting board sketches, you can see where the answers come from. It will help to also read the instructions that come with the plotting board, if you have one. With practice, the answers will appear in a minute or two.

Figure 5-22. Alignment plotting board.

After reworking our first example with the alignment plotting board, we will proceed to our second example, using the reverse-indicator setup (setup 4). This is illustrated for us in Figures 5-18 and 5-24. We will then go on and give worked-out examples using the other setups in Figures 5-25 through 5-33.

Three-Indicator Face-and-Rim

Figure 5-27 depicts a pump with ball bearings driven by a motor having sleeve bearings. External obstructions prevent the use of setups 4 or 5, and the coupling surfaces have considerable runout, making setup 1 inadvisable. It is therefore decided to use setup 2—the three-indicator face-and-rim. A sag check shows 0.002 in. sag for the rim indicator bracket. Sag for the face indicators will be ignored. A preliminary straightedge alignment is made in the horizontal plane. Both shafts are then turned together and a set of vertical readings taken as shown on the accompanying data sheet in Figure 5-28.

(Text continued on page 212)

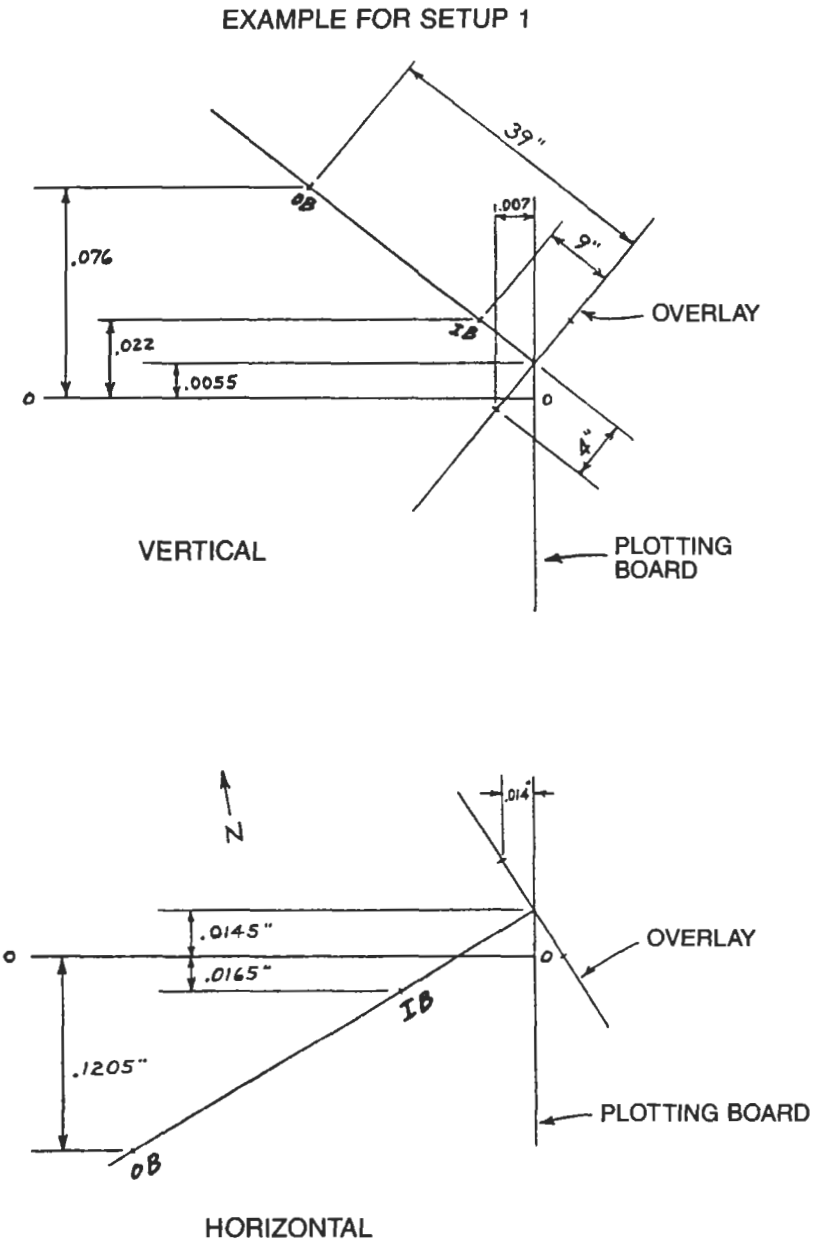


Figure 5-23. Plotting board solution for two-indicator face-and-rim method (using data from Figure 5-15).

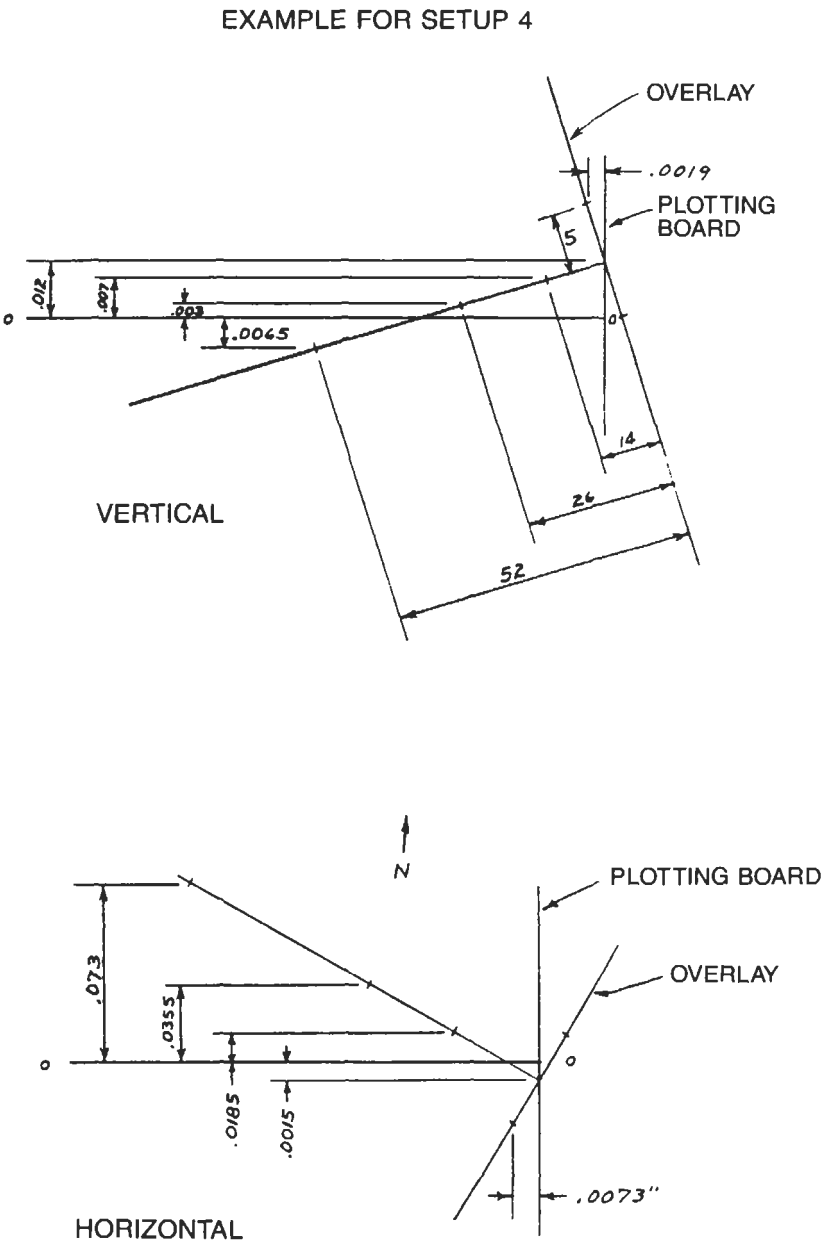
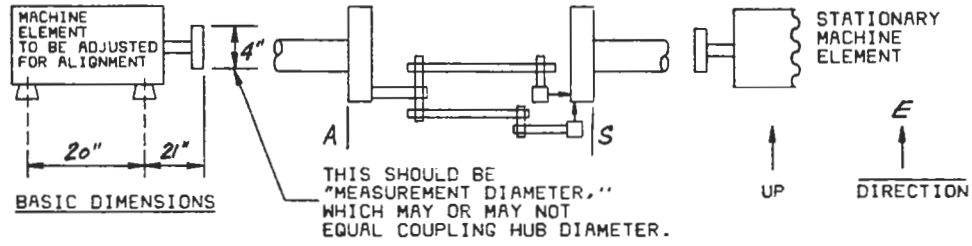
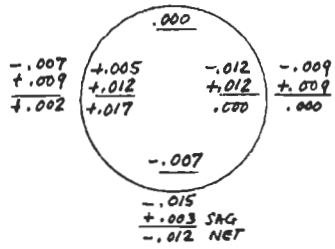


Figure 5-24. Plotting board solution for reverse-indicator method (using data from Figure 5-18).

SETUP 1A--TWO INDICATOR
FACE-AND-RIM WITH STATIONARY
SHAFT NOT ROTATABLE BY HAND

MACHINE IDENTIFICATION B-1347
LOCATION #4 FURNACE
DATE 6-22-73
NAME OF ALIGNER H.GARIG





FACE = T+B : -.007
S+S : -.007
RIM = T+B : -.015
S+S : -.016

LOOKING TOWARD MACHINE ELEMENT TO BE ADJUSTED.

INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .006 ~~(higher)~~ (lower) at plane S.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: _____ (higher) (lower) at plane A.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
FACE GAP IS: .007 wider at the ~~(top)~~ (bottom).
versus: _____ wider at the (top) (bottom) desired.

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .001 ~~(N) (S)~~ (E) ~~(W)~~ at plane S.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) at plane A.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
FACE GAP IS: .017 wider at ~~(N) (S)~~ (E) ~~(W)~~.
versus: _____ wider at (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

~~(Raise)~~ (Lower) inboard feet .031. Move inboard feet .086 (N) (S) (E) (W).
~~(Raise)~~ (Lower) outboard feet .067. Move outboard feet .170 (N) (S) (E) (W).

Figure 5-25. Basic data sheet for two-indicator face-and-rim with stationary shaft not rotatable by hand (see Figure 5-3, "Setup 1A").

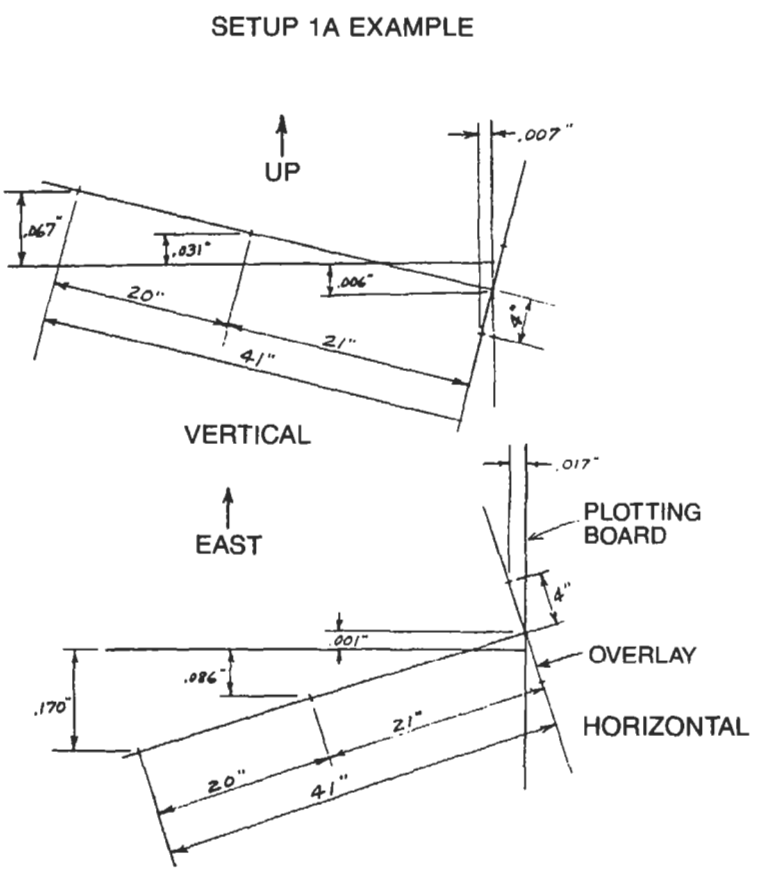


Figure 5-26. Plotting board solution for basic data from Figure 5-25.

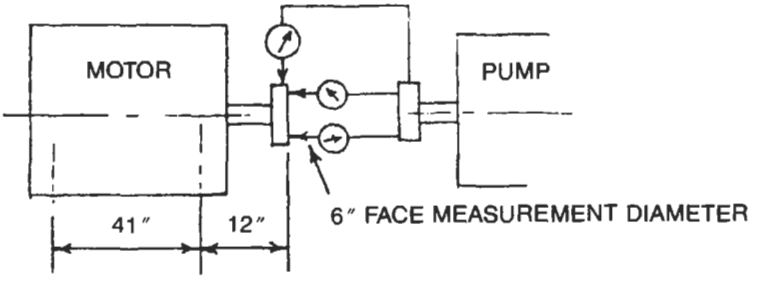
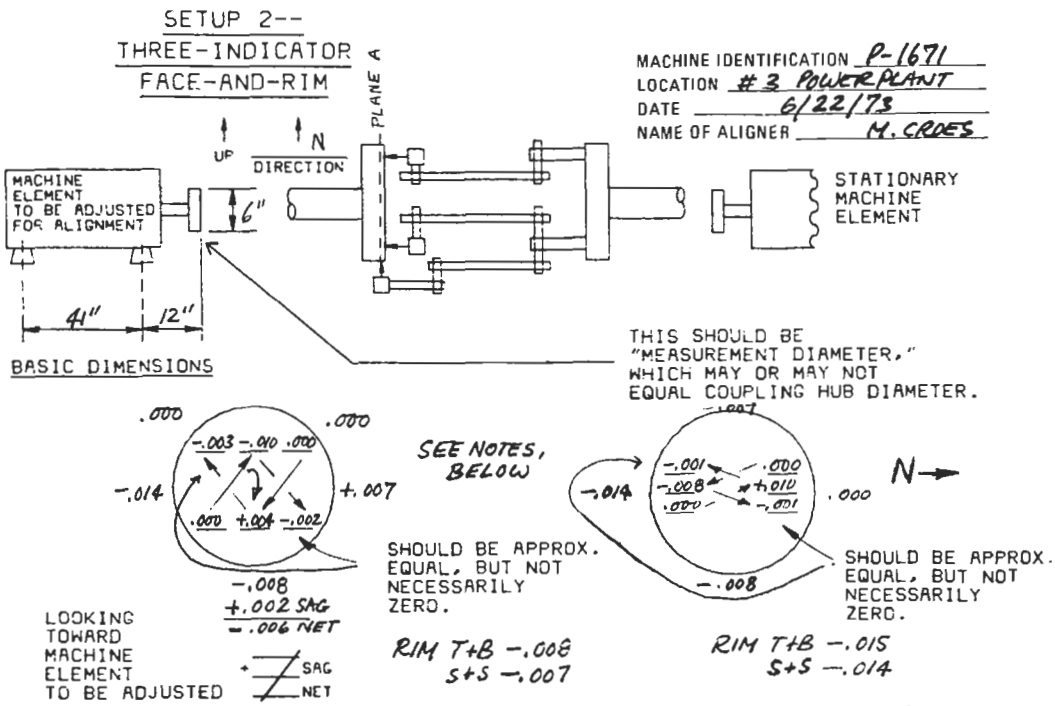


Figure 5-27. Three-indicator face-and-rim alignment example.



EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: _____ *(higher) (lower)* at plane **S.**

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.

MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .003 *(higher) ~~(lower)~~* at plane **A.**

versus: _____ *(higher) (lower)* desired.

FACE GAP IS: .007 wider at the *(top) ~~(bottom)~~.*

versus: _____ wider at the *(top) (bottom)* desired.

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* at plane **S.**

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.

MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .007 *(N) ~~(S) (E) (W)~~* at plane **A.**

versus: _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.

FACE GAP IS: .009 wider at *~~(N)~~ (S) ~~(E) (W)~~.*

versus: _____ wider at *(N) (S) (E) (W)* desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet .011" . Move inboard feet .026" *(N) (S) (E) (W).*

(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet .059" . Move outboard feet .090" *(N) (S) (E) (W).*

NOTES:

FACE READINGS -- ALGEBRAIC DIFFERENCE TOP AND BOTTOM
(-.010) - (+.004) = -.010 - .004 = -.014, HALF OF THIS: -.007
-- ALGEBRAIC DIFFERENCE SIDE-TO-SIDE:
-.008 - (+.010) = -.018; HALF OF THIS: -.009

Figure 5-28. Data sheet for pump with ball bearings driven by a motor having sleeve bearings.

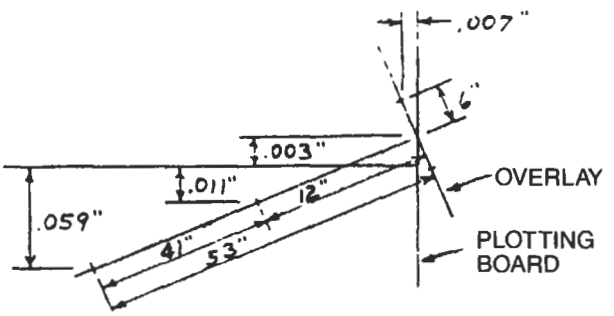


Figure 5-29. Plotting board solution for three-indicator face-and-rim method (using data from Figure 5-28), vertical moves.

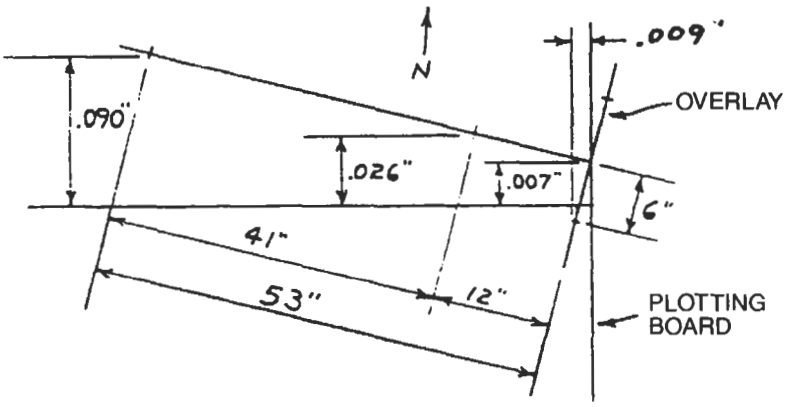


Figure 5-30. Plotting board solution for situation given in Figure 5-28, horizontal moves.

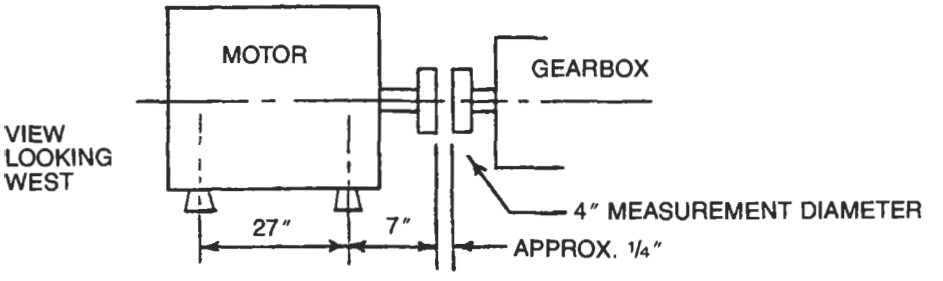


Figure 5-31. Motor close-coupled to gearbox.

(Text continued from page 205)

It can be seen that our final face readings are within .001 in. of each other (although not zero) so this checks within our acceptable limit. Apparently our motor shaft moved toward the motor .002 in. or .003 in. while turning, but this does not matter because by having two opposite face indicators, the error is automatically canceled.

Algebraic difference for face top and bottom:

$$(-.010) - (+.004) = -.010 - .004 = -.014$$

Half of this: $\frac{-.014}{2} = -.007$ in.

This tells us that the top face distance is .007 in. wider.

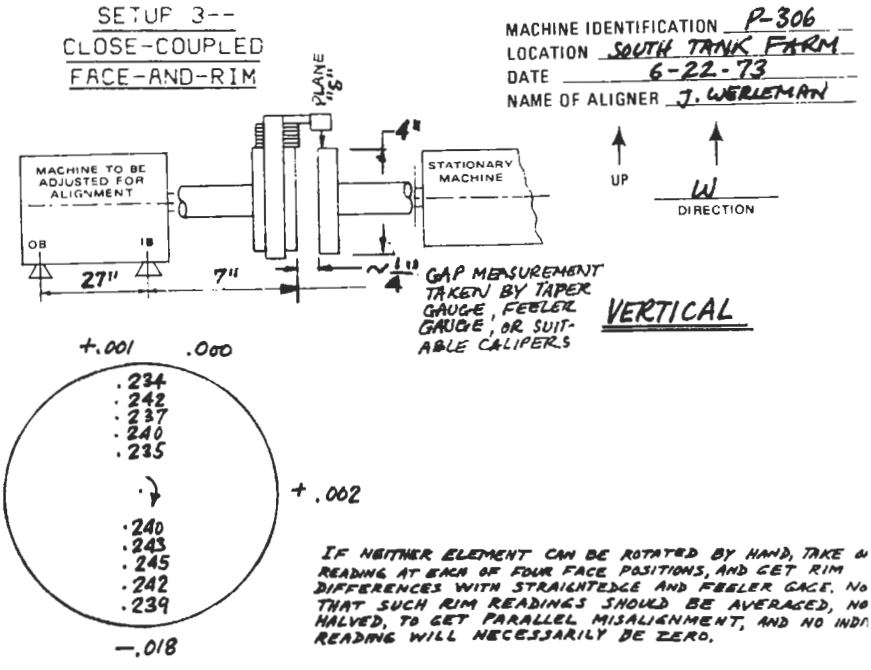
Looking at the rim readings, we see that the motor shaft centerline is

$\frac{-.006}{2} = .003$ in. higher than the pump centerline extension, at the plane of measurement.

With this information, and using the dimensions shown in our sketch, we use the plotting board and determine corrections as indicated in Figure 5-29:

Raise inboard feet .011 in.
Raise outboard feet .059 in.

These corrections will take care of both vertical angular and vertical parallel misalignment at the same time, in one movement.



Check totals:
(T + B should approx. equal S + S, before sag correction.)

RIM
T + B = -.018
S + S = -.018

FACE AVERAGES:
TOP = .238
BOTTOM = .243

INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .009 ~~(higher)~~ (lower) at plane S.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: _____ (higher) (lower) at plane A.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
FACE GAP IS: .005 wider at the ~~(top)~~ (bottom).
versus: _____ wider at the (top) (bottom) desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet ZERO. Move inboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet .034. Move outboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

DESIRED OFFSETS:

Set inboard feet _____ (high) (low). Set inboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
Set outboard feet _____ (high) (low). Set outboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

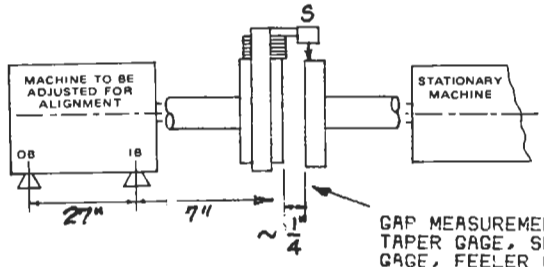
CALCULATED NET CORRECTIVE MOVEMENTS WITH OFFSETS APPLIED:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet _____. Move inboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet _____. Move outboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

Figure 5-32. Data sheet for vertical readings taken on close-coupled equipment.

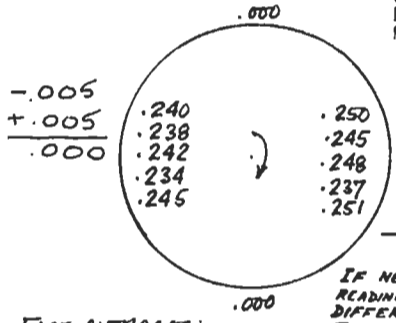
SETUP 3--
CLOSE-COUPLED
FACE-AND-RIM

MACHINE IDENTIFICATION P-306
LOCATION SOUTH TANK FARM
DATE 6-22-73
NAME OF ALIGNER J. WERLEMAN



HORIZONTAL

GAP MEASUREMENT BY TAPER GAGE, SMALL HOLE GAGE, FEELER GAGE, DIAL CALIPER, INSIDE MICROMETER, ETC.



+.005
+.005
+.010 ÷ 2 = .005

Check totals:
(T + B should approx. equal S + S, before sag correction.)

RIM
T + B = .000
S + S = .000

IF NEITHER ELEMENT CAN BE ROTATED BY HAND, TAKE ONE READING AT EACH OF FOUR FACE POSITIONS, AND GET RIM DIFFERENCES WITH STRAIGHTEDGE AND FEELER GAGE. NOTE THAT SUCH RIM READINGS SHOULD BE AVERAGED, NOT HALVED, TO GET PARALLEL MISALIGNMENT, AND NO INDIVIDUAL READING WILL NECESSARILY BE ZERO.

FACE AVERAGES:
WEST SIDE .245
EAST SIDE .2385

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .005 ~~(N) (S)~~ (E) ~~(W)~~ at plane S.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: _____ ~~(N) (S) (E) (W)~~ at plane A.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
FACE GAP IS: .0065 wider at ~~(N) (S) (E)~~ (W)
versus: _____ ~~wider at (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.~~

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet _____. Move inboard feet .0165 ~~(N) (S) (E)~~ (W).
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet _____. Move outboard feet .061 ~~(N) (S) (E)~~ (W).

DESIRED OFFSETS:

Set inboard feet _____ *(high) (low).* Set inboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W).*
Set outboard feet _____ *(high) (low).* Set outboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W).*

CALCULATED NET CORRECTIVE MOVEMENTS WITH OFFSETS APPLIED:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet _____. Move inboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W).*
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet _____. Move outboard feet _____ *(N) (S) (E) (W).*

Figure 5-33. Data sheet for horizontal readings taken on close-coupled equipment.

Having found the vertical corrections, we now proceed to the horizontal readings, as shown earlier in Figure 5-28.

Albegraic difference side to side:

$$-.008 - (+.010) = -.008 - .010 = -.018$$

Half of this: $\frac{-.018}{2} = -.009$ in.

This tells us that the south face distance is 0.009 in. wider.

Looking at the rim readings, we see that the motor shaft centerline is

$\frac{-.014}{2} = -.007$ in. or .007 in. north of the pump centerline extension, at the plane of measurement.

The plotting board allows us to solve for corrections as shown in Figure 5-30:

Move inboard feet .026 in. south.
Move outboard feet .090 in. south.

These corrections will handle horizontal angular and parallel alignment at the same time.

After making corrections and tightening motor hold-down bolts, a final check should be made. If final alignment is not within acceptable tolerances, the alignment procedure should be repeated until it is.

Aligning Close-Coupled Machinery

The motor shown in Figure 5-31 is close-coupled to a gearbox; that is, it has no coupling spacer. The motor can be rotated, but the gearbox is impossible to rotate. We can determine alignment corrections by using the data and method illustrated in Figures 5-32 and 5-33, which indicate vertical and horizontal alignment conditions, respectively.

Here, we obviously need setup 3, as shown earlier in Figure 5-5. For face readings, we will use taper gauge, feeler gauge, dial caliper, or small hole gauge and micrometer. We might also be able to mount an indicator on the motor coupling, and use a tip extender to contact the gear coupling face. For rim readings, we can either mount an indicator on the motor and let the tip ride on the gearbox, or use a straightedge and feeler gauge.

Using the plotting board, we get corrections as shown in Figure 5-34 for vertical, and Figure 5-35 for horizontal corrections. The vertical corrections are:

Outboard feet = Lower .034 in. by removing shims.
Inboard feet: Zero correction.

The horizontal corrections are plotted as:

Move inboard feet .0165 in. west.
Move outboard feet .061 in. west.

Reverse Indicator Method Using Crossover Brackets

At this point, we should be ready to look at a typical reverse-indicator data sheet, (Figure 5-36) and the accompanying plotting board sketches of Figure 5-37 (vertical moves) and Figure 5-38 (horizontal moves). This was solved by using a step-by-step procedure in conjunction with the standard alignment form for reverse-indicator alignment. These were the steps:

1. Take data.
2. Check T + B vs. S + S.
3. Correct for sag.
4. Divide net vertical readings by 2.
5. Copy resulting figures into first and third lines of interpretation without + or − signs.
6. Look at drawing, and decide whether higher or lower at *S* and mark sheet.
7. Ditto at *A*.
8. Look at drawing, and decide which side to make zero for *S*. We suggest zeroing the side opposite the "final" indicator position shown in drawing. With the prepared form, this is already shown.
9. Add or subtract quantity required to get zero as desired. To keep the equality, do the same to the "final" position.
10. Divide by 2.
11. Repeat steps 8, 9, and 10 for plane *A*.
12. Copy resulting figures from steps 10 and 11, without + or − signs, into 7th and 9th lines of interpretation.

(Text continued on page 220)

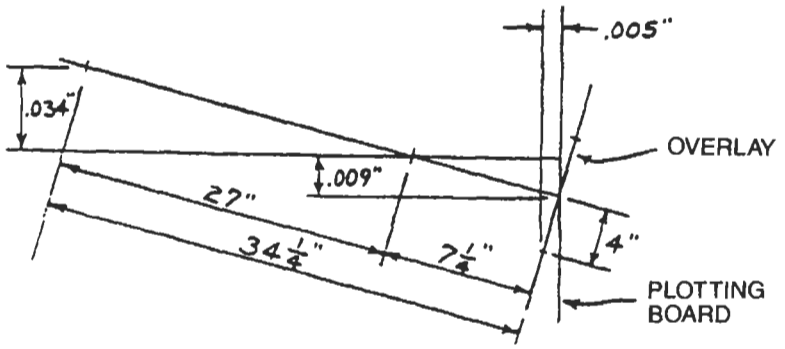


Figure 5-34. Plotting board solution for situation given in Figure 5-32, vertical moves.

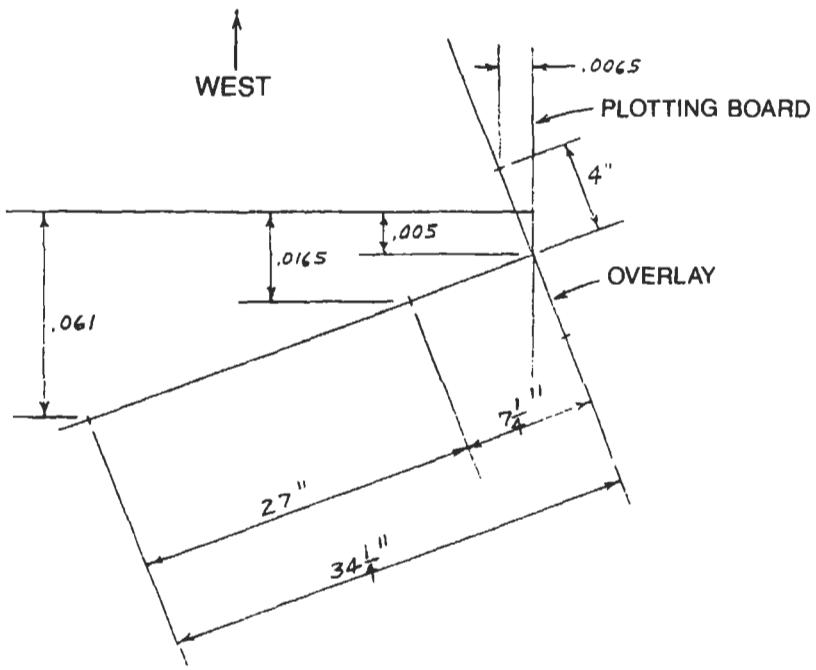
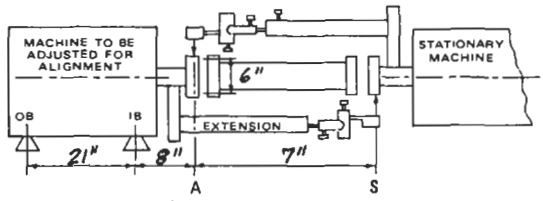


Figure 5-35. Plotting board solution for situation given in Figure 5-33, horizontal moves.

SETUP 5

REVERSE-INDICATOR USING CROSSOVER BRACKETS, INCLUDING FACE GAP EQUIVALENT DIFFERENCES AND THERMAL GROWTH OFFSETS

MACHINE IDENTIFICATION P-2321
LOCATION CAT PLANT
DATE 6-22-73
NAME OF ALIGNER R. DEMEY



Physically zero indicators opposite vertical positions in sketch. That is, zero on top at plane S, and on bottom at plane A. Algebraically zero indicators opposite horizontal positions in sketch.

+.005
−.004 SAG
÷2) +.001 NET
+.0005 HALF NET

SHOULD BE
.000 ± .001 — −.001 .000

−.007
+.007
.000

MACHINE TO BE ADJUSTED PLANE A looking toward machine to be adjusted

+.011
+.007
÷2) +.018
+.009

SHOULD BE
.000 +.001 — .000 ± .001

−.006
+.013
÷2) +.007
+.0035

STATIONARY MACHINE PLANE S looking toward machine to be adjusted

−.013
+.013
.000

W DIRECTION

−.020
+.004 SAG
÷2) −.016 NET
−.008 HALF NET

Check totals:
(T + B should approx. equal S + S, before sag correction.)

T + B = +.005
S + S = +.004

T + B = −.020
S + S = −.019

INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .008 ~~(higher)~~ (lower) at plane S.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .0005 (higher) (lower) at plane A.
versus: _____ (higher) (lower) desired.
FACE GAP IS: _____ wider at the (top) (bottom).
versus: _____ wider at the (top) (bottom) desired.

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION of machine to be adjusted IS: .0035 ~~(N) (S) (E)~~ (W) at plane S.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
MACHINE to be adjusted IS: .009 ~~(N) (S) (E)~~ (W) at plane A.
versus: _____ (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.
FACE GAP IS: _____ wider at (N) (S) (E) (W).
versus: _____ wider at (N) (S) (E) (W) desired.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:

~~(Raise)~~ (Lower) inboard feet .010. Move inboard feet .015 ~~(N) (S)~~ (E) ~~(W)~~
~~(Raise)~~ (Lower) outboard feet .0365. Move outboard feet .032 ~~(N) (S)~~ (E) ~~(W)~~

DESIRED OFFSETS:

Set inboard feet _____ (high) (low). Set inboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
Set outboard feet _____ (high) (low). Set outboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

CALCULATED NET CORRECTIVE MOVEMENTS WITH OFFSETS APPLIED:

(Raise) (Lower) inboard feet _____. Move inboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
(Raise) (Lower) outboard feet _____. Move outboard feet _____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

Figure 5-36. Data sheet for reverse-indicator readings.

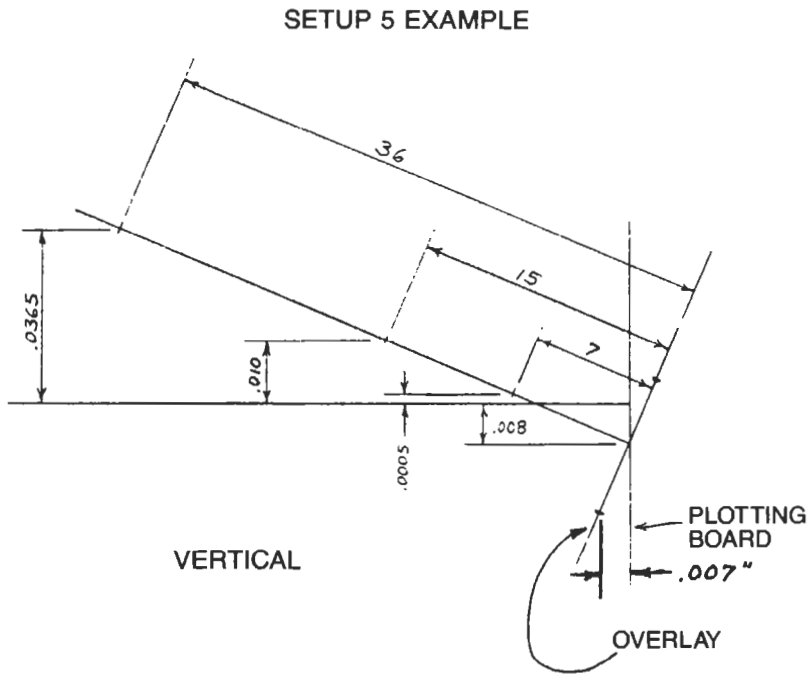


Figure 5-37. Plotting board solution for situation given in Figure 5-36, vertical moves.

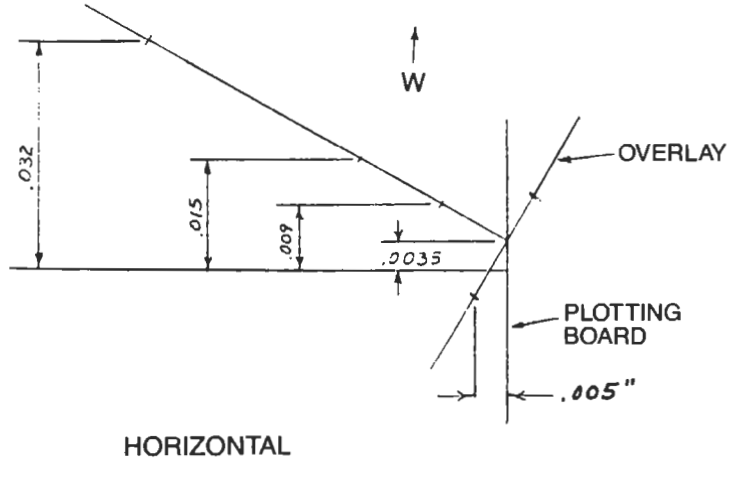


Figure 5-38. Plotting board solution for situation given in Figure 5-36, horizontal moves.

(Text continued from page 216)

13. Look at drawing and decide whether north, south, east or west at *S*, and mark 7th line of interpretation.
14. Ditto for *A*, and mark 9th line.
15. Get out plotting board and overlay.
16. Erase overlay.
17. Mark "up" arrow and directional arrow.
18. Move overlay horizontal red line to bottom border, with vertical red line coinciding with right border.
19. Add up linear machine dimensions, and choose bottom horizontal scale, A, B, C, or D.
20. Lay out and mark planes S and A, and IB and OB feet. May require two IB and OB marks if different positions for shim centers and horizontal foot indicators. Use narrow marks.
21. Move overlay to horizontal zero-zero line, and mark coupling measurement diameter above and below zero, using same scale as used at bottom.
22. Move overlay to represent vertical *IS* condition. Read and record required foot moves to get to zero-zero alignment. Also read and record face gap difference.
23. Ditto for horizontal. The basic problem has now been solved, to get the alignment to "zero-zero." If thermal growth is not to be considered, all of the "versus-desired" spaces may be filled with zeros, and subsequent check interpreted data should be compared to zero. If growth *is* to be considered, continue with step 24.
24. Refer to given desired offsets at feet, coupling faces, or rim measurement planes. If any two offsets are given for vertical, the other three can be solved. Likewise for horizontal. To do so, lay the marked overlay into the desired offset position on the plotting board, and read off the remaining quantities. For example, if foot offsets are given, use these to position the overlay, and then read off the corresponding offsets at coupling face and planes A and S. If offsets are given in terms of desired face gap and centerline offset at plane A, position the overlay accordingly and read the values at plane S and both feet. Care must be used to keep the overlay red line intersection on the right-hand border of the grid.
25. Once the "versus-desired" values have been filled in, the next step is to combine the foot offsets with the foot moves calculated for zero-zero alignment, to get the net foot movements.
26. After making the moves and tightening hold-down bolts, a new set of alignment readings should be taken and interpreted. These check-interpreted values can then be compared to the desired values to see whether the alignment is within tolerance or if further corrections must be made.

Face-Face-Distance Solution Using Plotting Board

Occasionally it is necessary to solve a face-face-distance problem for a machine with a long coupling spacer, such as a cooling tower drive. Figure 5-39 illustrates the machine layout and initial indicator readings. These readings are now utilized in the plotting board manipulations, Figure 5-40, and finally transferred to the permanent data sheet, Figure 5-41.

(Text continued on page 224)

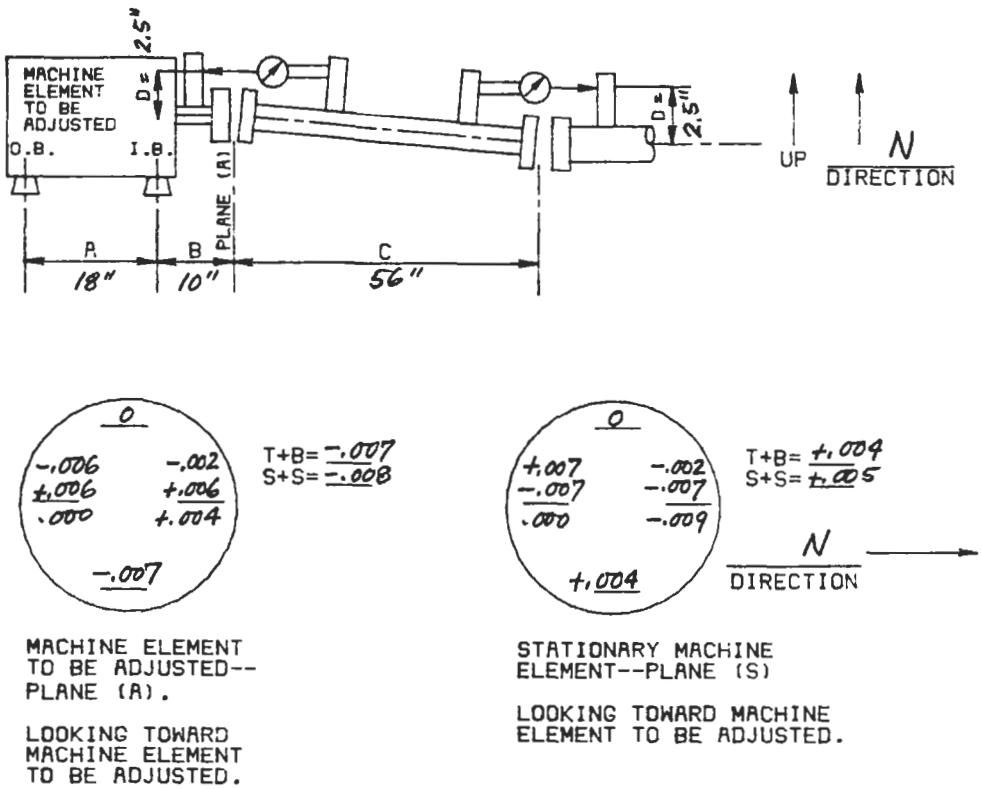
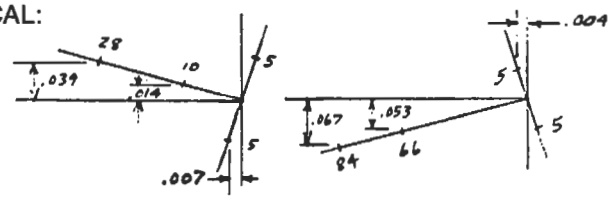


Figure 5-39. Machine layout illustrating face-face-distance method and initial indicator readings.

VERTICAL:

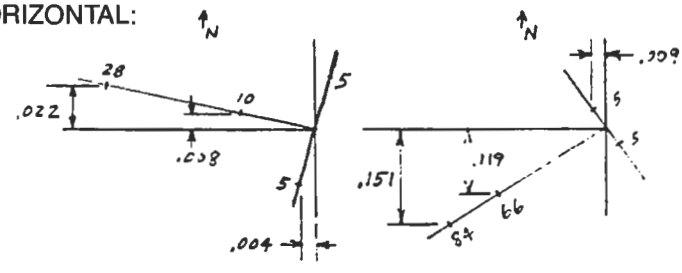


COMBINING,

+.053	+.067
-.014	-.039
+.039 IB	+.028 OB

RAISE IB .039."
RAISE OB .028."

HORIZONTAL:



COMBINING,

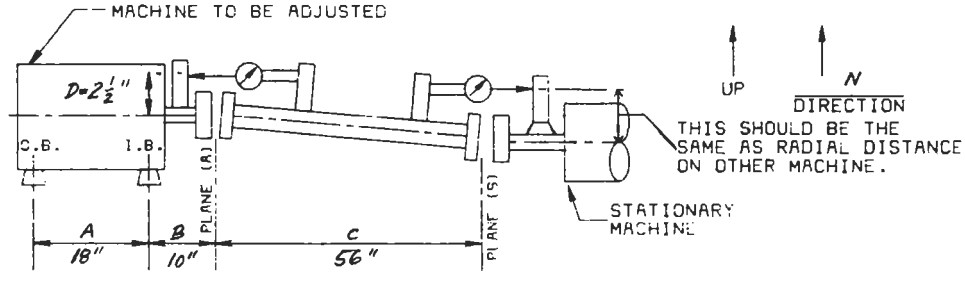
.008 S	.022 S
.119 N	.151 N
.111 N-IB	.129 N-OB

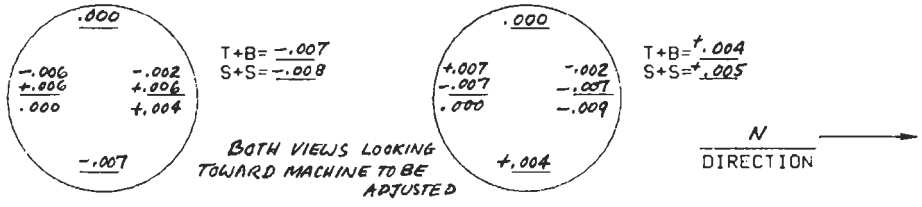
MOVE IB .111" NORTH.
MOVE OB .129" NORTH.

Figure 5-40. Plotting board solution for face-face-distance method described in Figure 5-39.

SETUP 6--
FACE-FACE-DISTANCE
PLOTTING BOARD SOLUTION

MACHINE IDENTIFICATION _____
LOCATION _____
DATE _____
NAME OF ALIGNER _____





INTERPRETATION:

VERT (TOP/BOTTOM)

EXTENSION OF MACHINE TO BE ADJUSTED IS: ____ (HIGHER) (LOWER) AT PLANE S.
VERSUS: ____ (HIGHER) (LOWER) DESIRED.
MACHINE TO BE ADJUSTED IS: ____ (HIGHER) (LOWER) AT PLANE A.
VERSUS: ____ (HIGHER) (LOWER) DESIRED.
AT PLANE S, FACE GAP IS: .004 WIDER AT THE (TOP) ~~(BOTTOM)~~
AT PLANE A, FACE GAP IS: .007 WIDER AT THE ~~(TOP)~~ (BOTTOM) ~~DESIRED~~.

HORIZ (SIDE/SIDE)

EXTENSION OF MACHINE TO BE ADJUSTED IS: ____ (N) (S) (E) (W) AT PLANE S.
VERSUS: ____ (N) (S) (E) (W) DESIRED.
MACHINE TO BE ADJUSTED IS: ____ (N) (S) (E) (W) AT PLANE A.
VERSUS: ____ (N) (S) (E) (W) DESIRED.
AT PLANE S, FACE GAP IS: .009 WIDER AT (N) ~~(S)~~ ~~(E)~~ ~~(W)~~.
AT PLANE A, FACE GAP IS: .004 WIDER AT ~~(N)~~ (S) ~~(E) (W) DESIRED~~.

CALCULATED CORRECTIVE MOVES, NOT CONSIDERING OFFSETS:*
(RAISE) ~~(LOWER)~~ INBOARD FEET .039 . MOVE INBOARD FEET .111 (N) ~~(S) (E) (W)~~.
(RAISE) ~~(LOWER)~~ OUTBOARD FEET .028 . MOVE OUTBOARD FEET .139 (N) ~~(S) (E) (W)~~.

DESIRED OFFSETS:
SET INBOARD FEET ____ (HIGH) (LOW). SET INBOARD FEET ____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
SET OUTBOARD FEET ____ (HIGH) (LOW). SET OUTBOARD FEET ____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

CALCULATED NET CORRECTIVE MOVEMENTS WITH OFFSETS APPLIED:
(RAISE) (LOWER) INBOARD FEET ____ . MOVE INBOARD FEET ____ (N) (S) (E) (W).
(RAISE) (LOWER) OUTBOARD FEET ____ . MOVE OUTBOARD FEET ____ (N) (S) (E) (W).

* TOTAL CORRECTIONS SHOWN. THESE ARE OBTAINED BY SUMMING THE CORRECTIONS INDICATED AT S- AND A- PLANES

Figure 5-41. Permanent data sheet records moves indicated by plotting board solution of Figure 5-40.

Face-Face-Distance Solution Using Formula

An alternative method would use the formula approach. Using the machine layout and initial dial indicator data of Figure 5-39, we could write:

$$\text{Vertical O.B. Adjustment} = \left[-.007 \times \frac{(18 + 10)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] + \left[+.004 \times \frac{(18 + 10 + 56)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] = +.028 \text{ in.}$$

$$\left[\pm \begin{matrix}\text{Vertical}\\ \text{Face Gap}\\ \text{Difference}\\ \text{At Plane (A)}\end{matrix} \times \frac{(A + B)}{2D}\right] + \left[\pm \begin{matrix}\text{Vertical}\\ \text{Face Gap}\\ \text{Difference}\\ \text{At Plane (S)}\end{matrix} \times \frac{(A + B + C)}{2D}\right]$$

$$\text{Vertical I.B. Adjustment} = \left[-.007 \times \frac{10}{2 \times 2.5}\right] + \left[+.004 \times \frac{(10 + 56)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] = +.039 \text{ in.}$$

$$\left[\text{DITTO} \times \frac{B}{2D}\right] + \left[\text{DITTO} \times \frac{B + C}{2D}\right]$$

$$\text{Horizontal O.B. Adjustment} = \left[.004S \times \frac{(18 + 10)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] + \left[.009N \times \frac{(18 + 10 + 56)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] = .129 \text{ in. N}$$

$$\left[\begin{matrix}\text{DITTO}\\ \text{Except Horizontal}\end{matrix} \times \frac{(A + B)}{2D}\right] + \left[\begin{matrix}\text{DITTO}\\ \text{Except Horizontal}\end{matrix} \times \frac{(A + B + C)}{2D}\right]$$

$$\text{Horizontal I.B. Adjustment} = \left[.004S \times \frac{10}{2 \times 2.5}\right] + \left[.009N \times \frac{(10 + 56)}{2 \times 2.5}\right] = .111 \text{ in. N}$$

$$\left[\text{DITTO} \times \frac{B}{2D}\right] + \left[\text{DITTO} \times \frac{B + C}{2D}\right]$$

(Text continued from page 221)

Horizontal Movement by Vertical Adjustment

Columbus had the theory that, if the world were indeed round, he could reach the East by sailing west. Somewhat similar is the alignment technique we are about to describe, for making a horizontal movement by adjusting vertically.

By raising the inboard and outboard feet on one side of the machine a given amount, and lowering an equal amount at the feet on the other side, the shaft height will not change appreciably, nor will a soft foot be introduced. The shaft will, however, move toward the lowered side, in a parallel manner. Final trim adjustment can then be made by moving the feet back varying amounts in the nonbolt-bound direction. The calculation for this type of correction is easy to do with the plotting board. An example follows:

Viewed from the end, a motor has the dimensions shown in Figure 5-42. It is desired to move the motor .015 in. west, but the bolts are against the boltholes, preventing further westward movement. No vertical change in shaft position is desired. Calculate shim adjustment to accomplish the move. The plotting board solution is shown in Figure 5-43. As shown, the solution is to raise the east feet .011 in. and lower the west feet an equal amount.

This technique will tend to upset the transverse leveling of the machine, so should not be used excessively where this could cause problems.

The "Optimum Move" Alignment Method

At times, as in mixing alcohol with water and measuring volumes, the whole can be less than the sum of its parts. A parallel situation exists in the method we are about to illustrate.[16] In effect, we will see that by making optimum movements of both elements to be aligned, the maximum movement required at any point is a great deal less than if either element were to be moved by itself. Figure 5-44 shows an electric motor-driven centrifugal pump with severe vertical misalignment. The numbers are actual, from a recent job, and were not made up for purposes of this text.

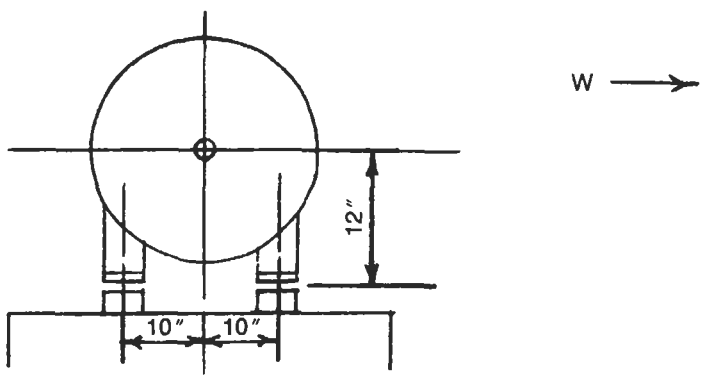


Figure 5-42. Horizontal movement by vertical adjustment: electric motor example.

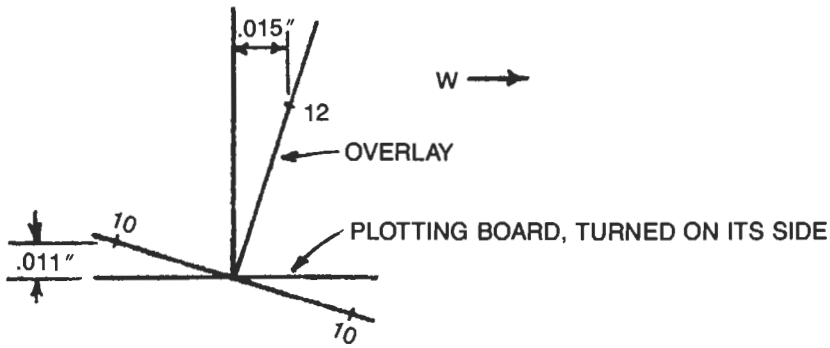
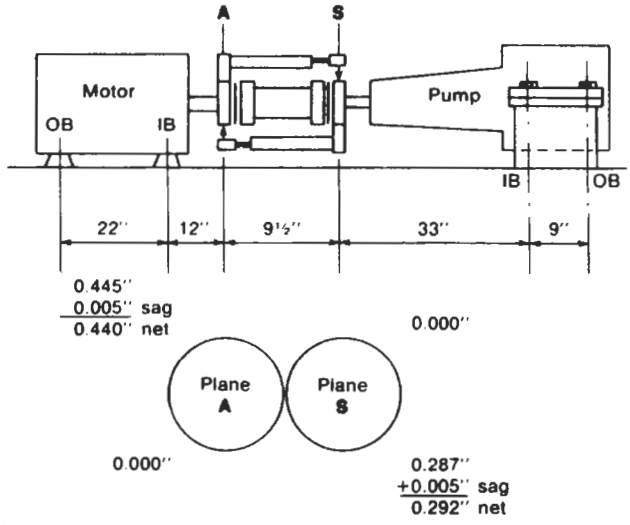


Figure 5-43. Plotting board solution for electric motor movement exercise of Figure 5-42.

As can be seen, regardless of whether we chose to align the motor to the pump or vice versa, we needed to lower the feet considerably—from 0.111 to 0.484 in. As it happened, the motor feet had only 0.025 in. total shimming, and the pump, as usual, had no shimming at all.

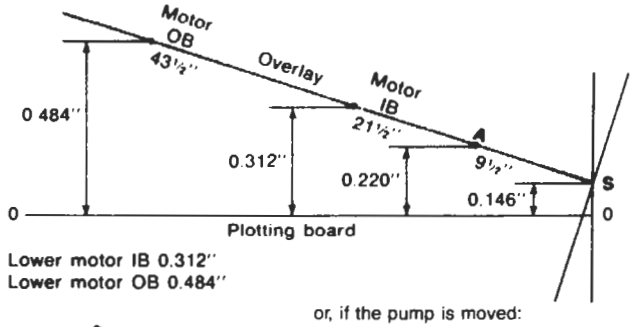
Some would shim the pump "straight up" to get it higher than the motor, and then raise the motor as required. This, in fact, was first attempted by our machinists. They had raised the pump about 3/8 in., at which point the piping interfered, and the pump was still not high enough. By inspection of Figures 5-44 and 5-45, it can be seen that they would have needed to raise it 0.484 in. (or 0.459 in. if all outboard motor shims had been removed).

Figure 5-45 shows the solution used to achieve alignment without radical shimming or milling. As can be seen, our maximum shim addition was .050 in., which is much lower than the values found earlier for single-element moves. We could have reduced this shimming slightly by removing our .025 in. existing shims from beneath the outboard feet of the motor, but chose not to do so, leaving some margin for single-element trim adjustments. As it turned out, the trimming went the other way, with .012 in. and .014 in. additions required beneath the motor inboard and outboard, respectively. This reflects such factors as heel-and-toe effect causing variation in foot pivot centers. This is normal for situations such as this with short foot centers and long projections to measurement planes.



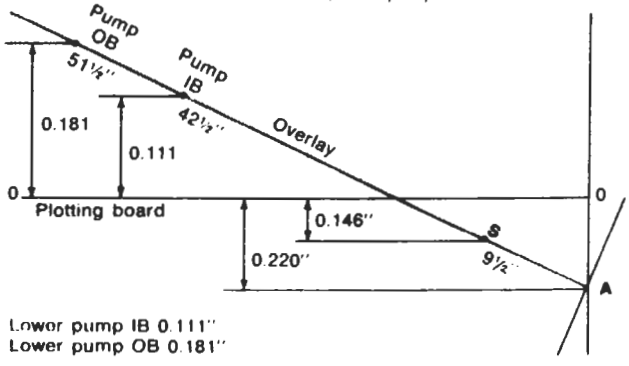
Interpreting, we see that the extension of the motor shaft centerline is 0.146 in. higher than the pump shaft centerline at plane "S" and, the motor shaft centerline is 0.220 in. higher than the extension of the pump shaft centerline at plane "A."

Solving by plotting board we get the following; if the motor is moved:



Lower motor IB 0.312"
Lower motor OB 0.484"

or, if the pump is moved:



Lower pump IB 0.111"
Lower pump OB 0.181"

Figure 5-44. Motor-pump vertical misalignment with single element move solutions.

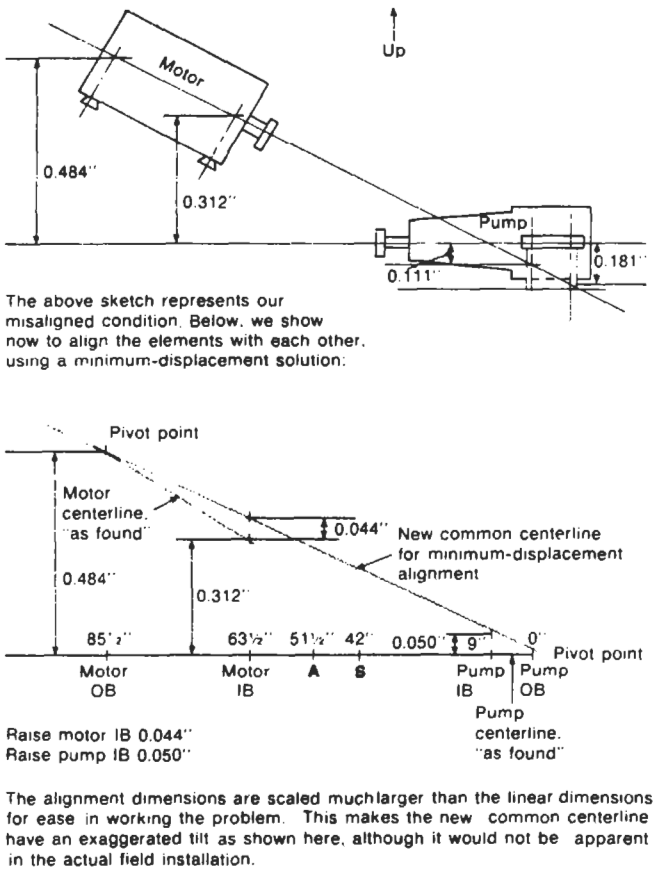
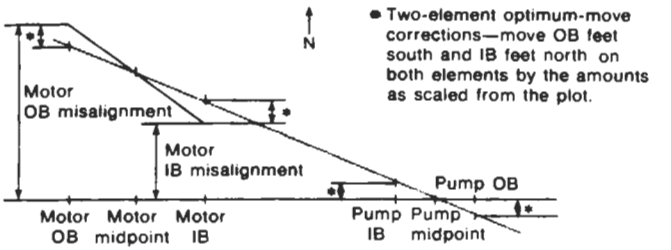


Figure 5-45. Plotting board or graph paper plot showing optimum two-element move.

Several variations on the foregoing example are worth noting, and are shown in Figure 5-46. The basic approach is the same for all though, and is easy to apply once the principle is understood.

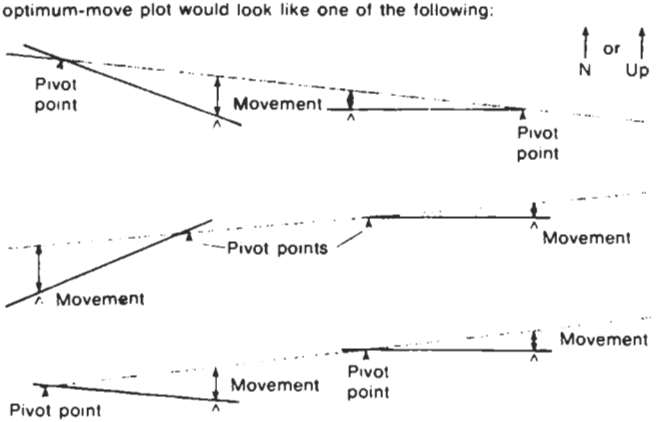
We have, to this point, made no mention of thermal growth. If this is to be considered, the growth data may be superimposed on the basic misalignment plots, or included prior to plotting, before proceeding with the optimum-move solution. Also, of course, there are valid nongraphical methods of handling the alignment solutions shown here—but we find the graphical approach easier for visualization, and accurate enough if done carefully.



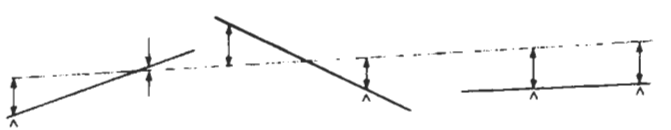
● Two-element optimum-move corrections—move OB feet south and IB feet north on both elements by the amounts as scaled from the plot.

For horizontal corrections, a midpoint plot, asshown above, is often useful for minimizing movements.

If, however, we cannot move south (or down for vertical misalignment), our optimum-move plot would look like one of the following:



With three or more elements, the same principles apply. For example, the following would give us minimum movements assuming two-directional capability:



The following would be our solution assuming ↑ movement only:

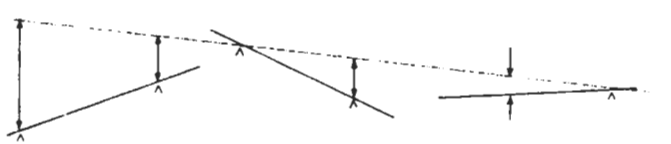


Figure 5-46. Various possibilities in plotting minimum displacement alignment.

Thermal Growth—Twelve Ways to Correct for It

Thermal growth of machines may or may not be significant for alignment purposes. In addition, movement due to pipe effects, hydraulic forces and torque reactions may enter the picture. Relative growth of the two or more elements is what concerns us, not absolute growth referenced to a fixed benchmark (although the latter could have an indirect effect if piping forces are thereby caused). Vibration, as measured by seismic or proximity probe instrumentation, can give an indication of whether thermal growth is causing misalignment problems due to differences between ambient and operating temperatures. If no problem exists, then a "zero-zero" ambient alignment should be sufficient. Our experience has been that such zero-zero alignment is indeed adequate for the majority of electric motor driven pumps. Zero-zero has the further advantage of simplicity, and of being the best starting point when direction of growth is unknown. Piping is often the "tail that wags the dog," causing growth in directions that defy prediction. For these reasons, we favor zero-zero unless we have other data that appear more trustworthy, or unless we are truly dealing with a predictable hot pump thermal expansion situation.

If due to vibration or other reasons it is decided that thermal growth correction should be applied, several approaches are available, as follows:

1. Pure guesswork, or guesswork based on experience.
2. Trial-and-error.
3. Manufacturers' recommendations.
4. Calculations based on measured or assumed metal temperatures, machine dimensions, and handbook coefficient of thermal expansion.
5. Calculations based on "rules-of-thumb," which incorporate the basic data of 4.
6. Shut down, break coupling, and measure before machines cool down.
7. Same as 6, except use clamp-on jigs to get faster measurements without having to break the coupling.
8. Make mechanical measurements of machine housing growth during operation, referenced to baseplate or foundation, or between machine elements. (Essinger)
9. Same as 8, except use eddy current shaft proximity probes as the measuring elements, with electronic indication and/or recording. (Jackson; Dodd/Dynalign; Indikon)
10. Measure the growth using precise optical instrumentation.

11. Make machine and/or piping adjustments while running, using vibration as the primary reference.
12. Laser measurement represents another possibility. The OPTALIGN® method described on pages 184 and 185 has recently been extended to cover hot alignment checks and is further explained on pages 233 and 234.

Let us now examine the listed techniques individually.

Guesswork. Guesswork is rarely reliable. Guesswork based on experience, however, may be quite all right—although perhaps in such cases it isn't really guesswork. If a certain thermal growth correction has been found satisfactory for a given machine, often the same correction will work for a similar machine in similar service.

Trial-and-error. Highly satisfactory, if you have plenty of time to experiment and don't damage anything while doing so. Otherwise, to be avoided.

Manufacturers' Recommendations. Variable. Some will work well, others will not. Climatic, piping, and process service differences can, at times, change the growth considerably from manufacturers' predictions based on their earlier average experience.

Calculations Based on Measured or Assumed Metal Temperatures, Machine Dimensions, and Handbook Coefficients of Thermal Expansion. Again, results are variable. An infrared thermometer is a useful tool here, for scanning a machine for temperature. This method ignores effects due to hydraulic forces, torque reactions, and piping forces.

Calculations Based on Rules of Thumb. Same comment as previous paragraph.

Shut Down, Break Coupling, and Measure before Machines Cool Down. About all this can be expected to do is give an indication of the credulity of the person who orders it done. In the time required to get a set of measurements by this method, most of the thermal growth and all of the torque and hydraulic effect will have vanished.

Same as Previous Paragraph Except use Clamp-On Jigs to Get Faster Measurements Without Having to Break the Coupling. This method, used in combination with backward graphing, should give better results than 6, but how much better is questionable. Even with "quick" jigs, a major part of the growth will be lost. Furthermore, shrinkage will be occurring

during the measurement, leading to inconsistencies. Measurement of torque and hydraulic effects will also be absent by this method. Some training courses advocate this technique, but we do not. If used, however, three sets of data should be taken, at close time intervals—not two sets as some texts recommend. The cooling, hence shrinkage, occurs at a variable rate, and three points are required to establish a curve for backward graphing.

Make Mechanical Measurements of Machine Housing Growth During Operation, Referenced to Baseplate or Foundation, or Between Machine Elements. This method can be used for machines with any type of coupling, including continuous-lube. Essinger[5] describes one variation, using baseplate or foundation reference points, and measurement between these and bearing housing via a long stroke indicator having Invar 36 extensions subject to minimum expansion-contraction error. Hot and cold data are taken, and a simple graphic triangulation method gives vertical and horizontal growth at each plane of measurement. This method is easy to use, where physical obstructions do not prevent its use. Bear in mind that base plate thermal distortion may affect results. It is reasonably accurate, except for some machines on long, elevated foundations, where errors can occur due to unequal growth along the foundation length. In such cases, it may be possible to apply Essinger's method between machine cases, without using foundation reference points. A further variation is to fabricate brackets between machine housings and use a reverse-indicator setup, except that dial calipers may be better than regular dial indicators which would be bothered by vibration and bumping.

Same as Previous Paragraph Except Use Eddy Current Shaft Proximity Probes as the Measuring Elements, with Electronic Indicating and/or Recording. Of all the various methods, this one lends itself the best to keeping a continuous record of machine growth from startup to stabilized operation. Due to the complexity and cost of the instrumentation and its application, this technique is usually reserved for the larger, more complex machinery trains. Judging by published data, the method gives good results, but it is not the sort of thing that the average mechanic could be fully responsible for, nor would it normally be justified for an average, two-element machinery train. In some cases, high machine temperatures can prevent the use of this method. The Dodd bars offer the advantage over the Jackson method that cooled posts are not needed and thermal distortion of base plate does not affect results. The Indikon system also has these advantages, and in addition can be used on unlimited axial spans. It is, however, more difficult to retrofit to an existing machine.

Measure the Growth Using Precise Optical Instrumentation. This method makes use of the precise tilting level and jig transit, with optical micrometer and various accessories. By referencing measurements to fixed elevations or lines of sight, movement of machine housing points can be determined quite accurately, while the machine is running. As with the previous method, this system is sophisticated and expensive, with delicate equipment, and requires personnel more knowledgeable than the average mechanic. It is therefore reserved primarily for the more complex machinery trains. It has given good results at times, but has also given erroneous or questionable data in other instances. The precise tilting level has additional use in soleplate and shaft leveling, which are not difficult to learn.

Several consultants offer optical alignment services. For the plant having only infrequent need for such work, it is usually more practical to engage such a consultant than to attempt it oneself.

Make Machine and/or Piping Adjustments While Running, Using Vibration as the Primary Reference. Baumann and Tipping[2] describe a number of horizontal onstream alignments, apparently made with success. Others are reluctant to try such adjustments for fear of movement control loss that could lead to damage. We have, however, frequently adjusted pipe supports and stabilizers to improve pump alignment and reduce vibration while the pump was running.

Laser Measurements.

With the introduction of the PERMALIGN® system, laser-based alignment verification has been extended to cover hot alignment checks. Figure 5-47 illustrates how the PERMALIGN® is mounted onto both coupled machines to monitor alignment. The measurements are then taken when the monitor (shown mounted on the left-hand machine) emits a laser beam, which is reflected by the prism mounted on the other machine (shown on the right). The reflected beam reenters the monitor and strikes a position detector inside. When either machine moves, the reflected beam moves as well, changing its position in the detector. This detector information is then processed so that the amount of machine movement is shown immediately in terms of $^1/_{100}$ mm or mils in the display, located directly below the monitor lens. Besides displaying detector X and Y coordinates, the LCD also indicates system temperature and other operating information.

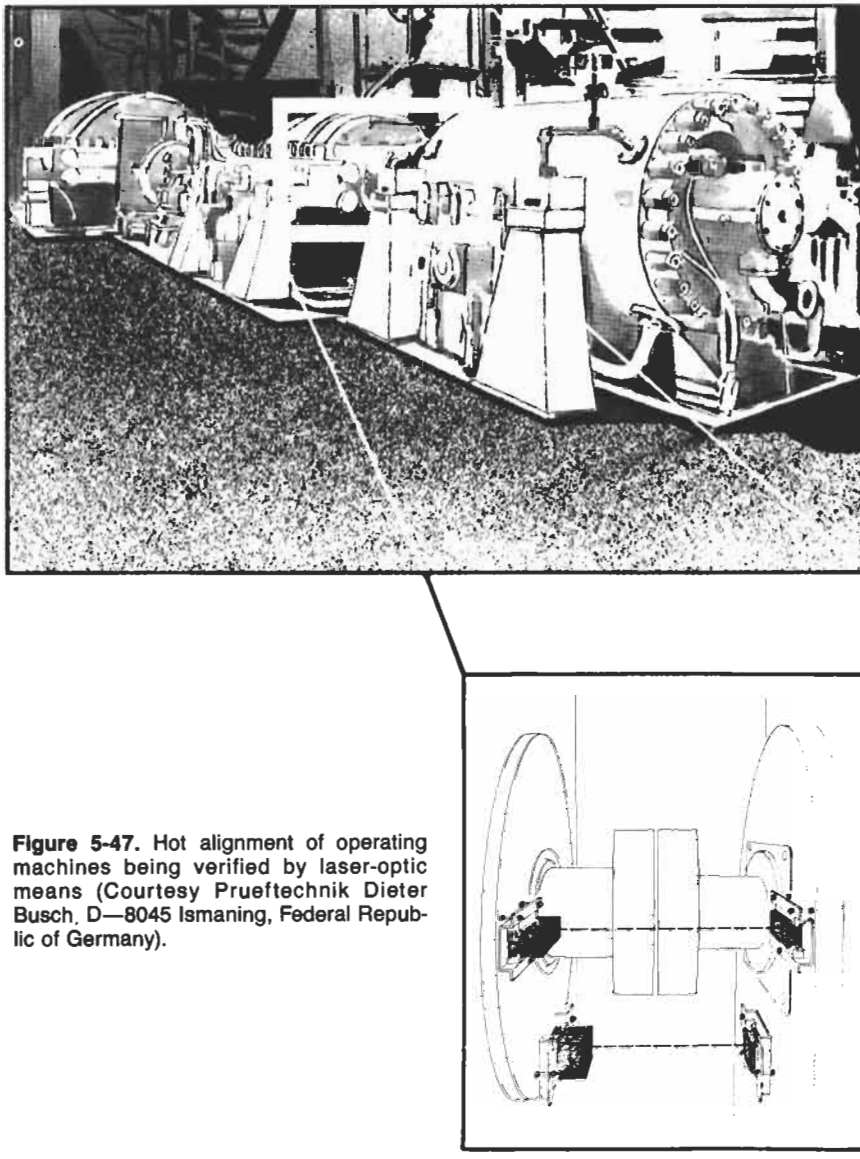


Figure 5-47. Hot alignment of operating machines being verified by laser-optic means (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D—8045 Ismaning, Federal Republic of Germany).

Thermal Growth Estimation by Rules of Thumb

We will now describe several "rules of thumb" for determining growth. Frankly, we have little faith in any of them, but are including them here for the sake of completeness.

The following is for "foot-mounted horizontal, end suction centrifugal pumps driven by electric motors":

For liquids 200°F and below, set motor shaft at same height as pump shaft.

For liquids above 200°F, set pump shaft .001 in. lower, per 100°F of temperature above 200°F per in. distance between pump base and shaft centerline.

Example: 450°F liquid; pump dimension from base to centerline is 10 in.

$\frac{(450 - 200)}{100}(.001)(10) = .025$ in. Therefore, set pump .025 in. low (or set motor .025 in. high).

The following applies to "foot mounted pumps or turbines":

$$\text{Thermal growth (mils)} = 6 \times \frac{(T_o - T_a)}{100} \times L$$

Where L = Distance from base to shaft centerline, feet
T_o = Operating temperature, °F
T_a = Ambient temperature, °F

For centerline mounted pumps, we are told to change the coefficient from 6 to 3. Another rule tells us to use the coefficient 3 for foot mounted pumps!

Yet another source tells us to use the following formula:

$$\text{Thermal growth, inches, } = .008 \times \frac{(T_o - T_a)}{100} \times \frac{L}{3},$$

for centerline mounted pumps.

For foot mounted pumps, use L in place of $\frac{L}{3}$.

Another rule of thumb says to neglect thermal growth in centerline mounted pumps when fluid temperature is below 400°F, and to cool the pedestal when fluid temperature exceeds 400°F. This rule is somewhat unrealistic, since the benefits of omitting the cooling clearly outweigh the advantages of including it!

Yet another rule tells us to allow for .0015 in. growth per in. of height from base to shaft centerline, for any steam turbine—regardless of steam or ambient temperatures. Another chart goes into elaborate detail, recommending various differences in centerline height between turbine and pump based on machine types and service conditions, but without considering their dimensions.

For electric motor growth, we have the following:

(Foot to shaft centerline, in.) (6×10^{-6}) (nameplate temp rise, °F) = motor vertical growth, in. This is inconvenient, since motor temperature rise is normally given in degrees centigrade. In case you have forgotten how to convert, $°F = (°C \times 9/5) + 32$.
Another rule says to use half of the above figure.

Then there is the rule that advises using 7 L, where L represents distance from base to shaft centerline in feet, and the answer comes out in thousandths of an inch. Yet another source says to use 4 L. These rules all assume uniform vertical expansion from one end to the other. However, on motors having single end fans, the expansion will be greater at the air outlet end. Angular misalignment caused by this difference can exceed parallel misalignment caused by overall growth! The same can be true of certain other machines with a steep temperature gradient from one end to the other, such as blowers, compressors, and turbines.

The rules just cited were found in various published or filmed instructions from major pump manufacturers, oil refining companies and, in one case, a technical magazine published for the electric power industry. Their inconsistency, and their failure to recognize certain growth phenomena, make their accuracy rather questionable. This is especially true where piping growth can affect machine alignment.

References

1. *Alignment Procedure, Revised Edition.* Buffalo, N.Y. Joy Manufacturing Company, 1970. (This describes and illustrates a mathematical formula progressive calculation approach to determining corrective movements based on reverse-indicator measurements.)
2. Baumann, Nelson P., and Tipping, William E., Jr., "Vibration Reduction Techniques for High-Speed Rotating Equipment—ASME Paper 65-WA/PWR-3." New York: The American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 1965.
3. Dodd, V. R., *Total Alignment.* The Petroleum Publishing Company, Tulsa: 1975.
4. Dreymala, James, *Factors Affecting and Procedures of Shaft Alignment.* Dreyco Mechanical Services, Houston; 1974.
5. Essinger, Jack N., "Alignment of Turbomachinery—A Review of Techniques Employing Dial Indicators." Paper presented at Second Symposium on Compressor Train Reliability Improvement, Manufacturing Chemists Association, Houston, Texas, April 4, 1972.

Similar information was published in *Hydrocarbon Processing*, September 1973.

6. Gibbs, C. R. and Wren, J. R., "Aligning Horizontal Machine Sets." *Allis-Chalmers Engineering Review.* About 1968—exact date not known.
7. Jackson, Charles, "How to Align Barrel-Type Centrifugal Compressors." *Hydrocarbon Processing,* (September 1971) (Corrected Reprint).
8. Jackson, Charles, "Start Cold for Good Alignment of Rotating Equipment." *The Oil and Gas Journal,* March 11, 1974, pp. 124–130.
9. Jackson, Charles, "Techniques for Alignment of Rotating Equipment." *Hydrocarbon Processing,* LV (January 1976), 81–86.
10. King, W. F., and Petermann, J. E., "Align Shafts, Not Couplings!" *Allis-Chalmers Electrical Review.* Second Quarter 1951, pp. 26–29.
11. Nelson, Carl A., "Orderly Steps Simplify Coupling Alignment." *Plant Engineering,* June 1967, pp. 176–178.
12. "Service Memo SD-5-69; Reverse Reading Coupling Alignment." Houston: Dresser Industries, Inc., Machinery Group, 1969.
13. Durkin, Tom, "Aligning Shafts." *Plant Engineering,* January 11, 1979, pp. 86–90, and February 8, 1979, pp. 102–105.
14. Zatezalo, John, "A Machinery Alignment System for Industry." Pittsburgh: IMS - Industrial Maintenance Systems, Inc., 1981.
15. Hamar, Martin R., "Laser Alignment in Industry - ASTME Paper MR68-408." Dearborn, Michigan: The American Society of Tool and Manufacturing Engineers, 1968.
16. Murray, Malcolm G., "Out of Room? Use Minimum Movement Machinery Alignment." *Hydrocarbon Processing,* Houston, Tx, January 1979, pp. 112–114.

Chapter 6

Balancing of Machinery Components*

This chapter contains some of the theoretical aspects of balancing and balancing machines, to give a better understanding of the process of balancing a rotor and of the working principles of balancing machines.[2]

Definition of Terms

Definitions of many terms used in balancing literature and in this text are contained in Appendix A. Commonly used synonyms for some of these standard terms are also included. For further information on terminology, refer to ISO Standard No. 1925 (see Appendix 6-C).

Purpose of Balancing

An unbalanced rotor will cause vibration and stress in the rotor itself and in its supporting structure. Balancing of the rotor is therefore necessary to accomplish one or more of the following:

1. Increase bearing life
2. Minimize vibration
3. Minimize audible and signal noises
4. Minimize operating stresses
5. Minimize operator annoyance and fatigue
6. Minimize power losses
7. Increase quality of product
8. Satisfy operating personnel

* Copyright Schenck Trebel Corporation, Deer Park, N.Y. Adapted by permission.

Unbalance in just one rotating component of an assembly may cause the entire assembly to vibrate. This induced vibration in turn may cause excessive wear in bearings, bushings, shafts, spindles, gears, etc., substantially reducing their service life. Vibration sets up highly undesirable alternating stresses in structural supports and frames that may eventually lead to their complete failure. Performance is decreased because of the absorption of energy by the supporting structure. Vibrations may be transmitted through the floor to adjacent machinery and seriously impair its accuracy or proper functioning.

The Balancing Machine as a Measuring Tool

A balancer or balancing machine is necessary to detect, locate, and measure unbalance. The data furnished by the balancer permit changing the mass distribution of a rotor, which, when done accurately, will balance the rotor. Balance is a zero quantity, and therefore is detected by observing an absence of unbalance. The balancer measures only unbalance, never balance.

Centrifugal force acts upon the entire mass of a rotating element, impelling each particle outward and away from the axis of rotation in a radial direction. If the mass of a rotating element is evenly distributed about its shaft axis, the part is "balanced" and rotates without vibration. However, if an excess of mass exists on one side of a rotor, the centrifugal force acting upon this heavy side exceeds the centrifugal force exerted by the light side and pulls the entire rotor in the direction of the heavy side. Figure 6-1 shows the side view of a rotor having an excess mass m on one side. Due to centrifugal force exerted by m during rotation, the entire rotor is being pulled in the direction of the arrow F.

Causes of Unbalance

The excess of mass on one side of a rotor shown in Figure 6-1 is called unbalance. It may be caused by a variety of reasons, including:

1. Tolerances in fabrication, including casting, machining, and assembly.
2. Variation within materials, such as voids, porosity, inclusions, grain, density, and finishes.
3. Nonsymmetry of design, including motor windings, part shapes, location, and density of finishes.
4. Nonsymmetry in use, including distortion, dimensional changes, and shifting of parts due to rotational stresses, aerodynamic forces, and temperature changes.

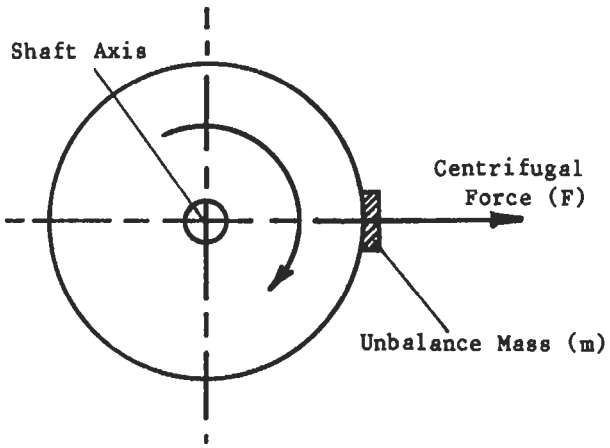


Figure 6-1. Unbalance causes centrifugal force.

Often, balancing problems can be minimized by symmetrical design and careful setting of tolerances and fits. Large amounts of unbalance require large corrections. If such corrections are made by removal of material, additional cost is involved and part strength may be affected. If corrections are made by addition of material, cost is again a factor and space requirements for the added material may be a problem.

Manufacturing processes are the major source of unbalance. Unmachined portions of castings or forgings which cannot be made concentric and symmetrical with respect to the shaft axis introduce substantial unbalance. Manufacturing tolerances and processes which permit any eccentricity or lack of squareness with respect to the shaft axis are sources of unbalance. The tolerances, necessary for economical assembly of several elements of a rotor, permit radial displacement of assembly parts and thereby introduce unbalance.

Limitations imposed by design often introduce unbalance effects which cannot be corrected adequately by refinement in design. For example, electrical design considerations impose a requirement that one coil be at a greater radius than the others in a certain type of universal motor armature. It is impractical to design a compensating unbalance into the armature.

Fabricated parts, such as fans, often distort nonsymmetrically under service conditions. Design and economic considerations prevent the adaptation of methods which might eliminate this distortion and thereby reduce the resulting unbalance.

Ideally, rotating parts always should be designed for inherent balance, whether a balancing operation is to be performed or not. Where low service speeds are involved and the effects of a reasonable amount of unbalance can be tolerated, this practice may eliminate the need for balancing. In parts which require unbalanced masses for functional reasons, these masses often can be counterbalanced by designing for symmetry about the shaft axis.

A rotating element having an uneven mass distribution, or unbalance, will vibrate due to the excess centrifugal force exerted during rotation by the heavier side of the rotor. Unbalance causes centrifugal force, which in turn causes vibration. When at rest, the excess mass exerts no centrifugal force and, therefore, causes no vibration. Yet, the actual unbalance is still present.

Unbalance, therefore, is independent of rotational speed and remains the same, whether the part is at rest or is rotating (provided the part does not deform during rotation). Centrifugal force, however, varies with speed. When rotation begins, the unbalance will exert centrifugal force tending to vibrate the rotor. The higher the speed, the greater the centrifugal force exerted by the unbalance and the more violent the vibration. Centrifugal force increases proportionately to the square of the increase in speed. If the speed is doubled, the centrifugal force quadruples; if the speed is tripled, the centrifugal force is multiplied by nine.

Units of Unbalance

Unbalance is measured in ounce-inches, gram-inches, or gram-millimeters, all having a similar meaning, namely a mass multiplied by its distance from the shaft axis. An unbalance of 100 g·in., for example, indicates that one side of the rotor has an excess mass equivalent to 10 grams at a 10 in. radius, or 20 grams at a 5 in. radius. (See Figure 6-2)

In each case, the mass, when multiplied by its distance from the shaft axis, amounts to the same unbalance value, namely 100 gram-inches. A given mass will create different unbalances, depending on its distance from the shaft axis. To determine the unbalance, simply multiply the mass by the radius.

Since a given excess mass at a given radius represents the same unbalance regardless of rotational speed, it would appear that it could be corrected at any speed, and that balancing at service speeds is unnecessary. This is true for rigid rotors as listed in Table 6-5 (page 292). However, not all rotors can be considered rigid, since certain components may shift or distort unevenly at higher speeds. Thus they may have to be balanced at their service speed.

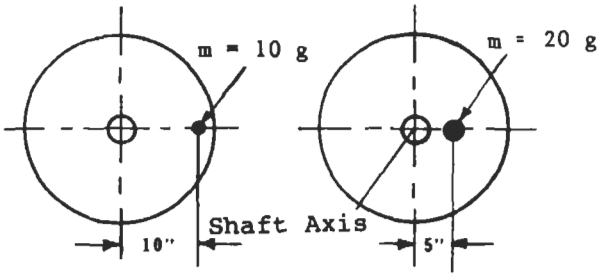


Figure 6-2. Side view of rotors with 100 g-in. unbalance.

Once the unbalance has been corrected, there will no longer be any significant disturbing centrifugal force and, therefore, no more unbalance vibration. A small residual unbalance will usually remain in the part, just as there is a tolerance in any machining operation. Generally, the higher the service speed, the smaller should be the residual unbalance.

In many branches of industry, the unit of gram • inch (abbreviated g • in.) is given preference because it has proven to be the most practical. An ounce is too large for many balancing applications, necessitating fractions or a subdivision into hundredths, neither of which has become very popular.

Types of Unbalance

The following paragraphs explain the four different types of unbalance as defined by the internationally accepted ISO Standard No. 1925 on balancing terminology. For each of the four mutually exclusive cases an example is shown, illustrating displacement of the principal axis of inertia from the shaft axis caused by the addition of certain unbalance masses in certain distributions to a perfectly balanced rotor.

Static Unbalance

Static unbalance, formerly also called force unbalance, is illustrated in Figure 6-3 below. It exists when the principal axis of inertia is displaced parallel to the shaft axis. This type of unbalance is found primarily in narrow, disc-shaped parts such as flywheels and turbine wheels. It can be corrected by a single mass correction placed opposite the center-of-gravity in a plane perpendicular to the shaft axis, and intersecting the CG.

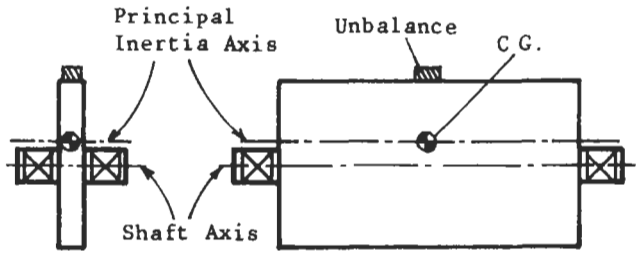


Figure 6-3. Static unbalance.

Static unbalance, if large enough, can be detected with conventional gravity-type balancing methods. Figure 6-3A shows a concentric rotor with unbalance mass on knife edges. If the knife-edges are level, the rotor will turn until the heavy or unbalanced spot reaches the lowest position. Figure 6-3B shows an equivalent condition with an eccentric rotor. The rotor with two equal unbalance masses equidistant from the CG as shown in Figure 6-3C is also out of balance statically, since both unbalance masses could be combined into one mass located in the plane of the CG.

Static unbalance can be measured more accurately by centrifugal means on a balancing machine than by gravitational means on knife-edges or rollers. Static balance is satisfactory only for relatively slow-revolving, disc-shaped parts or for parts that are subsequently assembled onto a larger rotor which is then balanced dynamically as an assembly.

Couple Unbalance

Couple unbalance, formerly also called moment unbalance, is illustrated in Figure 6-4 and 6-4A. It is that condition for which the principal axis of inertia intersects the shaft axis at the center of gravity. This arises when two equal unbalance masses are positioned at opposite ends of a rotor and spaced 180° from each other. Since this rotor will not rotate when placed on knife-edges, a dynamic method must be employed to detect couple unbalance. When the workpiece is rotated, each end will vibrate in opposite directions and give an indication of the rotor's uneven mass distribution.

Couple unbalance is sometimes expressed in gram · inch · inches or gram · in.^{2} (or ounce-in.^{2}), wherein the second in. dimension refers to the distance between the two planes of unbalance.

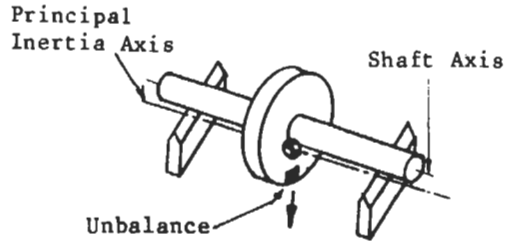


Figure 6-3A. Concentric disc with static unbalance.

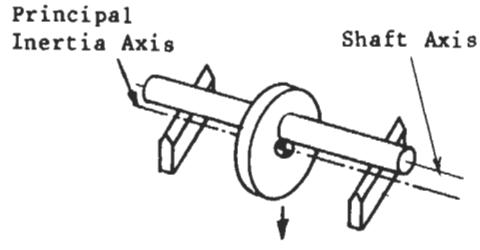


Figure 6-3B. Eccentric disc, therefore static unbalance.

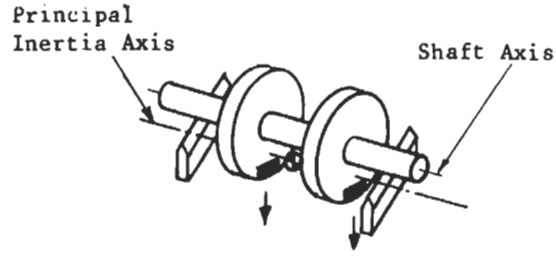


Figure 6-3C. Two discs of equal mass and identical static unbalance, aligned to give statically unbalanced assembly.

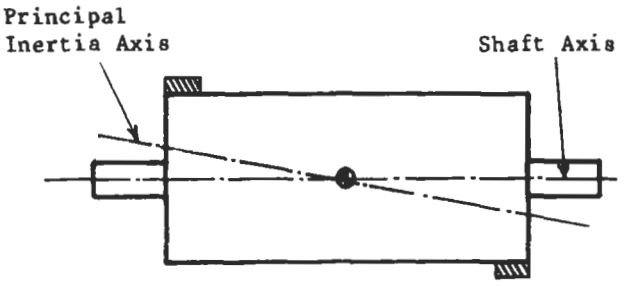


Figure 6-4. Couple unbalance.

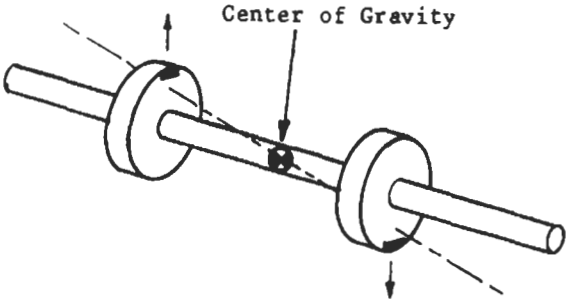


Figure 6-4A. Discs of Figure 6-3C, realigned to cancel static unbalance, now have couple unbalance.

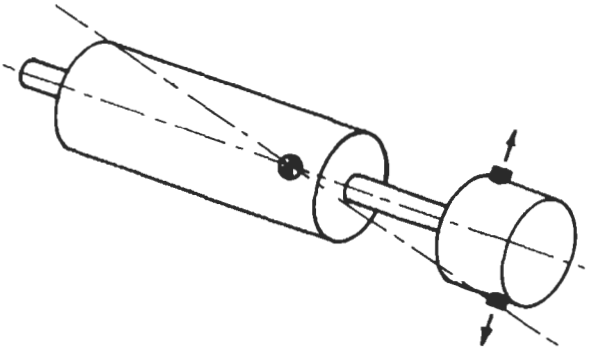


Figure 6-4B. Couple unbalance in outboard rotor component.

It is important to note that couple unbalance cannot be corrected by a single mass in a single correction plane. At least two masses are required, each in a different transverse plane (perpendicular to the shaft axis) and 180° opposite to each other. In other words, a couple unbalance needs another couple to correct it. In the example in Figure 6-4B, for instance, correction could be made by placing two masses at opposite angular positions on the main body of the rotor. The axial location of the correction couple does not matter as long as its value is equal in magnitude but opposite in direction to the unbalance couple.

Quasi-Static Unbalance

Quasi-static unbalance, Figure 6-5, is that condition of unbalance for which the central principal axis of inertia intersects the shaft axis at a point other than the center of gravity. It represents the specific combination of static and couple unbalance where the angular position of one couple component coincides with the angular position of the static unbalance. This is a special case of dynamic unbalance.

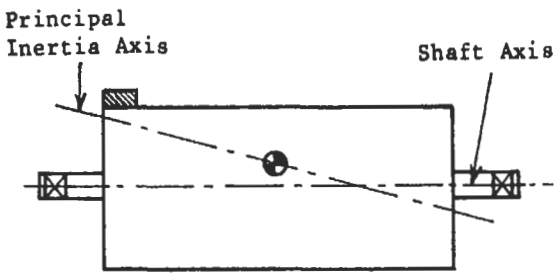


Figure 6-5. Quasi-static unbalance.

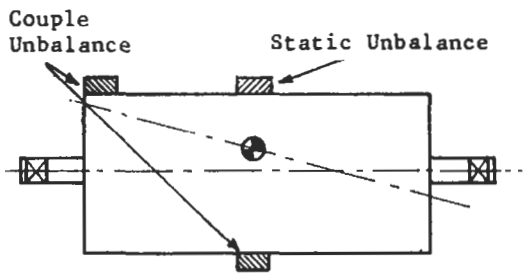


Figure 6-5A. Couple plus static unbalance results in quasi-static unbalance provided one couple mass has the same angular position as the static mass.

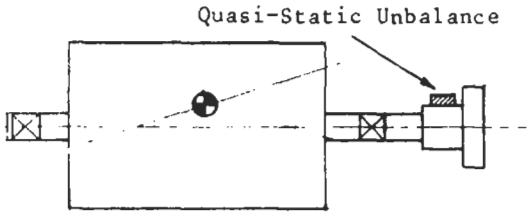


Figure 6-5B. Unbalance in coupling causes quasi-static unbalance in rotor assembly.

Dynamic Unbalance

Dynamic unbalance, Figure 6-6, is that condition in which the central principal axis of inertia is neither parallel to, nor intersects the shaft axis. It is the most frequently occurring type of unbalance and can only be corrected (as is the case with couple unbalance) by mass correction in at least two planes perpendicular to the shaft axis.

Another example of dynamic unbalance is shown in Figure 6-6A.

Motions of Unbalanced Rotors

In Figure 6-7, a rotor is shown spinning freely in space. This corresponds to spinning above resonance in soft bearings. In Figure 6-7A only static unbalance is present and the center line of the shaft sweeps out a cylindrical surface. Figure 6-7B illustrates the motion when only couple unbalance is present. In this case, the centerline of the rotor shaft sweeps out two cones which have their apexes at the center-of-gravity of the rotor. The effect of combining these two types of unbalance when they occur in the same axial plane (quasi-static unbalance) is to move the apex of the cones away from the center-of-gravity. In the case of dynamic unbalance there will be no apex and the shaft will move in a more complex combination of the motions shown in Figure 6-7.

Effects of Unbalance and Rotational Speed

As has been shown, an unbalanced rotor is a rotor in which the principal inertia axis does not coincide with the shaft axis.

When rotated in its bearings, an unbalanced rotor will cause periodic vibration of, and will exert a periodic force on, the rotor bearings and

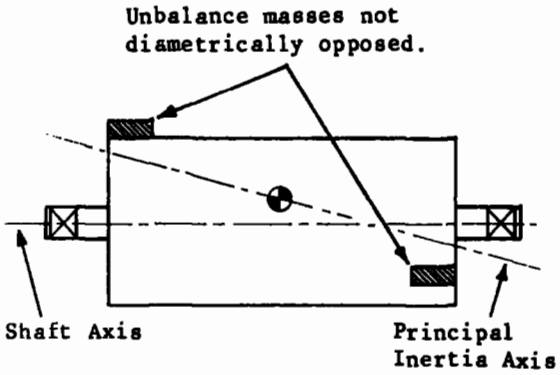


Figure 6-6. Dynamic unbalance.

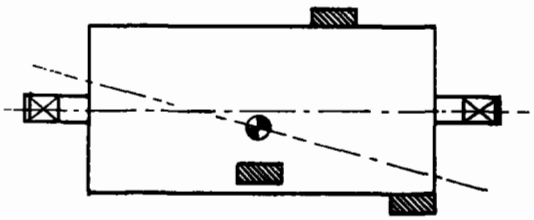


Figure 6-6A. Couple unbalance plus static unbalance results in dynamic unbala

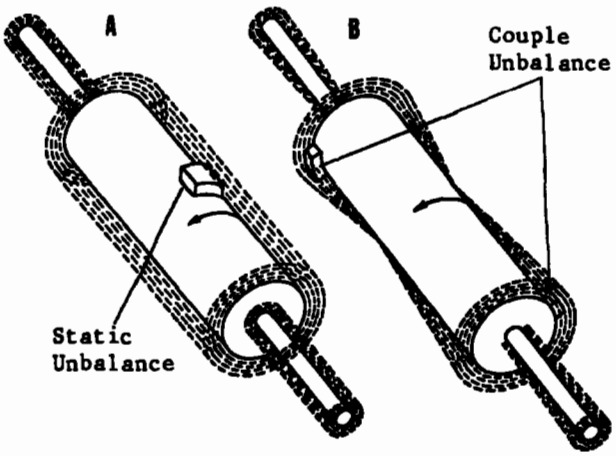


Figure 6-7. Effect of unbalance on free rotor motion.

their supporting structure. If the structure is rigid, the force is larger than if the structure is flexible (except at resonance). In practice, supporting structures are neither entirely rigid nor entirely flexible but somewhere in between. The rotor-bearing support offers some restraint, forming a spring-mass system with damping, and having a single resonance frequency. When the rotor speed is below this frequency, the principal inertia axis of the rotor moves outward radially. This condition is illustrated in Figure 6-8A.

If a soft pencil is held against the rotor, the so-called high spot is marked at the same angular position as that of the unbalance. When the rotor speed is increased, there is a small time lag between the instant at which the unbalance passes the pencil and the instant at which the rotor moves out enough to contact it. This is due to the damping in the system. The angle between these two points is called the "angle of lag." (See Figure 6-8B.) As the rotor speed is increased further, resonance of the rotor and its supporting structure will occur; at this speed the angle of lag is 90°. (See Figure 6-8C.) As the rotor passes through resonance, there are large vibration amplitudes and the angle of lag changes rapidly. As the speed is increased further, vibration subsides again; when increased to nearly twice resonance speed, the angle of lag approaches 180 degrees. (See Figure 6-8D.) At speeds greater than approximately twice resonance speed, the rotor tends to rotate about its principal inertia axis at constant amplitude of vibration; the angle of lag (for all practical purposes) remains 180°.

In Figure 6-8 a soft pencil is held against an unbalanced rotor. In (A) a high spot is marked. Angle of lag between unbalance and high spot increases from 0° (A) to 180° in (D) as rotor speed increases. The axis of rotation has moved from the shaft axis to the principal axis of inertia.

Figure 6-9 shows the interaction of rotational speed, angle of lag, and vibration amplitude as a rotor is accelerated through the resonance frequency of its suspension system.

Correlating CG Displacement with Unbalance

One of the most important fundamental aspects of balancing is the direct relationship between the displacement of center-of-gravity of a rotor from its journal axis, and the resulting unbalance. This relationship is a prime consideration in tooling design, tolerance selection, and determination of balancing procedures.

For a disc-shaped rotor, conversion of CG displacement to unbalance, and vice versa, is relatively simple. For longer workpieces it can be almost as simple, if certain approximations are made. First, consider a disc-shaped rotor.

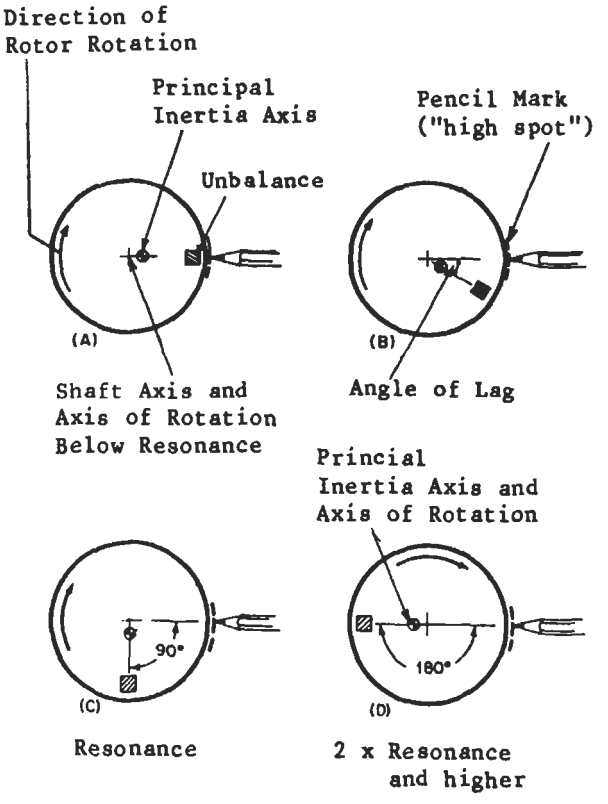


Figure 6-8. Angle of lag and migration of axis of rotation.

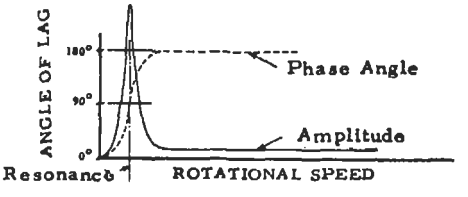


Figure 6-9. Angle of lag and amplitude of vibration versus rotational speed.

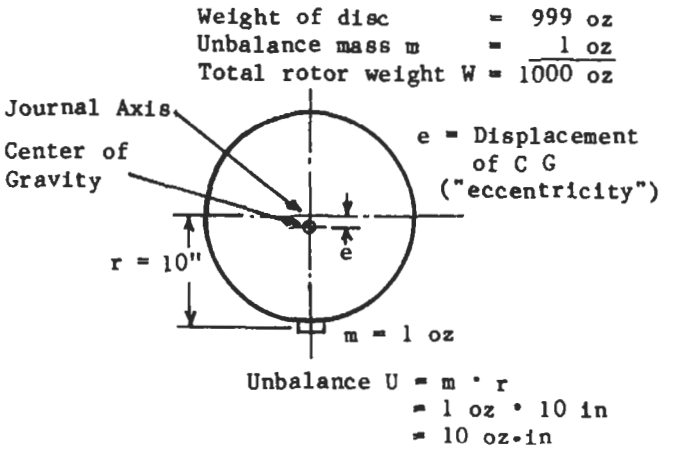

Weight of disc = 999 oz
Unbalance mass m = 1 oz
Total rotor weight W = 1000 oz
Journal Axis
Center of Gravity
e = Displacement of C G ("eccentricity")
r = 10"
e
m = 1 oz
Unbalance U = m · r
= 1 oz · 10 in
= 10 oz·in

Figure 6-10. Disc-shaped rotor with displaced center of gravity due to unbalance.

Assume a perfectly balanced disc, as shown in Figure 6-10, rotating about its shaft axis and weighing 999 ounces. An unbalance mass m of one ounce is added at a ten in. radius, bringing the total rotor weight W up to 1000 ounces and introducing an unbalance equivalent to 10 ounce · in. This unbalance causes the CG of the disc to be displaced by a distance e in the direction of the unbalance mass.

Since the entire mass of the disc can be thought to be concentrated in its center-of-gravity, it (the CG) now revolves at a distance e about the shaft axis, constituting an unbalance of U = We. Substituting into this formula the known values for the rotor weight, we get:

$$10 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.} = 1000 \text{ oz} \cdot e$$

Solving for e we find

$$e = \frac{10 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}}{1000 \text{ oz}} = 0.01 \text{ in.}$$

In other words, we can find the displacement e by the following formula:

$$e \text{ (in.)} = \frac{U \text{ (oz} \cdot \text{in.)}}{W \text{ (oz)}}$$

For example, if a fan is first balanced on a tightly fitting arbor, and subsequently installed on a shaft having a diameter 0.002 in. smaller than

the arbor, the total play resulting from the loose fit may be taken up in one direction by a set screw. Thus the entire fan is displaced by one half of the play or 0.001 in. from the axis about which it was originally balanced. If we assume that the fan weighs 100 pounds, the resulting unbalance will be:

$$U = 100 \text{ lb} \cdot 16 \text{ oz/lb} \cdot 0.001 \text{ in.} = 1.6 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}$$

The same balance error would result if arbor and shaft had the same diameter, but the arbor (or the shaft) had a total indicated runout (TIR) of 0.002 in. In other words, the displacement is always only one half of the total play or TIR.

The CG displacement e discussed above equals the shaft displacement only if there is no influence from other sources, a case seldom encountered. Nevertheless, for balancing purposes, the theoretical shaft respectively CG displacement is used as a guiding parameter.

On rotors having a greater length than a disc, the formula e = U/W for finding the correlation between unbalance and displacement still holds true if the unbalance happens to be static only. However, if the unbalance is anything other than static, a somewhat more complicated situation arises.

Assume a balanced roll weighing 2000 oz, as shown in Figure 6-11, having an unbalance mass m of 1 oz near one end at a radius r of 10 in. Under these conditions the displacement of the center-of-gravity (e) no longer equals the displacement of the shaft axis (d) in the plane of the bearing. Since shaft displacement at the journals is usually of primary

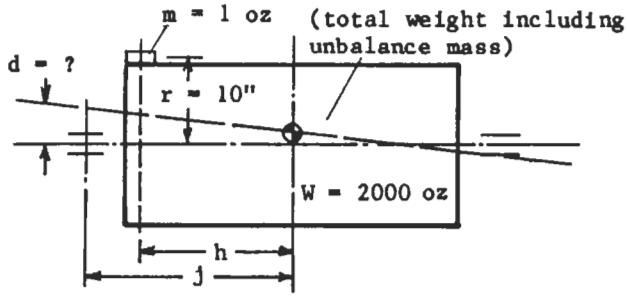


Figure 6-11. Roll with unbalance.

interest, the correct formula for finding it looks as follows (again assuming that there is no influence from bearings and suspension):

$$d = \frac{mr}{W + m} + \frac{mrjh}{Iz - Ix}$$

Where:

d = Displacement of principal inertia axis from shaft axis in plane of bearing
W = Rotor weight
m = Unbalance mass
r = Radius of unbalance
h = Distance from center-of-gravity to plane of unbalance
j = Distance from center-of-gravity to bearing plane
Ix = Moment of inertia around transverse axis
Iz = Polar moment of inertia around journal axis

Since neither the polar nor the transverse moments of inertia are known, this formula is impractical. Instead, a widely accepted approximation may be used.

The approximation lies in the assumption that the unbalance is static (see Figure 6-12). Total unbalance is thus 20 oz · in. Displacement of the

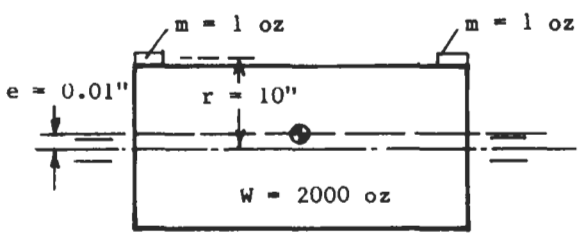


Figure 6-12. Symmetric rotor with static unbalance.

principal inertia axis from the bearing axis (and the eccentricity e of CG) in the rotor is therefore:

$$e = \frac{20 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}}{2000 \text{ oz}} = 0.01 \text{ in.}$$

If the weight distribution is not equal between the two bearings but is, say, 60 percent on the left bearing and 40 percent on the right bearing, then the unbalance in the left plane must be divided by 60 percent of the rotor weight to arrive at the approximate displacement in the left bearing plane, whereas the unbalance in the right plane must be divided by 40 percent of the rotor weight.

An assumed unbalance of 10 oz · in. in the left plane (close to the bearing) will thus cause an approximate eccentricity in the left bearing of:

$$e = \frac{10 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}}{2000 \text{ oz} \cdot 0.6} = 0.00833 \text{ in.}$$

and in the right bearing of:

$$e = \frac{10 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}}{2000 \text{ oz} \cdot 0.4} = 0.0125 \text{ in.}$$

Quite often the reverse calculation is of interest. In other words, the unbalance is to be computed that results from a known displacement. Again the assumption is made that the resulting unbalance is static.

For example, assume an armature and fan assembly weighing 2000 lbs and having a bearing load distribution of 70 percent at the armature (left) end and 30 percent at the fan end. See Figure 6-13. Assume further that the assembly has been balanced on its journals and that the rolling element bearings added afterwards have a total indicated runout of 0.001 in., causing an eccentricity of the shaft axis of 1/2 of the TIR or 0.0005 in.

Question: How much unbalance does the bearing runout cause in each side of the rotor?

Answer: In the armature end

$$U = 1400 \text{ lb} \cdot 16 \text{ oz/lb} \cdot 0.0005 \text{ in.} = 11.2 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}$$

In the fan end

$$U = 600 \text{ lb} \cdot 16 \text{ oz/lb} \cdot 0.0005 \text{ in.} = 4.8 \text{ oz} \cdot \text{in.}$$

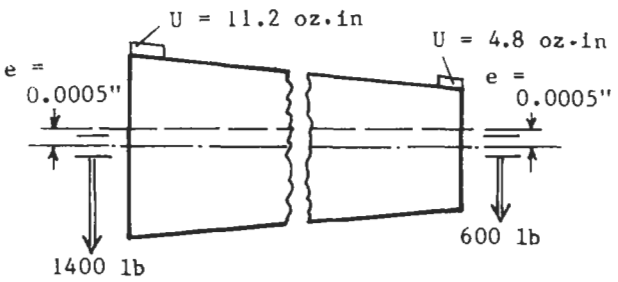


Figure 6-13. Unbalance resulting from bearing runout in an asymmetric rotor.

When investigating the effect of bearing runout on the balance quality of a rotor, the unbalance resulting from the bearing runout should be added to the residual unbalance to which the armature was originally balanced on the journals; only then should the sum be compared with the recommended balance tolerance. If the sum exceeds the recommended tolerance, the armature will either have to be balanced to a smaller residual unbalance on its journals, or the entire armature/bearing assembly will have to be rebalanced in its bearings. The latter method is often preferable since it circumvents the bearing runout problem altogether, although field replacement of bearings will be more problematic.

Balancing Machines

The purpose of a balancing machine is to determine by some technique both the magnitude of unbalance and its angular position in each of one, two, or more selected correction planes. For single-plane balancing this can be done statically, but for two- or multi-plane balancing, it can be done only while the rotor is spinning. Finally, all machines must be able to resolve the unbalance readings, usually taken at the bearings, into equivalent values in each of the correction planes.

On the basis of their method of operation, balancing machines and equipment can be grouped in three general categories:

1. Gravity balancing machines
2. Centrifugal balancing machines
3. Field balancing equipment

In the first category, advantage is taken of the fact that a body free to rotate always seeks that position in which its center-of-gravity is lowest. Gravity balancing machines, also called nonrotating balancing machines, include horizontal ways or knife-edges, roller stands, and vertical pendulum types (Figure 6-14). All are capable of only detecting and/or indicating static unbalance.

In the second category, the amplitude and phase of motions or reaction forces caused by once-per-revolution centrifugal forces resulting from unbalance are sensed, measured, and indicated by appropriate means. The rotor is supported by the machine and rotated around a horizontal or vertical axis, usually by the drive motor of the machine. A centrifugal balancing machine (also called a rotating balancing machine) is capable of measuring static unbalance (single plane machine) or static and couple unbalance (two-plane machine). Only a two-plane rotating balancing machine can detect couple and/or dynamic unbalance.

Field balancing equipment, the third category, provides sensing and measuring instrumentation only; the necessary measurements for balancing a rotor are taken while the rotor runs in its own bearings and under its own power. A programmable calculator may be used to convert the vibration readings (obtained in several runs with test masses) into magnitude and phase angle of the required correction masses.

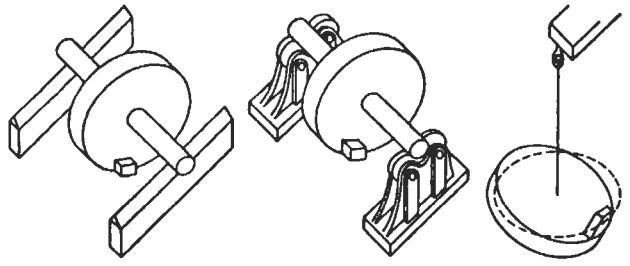


Figure 6-14. Static balancing devices.

Gravity Balancing Machines

First, consider the simplest type of balancing—usually called "static" balancing, since the rotor is not spinning.

In Figure 6-14A, a disc-type rotor on a shaft is shown resting on knife-edges. The mass added to the disc at its rim represents a known unbalance. In this illustration, and those which follow, the rotor is assumed to be balanced without this added unbalance mass. In order for this balancing procedure to work effectively, the knife-edges must be level, parallel, hard, and straight.

In operation, the heavier side of the disc will seek the lowest level—thus indicating the angular position of the unbalance. Then, the magnitude of the unbalance usually is determined by an empirical process, adding mass in the form of balancing wax or clay to the light side of the disc until it is in balance, i.e., until the disc does not stop at the same angular position.

In Figure 6-14B, a set of balanced rollers or wheels is used in place of the knife edges. Rollers have the advantage of not requiring as precise an alignment or level as knife edges; also, rollers permit run-out readings to be taken.

In Figure 6-14C, another type of static, or "nonrotating", balancer is shown. Here the disc to be balanced is supported by a flexible cable, fastened to a point on the disc which coincides with the center of the shaft axis slightly above the transverse plane containing the center-of-gravity. As shown in Figure 6-14C, the heavy side will tend to seek a lower level than the light side, thereby indicating the angular position of the unbalance. The disc can be balanced by adding mass to the diametrically opposed side of the disc until it hangs level. In this case, the center-of-gravity is moved until it is directly under the flexible support cable.

Static balancing is satisfactory for rotors having relatively low service speeds and axial lengths which are small in comparison with the rotor diameter. A preliminary static unbalance correction may be required on rotors having a combined unbalance so large that it is impossible in a dynamic, soft-bearing balancing machine to bring the rotor up to its proper balancing speed without damaging the machine. If the rotor is first balanced statically by one of the methods just outlined, it is usually possible to decrease the initial unbalance to a level where the rotor may be brought up to balancing speed and the residual unbalance measured. Such preliminary static correction is not required on hard-bearing balancing machines.

Static balancing is also acceptable for narrow, high speed rotors which are subsequently assembled to a shaft and balanced again dynamically. This procedure is common for single stages of jet engine turbines and compressors.

Centrifugal Balancing Machines

Two types of centrifugal balancing machines are in general use today, soft-bearing and hard-bearing machines.

Soft-bearing Balancing Machines

The soft-bearing balancing machine derives its name from the fact that it supports the rotor to be balanced on bearings which are very flexibly suspended, permitting the rotor to vibrate freely in at least one direction, usually the horizontal, perpendicular to the rotor shaft axis (see also Figure 16-15). Resonance of rotor and bearing system occurs at one half or less of the lowest balancing speed so that, by the time balancing speed is reached, the angle of lag and the vibration amplitude have stabilized and can be measured with reasonable certainty (see also Figure 6-16A).

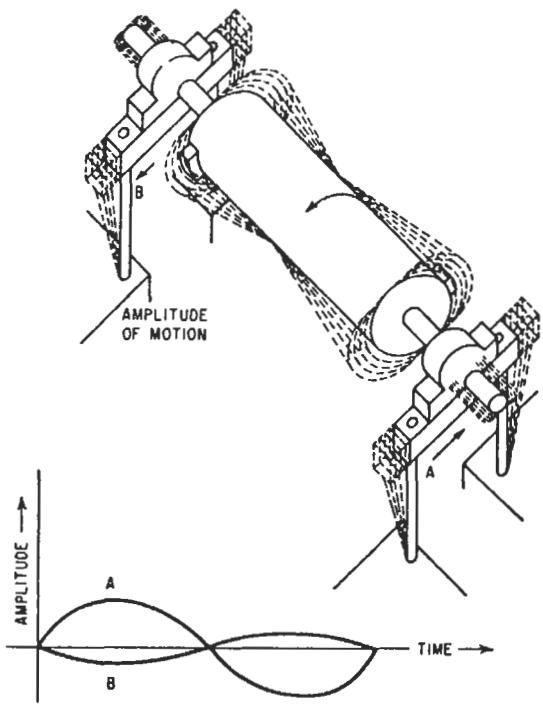


Figure 6-15. Motion of unbalanced rotor and bearings in flexible-bearing, centrifugal balancing machines.

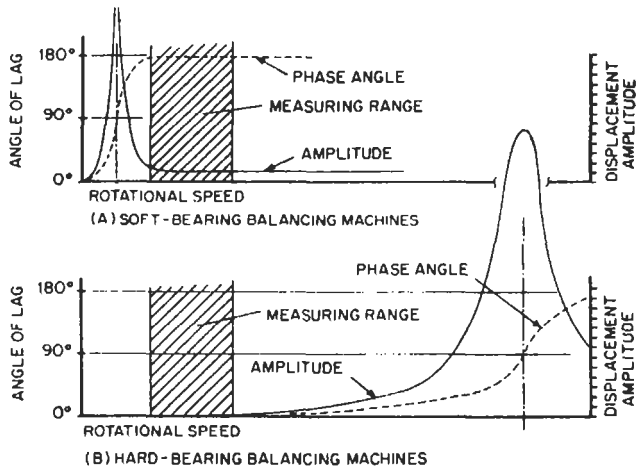


Figure 6-16. Phase angle and displacement amplitude versus rotational speed in soft-bearing and hard-bearing balancing machines.

Bearings (and the directly attached support components) vibrate in unison with the rotor, thus adding to its mass. Restriction of vertical motion does not affect the amplitude of vibration in the horizontal plane, but the added mass of the bearings does. The greater the combined rotor-and-bearing mass, the smaller will be the displacement of the bearings, and the smaller will be the output of the devices which sense the unbalance.

As far as the relationship between unbalance and bearing motion is concerned, the soft-bearing machine is faced with the same complexity as shown in Figure 6-11.

Therefore, a direct indication of unbalance can be obtained only after calibrating the indicating elements for a given rotor by use of test masses which constitute a known amount of unbalance.

For this purpose the soft-bearing balancing machine instrumentation contains the necessary circuitry and controls so that, upon proper calibration for the particular rotor to be balanced, an exact indication of amount-of-unbalance and its angular position is obtained. Calibration varies between parts of different mass and configuration, since displacement of the principal axis of inertia in the balancing machine bearings is dependent upon rotor mass, bearing and suspension mass, rotor moments of inertia, and the distance between bearings.

Hard-Bearing Balancing Machines

Hard-bearing balancing machines are essentially of the same construction as soft-bearing balancing machines, except that their bearing supports are significantly stiffer in the transverse horizontal direction. This results in a horizontal resonance for the machine which occurs at a frequency several orders of magnitude higher than that for a comparable soft-bearing balancing machine. The hard-bearing balancing machine is designed to operate at speeds well below this resonance (see Figure 6-16B) in an area where the phase angle lag is constant and practically zero, and where the amplitude of vibration—though small—is directly proportional to centrifugal forces produced by unbalance.

Since the force that a given amount of unbalance exerts at a given speed is always the same, no matter whether the unbalance occurs in a small or large, light or heavy rotor, the output from the sensing elements attached to the balancing machine bearing supports remains proportional to the centrifugal force resulting from unbalance in the rotor. The output is not influenced by bearing mass, rotor mass, or inertia, so that a permanent relation between unbalance and sensing element output can be established.

Centrifugal force from a given unbalance rises with the square of the balancing speed. Output from the pick-ups rises proportionately with the third power of the speed due to a linear increase from the rotational frequency superimposed on a squared increase from centrifugal force. Suitable integrator circuitry then reduces the pickup signal inversely proportional to the cube of the balancing speed increase, resulting in a constant unbalance readout. Unlike soft bearing balancing machines, the use of calibration masses is not required to calibrate the machine for a given rotor.

Angle of lag is shown as a function of rotational speed in Figure 16A for soft-bearing balancing machines whose balancing speed ranges start at approximately twice the resonance speed of the supports; and in Figure 6-16B for hard-bearing balancing machines. Here the resonance frequency of the combined rotor-bearing support system is usually more than three times greater than the maximum balancing speed.

For more information on hard-bearing and other types of balancing machines, see articles on advantages of hard-bearing machines and on balancing specific types of rotors. (Reprints are available through Schenck Trebel Corporation.)

Both soft- and hard-bearing balancing machines use various types of sensing elements at the rotor-bearing supports to convert mechanical vibration into an electrical signal. These sensing elements are usually velocity-type pickups, although certain hard-bearing balancing machines use magnetostrictive or piezo-electric pickups.

Measurement of Amount and Angle of Unbalance

Three basic methods are used to obtain a reference signal by which the phase angle of the amount-of-unbalance indication signal may be correlated with the rotor. On end-drive machines (where the rotor is driven via a universal-joint driver or similarly flexible coupling shaft) a phase reference generator, directly coupled to the balancing machine drive spindle, is used. On belt-drive machines (where the rotor is driven by a belt over the rotor periphery) or on air-drive or self-drive machines, a stroboscopic lamp flashing once per rotor revolution, or a scanning head (photoelectric cell with light source) is employed to obtain the phase reference.

Whereas the scanning head only requires a single reference mark on the rotor to obtain the angular position of unbalance, the stroboscopic light necessitates attachment of an angle reference disc to the rotor, or placing an adhesive numbered band around it. Under the once-per-revolution flash of the strobe light the rotor appears to stand still so that an angle reading can be taken opposite a stationary mark.

With the scanning head, an additional angle indicating circuit and instrument must be employed. The output from the phase reference sensor (scanning head) and the pickups at the rotor-bearing supports are processed and result in an indication representing the amount-of-unbalance and its angular position.

In Figure 6-17 block diagrams are shown for typical balancing instrumentations.

Figure 6-17A illustrates an indicating system which uses switching between correction planes (i.e. a single-channel instrumentation). This is generally employed on balancing machines with stroboscopic angle indication and belt drive. In Figure 6-17B an indicating system is shown with two-channel instrumentation. Combined indication of amount of unbalance and its angular position is provided simultaneously for both correction planes on two vectormeters having illuminated targets projected on the back of translucent overlay scales. Displacement of a target from the central zero point provides a direct visual representation of the displacement of the principal inertia axis from the shaft axis. Concentric circles on the overlay scale indicate the amount of unbalance, and radial lines indicate its angular position.

Plane Separation

Consider the rotor in Figure 6-15 with only an unbalance mass on the left end of the rotor. This mass causes not only the left bearing to vibrate but, to a lesser degree, the right also. This influence is called correction plane interference or, for short, "cross effect." If a second mass is at-

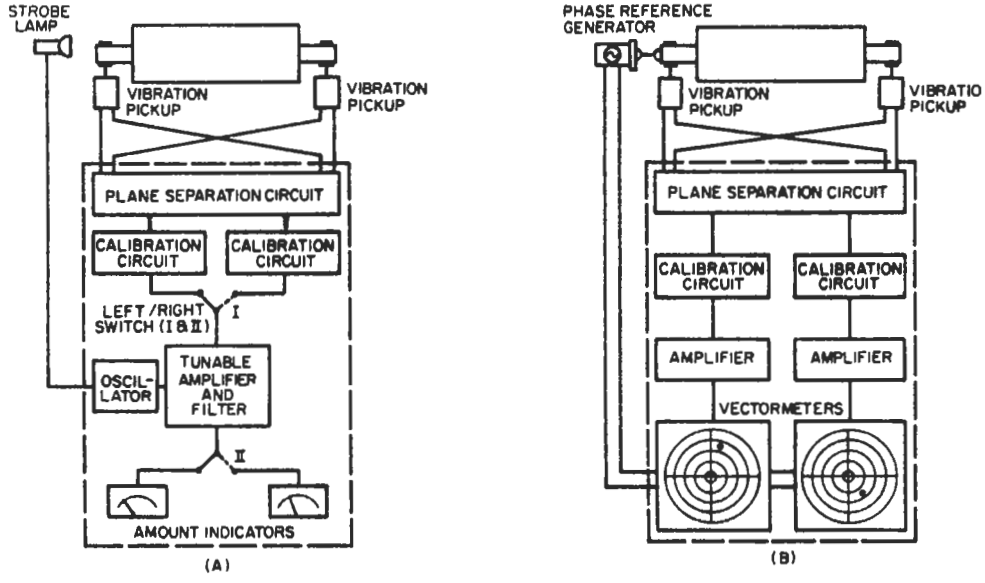


Figure 6-17. Block diagram of typical balancing machine instrumentations. (A) Amount of unbalance indicated on analog meters, angle by strobe light. (B) Combined amount and angle indication on vector meters, simultaneously in two correction planes.

tached in the right plane of the rotor, the direct effect of the mass in the right plane combines with the cross effect of the mass in the left plane, resulting in a composite vibration of the right bearing. If the two unbalance masses are at the same angular position, the cross effect of one mass has the same angular position as the direct effect in the other rotor end plane; thus, their direct and cross effects are additive (Figure 6-18A). If the two unbalance masses are 180° out of phase, their direct and cross effects are subtractive (Figure 6-18B). In a hard-bearing balancing machine the additive or subtractive effects depend entirely on the ratios of distances between the axial positions of the correction planes and bearings. In a soft-bearing machine, the relationship is more complex because the masses and inertias of the rotor and its bearings must be taken into account.

If the two unbalance masses have an angular relationship other than 0 or 180°, the cross effect in the right bearing has a different phase angle than the direct effect from the right mass. Addition or subtraction of these effects is vectorial. The net bearing vibration is equal to the resultant of the two vectors, as shown in Figure 6-19. Phase angle indicated by the bearing vibration does not coincide with the angular position of either unbalance mass.

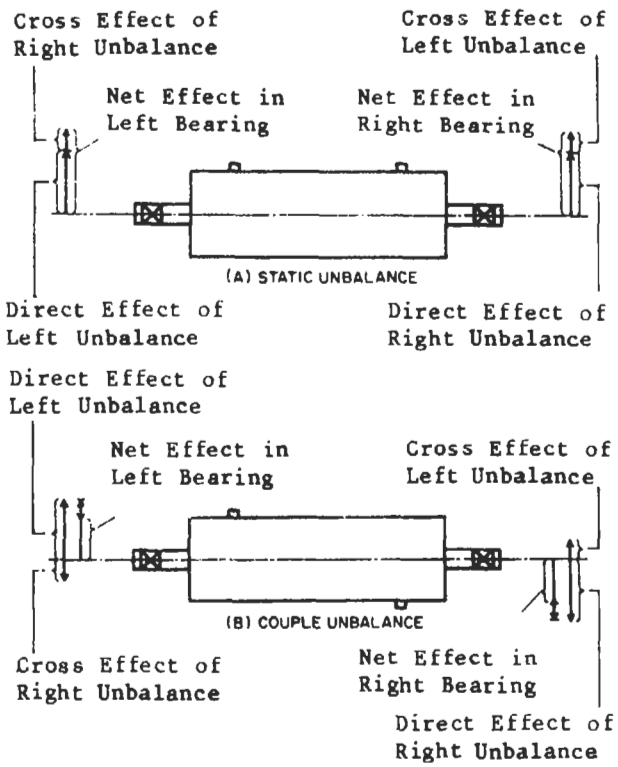


Figure 6-18. Influence of cross effects in rotors with static and couple unbalance.

The unbalance illustrated in Figure 6-19 is the most common type, namely dynamic unbalance of unknown amount and angular position. Interaction of direct and cross effects will cause the balancing process to be a trial-and-error procedure. To avoid this, balancing machines incorporate a feature called "plane separation" which eliminates cross effect.

Before the advent of electrical networks, cross effect was eliminated by supporting the rotor in a cradle resting on a knife-edge and spring arrangement, as shown in Figure 6-20. Either the bearing-support members of the cradle or the knife edge pivot point are movable so that one unbalance correction plane always can be brought into the plane of the knife-edge.

Thus any unbalance in this plane will not cause the cradle to vibrate, whereas unbalance in all other planes will. The latter is measured and corrected in the other correction plane near the right end of the rotor

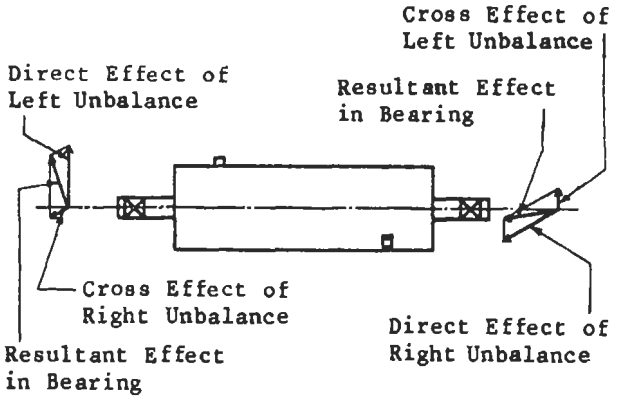


Figure 6-19. Influence of cross effects in rotors with dynamic unbalance. (All vectors seen from right side of rotor).

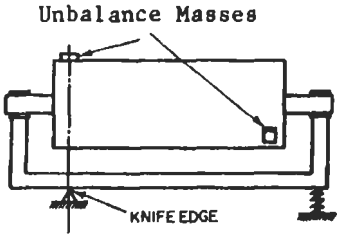


Figure 6-20. Plane separation by mechanical means.

body. Then the rotor is turned end for end, so that the knife-edge is in the plane of the first correction. Any vibration of the cradle is now due solely to unbalance present in the plane that was first over the knife-edge. Corrections are applied to this plane until the cradle ceases to vibrate. The rotor is now in balance. If it is again turned end for end, there will be no vibration.

Mechanical plane separation cradles restrict the rotor length, diameter, and location of correction planes. They also constitute a large parasitic mass which reduces sensitivity. Therefore, electric circuitry is used today to accomplish the function of plane separation. In principle, part of the output of each pickup is reversed in phase and fed against the output of the other pickup. Proper potentiometer adjustment of the counter voltage during calibration runs (with test masses attached to a balanced rotor) eliminates the cross effect.

Classification of Centrifugal Balancing Machines

Centrifugal balancing machines may be categorized by the type of unbalance a machine is capable of indicating (static or dynamic), the attitude of the journal axis of the workpiece (vertical or horizontal), or the type of rotor-bearing-support system employed (soft- or hard-bearing). In each category, one or more classes of machines are commercially built. The four classes are described in Table 6-1.

Class I: Trial-and-error Balancing Machines. Machines in this class are of the soft-bearing type. They do not indicate unbalance directly in weight units (such as ounces or grams in the actual correction planes) but indicate only displacement and/or velocity of vibration at the bearings. The instrumentation does not indicate the amount of weight which must be added or removed in each of the correction planes. Balancing with this type of machine involves a lengthy trial-and-error procedure for each rotor, even if it is one of an identical series. The unbalance indication cannot be calibrated for specified correction planes because these machines do not have the feature of plane separation. Field balancing equipment usually falls into this class.

A programmable calculator with field balancing programs, either contained on magnetic strips or on a special plug-in ROM, will greatly reduce the trial-and-error procedure; however, calibration masses and three runs are still required to obtain magnitude and phase angle of un-

Table 6-1
Classification of Balancing Machines

Principle employed	Unbalance indicated	Attitude of shaft axis	Type of machine	Available classes
Gravity (nonrotating)	Static (single-plane)	Vertical Horizontal	Pendulum Knife-edges Roller sets	Not classified
Centrifugal (rotating)	Static (single-plane)	Vertical Horizontal	Soft-bearing Hard-bearing Not commercially available	Not classified
Centrifugal (rotating)	Dynamic (two-plane); also suitable for static (single-plane)	Vertical Horizontal	Soft-bearing Hard-bearing Soft-bearing Hard-bearing	II, III III, IV I, II, III IV

balance on the first rotor. For subsequent rotors of the same kind, readings may be obtained in a single run but must be manually entered into the calculator and then suitably manipulated.

Class II: Calibratable Balancing Machines Requiring a Balanced Prototype. Machines in this class are of the soft-bearing type using instrumentation which permits plane separation and calibration for a given rotor type, if a balanced master or prototype rotor with calibration masses is available. However, the same trial-and-error procedure as for Class I machines is required for the first of a series of identical rotors.

Class III: Calibratable Balancing Machines Not Requiring a Balanced Prototype. Machines in this class are of the soft-bearing type using instrumentation which includes an integral electronic unbalance compensator. Any (unbalanced) rotor may be used in place of a balanced master rotor without the need for trial and error correction. Plane separation and calibration can be achieved in one or more runs with the help of calibration masses.

This class also includes soft-bearing machines with electrically driven shakers fitted to the vibratory part of their rotor supports.

Class IV: Permanently Calibrated Balancing Machines. Machines in this class are of the hard-bearing type. They are permanently calibrated by the manufacturer for all rotors falling within the weight and speed range of a given machine size. Unlike the machines in other classes, these machines indicate unbalance in the first run without individual rotor calibration. This is accomplished by the incorporation of an analog or digital computer into the instrumentation associated with the machine. The following five rotor dimensions (see Figure 6-21) are fed into the computer: distance from left correction plane to left support (a); distance between correction planes (b); distance from right correction plane to right support (c); and r_1 and r_2, which are the radii of the correction masses in the left and right planes. The instrumentation then indicates the magnitude and angular position of the required correction mass for each of the two selected planes.

The compensation or "null-force" balancing machine falls into this class also. Although no longer manufactured, it is still widely used. It balances at the natural frequency or resonance of its suspension system including the rotor.

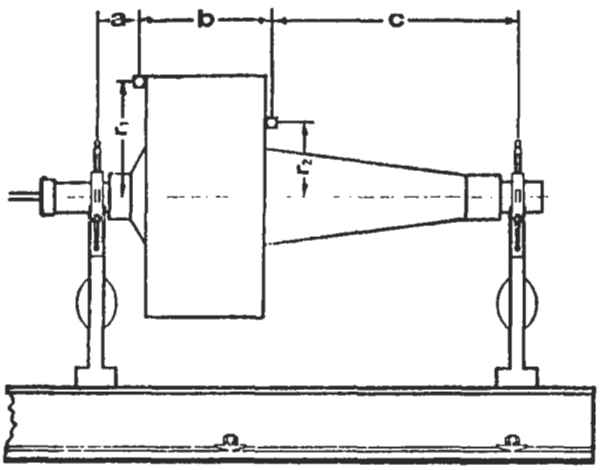


Figure 6-21. A permanently calibrated hard-bearing balancing machine, showing five rotor dimensions used in computing unbalance.

Maintenance and Production Balancing Machines

Balancing machines may also be categorized by their application in the following three groups:

1. Universal balancing machines.
2. Semi-automatic balancing machines.
3. Full automatic balancing machines with automatic transfer of work.

Each of these is available in both the nonrotating and rotating types, the latter for correction in either one or two planes.

Universal Balancing Machines

Universal balancing machines are adaptable for balancing a considerable variety of sizes and types of rotors. These machines commonly have a capacity for balancing rotors whose weight varies as much as 100 to 1 from maximum to minimum. The elements of these machines are adapted easily to new sizes and types of rotors. Amount and location of unbalance are observed on suitable instrumentation by the machine operator as the

machine performs its measuring functions. This category of machine is suitable for maintenance or job-shop balancing as well as for many small and medium lot-size production applications.

Semi-Automatic Balancing Machines

Semi-automatic balancing machines are of many types. They vary from an almost universal machine to an almost fully automatic machine. Machines in this category may perform automatically any one or all of the following functions in sequence or simultaneously:

1. Retain the amount of unbalance indication for further reference
2. Retain the angular location of unbalance indication for further reference
3. Measure amount and position of unbalance
4. Couple the balancing-machine drive to the rotor
5. Initiate and stop rotation
6. Set the depth of a correction tool depending on indication of amount of unbalance
7. Index the rotor to a desired position depending on indication of unbalance location
8. Apply correction of the proper magnitude at the indicated location
9. Inspect the residual unbalance after correction
10. Uncouple the balancing-machine drive

Thus, the most complete semi-automatic balancing machine performs the entire balancing process and leaves only loading, unloading, and cycle initiation to the operator. Other semi-automatic balancing machines provide only means for retention of measurements to reduce operator fatigue and error. The features which are economically justifiable on a semi-automatic balancing machine may be determined only from a study of the rotor to be balanced and the production requirements.

Fully-Automatic Balancing Machines

Fully automatic balancing machines with automatic transfer of the rotor are also available. These machines may be either single- or multiple-station machines. In either case, the parts to be balanced are brought to the balancing machine by conveyor, and balanced parts are taken away from the balancing machine by conveyor. All the steps of the balancing process and the required handling of the rotor are performed without an operator. These machines also may include means for inspecting the residual unbalance as well as monitoring means to ensure that the balance inspection operation is performed satisfactorily.

In single-station automatic balancing machines, all functions of the balancing process (unbalance measurement, location, and correction) as well as inspection of the complete process are performed sequentially in a single station. In a multiple-station machine, the individual steps of the balancing process may be performed concurrently at two or more stations. Automatic transfer is provided between stations at which the amount and location of unbalance are determined; then the correction for unbalance is applied; finally, the rotor is inspected for residual unbalance. Such machines generally have shorter cycle times than single-station machines.

Establishing a Purchase Specification

A performance type purchase specification for a balancing machine should cover the following areas:

1. Description of the rotors to be balanced, including production rates, and balance tolerances.
2. Special rotor requirements, tooling, methods of unbalance correction, other desired features.
3. Acceptance test procedures.
4. Commercial matters such as installation, training, warranty, etc.

Rotor Description

To determine the correct machine size and features for a given application, it is first necessary to establish a precise description of the rotors to be balanced. To accumulate the necessary data, ISO 2953 suggests a suitable format. Refer to Appendix 6C.

Supporting the Rotor in the Balancing Machine

Means of Journal Support

A prime consideration in a balancing machine is the means for supporting the rotor. Various alternates are available, such as twin rollers, plain bearings, rolling element bearings (including slave bearings), V-roller bearings, nylon V-blocks, etc. (See also Appendix 6B, "Balancing Machine Nomenclature," and Appendix 6C.) The most frequently used and easiest to adapt are twin rollers. A rotor should generally be supported at its journals to assure that balancing is carried out around the same axis on which it rotates in service.

Rotors with More than Two Journals

Rotors which are normally supported at more than two journals may be balanced satisfactorily on only two journals provided that:

1. All journal surfaces are concentric with respect to the axis determined by the two journals used for support in the balancing machine.
2. The rotor is rigid at the balancing speed when supported on only two bearings.
3. The rotor has equal stiffness in all radial planes when supported on only two journals.

If the other journal surfaces are not concentric with respect to the axis determined by the two supporting journals, the shaft should be straightened. If the rotor is not a rigid body, or if it has unequal stiffness in different radial planes (e.g., crankshafts), the rotor should be supported in a (nonrotating) cradle at all journals during the balancing operation. This cradle should supply the stiffness usually supplied to the rotor by the rotor housing in which it is finally installed. The cradle should have minimum mass when used with a soft-bearing machine to permit maximum balancing sensitivity.

Rotors with Rolling Element Bearings

Rotors with stringent requirements for minimum residual unbalance and which run in rolling element bearings, should be balanced in their bearings, either in:

1. Special machines where the bearings are aligned and the outer races held in saddle bearing supports, rigidly connected by tie bars, or
2. In standard machines having supports equipped with V-roller carriages.

Frequently, practical considerations make it necessary to remove the bearings after balancing, to permit final assembly. If this cannot be avoided, the bearings should be match-marked to the rotor shaft and returned to the location used during balancing. Rolling element bearings with considerable radial play or bearings with a quality less than ABEC (Annular Bearing Engineers Committee) Standard grade 3 tend to cause erratic indications in the balancing machine. In some cases the outer race can be clamped tightly enough to remove excessive radial play. Only "fair" or lesser balance quality can be reached when rotors are supported on bearings of a grade lower than ABEC 3.

When maintenance requires antifriction bearings to be changed occasionally on a rotor, it is best to balance the rotor on the journals on which the inner races of the antifriction bearings fit. The unbalance introduced by displacement of the shaft axis due to eccentricity of the inner races can be minimized by use of high-quality bearings.

Driving the Rotor

If the rotor has its own journals, it may be driven in a horizontal balancing machine through:

1. A universal-joint or flexible-coupling drive from one end of the rotor
2. A belt over the periphery of the rotor, or over a pulley attached to the rotor
3. Air jets
4. Other power means by which the rotor is normally driven in the final machine assembly

The choice of end-drive can affect the residual unbalance substantially, even if the design considerations listed later in this text are carefully observed. (See also "Balance Errors Due to Drive" on page 296.) Belt-drive has the advantage here, but it is somewhat limited in the amount of torque it can transmit to the rotor. Driving belts must be extremely flexible and of uniform thickness. Driving pulleys attached to the rotor should be used only when it is impossible to transmit sufficient driving torque by running the belt over the rotor. Pulleys must be as light as possible, must be dynamically balanced, and should be mounted on surfaces of the rotor which are square and concentric with the journal axis. The belt drive should not cause disturbances in the unbalance indication exceeding one-quarter of the permissible residual unbalance. Rotors driven by belt should not drive components of the balancing machine by means of any mechanical connection.

The use of electrical means or air for driving rotors may influence the unbalance readout. To avoid or minimize such influence, great care should be taken to bring in the power supply through very flexible leads, or have the airstream strike the rotor at right angles to the direction in which the balancing machine takes its readings.

If the electronic measuring system incorporates filters tuned to a specific frequency only, it is essential that means be available to control precisely the rotor speed to suit the filter setting.

Drive System Limitation

A given drive system has a certain rotor acceleration capability expressed in terms of the Wk^2n^2 value. This limiting value is generally part of the machine specification describing the drive, since it depends primarily on motor horsepower, motor type (squirrel-cage induction, wound-rotor, DC), and drive line strength.

The specified Wk^2n^2 value may be used to determine the maximum balancing speed (n) to which a rotor with a specific polar moment of inertia (Wk^2) can be accelerated; or conversely, to determine what maximum Wk^2 can be accelerated to a specified speed (n). (In each case the number of runs per hour must stay within the maximum number of cycles allowed.)

If a rotor is to be balanced which has a Wk^2n^2 value smaller than the maximum specified for a given drive, the stated cycles per hour may generally be exceeded in an inverse ratio.

On occasion it may happen that a large diameter rotor, although still within the weight capacity of the machine, cannot be accelerated to a given balancing speed. This may be due to the fact that the rotor's mass is located at a large radius, thus creating a large polar moment of inertia. As a result, a lower balancing speed may have to be selected.

A rotor's polar moment of inertia (Wk^2) is found by multiplying the rotor weight (W) in pounds by the square of the radius-of-gyration (k) in feet. The radius-of-gyration is the average of the radii from the shaft axis of each infinitesimal part of the rotor. It may be approximated by multiplying the outside radius of the rotor by a factor (C), shown in Table 6-2.

Example:

Wk^2 for a 2500 lb solid steel flywheel, 3 foot diameter (1.5 ft outside radius).

$$Wk^2 = 2500 \text{ lb } (1.5 \text{ ft} \times 0.7)^2 = 2756 \text{ lb ft}^2$$

Table 6-2
Factor C for Approximating Radius of Gyration k for Typical Rotors

Typical Rotor	C-Factor
Tube or Pipe	1.
Solid Mass	0.7
Bladed Rotor	0.5–0.6
Propeller	0.4

With the polar moment of inertia known, the maximum speed n (in rpm) to which the machine can accelerate this rotor may now be computed.

Example:

Machine specification limits Wk^2n^2 to $3{,}000 \cdot 10^6$ lb ft^2n^2. The rotor has a Wk^2 of 2750 lb ft^2.

$$n_{max} = \sqrt{\frac{Wk^2n^2}{Wk^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{3{,}000 \times 10^6}{2750}} = 1045 \text{ rpm}$$

To determine the maximum moment of inertia the machine can accelerate to a specific balancing speed, divide the limiting Wk^2n^2 value by the square of that speed (n^2).

Example:

Machine specification limits Wk^2n^2 to $3000 \cdot 10^6$ lb ft^2n^2.
The maximum rotor Wk^2 which can be accelerated to 900 rpm then is:

$$Wk^2 = \frac{Wk^2n^2}{n^2} = \frac{3{,}000 \cdot 10^6}{900^2} = 3{,}700 \text{ lb ft}^2$$

If the moment of inertia of a given rotor is less than 3,700 lb ft^2, it may be balanced at 900 rpm.

Note: These calculations do not take air resistance and other frictional losses into account.

Weight-Speed Limitation (Wn^2)

The weight-speed limitation stated by a balancing machine supplier for a given size machine serves (a) to prevent damage to the supports of soft-bearing machines, and (b) to prevent the hard-bearing machine support system from operating too closely to its natural frequency and giving false indications. The stated value of Wn^2 is based on the assumption that the rotors are approximately symmetrical in shape, rigid, and mounted between the supports.

Example:

Machine specification limits Wn^2 to $2400 \cdot 10^6$ lb n^2.

A given symmetric rotor weighs 1200 lb, and is to be balanced at 800 rpm. Its Wn^2 value is:

$$Wn^2 = 1200 \cdot 800^2 = 768 \cdot 10^6$$

Therefore, the balancing speed of 800 rpm falls well within the capabilities of the machine.

For nonsymmetrical load distribution between the supports, and for outboard rotors, the following formula provides a fast approximation of (a) the maximum permissible balancing speed in a soft-bearing machine, and (b) the maximum balancing speed in a hard-bearing machine at which permanent calibration in the A-B-C mode is maintained.

$$W_e = W\left[\frac{(2s + 1)^2}{D} + 1\right]$$

Where: W_e = Weight equivalent to be used in Wn^2 formula, (lb).
W = Weight of rotor, (lb).
s = Distance from the rotor CG to the nearest support. (If the CG is outboard of the supports, s is positive; if the CG is inboard, s is negative.)
D = Distance between the supports.

Determining the Right Balancing Speed

The question is often asked whether a given rotor such as a crankshaft, fan, roll or other rotating component should be balanced at its respective service speed. The answer, in most cases, is no. The next question, usually, is why not? Doesn't unbalance increase with the square of the rotational speed? The answer, again, is no. Only the centrifugal force that a given unbalance creates increases proportionately to the square of the speed, but the actual unbalance remains the same. In other words, an ounce-inch of unbalance represents a one ounce unbalance mass with its center-of-gravity located at a one inch radius from the shaft axis, no matter whether the part is at rest or rotating (see also earlier in this chapter on "Units of Unbalance").

What balancing speed should be used then? To answer that question, consider the following requirements:

1. The balancing speed should be as low as possible to decrease cycle time, horsepower requirement, wind, noise, and danger to the operator.
2. It should be high enough so that the balancing machine has sufficient sensitivity to achieve the required balance tolerance with ease.

However, there is one other important consideration to be made before deciding upon a balancing speed substantially lower than the rotor's service speed; namely, is the part (or assembly) rigid?

Is the Rotor "Rigid"?

Theoretically it is not, since no workpiece is infinitely rigid. However, for balancing purposes there is another way of looking at it. (See definition of "Rigid Rotor" in Appendix 6A.)

Any rotor satisfying this definition can be balanced on standard balancing machines at a speed which is normally well below the service speed. When selecting the balancing speed, consider the following guidelines:

1. Determine the proper balance tolerance by consulting Table 6-5 and subsequent nomograms.
2. Select the lowest available speed at which the balancing machine provides at least 1/4 in. amount-of-unbalance indicator deflection or 5 digital units of indication for the required balance tolerance. It is usually of no advantage to select a higher speed for achieving greater sensitivity, since the repeatability of a good quality balancing machine is well in line with today's exacting balance tolerances.

Whether a given rotor can be termed "rigid" as defined in Appendix 6A depends on numerous factors that should be carefully evaluated. For instance:

1. Rotor configuration and service speed. Technical literature provides reference tables which permit approximating the critical speed of the first flexural mode from the significant geometric rotor parameters (see Appendix 6D). In most cases it can be assumed that a rotor can be balanced successfully at low speed if its service speed is less than 50 percent of the computed first flexural critical speed.
2. Rotor design and manufacturing procedures. Rotors which are known to be flexible or unstable may, nevertheless be balanced satisfactorily at low speed if certain precautions are taken. Rotors of this type are classified as "quasi-rigid rotors."

Examples:

- A gas turbine compressor assembly, consisting of a series of bladed disks which can all be balanced individually prior to rotor assembly. Considerable effort has been made by the turbine designers to provide for accurate component balancing so that standard (low speed) balancing machines can be employed in production and overhaul of these sophisticated rotor assemblies.
- A turbine rotor with flexible or unstable mass components, such as governors or loose blades. To obtain, at low balancing speed, a position of governor or blades which most nearly approximates their position at the much higher service speed, it may be necessary to block the governor or "stake" the blades.
- A large diesel crankshaft normally rotating in five or even seven journals. When running such a shaft on only two journals in a balancing machine, the shaft may bend from centrifugal forces caused by large counterweights and thus register a large (erroneous) unbalance. To avoid these difficulties, the balancing speed must be extremely low and/or the shaft must be supported in the balancing machine on a rigid cradle with three, five, or even seven precisely aligned bearings.
- Rotors which can not be satisfactorily balanced at low speed, require special high-speed or "modal" balancing techniques, since they must be corrected in several planes at or near their critical speed(s).[2]

Flexibility Test

This test serves to determine if a rotor may be considered rigid for balancing purposes, or if it must be treated as a flexible rotor. The test is carried out at service speed either in the rotor service bearings or in a high-speed, hard-bearing balancing machine.

The rotor should first be balanced fairly well at low speed. Then one test mass is added at the same angular position in each end plane of the rotor near its journals. During a subsequent test run, vibration is measured on both bearings. Next, the rotor is stopped and the test masses are moved to the center of the rotor, or where they are expected to cause the largest rotor distortion. In a second run the vibration is again measured at the bearings. If the total of the first readings is designated A, and the total of the second readings B, then the ratio of (B-A)/A should not exceed 0.2. Experience has shown that, if the ratio stays below 0.2, the rotor can

be satisfactorily corrected at low speed by applying correction masses in two or three planes. Should the ratio exceed 0.2, the rotor will generally have to be balanced at or near its service speed.

Direction of Rotation

The direction of rotation in which the rotor runs while being balanced is usually unimportant with the exception of bladed rotors. On these (or others that create windage) it is recommended to run in the direction that creates the least turbulence and thus, uses the least drive power. Certain fans need close shrouding to reduce drive power requirements to an acceptable level. Turbine rotors with loose blades should be run backward (opposite to operational direction) to approximate the blade position in service, while compressor rotors should run forward (the same as under service conditions).

End-Drive Adapters

Design Considerations

End-drive adapters used on horizontal balancing machines to drive workpieces need to be carefully balanced so as not to introduce a balance error into the workpiece.

Considerations should be given to the following details when designing an end-drive adapter:

1. Make the adapters as light in weight as possible, consistent with capability to transmit the required driving torque. This will reduce balance errors due to fit tolerances which allow the adapter to locate eccentrically, i.e., offset from the shaft axis of the workpiece.
2. Maintain close tolerances on fit dimensions between end-drive adapter and workpiece, and between adapter and balancing machine drive. Loose fits cause shifting of the adapter and consequent changes in adapter balance. Multiply the weight of the adapter in grams by one half of the maximum radial runout possible due to a loose fit to obtain the maximum balance error in gram-inches that may result.
3. Design adapters so that they may be indexed 180° relative to the workpiece. This will allow checking and correcting the end-drive adapter balance on the balancing machine.
4. Harden and grind adapters to be used in production runs to reduce wear and consequent increase in fit clearances.

Balancing Keyed End-Drive Adapters

An adapter for a keyed rotor shaft should be provided with two 180° opposed keyways. The correct procedure for balancing the adapter depends entirely on which of the two methods was used to take care of the mating keyway when balancing the component which, on final assembly, mounts to the keyed shaft end of the workpiece being balanced.

Half-Key Method

This is the method most commonly used in North American industry. Shafts with keyways, as well as the mating components are individually balanced with half-keys fitted to fill the void the keys will occupy upon final assembly of the unit (see Figure 6-22A). To balance the end-drive adapter using this method, proceed as follows:

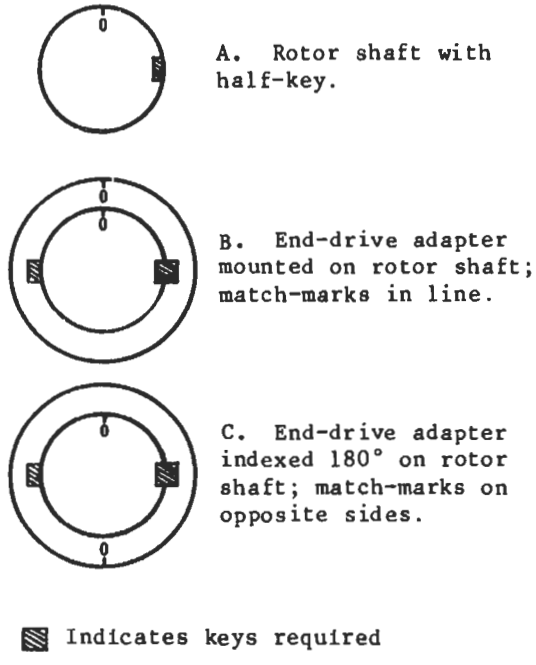

A. Rotor shaft with half-key.
B. End-drive adapter mounted on rotor shaft; match-marks in line.
C. End-drive adapter indexed 180° on rotor shaft; match-marks on opposite sides.
Indicates keys required

Figure 6-22. Half-key method.

1. Mount the adapter to the workpiece shaft using a full key in the shaft keyway and fill the half-key void in the opposite side of the adapter with a half-key (see Figure 6-22B). Balance the assembly by adding balancing clay to the workpiece.
2. Index the adapter 180° on rotor shaft (see Figure 6-22C). If the adapter is out of balance, it will register on the balancing machine instrumentation. Note the gram-inch unbalance value in the plane closest to the adapter. Eliminate half of the indicated unbalance by adding clay to the adapter, the other half by adding clay to the workpiece.
3. Index the adapter 180° once again, back to the position shown in Figure 6-22, and check unbalance indication. Repeat correction method outlined above. Then replace clay on adapter with permanent unbalance correction, such as drilling, grinding, etc., on opposite side.

If it is not possible to reduce the unbalance in the adapter to a satisfactory level by this method, it is an indication that the tolerances on fit dimensions are not adequate.

This is the method most commonly used in European industry. Shafts are balanced with full keys and mating components without a key. To balance the end-drive adapter using this method, proceed as follows:

1. Place a full key into the keyway of the workpiece shaft (see Figure 6-23A). Mount adapter to the workpiece shaft, leaving the opposite half-key void in the adapter empty (see Figure 6-23B). Balance the assembly using balancing clay.
2. Follow the index balancing procedure outlined in paragraphs 2 and 3 of the half-key method.

Balancing Arbors

Definition

A balancing arbor (or mandrel) generally is an accurately machined piece of shafting on which rotors that do not have journals are mounted prior to balancing. Flywheels, clutches, pulleys and other disc-shaped parts fall into this category. Arbors are employed on horizontal as well as vertical balancing machines. Particularly when used on the latter, they are also referred to as "adapters," "fixtures," or "tooling."

Since an arbor becomes part of the rotating mass being balanced, several criteria must be carefully observed during its design, manufacture, and use.

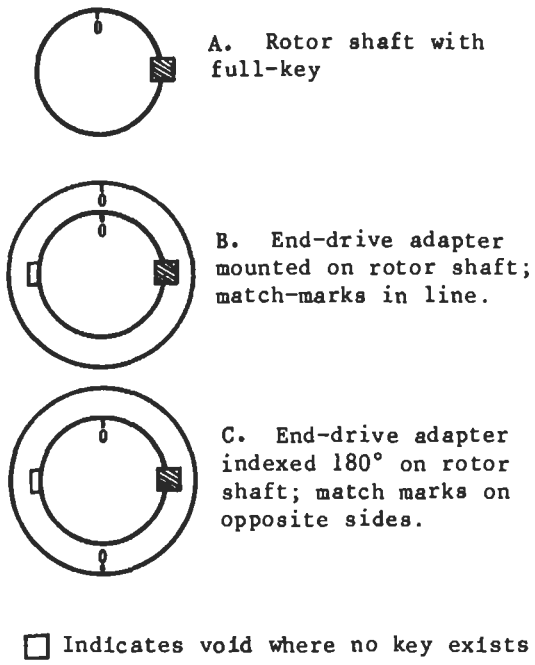

A. Rotor shaft with full-key
B. End-drive adapter mounted on rotor shaft; match-marks in line.
C. End-drive adapter indexed 180° on rotor shaft; match marks on opposite sides.
Indicates void where no key exists

Figure 6-23. Full-key method.

Basic Design Criteria

As is the case with most balancing machine tooling, an arbor should be as light as possible to have minimum effect on machine sensitivity. This is particularly important when using a soft-bearing machine. At the same time, the arbor must be rigid enough not to flex or bend at balancing speed.

For ease of set-up in a horizontal machine, the arbor should be designed so that the rotor can be mounted near the center (Figure 6-24). Where this is not possible, perhaps because the rotor has a blind or very small bore, the rotor may be mounted in an outboard position (Figure 6-25). If the center-of-gravity of the combined rotor and arbor falls outboard of the machine supports, a negative load bearing is required on the opposite support to absorb the uplift.

A light push fit between arbor and rotor will facilitate assembly and disassembly, but may allow the rotor to slip during acceleration or decel-

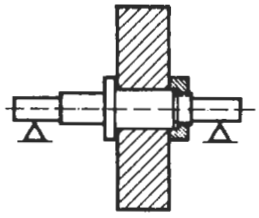


Figure 6-24. Rotor in center of arbor.

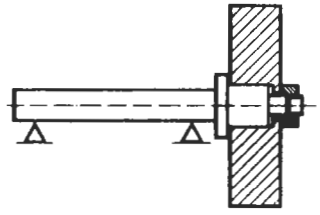


Figure 6-25. Rotor mounted outboard.

eration. To prevent this, a hydraulically or mechanically expanding arbor is ideal. If none is available, a set screw may do. A small, flat area should be provided on the shaft for set screw seating.

If the rotor has a keyway, the arbor should be provided with a mating key of the same length as the final assembly key. If the arbor has no keyway, the void of the rotor keyway should be filled with a half-key having the same length as the final assembly key, even if it differs from the length of the keyway.

Threads are not a good locating or piloting surface. Sometimes a nut is used to hold the rotor on the arbor (see Figure 6-26). The nut should be balanced in itself and have a piloting surface to keep it concentric with the arbor axis.

Error Analysis

The tighter the balance tolerance, the more important it is to keep all working surfaces of the arbor as square and concentric as possible. Any

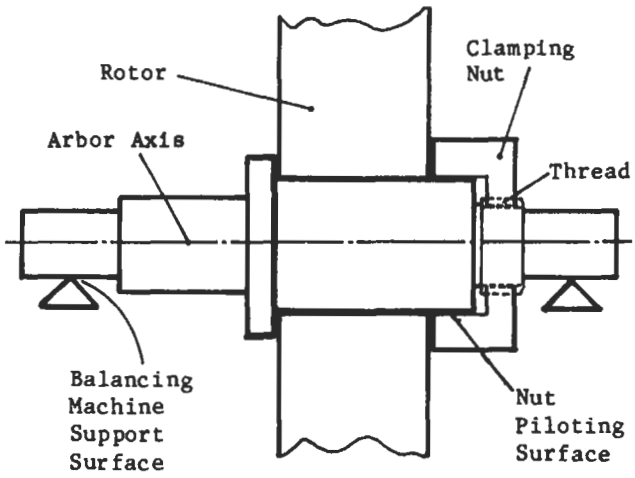


Figure 6-26. Rotor held on arbor with clamping nut.

eccentricity of the rotor mounting surface to the arbor axis and/or looseness in the fit of the rotor on the arbor causes balance errors.

To determine the balance error U (i.e., unbalance) caused by eccentricity e of the rotor mounting surface (and by rotor clearance), use the following formula:

$$U(g \cdot in) = W(g) \cdot e(inches)$$

Where:

W = Weight of rotor (grams)
e = eccentricity (inches) (= 1/2 Total indicator runout (TIR) of rotor mounting surface relative to arbor axis, plus 1/2 clearance between rotor and arbor)
$U_{(1\text{-}4)}$ = Unbalance (gram · inches) caused by eccentric rotor mounting surface and/or rotor/arbor fit clearance.

Example:

$W = 1000$ grams
$e = 1/2$ TIR (mounting surface to shaft axis), say $1/2$ of 0.004 in.
$= 0.002$ in. + $1/2$ the total clearance between in. rotor and arbor, say $1/2$ of $0.002 = 0.001$ in. $= 0.003$ in.

1. $U_1 = 1000g \cdot 0.003$ in. $= 3$ gram · inches
   To this may have to be added:
2. Unbalance caused by eccentricity and thread clearance of the clamping nut, assume:

   $W = 100$ grams
   $e = 0.001$ in.
   $U_2 = 100g \cdot 0.001$ in. $= 0.1$ g · in.
   (For simplification, the residual unbalance of the nut is ignored)

3. Residual unbalance U_3 of the arbor, assume 0.1 g · in.
4. Eccentricity plus $1/2$ fit clearance in mounting surfaces of the final rotor installation. Assuming that similar tolerances prevail as were used in making the arbor, the same unbalance will result, or:

   $U_4 = U_1 = 3$ g · in.

Total unbalance caused by arbor eccentricity and fit clearance U_1, nut eccentricity U_2, arbor residual unbalance, and installation error therefore may add up to a maximum of:

$$U_1 + U_2 + U_3 + U_4 = 3 + 0.1 + 0.1 + 3$$
$$= 6.2 \text{ (g · in.)}$$

Statistical Evaluation of Errors

One can readily see that if the rotor balance tolerance is, say, 10 g · in., 62 percent of it (6.2 g · in.) is already used up by tooling and mounting errors. Thus, the balancing machine operator is forced to balance each part to $10 - 6.2 = 3.8$ (g · in.) or better, to be sure that the maximum permissible residual unbalance of 10 g · in. will be attained in the final assembly. This may be rather time consuming and, therefore, costly. To allow a larger working tolerance, the various tooling errors could be reduced by a more precisely machined arbor and final shaft. However, this too may be costly or impractical.

A solution may be found in a statistical approach. Since the various unbalance errors are vectors and may have different angular directions, they add to each other vectorially, not arithmetically. If certain errors have opposite angular directions, they actually subtract, thus resulting in a smaller total error than assumed above.

To determine the probable maximum error, the root of the sum of the squares (RSS) method should be used. This statistical method requires that the individual errors (U_1 to U_4) each be squared, then added and the square root drawn of the total. In the aforementioned example, the computation would look as follows:

$$U_{Total} = \sqrt{U_1^2 + U_2^2 + U_3^2 + U_4^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{3^2 + 0.1^2 + 0.1^2 + 3^2}$$

$$= 4.25 \text{ (g} \cdot \text{in.)}$$

Now the operator is allowed a working tolerance of $10 - 4.25 = 5.75$ g • in., or 50 percent more than when the unbalance errors were added arithmetically. If this still presents a problem, a more sensitive machine may be needed, or the rotor may have to be trim- or field-balanced after assembly. Under certain conditions "biasing" of the arbor may help. This method is described in the third subheading down.

Balancing the Arbor

Since residual unbalance in the arbor itself is one of the factors in the error analysis, every arbor should be carefully balanced and periodically checked. If the arbor has a keyway, it should be of the same length as the final assembly key and be filled completely during balancing with a half-key (split lengthwise) for rotors of North American origin, with a full key for rotors of European origin (see also Figure 6-22 and Figure 6-23). If the arbor has a nut, the arbor should be balanced first without it. Then the nut should be added and any residual unbalance corrected in the nut. The nut should be checked in several angular positions to make sure it stays in balance. If it does not, its locating surface must be corrected.

Special Design Features

If the arbor is to be used on a horizontal balancing machine with end-drive, one arbor face must be provided with a pilot and bolt hole circle to

interface with the drive flange of the universal-joint shaft that transmits the driving torque from the balancing machine headstock.

If a horizontal machine with belt-drive is to be used, and if the rotor has no surface over which the drive belt may be placed, the arbor must be provided with a belt pulley, unless the belt can run over the arbor itself. In either case, balancing speed and drive power requirements must be taken into consideration. On machines with fixed drive motor speeds, the ratio between drive pulley diameter and driven rotor (or arbor pulley) diameter determines the desired balancing speed.

If arbors are to be used often, for instance for production balancing, they should be hardened and ground. Special care must be taken during storage to prevent corrosion and damage to locating and running surfaces.

Biasing an Arbor

This method is helpful whenever the runout (primarily radial runout) of the arbor surface which locates the rotor represents a significant factor in the error analysis. Biasing means the addition of artificial unbalance(s) to the (otherwise balanced) arbor. The bias masses are intended to compensate for the unbalance error caused by rotor displacement from the arbor's axis of rotation; rotor displacement being caused, for instance, by radial runout of the arbor surface which locates the rotor and/or, on vertical machines, runout of the machine spindle pilot.

Since the attachment of masses to a (horizontal machine) arbor may prevent it from being inserted in the rotor bore, biasing is often accomplished by grinding or drilling two light spots into the arbor, equidistant to the left and right of the rotor. The light spots must have the same angular location as the high spot of the arbor surface which locates the rotor radially.

The combined approximate unbalance value (g · in.) of the two high spots may be calculated by multiplying the rotor weight (g) by ½ of the TIR (in.). On vertical machines the addition of bias masses to the arbor is often the simpler method. Whether the proper bias has been reached can be tested by balancing a rotor to the machine's minimum achievable residual unbalance, and then indexing it 180° on the arbor. One half of the unbalance which shows up after indexing is corrected in the rotor, the other half in the arbor. This indexing procedure is repeated until no further residual unbalance is detectable. The total correction made in the arbor is now considered its bias correction compensating for its runout, but only for the particular type of rotor used. If the rotor weight changes, the bias will have to be corrected again. Bias correction requires a good rotor fit. It will not overcome locating errors caused by loose fits.

To eliminate the need for physically biasing an arbor, balancing machine instrumentation can be furnished with a "double compensator." This feature permits biasing of the machine indication by means of suitable electrical circuits.

The Double Compensator

As its name indicates, the double compensator has a two-fold purpose: to eliminate errors in unbalance caused by tooling (thereby biasing the tooling or arbor), and to compensate for initial workpiece unbalance during machine setup.

Used in conjunction with 180° indexing, the compensator allows the machine to indicate only the rotor's true unbalance. Typically, this works as follows (see also Figure 6-27).

1. Mount first workpiece on adapter. Start machine, on Schenck Trebel equipment depress compensator switch "U + K_1," and observe initial indication, I_1. This represents the combination (vectorial addition) of workpiece unbalance, U_1, and tooling error E (adapter eccentricity e and/or adapter-spindle unbalance), both of which are of unknown amount and angle.
2. Adjust compensator until indicator I_1 becomes zero. Compensator voltage, K_1, has now compensated for U_1 and E.
3. Index workpiece 180° in reference to the adapter. This does not change the magnitude nor the angle of the tooling error E. The initial workpiece unbalance, however, moves 180° with the work-

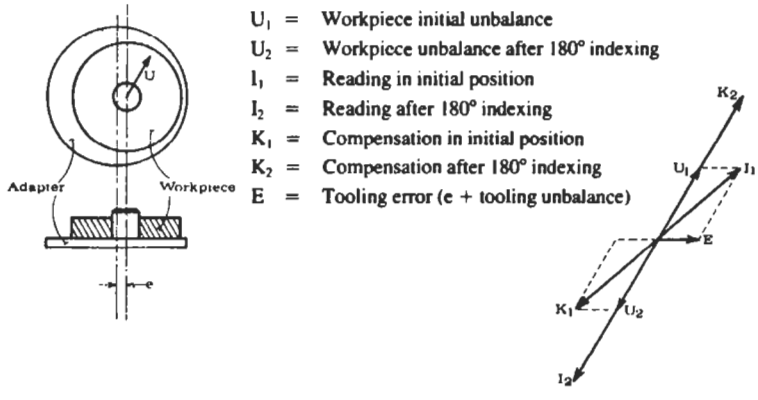


Figure 6-27. Schematic representation of double compensator.

piece. Since the U_1 component of K_1 now adds to the reversed workpiece unbalance U_2, indication I_2 will be opposite U_1 and twice its magnitude.

4. Depress switch "U + K_2" and adjust compensation voltage K_2 until I_2 is zero.
5. Depress switch "U + $\frac{1}{2}K_2$." This divides compensation voltage K_2 in half. The remaining indication is U_1, or the true initial unbalance in the workpiece. The tooling error E remains compensated by K_1 and thus has no more influence on this reading or on readings taken on subsequent workpieces of the same type. If the workpiece type changes, the double compensator procedure described above must be repeated for a new setup.

Just as the compensator is used to correct for unwanted errors, it can also be used to bias tooling, thereby producing a specified unbalance in a part. A typical example would be a crankshaft for a single or dual piston pump which might call for a given amount of compensating unbalance in the counterweights.

Before using a compensator for this purpose, the required accuracy for the bias must be evaluated. For large biases with tight tolerances, it may be necessary to add precisely made (and located) bias masses to the tooling. An error analysis and statistical evaluation (see earlier chapters) may then be required to take into account all error sources such as weight of bias mass, its CG uncertainty due to unbalance and mounting fit tolerance, distance of bias mass to the shaft axis of the arbor, angular location, etc.

Unbalance Correction Methods

Corrections for rotor unbalance are made either by the addition of mass to the rotor, by the removal of material, or in some cases, by relocating the shaft axis ("mass centering"). The selected correction method should ensure that there is sufficient capacity to allow correction of the maximum unbalance which may occur. The ideal correction method permits reduction of the maximum initial unbalance to less than balance tolerance in a single correction step. However, this is often difficult to achieve. The more common methods described below, e.g., drilling, usually permit a reduction of 10:1 in unbalance if carried out carefully. The addition of mass may achieve a reduction ratio as large as 20:1 or higher, provided the mass and its position are closely controlled. If the method selected for reduction of maximum initial unbalance cannot be expected to bring the rotor within the permissible residual unbalance in a

single correction step, a preliminary correction is made. Then a second correction method is selected to reduce the remaining unbalance to its permissible value.

Addition of Mass

1. Addition of solder or two-component epoxy. It is difficult to apply the material so that its center-of-gravity is precisely at the desired correction location. Variations in location introduce errors in correction. Also, this method requires a fair amount of time.
2. Addition of bolted or riveted washers. This method is used only where moderate balance quality is required.
3. Addition of cast iron, lead, or lead masses. Such masses, in incremental sizes, are used for unbalance correction.
4. Addition of masses by resistance-welding them to a suitable rotor surface. This method provides a means of attaching a wide variety of correction masses at any desired angular locations. Care must be taken that welding heat does not distort the rotor.

Removal of Mass

1. Drilling. Material is removed from the rotor by a drill which penetrates the rotor to a measured depth, thereby removing the intended mass of material with a high degree of accuracy. A depth gage or limit switch can be provided on the drill spindle to ensure that the hole is drilled to the desired depth. This is probably the most effective method of unbalance correction.
2. Milling, shaping, or fly cutting. This method permits accurate removal of mass when the rotor surfaces, from which the depth of cut is measured, are machined surfaces, and when means are provided for accurate measurement of cut with respect to those surfaces; used where relatively large corrections are required.
3. Grinding. In general, grinding is used as a trial-and-error method of correction. It is difficult to evaluate the actual mass of the material which is removed. This method is usually used only where the rotor design does not permit a more economical type of correction.

Mass Centering

For the definition of mass centering see Appendix A. Such a procedure is used, for instance, to reduce initial unbalance in crankshaft forgings. The shaft is mounted in a balanced cage or cradle which, in turn, is rotated in a balancing machine. The shaft is adjusted radially with respect to the cage, until the unbalance indication for the combined shaft and cra-

dle assembly is within a given tolerance. At this point the principal inertia axis of the shaft essentially coincides with the shaft axis of the balanced cage. Center-drills, guided along the axis of the cage, drill the shaft centers and thereby provide an axis in the crankshaft about which it is in balance. The subsequent machining of the crankshaft is carried out between these centers.

Because material removal is uneven at different parts of the shaft, the machining operation will introduce some new unbalance. A final balancing operation is therefore still required. It is generally accomplished by drilling into the crankshaft counterweights. However, final unbalance corrections are small and balancing time is significantly shortened. Furthermore, final correction by drilling does not exceed the material available for it, nor does it reduce the mass of the counterweights to a level where they no longer perform their proper function, namely to compensate for the opposed masses of the crankshaft.

Testing Balancing Machines

Total verification of all purchase specification requirements may be possible for a production machine, but usually not for a general purpose machine, such as a machine in a motor repair shop, because a rotor of the maximum specified weight or polar moment of inertia may not be available at the time of acceptance tests. Nevertheless, essential conformance with the specification may be ascertained by a complete physical inspection and performance tests with typical workpieces and/or a "proving rotor." Physical inspection needs to take into account all specified dimensions, features, instrumentation, tooling, and accessories that are listed in the purchase specification and/or the seller's proposal. Performance tests are somewhat more involved and should be witnessed by a representative of the buyer who is well acquainted with balancing machines and the particular specification applying to the machine to be tested.

Tests for Production Machines

A production machine is usually purchased for balancing a given part or parts in large quantities. Acceptance tests, therefore, are generally performed by running samples of such parts, so that total compliance with specified indicating accuracy and cycle time can be ascertained under simulated production conditions. At the same time, tooling is checked for locating accuracy and balance. Additional tests, as described in the following paragraphs, may then be confined to just the first part (U_{mar} Test), since compliance with the specified cycle time may already

be considered sufficient proof that the machine achieves a satisfactory "Unbalance Reduction Ratio." This, however, is only the case if the initial unbalance of the sample rotors is representative of the whole range of initial unbalances that will be encountered in actual production parts.

Basic Test Concepts

From time to time over the last 30 or 40 years, the devising of procedures for testing balancing machines, particularly dynamic balancing machines, has occupied many experts and various committees of engineering societies. The chief problem usually has been the interaction of errors in amount indication, angle indication, and plane separation. A requirement for a given accuracy of amount indication becomes meaningless if the machine's indicating system has poor plane separation or lacks accuracy of angle indication; or the best plane separation is useless if the amount and angle indication are inaccurate.

As an example of interdependence between amount and angle indication, Figure 6-28 illustrates how an angle error of 10° results in an amount indication error of 17.4 percent. The initial unbalance of 100 g was corrected 10° away from where the correction mass should have been attached. The residual unbalance indicated in the next run is 17.4 g at 85°, nearly at a right angle to the initial unbalance.

Listed in Table 6-3 are residual unbalances expressed in percent of initial unbalances which result from applying unbalance correction of proper amount but at various incorrect angular positions.

Eventually it was recognized that most balancing machine users are really not so much interested in how accurately the individual parameter

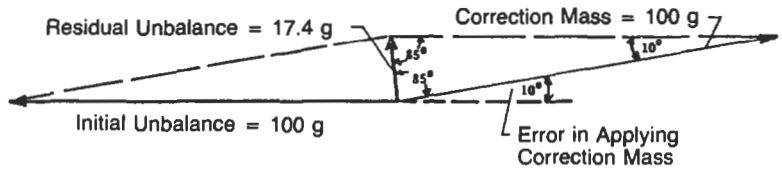


Figure 6-28. Residual unbalance due to angle error.

Table 6-3
Interdependence of Angle and Amount Indication

Angle Error	Amount Error*
1 degree	1.7%
2 degrees	3.5%
3 degrees	5.2%
4 degrees	7.0%
5 degrees	8.7%
6 degrees	10.5%
8 degrees	14.0%
10 degrees	17.4%
12 degrees	20.9%
15 degrees	26.1%

* *percent of initial unbalance.*

is indicated, but rather, in the accuracy of the combination of all three. In other words, the user wants to reduce the initial unbalance to the specified permissible residual unbalance in a minimum number of steps. Acceptance of this line of reasoning resulted in the concept of the "Unbalance Reduction Ratio," URR for short (see definition in Appendix A). It expresses the percentage of initial unbalance that one correction step will eliminate. For instance, a URR of 95 percent means that an initial unbalance of 100 units may be reduced to a residual unbalance of 5 units in one measuring and correction cycle—provided the correction itself is applied without error. A procedure was then developed to verify whether a machine will meet a specified URR. This test is called the Unbalance Reduction Test, or UR Test. It tests a machine for combined accuracy of amount indication, angle indication, and plane separation, and should be part of every balancing machine acceptance test.

Note: On single-plane machines, the UR test only checks combined accuracy of amount and angle indication.

Aside from the UR test, acceptance test procedures should also include a check whether the machine can indicate the smallest unbalance specified. For this purpose, a test for "Minimum Achievable Residual Unbalance" was developed, called, "U_{mar} Test" or "Traverse Test," for short. Both U_{mar} and UR tests are described in subsequent chapters. They should be repeated periodically; for instance, once a month if the machine is used daily, to assure that it is still in proper operating condition.

Table 6-4 lists various current standards for testing balancing machines (see also Appendix 6C).

Table 6-4
Standards for Testing Balancing Machines

Application	Title	Issuer	Document no.
General industrial balancing machines	Balancing Machines—Description and Evaluation	International Standards Organization (ISO)	DIS 2953 1983 *
Jet engine rotor balancing machines (for two-plane correction)	Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressor and Turbine, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One or More Than One Transverse Plane	Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. (SAE)	ARP 587 A
Jet engine rotor balancing machines (for single-plane correction)	Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressor and Turbine, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One Transverse Plane	Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. (SAE)	ARP 588 A
Gyroscope rotor balancing machines	Balancing Machine—Gyroscope Rotor	Defense General Supply Center, Richmond, Va.	FSN 6635—450—2208 NT
Field balancing equipment	Field Balancing Equipment—Description and Evaluation	International Standards Organization (ISO)	ISO 2371

** The 1983 version contains important revisions in the test procedure.*

Inboard Proving Rotors for Horizontal Machines

For general purpose machines, and in the absence of a proving rotor supplied by the balancing machine manufacturer, any rigid rotor such as an armature, roll, flywheel, etc, may be made into a proving rotor. Ideally, its weight and shape should approximate the actual rotors to be balanced. Since these usually vary all over the capacity range of a general purpose machine, ISO 2953 suggests one rotor to be near the minimum weight limit, a second rotor near the maximum.

Particularly for soft-bearing machines, it is important to make the U_{mar} test with a small rotor since that is where parasitic mass of the vibratory system (carriages, bridge, springs, etc.) has its maximum effect on the sensitivity of unbalance indication. As a general rule, it would probably

be sufficient if the rotor fell within the bottom 20 percent of the machine weight range. For hard-bearing machines, it is not as important to test the lower end of the weight range, since parasitic mass has little effect on the readout sensitivity of such machines.

Testing both soft- or hard-bearing machines in the upper 20 percent of their weight range will verify their weight carrying and drive capability, but add little additional knowledge concerning the measuring system. On machines with weight ranges larger than 10,000 lbs it may be impractical to call for a test near the upper weight limit before shipment, since a balancing machine manufacturer rarely has such heavy rotors on hand. A final test after installation with an actual rotor may then be the better choice. In any case, it will generally suffice to include one small, or on hard-bearing machines, one small to medium size proving rotor, in the purchase of a machine. Rotors weighing several thousand pounds might possibly be furnished temporarily by the balancing machine manufacturer for the acceptance test.

For all sizes of proving rotors, a symmetrical shape is preferred to which test masses can be attached at precisely defined positions in 2 transverse planes. Two typical kinds of proving rotors are shown in Figure 6-29.

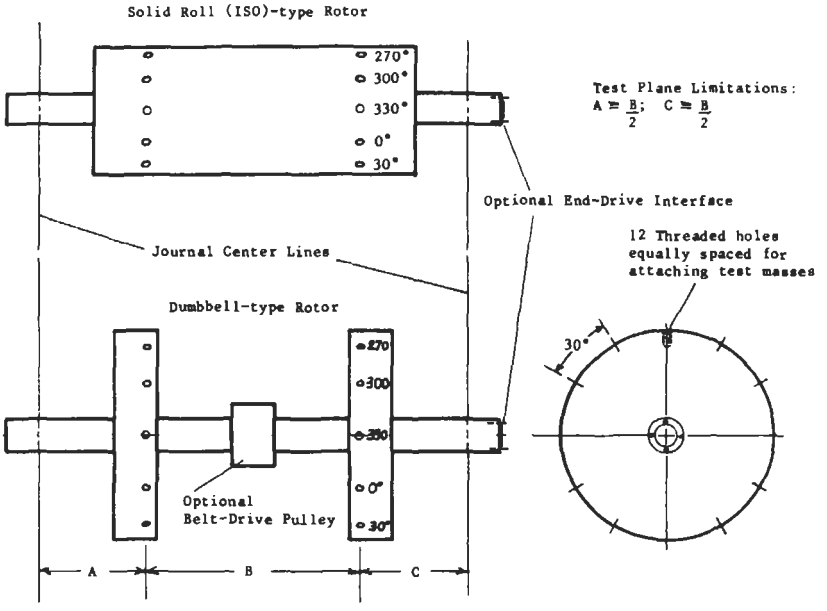


Figure 6-29. Typical proving rotors for horizontal machines.

ISO 2953 suggests the solid roll-type rotors, with the largest one weighing 1100 lb. For larger rotors (or even at the 1100 lb level) a dumbbell-type rotor may be more economical. This also depends on available material and manufacturing facilities.

Critical are the roundness of the journals, their surface quality, radial runout of the test mass mounting surfaces, and the axial and angular location of the threaded holes which hold the test masses. For guidance in determining machining tolerances, refer to the section on Test Masses.

Before using a proving rotor, it will have to be balanced as closely to zero unbalance as possible. This can generally be done on the machine to be tested, even if its calibration is in question. The first test (U_{mar} Test) will reveal if the machine has the capability to reach the specified minimum achievable residual unbalance, the second test (UR Test) will prove (or disprove) its calibration.

Whenever the rotor is reused at some future time, it should be checked again for balance. Minor correction can be made by attaching balancing clay or wax, since the rotor will probably change again due to aging, temperature distortion or other factors. The magnitude of such changes generally falls in the range of a few microinches displacement of CG, and is not unusual.

Test Masses

Test masses are attached to a balanced proving rotor to provide a known quantity of unbalance at a precisely defined location. The rotor is then run in the balancing machine at a given speed and the unbalance indication is observed. It should equal the unbalance value of the test mass within a permissible plus/minus deviation.

Since the rotor with test masses functions as a gage in assessing the accuracy of the machine indication, residual unbalance and location errors in the test masses should be as small as possible. The test procedure makes allowance for the residual unbalance in the proving rotor but not for test mass errors. Therefore, the following parameters must be carefully controlled to minimize errors.

1. Weight of test mass
2. Distance of test mass mounting surface to proving rotor shaft axis
3. Distance of test mass center of gravity (CG) to mounting surface
4. Angular position of test mass
5. Axial position of test mass

Since all errors are vector quantities, they should be treated as was done in the error analysis in the section on balancing arbors, i.e., ad-

justed by the RSS method. The resulting probable maximum error should ideally not use up more than one tenth of the reciprocal of the specified Unbalance Reduction Ratio factor. For example, if a URR of 95 percent is to be proven, the total test mass error from parameters 1 to 5 should not exceed $0.1 \cdot 5$ percent $= 0.5$ percent of the test mass weight.

Often test masses need to be so small that they become difficult to handle. It is then quite common to work with differential test masses, i.e. two masses 180° opposite each other in the same transverse plane. The effective test mass is the difference between the two masses, called the "differential unbalance." For instance, if one mass weighs 10 grams and the other 9, the difference of 1 gram represents the differential unbalance.

When working with differential test masses, the errors of the two comparatively large masses affect the accuracy of the differential unbalance in an exaggerated way. In the example used above, each differential test mass would have to be accurate within approximately .025 percent of its own value to keep the maximum possible effect on the differential unbalance to within $2 \cdot 0.25$ percent $= 0.5$ percent. In other words, if the opposed masses are about ten times as large as their difference, each mass must be ten times more accurate than the accuracy required for the difference.

Test Procedures

To test the performance of a balancing machine, ISO 2953 prescribes two separate tests, the U_{mar} Test and the Unbalance Reduction Test. The origin and philosophy behind these tests and their purpose were explained. Here are the actual test procedures:

U_{mar} (or Traverse) Test

1. Perform the mechanical adjustment, calibration and/or setting of the machine for the particular proving rotor being used for the test, ensuring that the unbalance in the rotor is smaller than five times the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance for the machine.
2. Put 10 to 20 times the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance on the rotor by adding two unbalance masses (such as balancing clay). These masses shall not be:

    - in the same transverse plane
    - in a test plane
    - at the same angle
    - displaced by 180°

3. Balance the rotor, following the standard procedure for the machine, by applying corrections in two planes other than test planes or those used for the unbalance masses in a maximum of four runs at the balancing speed selected for the U_{mar} Test.
4. In the case of horizontal machines, after performing the actions described in 1 to 3, change the angular reference system of the machine by 60 or 90°, e.g., turn the end-drive shaft with respect to the rotor, turn black and white markings, etc.
5. For horizontal or vertical two-plane machines, attach in each of the two prepared test plancs a test mass equal to ten times the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance.
   For example, if the ISO proving rotor No. 5 weighing 110 lbs (50,000 g) is used, the weight of each test mass is calculated as follows:
   The claimed minimum achievable residual specific unbalance is, say

$$1\ e_{mar} = 0.000020 \text{ in.}$$

The claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance per test plane, i.e., for half the rotor weight, is therefore:

$$1\ U_{mar} \text{ (per plane)} = \frac{50000\text{g}}{20} \cdot 0.000020 \text{ in.} = 0.5 \text{ g} \cdot \text{in.}$$

The desired 10 U_{mar} test mass per plane is therefore equivalent to:

$$10\ U_{mar} \text{ (per plane)} = 10 \cdot 0.5 \text{ g} \cdot \text{in.} = 5 \text{ g} \cdot \text{in.}$$

If the test mass is attached so that its center of gravity is at a radius of four in. (effective test mass radius), the actual weight of each test mass will be:

$$m = \frac{5 \text{ g} \cdot \text{in.}}{4 \text{ in.}} = 1.25\text{g}$$

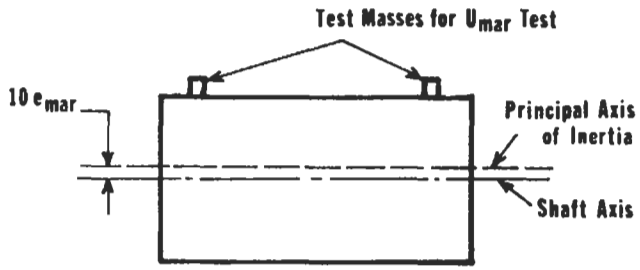


Figure 6-30. Proving rotor with test masses for "Umar" test.

When two of these test masses are attached to the rotor (one in each test plane as shown in Figure 6-30), they create a combined static unbalance in the entire rotor of 10 U_{mar} (or specific unbalance of 10 e_{mar}), since each test mass had been calculated for only one half of the rotor weight.

Note 1: If a proving rotor with asymmetric CG and/or test planes is used, the test masses should be apportioned between the two test planes in such a way that an essentially parallel displacement of the principal inertia axis from the shaft axis results.

Note 2: U_{mar} Tests are usually run on inboard rotors only. However, if special requirements exist for balancing outboard rotors, a U_{mar} Test may be advisable which simulates those requirements.

6. Attach the test masses in phase with one another in all 12 equally spaced holes in the test planes, using an arbitrary sequence. Record amount-of-unbalance readings in each plane for each position of the masses in a log shown in Figure 6-31. For the older style 8-hole rotors, a log with 45° test mass spacing must be used.
7. Plot the logged results as shown in Figure 6-32 in two diagrams, one for the left and one for the right plane (or upper and lower planes on vertical machines). For 8-hole rotors, use a diagram with 45° spacing.

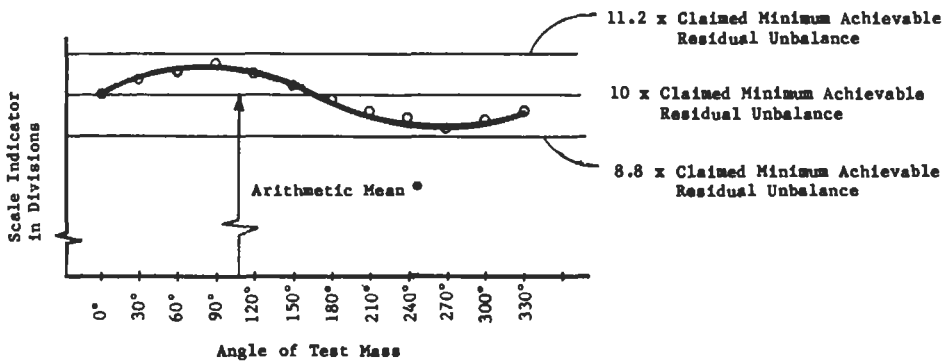
   Connect the points in each diagram by an averaging curve. It should be of sinusoidal shape and include all test points.

   If the rotor has been balanced (as in 3) to less than ½ U_{mar}, the plotted test readings may scatter closely around the 10 U_{mar} line and not

Angle of Test Mass		0°	30°	60°	90°	120°	150°	180°	210°	240°	270°	300°	330°
Amount of Unbalance Readings	Left Plane (Lower Plane*)												
	Right Plane (Upper Plane*)												

* Lower and upper plane designations apply to vertical machines.

Figure 6-31. Log for "Umar" test.



* Equal to ten times the indicator movement corresponding to the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance.

Figure 6-32. Diagram showing residual unbalance.

produce a sinusoidal averaging curve. In that case add $\frac{1}{2}$ U_{mar} residual unbalance to the appropriate test plane and repeat the test. Draw a horizontal line representing the arithmetic mean of the scale reading into each diagram and add two further lines representing $\pm$ 12 percent of the arithmetic mean for each curve, which accounts for 1 U_{mar} plus 20 percent for the effects of variation in the position of the masses and scatter of the test data.

If all the plotted points are within the range given by those two latter lines for each curve, the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance has been reached.

If the amount-of-unbalance indication is unstable, read and plot the maximum and minimum values for all angular positions of the test mass. Again, all points must be within the range given.

Note: If different U_{mar} values are specified for different speeds, the test should be repeated for each.

8. On horizontal and vertical single-plane balancing machines designed to indicate static unbalance only, proceed in the same way as described in 1 and 7 but use only one test mass in the left (or lower) plane of the proving rotor. This test mass must be calculated using the *total* weight of the proving rotor.
9. On vertical machines, the spindle balance should be checked. Remove the proving rotor and run the machine. The amount of unbalance now indicated should be less than the claimed minimum achievable residual unbalance.

Unbalance Reduction Test

This test is intended to check the combined accuracy of amount-of-unbalance indication, angle indication, and plane separation. Experience gained with running the test in accordance with the procedure described in ISO 2953 (1973 version) showed that the operator could influence the test results because he knew in advance what the next reading should be. For instance, if a reading fluctuated somewhat, he could wait until the indicator showed the desired value and at that moment actuate the readout retention switch.

To avoid such operator influence, a somewhat modified procedure has been developed similar to that used in ARP 587 (see Appendix 6C). In the new procedure (ISO 2953—Second Edition) a stationary mass is attached to the rotor in the same plane in which the test mass is traversed. The unbalance resulting from the combination of two test masses, whose angular relationship changes with every run, is nearly impossible to predict.

To have a simultaneous check on plane separation capability of the machine, a stationary and a traversing (or "traveling") test mass are also attached in the other plane. Readings are taken in both planes during each run.

Unbalance readings for successive runs are logged on the upper "log" portion of a test sheet, and subsequently plotted on the lower portion con-

taining a series of URR limit circles. All plotted points except one per plane must fall within their respective URR limit circles to have the machine pass the test. A similar procedure has been used by the SAE for more than ten years and has proven itself to be practical and foolproof.

The new Unbalance Reduction Test is divided into an inboard and an outboard test. The inboard test should be conducted for all machines; in addition, the outboard test should be conducted for all horizontal two-plane machines on which outboard rotors are to be balanced.

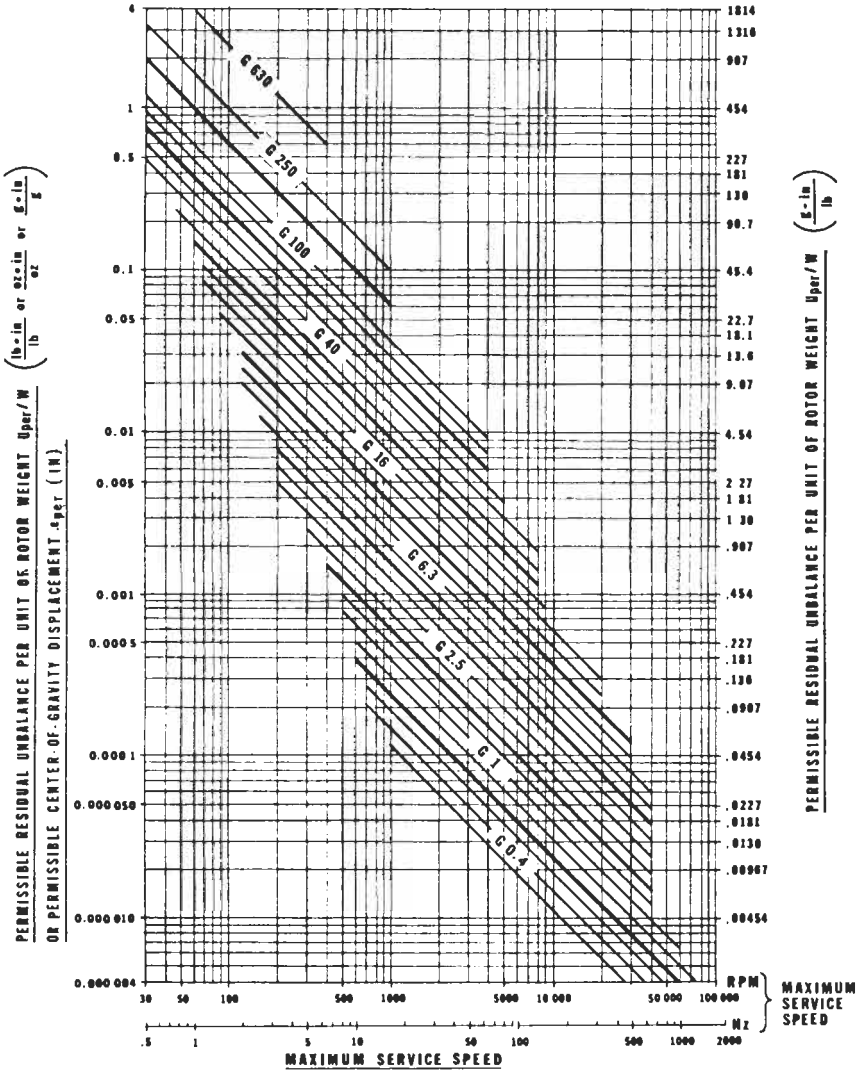
Each test consists of two sets of 11 runs, called "low level" and "high level" tests. When using the older style proving rotor with eight holes per plane, only seven runs are possible. The low level tests are run with a set of small test masses, the high level tests with a larger set to test the machine at different levels of unbalance. Test mass requirements and procedures are described in detail in Figure 6-33.

Balance Tolerances

Every manufacturer and maintenance person who balances part of his product, be it textile spindles or paper machinery rolls, electric motors or gas turbines, satellites or re-entry vehicles, is interested in a better way to determine an economical yet adequate balance tolerance. As a result, much effort has been spent by individual manufacturers to find the solution to their specific problem, but rarely have their research data and conclusions been made available to others.

In the 1950's a small group of experts, active in the balancing field, started to discuss the problem. A little later they joined the Technical Committee 108 on Shock and Vibration of the International Standards Organization and became Working Group 6, later changed to Subcommittee 1 on Balancing and Balancing Machines (ISO TC-108/Sc1). Interested people from other countries joined, so that the international group now has representatives from most major industrialized nations. National meetings are held in member countries under the auspices of national standards organizations, with balancing machine users, manufacturers and others interested in the field of dynamic balancing participating. The national committees then elect a delegation to represent them at the annual international meeting.

One of the first tasks undertaken by the committee was an evaluation of data collected from all over the world on required balance tolerances for millions of rotors. Several years of study resulted in an ISO Standard No.



NOTES:

(1) In general, for rigid rotors with two correction planes, one half of the recommended residual unbalance is allowed for each plane; these values apply usually for any two arbitrarily chosen planes. (See paragraph on Applying Tolerances to Two-plane Rotors). For disc-shaped rotors the full recommended value applies to one plane.

(2) To obtain acceptable residual unbalance in oz-in per lb of rotor weight multiply lb-in value by 16.

(3) To avoid need for multiplication use appropriate Balance Tolerance Nomogram on following pages.

Figure 6-33. Maximum permissible residual specific unbalance corresponding to various balancing quality grades "G," in accordance with ISO 1940.

1940 on "Balance Quality of Rotating Rigid Bodies" which, in the meantime, has also been adopted as S2.19-1975 by the American National Standards Institute ("ANSI," formerly USASI and ASA). The principal points of this standard are summarized below. Balance tolerance nomograms, developed by the staff of Schenck Trebel Corporation from the composite ISO metric table, have been added to provide a simple-to-use guide for ascertaining recommended balance tolerances (see Figures 6-34 and 6-35).

Balance Quality Grades

We have already explained the detrimental effects of unbalance and the purpose of balancing. Neither balancing cost considerations, nor various rotor limitations such as journal concentricity, bearing clearances or fit, thermal stability, etc., permit balancing every rotor to as near zero unbalance as might theoretically be thought possible. A tolerance must be set to allow a certain amount of residual unbalance, just as tolerances are set for various other machine shop operations. The question usually is, how much residual unbalance can be permitted while still holding detrimental effects to an insignificant or acceptable level?

The recommendations given in ISO 1940 will usually produce satisfactory results. The heart of the Standard is a listing of various rotor types, grouped according to "quality grades" (see Table 6-5). Anyone trying to determine a reasonable balance tolerance can locate his rotor type in the table and next to it find the assigned quality grade number. Then the graph in Figure 6-33 or the nomograms in Figures 6-34 and 6-35 are used to establish the gram • inch value of the applicable balance tolerance (i.e., "permissible residual unbalance" or U_{per}).

Except for the upper or lower extremes of the graph in Figure 6-33, every grade incorporates 4 bands. For lack of a better delineation, the bands might be considered (from top to bottom in each grade) substandard, fair, good, and precision. Thus, the graph permits some adjustment to individual circumstances within each grade, whereas the nomograms list only the median values (centerline in each grade). The difference in permissible residual unbalance between the bottom and top edge of each grade is a factor of 2.5. For particularly critical applications it is, of course, also possible to select the next better grade.

CAUTION: The tolerances recommended here apply *only* to *rigid rotors*. Recommendations for flexible rotor tolerances are contained in ISO 5343 (see Appendix 6-C) or in Reference 2.

(Text continued on page 306)

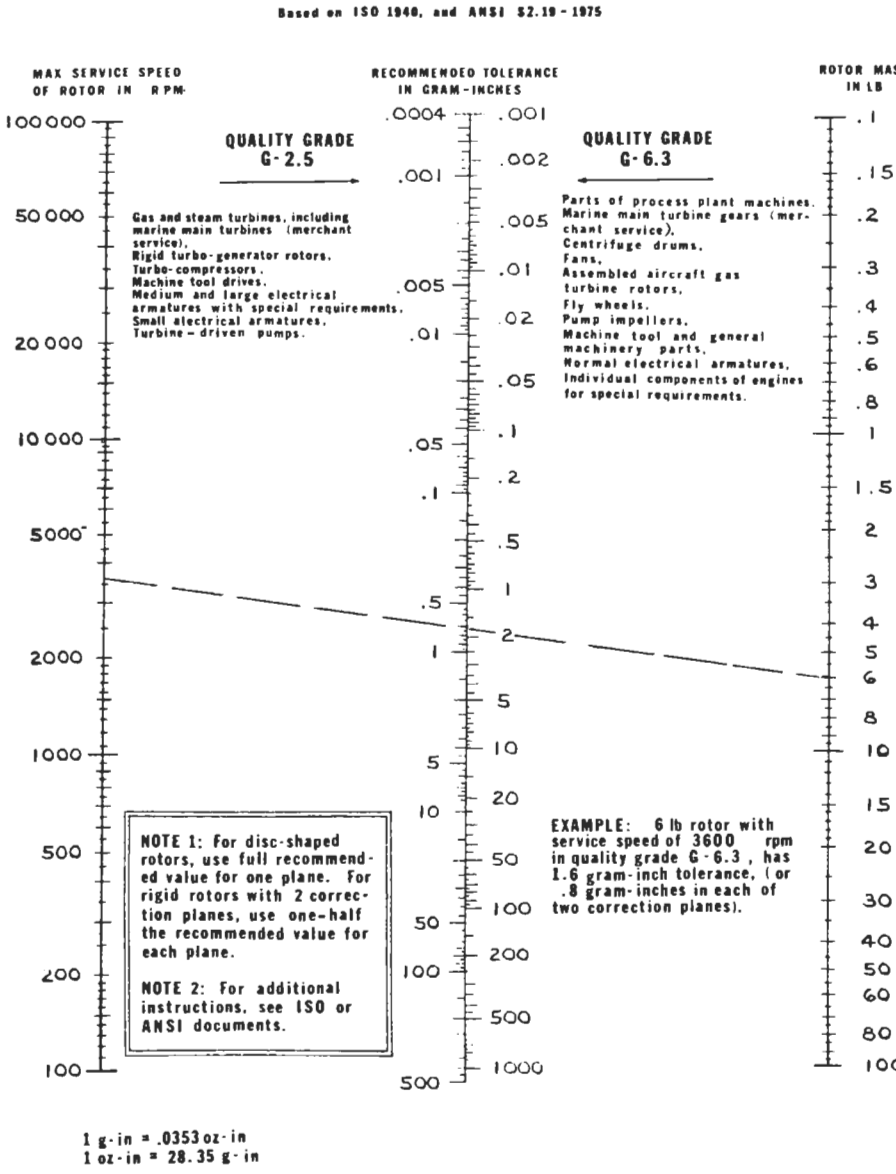


Figure 6-34. Balance tolerance nomogram for G-2.5 and G-6.3, small rotors.

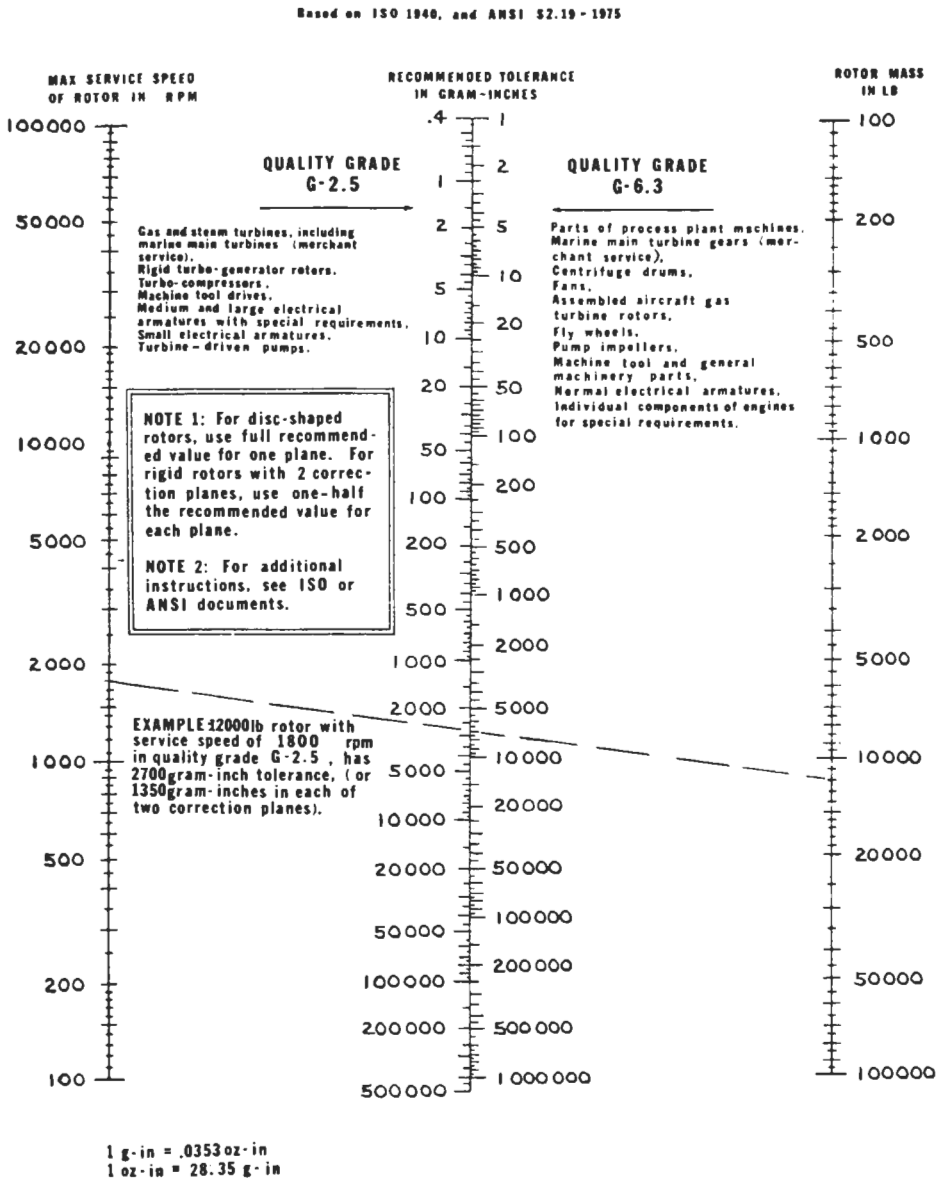


Figure 6-35. Balance tolerance nomogram for G-2.5 and G-6.3, large rotors.

Table 6-5
Balance Quality Grades for Various Groups of Representative Rigid Rotors in Accordance with ISO 1940 and ANSI S2.19-1975

Balance Quality Grade G	Rotor Types—General Examples
G 4000	Crankshaft-drives (2) of rigidly mounted slow marine diesel engines with uneven number of cylinders (3).
G 1600	Crankshaft-drives of rigidly mounted large two-cycle engines.
G 630	Crankshaft-drives of rigidly mounted large four-cycle engines. Crankshaft-drives of elastically mounted marine diesel engines.
G 250	Crankshaft-drives of rigidly mounted fast four-cylinder diesel engines (3).
G 100	Crankshaft-drives of fast diesel engines with six and more cylinders (3). Complete engines (gasoline or diesel) for cars, trucks and locomotives (4).
G 40	Car wheel (5), wheel rims, wheel sets, drive shafts. Crankshaft-drives of elastically mounted fast four-cycle engines (gasoline or diesel) with six and more cylinders (3). Crankshaft-drives for engines of cars, trucks and locomotives.
G 16	Drive shafts (propeller shafts, cardan shafts) with special requirements. Parts of crushing machinery. Parts of agricultural machinery. Individual components of engines (gasoline or diesel) for cars, trucks and locomotives. Crank-shaft-drives of engines with six or more cylinders under special requirements.
G 6.3	Parts of process plant machines. Marine main turbine gears (merchant service). Centrifuge drums. Fans. Assembled aircraft gas turbine rotors. Flywheels. Pump impellers. Machine-tool and general machinery parts. Medium and large electric armatures (of electric motors having at least 80 mm shaft height) without special requirements. Small electric armatures, often mass produced, in vibration insensitive applications and/or with vibration damping mountings. Individual components of engines under special requirements.
G 2.5	Gas and steam turbines, including marine main turbines (merchant service). Rigid turbogenerator rotors. Rotors. Turbo-compressors. Machine-tool drives. Medium and large electrical armatures with special requirements. Small electric armatures not qualifying for one or both of the conditions stated in G6.3 for such. Turbine-driven pumps.
G 1	Tape recorder and phonograph drives. Grinding-machine drives. Small electrical armatures with special requirements.
G 0.4	Spindles, discs, and armatures of precision grinders. Gyroscopes.

NOTES:

1. *The quality grade number represents the maximum permissible circular velocity of the center of gravity in mm/sec.*
2. *A crankshaft drive is an assembly which includes the crankshaft, a flywheel, clutch, pulley, vibration damper, rotating portion of connecting rod, etc.*
3. *For the purposes of this recommendation, slow diesel engines are those with a piston velocity of less than 30 ft. per sec., fast diesel engines are those with a piston velocity of greater than 30 ft per sec.*
4. *In complete engines, the rotor mass comprises the sum of all masses belonging to the crankshaft-drive.*
5. *G 16 is advisable for off-the-car balancing due to clearance or runout in central pilots or bolt hole circles.*

(Text continued from page 302)

Special Conditions to Achieve Quality Grades G1 and G0.4

To balance rotors falling into Grades 1 or 0.4 usually requires that the following special conditions be met:

For Quality Grade 1:

- Rotor mounted in its own service bearings.
- *No* end-drive.

For Quality Grade 0.4:

- Rotor mounted in its own housing and bearings.
- Rotor running under service conditions (bearing preload, temperature).
- Self-drive.

Only the highest quality balancing equipment is suitable for this work.

Applying Tolerances to Single-Plane Rotors

A single-plane rotor is generally disc-shaped and, therefore, has only a single correction plane. This may indeed be sufficient if the distance between bearings is large in comparison to the width of the disc, and provided the disc has little axial runout. The entire tolerance determined from such graphs as shown in Figures 6-34 and 6-35 may be allowed for the single plane.

To verify that single-plane correction is satisfactory, a representative number of rotors that have been corrected in a single plane should be checked for residual couple unbalance. One component of the largest residual couple (referred to the two-bearing planes) should not be larger than one half the total rotor tolerance. If it is larger, moving the correction plane to the other side of the disc (or to some optimal location between the disc faces) may help. If it does not, a second correction plane will have to be provided and a two-plane balancing operation performed.

Applying Tolerances to Two-Plane Rotors

In general, one half of the permissible residual unbalance is applied to each of the two correction planes, provided the distance between (inboard) rotor CG and either bearing is not less than 1/3 of the total bearing distance, and provided the correction planes are approximately equidistant from the CG, having a ratio no greater than 3:2.

If this ratio is exceeded, the total permissible residual unbalance (U_{per}) should be apportioned to the ratio of the plane distances to the CG. In

other words, the larger portion of the tolerance is allotted to the correction plane closest to the CG; however, the ratio of the two tolerance portions should never exceed 7:3, even though the plane distance ratio may be higher.

For rotors with correction plane distance (b) larger than the bearing span (d), the total tolerance should be reduced by the factor d/b before any apportioning takes place.

For rotors with correction plane distance smaller than 1/3 of the bearing span and for rotors with two correction planes outboard of one bearing, it is often advisable to measure unbalance and state the tolerance in terms of (quasi-) static and couple unbalance. Satisfactory results can generally be expected if the static residual unbalance is held within the limits of $U_{static} \leq U_{per}/3$

and the couple residual unbalance within

$$U_{couple} \leq \frac{U_{per}}{3} \cdot d$$

(where d = bearing span)

If separate indication of static and couple unbalance is not desired or possible, the distribution of the permissible residual unbalance must be specially investigated, taking into account, for instance, the permissible bearing loads.[4] It may also be necessary to state a family of tolerances, depending on the angular relationship between the residual unbalances in the two correction planes.

For all rotors with narrowly spaced (inboard or outboard) correction planes, the following balancing procedure may prove advantageous if U_{per} is specified in terms of residual unbalance per correction plane.

1. Calibrate respectively the balancing machine to indicate unbalance in the two chosen correction planes I and II (see Figure 6-36).
2. Measure and correct unbalance in plane I only.
3. Recalibrate or set the balancing machine to indicate unbalance near bearing plane A and in plane II.
4. Measure and correct unbalance in plane II only.
5. Check residual unbalance with machine calibrated or set as in 3. Allow residual unbalance portions for the inboard rotor as discussed above (inversely proportional to the correction plane distances from the CG), considering A and II as the correction planes; for the outboard rotor allow no more than 70 percent of U_{per} in plane II, and no less than 30 percent in plane A.

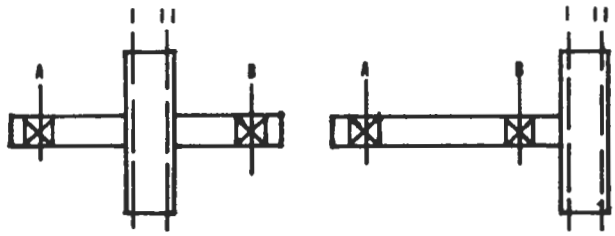


Figure 6-36. Inboard and outboard rotors with narrowly spaced correction planes.

Experimental Determination of Tolerances

For reasons of rotor type, economy, service life, environment or others, the recommended tolerances may not apply. A suitable tolerance may then be determined by experimental methods. For instance, a sample rotor is balanced to the smallest achievable residual unbalance. Test masses of increasing magnitude are then successively applied, with the rotor undergoing a test run under service conditions before each test mass is applied. The procedure is repeated until the test mass has a noticeable influence on the vibration, noise level, or performance of the machine. In the case of a two-plane rotor, the effects of applying test masses as static or couple unbalance must also be investigated. From the observations made, a permissible residual unbalance can then be specified, making sure it allows for differences between rotors of the same type, and for changes that may come about during sustained service.

Applying Tolerances to Rotor Assembly Components

If individual components of a rotor assembly are to be pre-balanced (on arbors for instance), the tolerance for the entire assembly is usually distributed among the components on the basis of the weight that each component contributes to the total assembly weight. However, allowance must be made for additional unbalance being caused by fit tolerances and mounting surface runouts. To take all these into account, an error analysis should be made.

Testing a Rotor for Tolerance Compliance

If the characteristics of the available balancing equipment do not permit an unbalance equivalent to the specified balance tolerance to be measured with sufficient accuracy (ideally within $\pm$ 10 percent of value), the

U_{mar} test described earlier may be used to determine whether the specified tolerance has been reached. The test should be carried out separately for each correction plane, and a test mass equivalent to 10 times the tolerance should be used for each plane.

Balance Errors Due to Drive Elements

During balancing in general, and during the check on tolerance compliance in particular, significant errors can be caused by the driving elements (for example, driving adapter and universal-joint drive shaft).

In Figure 6-37 seven sources of balance errors are illustrated:

1. Unbalance from universal-joint shaft.
2. Unbalance-like effect from excessive looseness or tightness in universal joints.
3. Loose fit of adapter in universal-joint flange.
4. Offset between adapter pilot (on left) and adapter bore (on right).
5. Unbalance of adapter.
6. Loose fit of adapter on rotor shaft.
7. Eccentricity of shaft extension (on which adapter is mounted) in reference to journals.

The effects of errors 1, 3, 4, and 5 may be demonstrated by indexing the rotor against the adapter. These errors can then be jointly compensated by an alternating index-balancing procedure described below. Er-

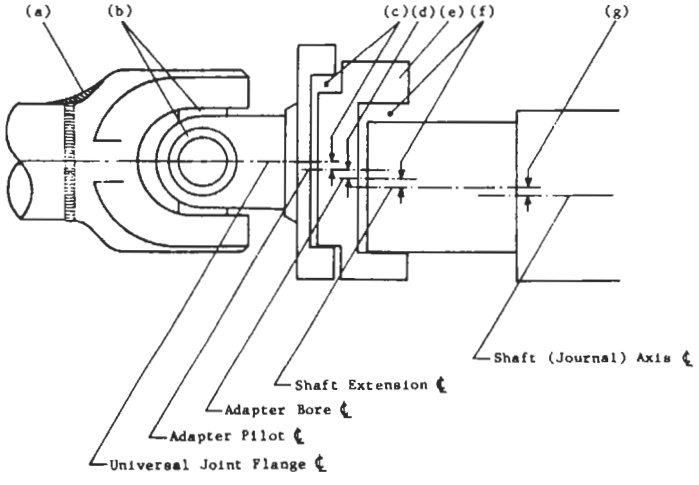


Figure 6-37. Error sources in end-drive elements.

ror 2 will generally cause reading fluctuation in case of excessive tightness, nonrepeating readings in case of excessive looseness. Error 6 may be handled like 1, 3, 4, and 5 if the looseness is eliminated by a set screw (or similar) in the same direction after each indexing and retightening cycle. If not, it will cause nonrepeating readings. Error 7 will not be discovered until the rotor is checked without the end-drive adapter, presumably under service conditions with field balancing equipment. The only (partial) remedy is to reduce the runout in the shaft extension and the weight of the end-drive elements to a minimum.

Balance errors from belt-drive pulleys attached to the rotor are considerably fewer in number than those caused by end-drive adapters. Only the pulley unbalance, its fit on the shaft, and the shaft runout at the pulley mounting surface must be considered. Such errors are avoided altogether if the belt runs directly over the part. Certain belt-drive criteria should be followed.

Air- and self-drive generally introduce minimal errors if the cautionary notes mentioned previously are observed.

Balance Errors Due to Rotor Support Elements

Various methods of supporting a rotor in a balancing machine may cause balance errors unless certain precautions are taken. For instance, when supporting a rotor journal on roller carriages, the roller diameter should differ from the journal diameter by at least 10 percent, and the roller speed should never differ less than 60 rpm from the journal speed. If this margin is not maintained, unbalance indication becomes erratic.

A rotor with mounted rolling element bearings should be supported in V-roller carriages (see Nomenclature, Appendix 6B). Their inclined rollers permit the bearing outer races to align themselves to the inner races and shaft axis, letting the rolling elements run in their normal tracks.

Rotors with rolling element bearings may also be supported in sleeve or saddle bearings; however, the carriages or carriage suspension systems must then have "vertical axis freedom" (see Terminology, Appendix 6A). Without this feature, the machine's plane separation capability will be severely impaired because the support bridges (being connected via the rotor) can only move in unison toward the front and rear of the machine; thus only static unbalance will be measured.

Vertical axis freedom is also required when the support bridges or carriages are connected by tiebars, cradles, or stators. Only then can couple unbalance be measured without misaligning the bearings in each (out-of-phase) back-and-forth movement of the support bridges. This also holds true for hard-bearing machines, even though bridge movement is microscopically small.

Index-Balancing Procedure

A procedure of repetitively balancing and indexing (by 180°) one component against another leads to diminishing residual unbalance in both, until eventually one component can be indexed against the other without a significant change in residual unbalance. Index-balancing may be used to eliminate the unbalance errors in an end-drive adapter, for biasing an arbor or for improving the residual unbalance in a rotor mounted on an arbor.

If the procedure is used for a single-plane application (e.g., an end-drive adapter), one half of the residual unbalance (after the first indexing) is corrected in the adapter, the other half in the rotor. The cycle may have to be repeated once or twice until a satisfactory residual unbalance is reached.

Care should be taken that after each indexing step, set screws are tightened with the same torque and in the same sequence. The procedure does not work well unless the position of the indexed component is precisely repeatable.

If the above iterative process becomes too tedious, a graphic solution may be used. It is described below for a two-plane rotor mounted on an arbor, with Figure 6-38 showing a typical plot for one plane.

1. Balance arbor by itself to minimum achievable residual unbalance.
2. Mount rotor on arbor, observing prior cautionary notes concerning keyways, set screws, and fits.
3. Take unbalance readings for both planes and plot points P on separate graphs for each plane. (Only one plot for one plane is shown in Figure 6-38. The reading for this, say the left plane, is assumed to be 35 units at an angular position of 60°.)
4. Index rotor on arbor by 180°.
5. Take unbalance readings for both planes and plot them as points P′. (Reading for left plane assumed to be 31 units at an angle of 225°.)
6. Find midpoint R on line connecting points P and P′.
7. Draw line SS′ parallel to PP′ and passing through O.
8. Determine angle of OS (52° for left plane) and distance RP (32.5 units for left plane). Add correction mass of 32.5 units at 52° to rotor in left correction plane.
9. Steps 6–8 must also be performed for the right plane. The rotor is now balanced and the residual unbalance (OR in Figure 6-38) remaining in the arbor/rotor assembly is due to arbor unbalance and run-out. If this residual unbalance is corrected by adding a correction mass to the arbor equal but opposite to OR, the arbor is cor-

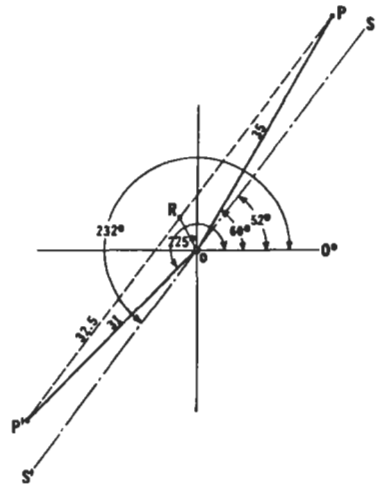


Figure 6-38. 180° indexing plot.

rected *and* biased for subsequent rotors of the same weight and configuration.

Additional indexing and unbalance measurement may uncover a much reduced residual unbalance, which can again be plotted and pursued through steps 4–9. This will probably refine both the balance of the rotor and the bias of the arbor. If additional indexing produces inconsistent data, the minimum level of repeatability in locating the rotor on the arbor has been reached. Further improvement in rotor balance is not possible with this arbor.

Recommended Margins Between Balance and Inspection Tolerances

Quite often the residual unbalance changes (or appears to have done so) between the time when:

1. the rotor was balanced originally.
2. it is checked for balance by an inspector.

The following factors may contribute to these changes:

- Calibration differences between balancing and inspection machines.
- Tooling and/or drive errors.

- Bearing or journal changes.
- Environmental differences (heat, humidity).
- Shipping or handling damage.
- Aging or stress relieving of components.

To provide a margin of safety for such changes, it is recommended that the tolerance allowed the balancing machine operator be set below, and the tolerance allowed at time of inspection be set above the values given in graphs such as Figures 6-33 and 6-34. Percentages for these margins vary between quality grades as shown in Table 6-6.

Computer-Aided Balancing

In recent years, the practice of balancing has entered into a new stage: computerization. While analog computers have been in use on hard-bearing machines ever since such machines came on the market, it is the application of digital computers to balancing that is relatively new. At first, desk top digital computers were used in large, high-speed balancing and overspeed spin test facilities for multi-plane balancing of flexible rotors. As computer hardware prices dropped, their application to more common balancing tasks became feasible. The constant demand by industry for a simpler balancing operation performed under precisely controlled conditions with complete documentation led to the marriage of the small, dedicated, table-top computer to the hard-bearing balancing machine as shown in Figure 6-39. And a happy marriage it is indeed, because it proved cost effective right away in many production applications.

Table 6-6
Recommended Margins Between Balance and Inspection Tolerances

	Adjustment to Recommended Tolerances	
Quality Grade	**For Balancing**	**For Inspection**
G4000–G40	−10%	+10%
G16–G2.5	−15%	+15%
G1	−20%	+20%
G0.4	−30%	+30%

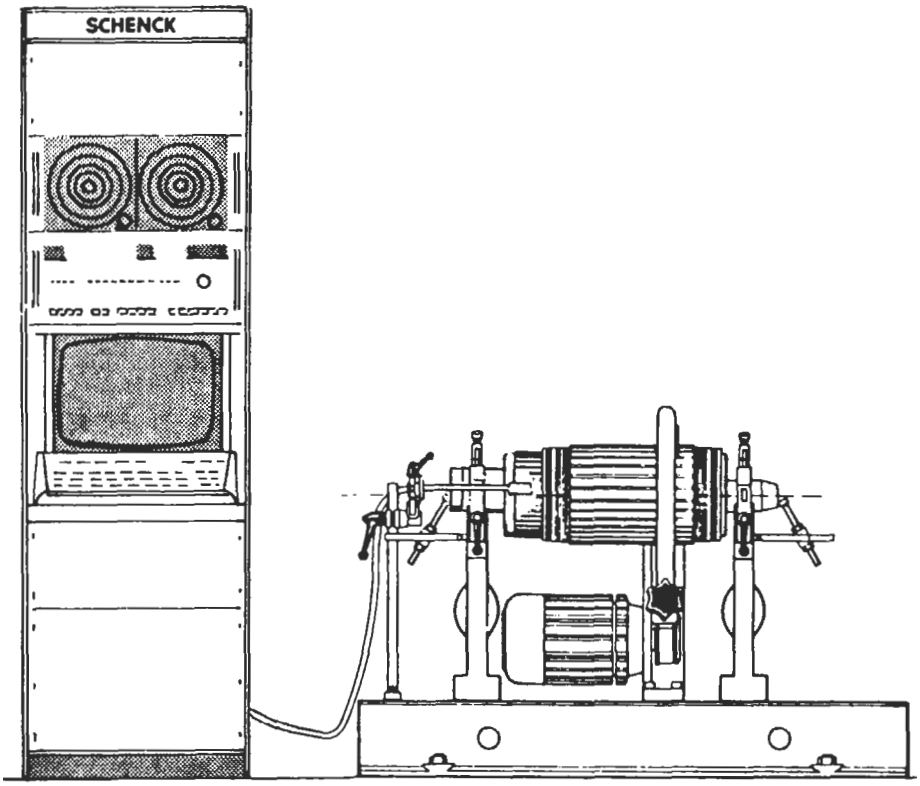


Figure 6-39. Hard-bearing balancing machine controlled by a combination of desk top computer and vectometer instrumentation.

Features

The advantages that a computerized balancing system provides versus the customary manual system are the many standard and not-so-standard functions a computer performs and records with the greatest of ease and speed. Here is a list of basic program features and optional subroutines:

- Simplification of setup and operation.
- Reduction of operator errors through programmed procedures with prompting.
- More precise definition of required unbalance corrections in terms of different practical correction units.

- Direct indication of unbalance in drill depth for selectable drill diameters and materials.
- Averaging of ten successive readings for increased accuracy.
- Automatic storage of readings taken in several runs with subsequent calculation of the mean reading (used to average the effect of blade scatter on turbine rotors with loose blades).
- Readout in any desired components (in certain workpieces, polar correction at an exact angular location is not possible. Instead, correction may only be applied at specific intervals, e.g., 30°, 45°, 90°, etc. The computer then calculates the exact correction mass to be applied at two adjacent components for any desired angle between components).
- Optimized distribution of fixed-weight correction masses to available locations.
- Automatic comparison of initial unbalance with maximum permissible correction, and machine shutdown if the initial unbalance is too large.
- Automatic comparison of residual unbalance with predetermined tolerances or with angle-dependent family of tolerances.
- Translation of unbalance readings from one plane to another without requiring a new run (for crankshafts, for instance, where correction may only be possible at certain angular locations in certain planes).
- Permanent record of the balancing operation, including initial and residual unbalance, rotor identification, etc. (for quality control).
- Machine operation as a sorter.
- Statistical analysis of unbalance.
- Connection to an X-Y plotter for graphic display of unbalance.
- Operator identification.
- Inspector identification.
- Monitoring of the number of runs and correction steps.
- Time and/or date record.

Prompting Guides and Printout

Prompting displays on a cathode ray tube (CRT) guide the operator every step of the way through the program (Figure 6-40). Rotor data is stored on a cartridge tape and can be recalled at a later date for balancing the same type of rotor. Thus ABC, R1 and R2 rotor dimensions need to be entered into the computer only once.

Multiple Machine Control and Programs

Different computers may be used depending on the application. They may be mounted in the balancing machine's instrumentation console, or in a central electronic data processing room. A computer may control one balancing machine, or a series of machines.

Basic computer programs are available for single and two plane balancing, field balancing, and flexible rotor balancing. Software libraries for optional subroutines are continually growing.

Of course, the user may modify the available programs to his particular requirements, write his own programs, or have them written for him. Thus, the potential applications of the computerized hard-bearing balancing machines are unlimited.

Balancing Program No. 002
Rotor Data

ROTOR NAME		= SAMPLE
ROTOR BALANCING SPEED		= 750 RPM
INSTRUMENT SPEED RANGE		= 390-1000 RPM
BALANCING MODE		= DYNAMIC
LEFT PLANE TO LEFT SUPPORT DISTANCE	'A'	= 4.10 INCHES
LEFT PLANE TO RIGHT PLANE DISTANCE	'B'	= 10.00 INCHES
RIGHT PLANE TO RIGHT SUPPORT DISTANCE	'C'	= 4.10 INCHES
CORRECTION RADIUS, LEFT PLANE	'R1'	= 3.50 INCHES
CORRECTION RADIUS, RIGHT PLANE	'R2'	= 3.50 INCHES
BALANCING TOLERANCE, LEFT PLANE		= 20.00 GRAM-INCHES
BALANCING TOLERANCE, RIGHT PLANE		= 20.00 GRAM-INCHES

ROTOR S/N = 123ABC

Unbalance Data

RUN NUMBER	LEFT PLANE AMOUNT	LEFT PLANE ANGLE	RIGHT PLANE AMOUNT	RIGHT PLANE ANGLE
INIT.UNBAL.	****76.332 G	278 DEGREES	****58.983 G	179 DEGREES
CHECK RUN 1	****19.936 G	314 DEGREES	******.118 G	*82 DEGREES
---------->	****19.936 G	314 DEGREES	RIGHT PLANE IN TOLERANCE	
CHECK RUN 2	******.852 G	186 DEGREES	******.478 G	277 DEGREES
---------->	LEFT PLANE IN TOLERANCE		RIGHT PLANE IN TOLERANCE	

ROTOR S/N 123ABC IS BALANCED WITHIN TOLERANCES
RESIDUAL UNBALANCE DATA:
PLANE 1 AMOUNT = 2.9819 GRAM-INCHES
PLANE 1 ANGLE = 186 DEGREES
PLANE 2 AMOUNT = 1.6717 GRAM-INCHES
PLANE 2 ANGLE = 277 DEGREES

Figure 6-40. Printout of unbalance data.

Field Balancing Overview

Once a balanced rotor has been mounted in its housing and installed in the field, it will not necessarily stay in balance forever. Corrosion, temperature changes, build-up of process material and other factors may cause it to go out of balance again and, thus, start to vibrate. However, unbalance is not the only reason for vibration. Bearing wear, belt problems, misalignment, and a host of other detrimental conditions will also cause it. In fact, experience has shown that vibration is an important indication of a machine's mechanical condition. During normal operation, properly functioning fans, blowers, motors, pumps, compressors, etc., emit a specific vibration signal, or "signature." If the signature changes, something is wrong.

Excessive vibration has a destructive effect on piping, tanks, walls, foundations, and other structures near the vibrating equipment. Operating personnel may be influenced too. High noise levels from vibration may exceed legal limitations and cause permanent hearing damage. Workers may also experience loss of balance, blurred vision, fatigue, and other discomfort when exposed to excessive vibration.

Methods of vibration detection, analysis, diagnostics, and prognosis have been described by the authors previously in detail.[5] A quick review of the hardware required to perform field balancing should therefore suffice.

Field Balancing Equipment

Many types of vibration indicators and measuring devices are available for field balancing. Although these devices are sometimes called "portable balancing machines," they never provide direct readout of amount and location of unbalance.

Basically, field balancing equipment consists of a combination of a suitable transducer and meter which provides an indication proportional to the vibration magnitude. The vibration magnitude indicated may be displacement, velocity, or acceleration, depending on the type of transducer and readout system used. The transducer can be held by an operator, or attached to the machine housing by a magnet or clamp, or permanently mounted. A probe thus held against the vibrating machine is presumed to cause the transducer output to be proportional to the vibration of the machine.

At frequencies below approximately 15 cps, it is almost impossible to hold the transducer sufficiently still by hand to give stable readings. Frequently, the results obtained depend upon the technique of the operator; this can be shown by obtaining measurements of vibration magnitude on

a machine with the transducer held with varying degrees of firmness. Transducers of this type have internal seismic mountings and should not be used where the frequency of the vibration being measured is less than three times the natural frequency of the transducer.

A transducer responds to all vibration to which it is subjected, within the useful frequency range of the transducer and associated instruments. The vibration detected on a machine may come through the floor from adjacent machines, may be caused by reciprocating forces or torques inherent in normal operation of the machine, or may be due to unbalances in different shafts or rotors in the machine. A simple vibration indicator cannot discriminate between the various vibrations unless the magnitude at one frequency is considerably greater than the magnitude at other frequencies.

The approximate location of unbalance may be determined by measuring the phase of the vibration; for instance, with a stroboscopic lamp that flashes each time the output of an electrical transducer changes polarity in a given direction. Phase also may be determined by use of a phase meter or by use of a wattmeter. Vibration measurements in one end of a machine are usually affected by unbalance vibration from the other end. To determine more accurately the size and phase angle of a needed correction mass in a given (accessible) rotor plane, three runs are required. One is the "as is" condition, the second with a test mass in one plane, the third with a test mass in the other correction plane. All data are entered into a card-programmable pocket calculator and, with a few calculation steps, transformed into amount and phase angle of the necessary correction masses with two selected planes. To simplify the calculation process even further, a "rom" for the TI 58 and 59 has recently become available which is permanently programmed for single plane or two-plane field balancing.

Field Balancing Examples

As we saw, two methods are available for the systematic balancing of rotors:

- Balancing on a balancing machine
- Field balancing in the assembled state

Both methods have specific fields of application. The balancing machine is the correct answer from the technical and economic point of view for balancing problems in production. Field balancing, on the other hand, provides a practical method for the balancing of completely assembled machines during test running, assembly and maintenance.

It is the purpose of this section to illustrate the possibilities of field balancing on the basis of three typical balancing problems. The machines chosen for these problems represent examples only and could at any time be exchanged for machines with similar rotor systems. The solutions to the problems indicated, therefore, apply equally to other machines and types of rotor not specifically mentioned here. The following classification will simplify the allocation of different types of machines to the three problem solutions:

1st Problem Solution: Machines with narrow disc-shaped rotors such as blowers, fans, grinding wheels, belt pulleys, flywheels, couplings, chucks, gear wheels, impellers, atomizer discs, etc.
2nd Problem Solution: Machines with long roll-shaped rotors such as centrifuges, paper rolls, electric motors and generators, beater shafts, machine tool spindles, grinding rolls, internal combustion engines, etc.
3rd Problem Solution: Machines having multiple bearing coupled rotors such as standing machines, twisting machines, motor generator sets, turbo generators, cardan shafts, etc.

Field balancing of very low speed rotating assemblies (cooling tower fans, etc.) may require special techniques which are not covered here. The reader should discuss special requirements with the machinery manufacturer.

First Problem: Unbalance Vibration in Blowers

Build-up on blades, corrosion, wear, and thermal loading regularly lead to unbalance in blowers. The presence of such unbalance shows itself externally in the form of mechanical vibration generated by the blower rotor and transmitted via the bearings and the frame into the foundations and finally into the environment. If the danger of this unbalance vibration is not recognized, after a very short operating period costly damage may be caused. This may frequently result in the destruction of the bearings, cracks in the bearing housing and in the air channels, damage to the foundation, and cracks in the building.

Solution: Field Balancing in One Plane

For economic reasons rebalancing of a blower should always be carried out in the assembled state. This does away with the need to disassemble the whole plant, to make available a balancing machine and to transport the blower rotor to the balancing machine. Only the electronic balancing instrument needs to be brought to where the blower is in-

stalled. The operation of the instrument and the determination of the masses required to correct the unbalance is carried out by trained personnel. Not only does this result in considerable cost savings but the method also provides a significant saving in time compared to rebalancing on a balancing machine. With careful preparation, field balancing of a blower need not take more than 30–60 minutes.

It has been shown in practice that in over 95 percent of all blowers field balancing in one plane is sufficient to reduce unbalance vibrations to permissible and safe values. The method is as follows:

1. The balancing instrument is used to measure the unbalance vibration at the bearing positions nearest to the blower rotor (Figures 6-41 and 6-42). The instrument suppresses with a high degree of separation any extraneous vibration and shows the amount and the angular position of the rotational frequency vibrations. Both measured values—also designated as "initial unbalance"—are entered on a vector diagram (Figure 6-43).

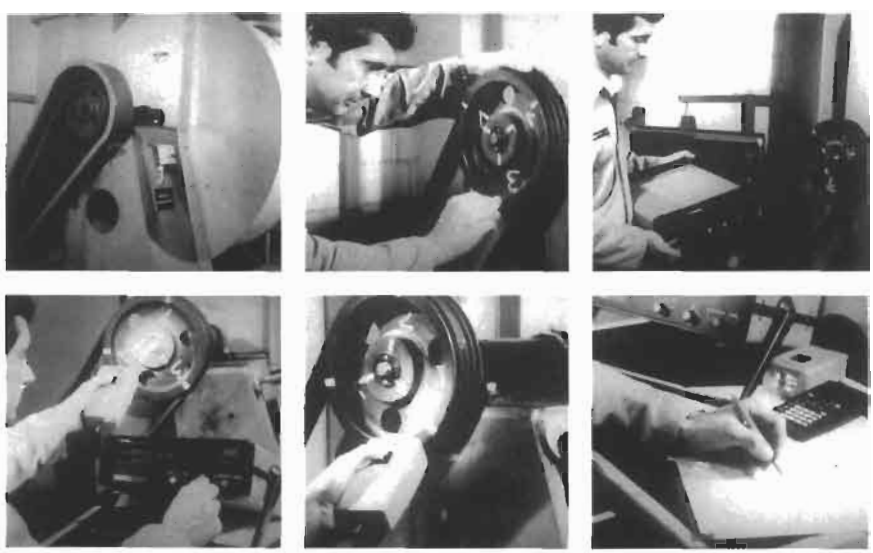


Figure 6-41. Individual stages in the field balancing of a blower using balancing and vibration analyzer "VIBROTEST."

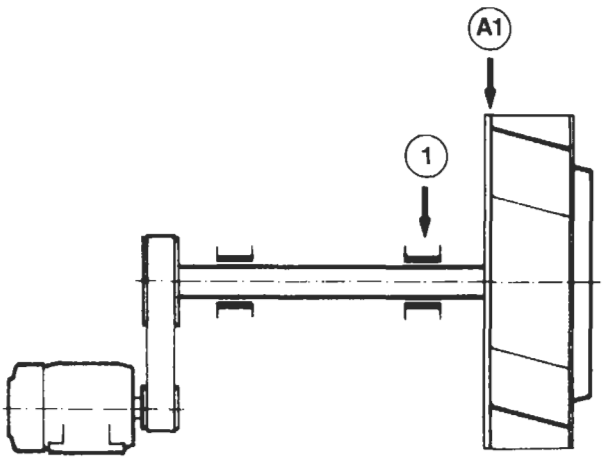


Figure 6-42. Unbalance vibration of blower is measured at bearing position (1)—"measuring point." The unbalance determined this way is corrected in the center of gravity plane A1—"correction plane."

2. After bringing the rotor to a standstill, a known unbalance (calibrating mass) is applied in the vicinity of the center of gravity plane of the blower. When the blower has again reached its operational speed the unbalance vibration is measured again and the results are also entered in the vector diagram (Figure 6-43).
3. The graphic evaluation of this vector diagram provides amount and angular position of the correction masses required for balancing.
4. The calculated correction mass is welded to the blower rotor and a check measurement of the residual vibration is carried out. The balancing process is completed as soon as residual vibration lies within the permissible tolerance. As far as tolerance values are concerned, reference should be made to the standards of Figure 6-34.

Second Problem: Unbalance Vibration in Centrifuges

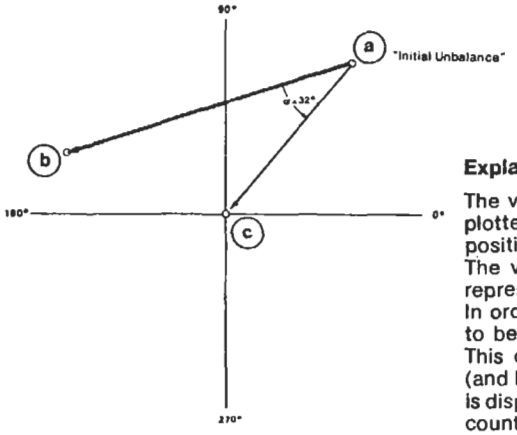
Centrifuges are high-speed machines. High rotational speeds demand a high balance quality of the rotating parts, mainly the centrifuge drum, the worm, the belt pulley, etc. Balancing of the individual rotors on a balancing machine does not always suffice to achieve the required residual unbalance. Tolerances and fits of the components, errors in the roller bearings, variations in wall thickness of the drum, etc., may mean that the unbalance vibration of the completely assembled centrifuge exceeds

the permissible values. The need to correct this may arise when test running a new centrifuge and after repair and overhaul of older installations.

Solution: Field Balancing in Two Planes

Disassembly, additional machining, excess costs, and user complaints may be avoided by rebalancing on the test stand (Figure 6-44) or at the final point of installation. Because of the geometry of the centrifuge drum, field balancing in two planes is almost always necessary in order to improve the unbalance condition effectively. For this purpose the unbalance vibration is measured at two bearing positions as shown in Figure 6-45 and the unbalance determined in this way is corrected in two radial planes A1 and A2.

Measurement is carried out with a portable electronic balancing instrument that indicates the amount and angular position of the unbalance vibration for both measuring positions with frequency selectivity. For the evaluation of measured results, graphical methods have been used almost



Explanation of Vector Diagram

The values measured during runs 1 and 2 are plotted according to amount and angular position and are given by points (a) and (b). The vector which connects these two points represents the effect of the calibrating mass. In order to balance the rotor the point (a) has to be moved to the origin of the diagram (c). This can be achieved if the calibrating mass (and hence also the calibrating vector (a)−(b)) is displaced on the rotor by an angle $\alpha = 32°$ in a counter-clockwise direction and is reduced quantitatively in the ratio of the length (a) ... (c) to (a) ... (b).

$$\text{Correction mass} = \frac{(a)\ldots(c)}{(a)\ldots(b)} \times \text{calibrating mass}$$

$$= \frac{60\ \text{mm}}{92\ \text{mm}} \times 200\ \text{g}$$

$$= 130\ \text{g}$$

Calibration mass applied at ∢ 0°

Required correction mass at ∢ 32°

Figure 6-43. Vector diagram of field balancing in one plane.

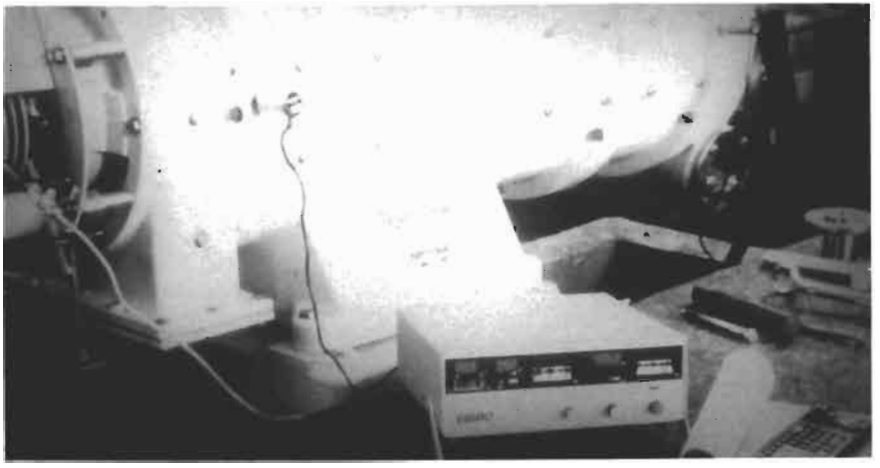


Figure 6-44. A centrifuge is rebalanced on the test stand in two planes.

exclusively up to the present. They require experience, accuracy and time (approximately 30 minutes). The appearance of relatively inexpensive programmable pocket calculators (Figure 6-46) makes it possible today to replace these methods with more accurate numerical methods. The determination of amount and angular position of the correction masses for both correction planes can be carried out in approximately two–three minutes even by untrained personnel. In detail, the following method should be followed:

1. Using the balancing instrument, the angular position and amount of the unbalance vibration is measured at bearing positions 1 and 2 and the values are entered into the schedule "initial unbalance run" (Figure 6-47).
2. The centrifuge is brought to a standstill and a known calibrating mass is applied in correction plane A1. After again reaching the operational speed the unbalance vibration is measured again and entered "test run 1."
3. The calibrating mass is removed from plane A1 and applied to plane A2. The resulting measured values are again noted down "test run 2."
4. The evaluation of the measurement results listed in Figure 6-47 using the pocket calculator gives the correction masses that must be

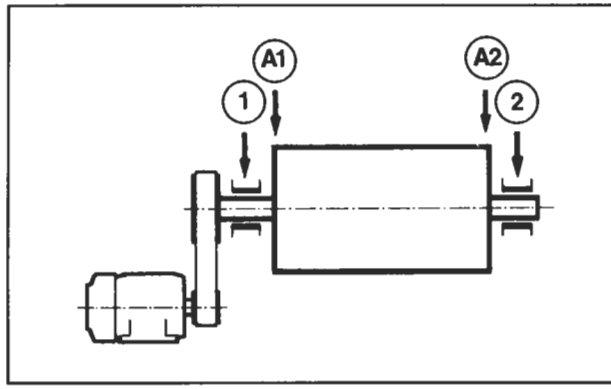


Figure 6-45. Sketch of a centrifuge. The two bearing locations (1) and (2) are chosen as measuring points. Unbalance correction is made in the end planes A1 and A2 by applying or removing mass.

Figure 6-46. Programmable pocket calculators with balancing module make it easier and faster to determine the correction masses when field balancing.

applied at the calculated angular positions. A subsequent check run of the centrifuge will determine the correctness of the balancing measures and will show whether an additional correction process is required.

Explanation of Schedule and of Calculator Program

The results of the initial unbalance run, of both test runs, and the magnitude of the calibrating masses used are entered in appropriately numbered spaces. After inserting balancing module, the measured values are keyed into the pocket calculator. By calling up the stored data, the pocket calculator immediately indicates the required masses for unbalance correction either in polar form or in the form of 90° components.

If the residual unbalance of the rotor exceeds the allowable tolerance, it is possible to calculate the correction masses for further correction by using the measured values of the check run but without any need for new test runs. The influence coefficients which may on demand be indicated and noted make it possible to rebalance a rotor without test runs even after a long time interval.

Third Problem: Unbalance Vibration in Twisting and Stranding Machine.

Machines for the production of wire rope, cable and flex operate with multi-bearing rotor systems which consist of two or more part rotors coupled together with angular rigidity. A type which frequently occurs in practice is shown schematically in Figure 6-48. Rotor systems of this type are difficult to balance in their completely assembled form on balancing machines but are better balanced divided into their individual rotors. After assembling the balanced component rotors, new unbalances can occur due to fits and tolerances, alignment errors and centrifugal force loading. This is also the case when replacing rotating wear parts such as, for example, the wire guide tube in stranding machines.

Any excessively large residual unbalance leads to considerable mechanical vibration and to the excitation of mounting and machine resonances. Both of these factors can lead to damage of the machine and physical and psychological strain on the operating personnel. Frequently the only first aid measure available is a reduction in the production rate by reducing the operational speed. This, however, is only tolerable over a limited time span. The economics of the process require a longer term solution that can only be found in field balancing the complete rotor system.

SCHENCK SAMPLE

Field Balancing with CAB 178

Worksheet for Pgm 01/02

Company/Location: ABC Co. / Smithtown, Ny.
Equipment Balanced/Speed: Roof fan / 1750 rpm
Date: May 12, 1976
Instrumentation: WPI

Step	Plane 1 Left bearing		Plane 2 right bearing	
1. Program selection	2nd Pgm 01/02			
2. Input of angular divisions	W 360 → A: 360 R/S			
3. Initial run without test weights	B: 16 V/✗ 150 R/S	15 ◁/✗ 304 R/S	14 V/✗ 135 R/S	13 ◁/✗ 333 R/S
Test run 1 test weight in plane 1	12 V/✗ 100 R/S	11 ◁/✗ 336 R/S	10 V/✗ 115 R/S	9 ◁/✗ 308 R/S
Test run 2 test weight in plane 2	8 V/✗ 110 R/S	7 ◁/✗ 202 R/S	6 V/✗ 45 R/S	5 ◁/✗ 243 R/S
Test weights end polar corrections	4 m/✗ 200 R/S	3 ◁/✗ 90 R/S	2 m/✗ 150 R/S	1 ◁/✗ 180 R/S
4. Output of correction values	C: A/✗ 86,2 R/S	◁/✗ 33,5 D	B/✗ 116,2 R/S	◁/✗ 161,3
Check run 1 5 Input	E: V/✗1 45 R/S	2 ◁/✗ 320 R/S	3 V/✗ 37 R/S	4 ◁/✗ 342 R/S
Corrections 4 Output	C: A/✗ 14,2 R/S	◁/✗ 37,7 D	B/✗ 34,7 R/S	◁/✗ 171
Check run 2 5 Input	E: V/✗1 15 R/S	2 ◁/✗ 300 R/S	3 V/✗ 8 R/S	4 ◁/✗ 260 R/S
Corrections 4 Output	C: A/✗ 18,6 R/S	◁/✗ 207,5 D	B/✗ 11,8 R/S	◁/✗ 115

Influential numbers 6 Output	e0	e1	e2	e3	e4
2nd D'	189,000 R/S	90,000 R/S	0,934 R/S	-1,130 R/S	0,855
	e5	e6	e7	e8	e9
R/S	-1,915 R/S	0,436 R/S	-0,086 R/S	-0,474 R/S	-0,443
Input 2nd E'					

Figure 6-47. Field balancing worksheet.

Solution: Field Balancing in Several Planes

The unbalance and vibrational behavior of multiple bearing rotor systems may be improved in a systematic manner by multi-plane balancing in the assembled state (Figure 6-48). For unbalance correction, there must be a correction plane for every bearing position on the rotor. For example, the four-bearing rotor shown in Figure 6-48 requires four correction planes.

The electronic balancing instrument for this task is identical to the instruments used for single and two plane balancing. It is resting on top of the bunching machine being shown, during field balancing, in Figure 6-49. The balancing process only differs in the number of calibrating runs and the way the measured results are evaluated:

1. Using the portable balancing instrument the phase position and amount of the unbalance vibrations is measured at the four bearing positions of the stranding machine. These "initial unbalance values" are entered on four vector diagrams similar to that in Figure 6-50.
2. The stranding machine is switched off and a known calibrating mass is applied in the correction plane A1 (Figure 6-48). After running up to the operational speed the unbalance values are again measured at the four bearing positions. These values are also entered in the vector diagram.

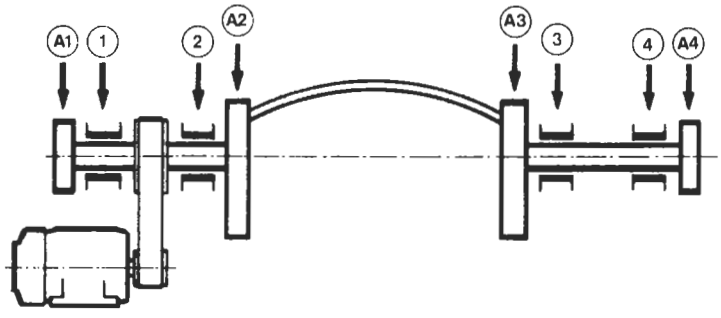


Figure 6-48. Sketch of the rotating parts of a stranding machine. Each of the measuring positions (1) to (4) is related to a corresponding correction plane A1 to A4.

Figure 6-49. Field balancing of a bunching machine. Using the balancing and vibration analyzer "VIBROTEST," the unbalance vibration in the four bearing planes is measured successively in terms of amount and angular position.

3. The procedure described under 2 above is repeated with calibrating masses in the correction planes A2, A3 and A4.
4. The graphical evaluation of the vector diagram gives the amount and angular position of the correction masses which must be applied in the four chosen correction planes.
5. After unbalance correction a check measurement is carried out and the residual vibrations determined by this are compared with the permissible tolerance values.

The Vector Diagram

The results from the five measuring runs are entered in four vector diagrams. Figure 6-50 shows the vector diagram for plane 1. The vector (a) . . . (b) represents the effect of the calibration mass. The other three vectors show the effect which the calibration masses applied in planes A1, A3, and A4 exert in plane 1.

The graphic evaluation of the vector diagram is carried out by an approximation method. By means of a systematic trial and error process, combinations of masses are determined which result in a reduction of unbalance in all four planes. For this purpose the effects and influences of the correction masses in all planes must be taken into account and entered into the vector diagram.

Extract from the Measuring Schedule

Run No	Observations	Unbalance Vibrations							
		Plane 1		Plane 2		Plane 3		Plane 4	
		Amount	∠	Amount	∠	Amount	∠	Amount	∠
1	Initial unbalance	380	105°	255	126°	210	243°	340	276°
2	Calibrating mass m = 350 g at ∢ 0° applied in plane A1	330	31°	160	103	235	220	310	270°
3	Calibrating mass m = 350 g at 0° applied in plane A2	415	72°	340	47°	190	262°	330	292°

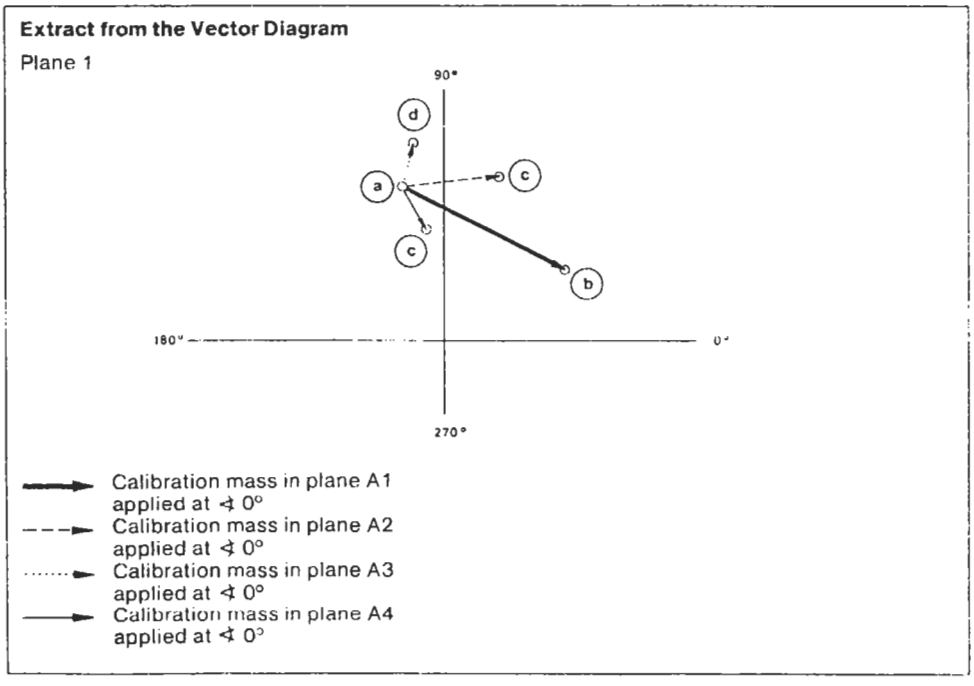


Figure 6-50. Field balancing in four planes. Example of graphic evaluation of measured results.

References

1. Schenck Trebel Corporation, *Fundamentals of Balancing*, published by Schenck Trebel Corporation, Deer Park, N.Y., second edition, 1983, 115 pages.
2. Schenck Trebel Corporation, *Aspects of Flexible Rotor Balancing* Published by Schenck Trebel Corporation, N.Y., Third Edition, 1980, Pages 1–34.
3. Reference 1, Pages 35–42.
4. Schneider, H., *Balancing Technology*, Schenck Trebel Corporation, Deer Park, N.Y.
5. Bloch, H. P. and Geitner, F. K., *Machinery Failure Analysis and Troubleshooting*, Gulf Publishing Co., Houston, Texas, 1983, Pages 289–476.

Bibliography

1. ISO 1925: *Balancing—Vocabulary* (1981).
2. ISO 1940: *Balance Quality of Rigid Rotors* (1973) and DIS 2953 1982 with revised test procedure.
3. ISO 2953: *Balancing Machines—Description and Evaluation* (1973).
4. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. ARP 587A: *Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressors and Turbines, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One or More Than One Transverse Planes.* (1972).
5. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. ARP 588A: *Static Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressor and Turbine, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One Transverse Plane.* (1972).
6. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. ARP 1382: *Design Criteria for Balancing Machine Tooling.* (1977).
7. Federn, Klaus: *Auswuchttechnik* Volume 1, Springer Verlag, Berlin (1977).
8. Luhrs, Margret H.: *Computers in the Balancing Industry* (December, 1979).
9. McQueary, Dennis: *Understanding Balancing Machines*, American Machinist (June, 1973).
10. Meinhold, Ted F.: *Measuring and Analyzing Vibration*, Plant Engineering (October 4, 1979).
11. Muster, Douglas & Stadelbauer, Douglas G.: *Balancing of Rotating Machinery*, Shock and Vibration Handbook, Second Edition, McGraw Hill (1976).

12. Rieger, Neville F. & Crofoot, James F.: *Vibrations of Rotating Machinery,* The Vibration Institute, Clarendon Hills, Illinois (1977).
13. Schenck Trebel Corporation: *Aspects of Flexible Rotor Balancing,* Company Publication (1976).
14. Schenck Trebel Corporation: *Theory of Balancing,* Company Publication (1973).
15. Schneider, Hatto: *Balancing Technology,* VDI Publication T29, Second Edition (1977), distributed by Schenck Trebel Corporation.
16. Stadelbauer, D. G.: *Balancing of Fans and Blowers,* Vibration and Acoustic Measurement Handbook, Spartan Books (1972).
17. Stadelbauer, D. G.: *Balancing Machines Reviewed,* Shock and Vibration Digest, Volume 10, No. 9 (September, 1978).
18. ISO DIS 7475: *Enclosures and Other Safety Measures for Balancing Machines.*

Appendix 6-A

Balancing Terminology

NOTE: The definitions followed by a number are taken from ISO 1925 2nd Edition.

Amount of Unbalance (3.3): The quantitative measure of unbalance in a rotor (referred to a plane), without referring to its angular position. It is obtained by taking the product of the unbalance mass and the distance of its center of gravity from the shaft axis.

Angle of Unbalance (3.4): Given a polar coordinate system fixed in a plane perpendicular to the shaft axis and rotating with the rotor, the polar angle at which an unbalance mass is located with reference to the given coordinate system.

Angle Indicator (5.18): The device used to indicate the angle of unbalance.

Angle Reference Generator (5.19): In balancing, a device used to generate a signal which defines the angular position of the rotor.

Angle Reference Marks (5.20): Marks placed on a rotor to denote an angle reference system fixed in the rotor; they may be optical, magnetic, mechanical, or radioactive.

Balancing (4.1): A procedure by which the mass distribution of a rotor is checked and, if necessary, adjusted in order to ensure that the vibration of the journals and/or forces on the bearings at a frequency corresponding to service speed are within specified limits.

Balancing Machine (5.1): A machine that provides a measure of the unbalance in a rotor which can be used for adjusting the mass distribution of that rotor mounted on it so that once per revolution vibratory motion of the journals or force on the bearings can be reduced if necessary.

Balancing Machine Accuracy (5.24): The limits within which a given amount and angle of unbalance can be measured under specified conditions.

Balancing Machine Minimum Response (5.23): The measure of the machine's ability to sense and indicate a minimum amount of unbalance in terms of selected components of the unbalance vector.
Balancing Machine Sensitivity (5.28): Of a balancing machine under specified conditions, the increment in unbalance indication expressed as indicator movement or digital reading per unit increment in the amount of unbalance.
Balancing Run (5.43): On a balancing machine: A run consisting of one measure run and the associated correction process.
Balancing Speed (2.18): The rotational speed at which a rotor is balanced.
Calibration (5.36): The process of adjusting a machine so that the unbalance indicator(s) read(s) in terms of selected correction units in specified correction planes for a given rotor and other essentially identical rotors; it may include adjustment for angular location if required.
Centrifugal (Rotational) Balancing Machine (5.3): A balancing machine that provides for the support and rotation of a rotor and for the measurement of once per revolution vibratory forces or motions due to unbalance in the rotor.
Compensating (Null Force) Balancing Machine (5.9): A balancing machine with a built-in calibrated force system which counteracts the unbalanced forces in the rotor.
Center of Gravity (1.1): The point in a body through which passes the resultant of the weights of its component particles for all orientations of the body with respect to a uniform gravitational field.
Component Measuring Device (5.22): A device for measuring and displaying the amount and angle of unbalance in terms of selected components of the unbalance vector.
Correction Plane Interference (Cross-Effect) (5.25): The change of balancing machine indication at one correction plane of a given rotor, which is observed for a certain change of unbalance in the other correction plane.
Correction Plane Interference Ratios (5.26): The interference ratios (I_{AB}, I_{BA}) of two correction planes A and B of a given rotor are defined by the following relationships:

$$I_{AB} = \frac{U_{AB}}{U_{BB}}$$

Calibration Mass: A precisely defined mass used (a) in conjunction with a proving rotor to calibrate a balancing machine, and (b) on the first rotor

of a kind to calibrate a soft-bearing balancing machine for that particular rotor and subsequent identical rotors.
Calibration (Master) Rotor (5.35): A rotor (usually the first of a series) used for the calibration of a balancing machine.
Correction Mass: A mass attached to a rotor in a given correction plane for the purpose of reducing the unbalance to the desired level.
Correction Mass Set: A number of precisely apportioned correction masses used for correcting a given unbalance in (a) a single plane or (b) more than one plane. For flexible rotor balancing the number of correction masses in a set is usually related to the flexural mode they are intended to correct.
Counterweight (5.16): A weight added to a body so as to reduce a calculated unbalance at a desired place.
Claimed Minimum Achievable Residual Unbalance (5.41): A value of minimum achievable residual unbalance stated by the manufacturer for his machine, and measured in accordance with the procedure specified in ISO 2953.
Couple Unbalance (3.8): That condition of unbalance for which the central principal axis intersects the shaft axis at the center of gravity.
Component Correction: Correction of unbalance in a correction plane by mass addition or subtraction at two or more of a predetermined number of angular locations.
Correction (Balancing) Plane (4.6): A plane perpendicular to the shaft axis of a rotor in which correction for unbalance is made.
Cycle Rate: Cycle rate of a balancing machine for a given rotor having a specified polar moment of inertia and for a given balancing speed is the number of starts and stops that the machine can perform per hour without damage to the machine when balancing the rotor.
Differential Test Masses: Two masses representing different amounts of unbalance added to a rotor in the same transverse plane at diametrically opposed positions.

NOTE

1. Differential test masses are used, for example, in cases where a single test mass is impractical.
2. In practice, the threaded portion and height of the head of the test mass are kept the same. The diameter of the head is varied to achieve the difference in test mass.
3. The smaller one of the two differential test masses is sometimes called tare mass, the larger one tare-delta mass.

Differential Unbalance: The difference in unbalance between two differential test masses.

Dynamic Unbalance (3.9): That condition in which the central principal axis is not coincident with the shaft axis.

NOTE

The quantitative measure of dynamic unbalance can be given by two complementary unbalance vectors in two specified planes (perpendicular to the shaft axis) which completely represent the total unbalance of the rotor.

Dummy Rotor: A balancing fixture of the same mass and shape as the actual rotor it replaces.

NOTE

A dummy rotor is used when balancing one or more rotors of an assembly of rotors, simulating the mass of the missing rotor.

Field Balancing (4.11): The process of balancing a rotor in its own bearings and supporting structure rather than in a balancing machine.

NOTE

Under such conditions, the information required to perform balancing is derived from measurements of vibratory forces or motions of the supporting structure and/or measurements of other responses to rotor unbalance.

Index Balancing: A procedure whereby a component is repetitively balanced and then indexed by 180 degrees on an arbor or rotor shaft.

NOTE

After each indexing, half of the residual unbalance is corrected in the arbor (or rotor shaft), the other half in the indexed component.

Indexing: Incremental rotation of a rotor about its journal axis for the purpose of bringing it to a desired position.

Mass Centering: The process of determining the mass axis of a rotor and then machining journals, centers or other reference surfaces to bring the axis of rotation defined by these surfaces into close proximity with the mass axis.

Measuring Plane (4.7): A plane perpendicular to the shaft axis in which the unbalance vector is determined.

Method of Correction (4.5): A procedure whereby the mass distribution of a rotor is adjusted to reduce unbalance, or vibration due to unbalance, to an acceptable value. Corrections are usually made by adding material to, or removing it from, the rotor.

Multi-Plane Balancing (4.4): As applied to the balancing of flexible rotors, any balancing procedure that requires unbalance correction in more than two correction planes.
Outboard Rotor (2.12): A two-journal rotor which has its center of gravity located other than between the journals.
Overhung Rotor: A two-journal rotor with inboard CG but with significant masses and at least one correction plane located other than between the journals.
Perfectly Balanced Rotor (2.10): A rotor the mass distribution of which is such that it transmits no vibratory force or motion to its bearings as a result of centrifugal forces.
Plane Translation: The process of converting a given amount and angle of unbalance in two measuring (or correction) planes into the equivalent unbalance in two other planes.
Polar Correction: Correction of unbalance in a correction plane by mass addition or subtraction at a single angular location.
Parasitic Mass (5.31): Of a balancing machine, any mass, other than that of the rotor being balanced, that is moved by the unbalance force(s) developed in the rotor.
Permanent Calibration (5.33): The property of a hard-bearing balancing machine that permits the machine to be calibrated once and for all, so that it remains calibrated for any rotor within the capacity and speed range of the machine.
Plane Separation (5.27): Of a balancing machine, the operation of reducing the correction plane interference ratio for a particular rotor.
Plane Separation (Nodal) Network (5.30): An electrical circuit, interposed between the motion transducers and the unbalance indicators, that performs the plane-separation function electrically without requiring particular locations for the motion transducers.
Practical Correction Unit (5.15): A unit corresponding to a unit value of the amount of unbalance indicated on a balancing machine. For convenience, it is associated with a specific radius and correction plane; and is commonly expressed as units of an arbitrarily chosen quantity such as drill depths of given diameter, weight, lengths of wire solder, plugs, wedges, etc.
Production Rate (5.45): The reciprocal of floor-to-floor time.

NOTE

The time is normally expressed in pieces per hour.

Proving (Test) Rotor (5.32): A rigid rotor of suitable mass designed for testing balancing machines and balanced sufficiently to permit the intro-

duction of exact unbalance by means of additional masses with high reproducibility of the magnitude and angular position.
Quasi-Rigid Rotor (2.17): A flexible rotor that can be satisfactorily balanced below a speed where significant flexure of the rotor occurs.
Rigid Rotor (2.2): A rotor is considered rigid when it can be corrected in any two (arbitrarily selected) planes and, after that correction, its unbalance does not significantly exceed the balance tolerances (relative to the shaft axis) at any speed up to maximum service speed and when running under conditions which approximate closely to those of the final supporting system.
Rotor (2.1): A body, capable of rotation, generally with journals which are supported by bearings.
Resonance Balancing Machine (5.7): A machine having a balancing speed corresponding to the natural frequency of the suspension-and-rotor system.
Setting (5.37): Of a hard-bearing balancing machine, the operation of entering into the machine information concerning the location of the correction planes, the location of the bearings, the radii of correction, and the speed if applicable.
Single-Plane (Static) Balancing Machine (5.4): A gravitational or centrifugal balancing machine that provides information for accomplishing single-plane balancing.
Soft-Bearing (Above Resonance) Balancing Machine (5.8): A machine having a balancing speed above the natural frequency of the suspension-and-rotor system.
Swing Diameter (5.11): The maximum workpiece diameter that can be accommodated by a balancing machine.
Specific Unbalance "e" (Mass Eccentricity) (3.17): The amount of static unbalance (U) divided by mass of the rotor (M); it is equivalent to the displacement of the center of gravity of the rotor from the shaft axis.
Static Unbalance (3.6): That condition of unbalance for which the central principal axis is displaced only parallel to the shaft axis.
Service Speed (2.19): The rotational speed at which a rotor operates in its final installation or environment.
Shaft Axis (2.7): The straight line joining the journal centers.
Slow Speed Runout: The total indicated runout measured at a low speed (i.e., a speed where no significant rotor flexure occurs due to unbalance) on a rotor surface on which subsequent measurements are to be made at a higher speed where rotor flexure is expected.
Two-Plane (Dynamic) Balancing (4.3): A procedure by which the mass distribution of a rigid rotor is adjusted in order to ensure that the residual dynamic unbalance is within specified limits.

Test Plane: A plane perpendicular to the shaft axis of a rotor in which test masses may be attached.
Trial Mass: A mass selected arbitrarily and attached to a rotor to determine rotor response.
NOTE

A trial mass is usually used in trial and error balancing or field balancing where conditions cannot be precisely controlled and/or precise measuring equipment is not available.

Test Mass: A precisely defined mass used in conjunction with a proving rotor to test a balancing machine.
NOTES

1. The use of the term "test weight" is deprecated; the term "test mass" is accepted in international usage.
2. The specification for a precisely defined Test Mass shall include its mass and its center of gravity location; the aggregate effect of the errors in these values shall not have a significant effect on the test results.

Traverse (U_{mar}) Test (5.46): A test by which the residual unbalances of a rotor can be found (see ISO 1940 or ISO 2953), or with which a balancing machine may be tested for conformance with the claimed minimum achievable unbalance (U_{mar}, see ISO 2953).
Turn-around Error: Unbalance indicated after indexing two components of a balanced rotor assembly in relation to each other; usually caused by individual component unbalance, run-out of mounting (locating) surfaces, and/or loose fits. (See also index balancing).
Unbalance (3.1): That condition which exists in a rotor when vibratory force or motion is imparted to its bearings as a result of centrifugal forces.
NOTES

1. The term "unbalance" is sometimes used as a synonym for "amount of unbalance," or "unbalance vector."
2. Unbalance will in general be distributed throughout the rotor but can be reduced to
   a. static unbalance and couple unbalance described by three unbalance vectors in three specified planes, or
   b. dynamic unbalance described by two unbalance vectors in two specified planes.

Unbalance Mass (3.5): That mass which is considered to be located at a particular radius such that the product of this mass and its centripetal acceleration is equal to the unbalance force.
NOTE

The centripetal acceleration is the product of the distance between the shaft axis and the unbalance mass and the square of the angular velocity of the rotor, in radians per second.

Unbalance Reduction Ratio (URR) (5.34): The ratio of the reduction in the unbalance by a single balancing correction to the initial unbalance.

$$\text{URR} = \frac{U - U_2}{U_1} = 1 - \frac{U_2}{U_1}$$

where
U_1 is the amount of initial unbalance;
U_2 is the amount of unbalance remaining after one balancing correction.

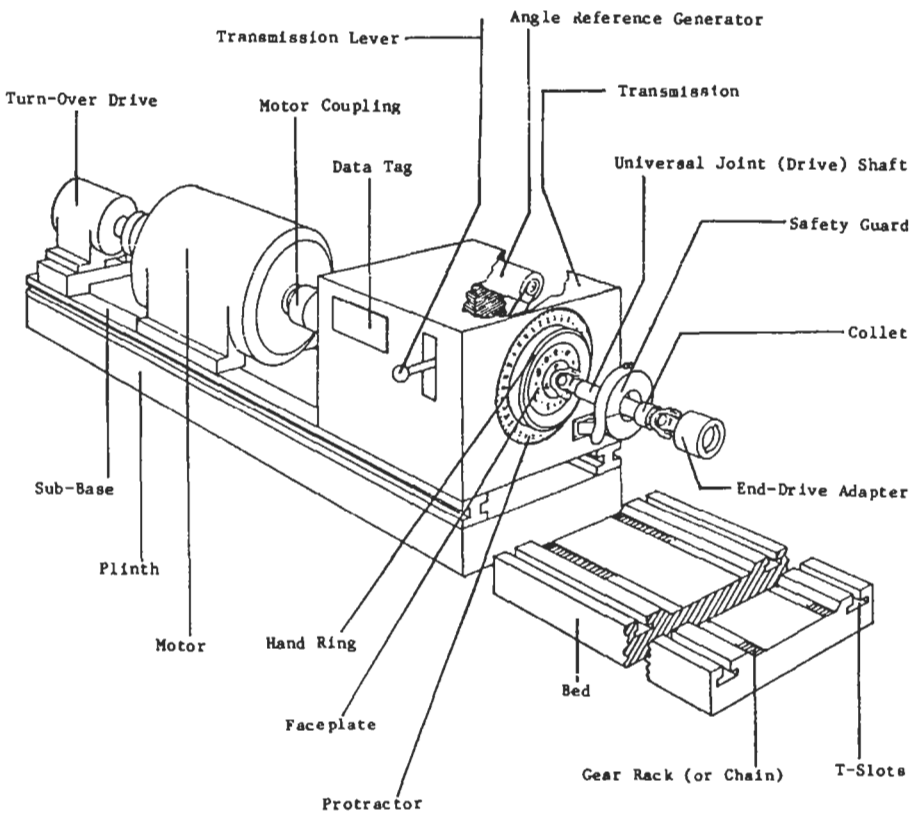
Vector Measuring Device (5.21): A device for measuring and displaying the amount and angle in terms of an unbalance vector, usually by means of a point of line.
Vertical Axis Freedom (5.47): The freedom of a horizontal balancing machine bearing carriage or housing to rotate by a few degrees about the vertical axis through the center of the support.
NOTE

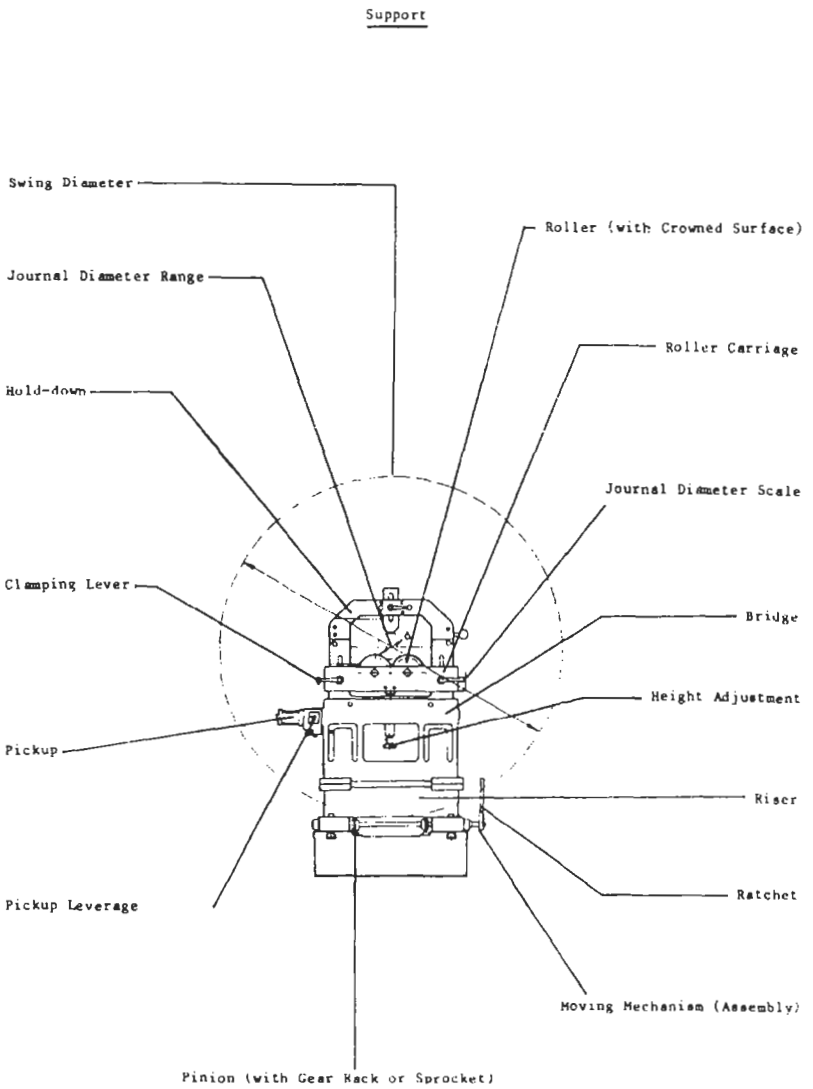
This feature is required when dynamic or couple unbalance is to be measured in a rotor supported on sleeve bearings, cylindrical roller bearings, flat twin rollers, or in cradles, stators or tiebars.

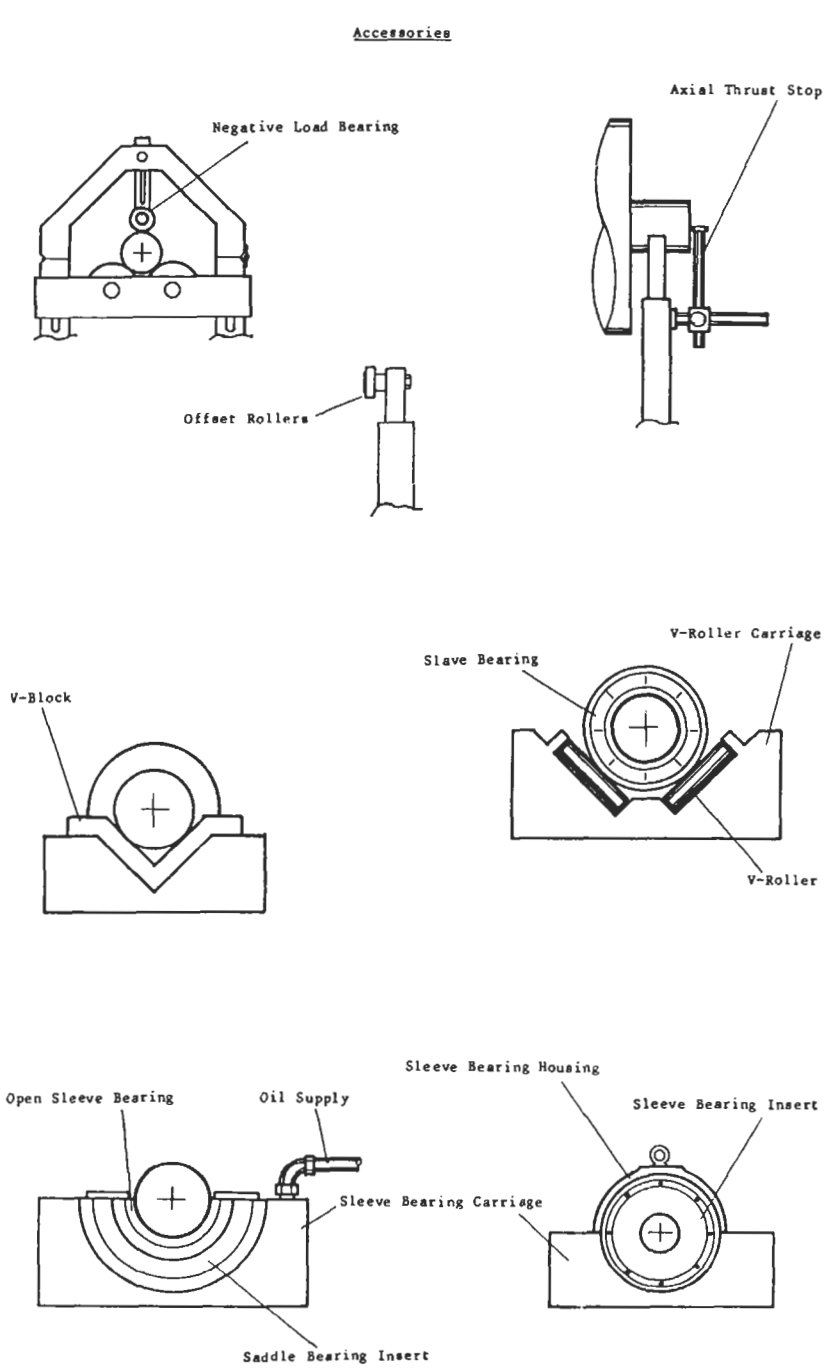
Appendix 6-B

Balancing Machine Nomenclature

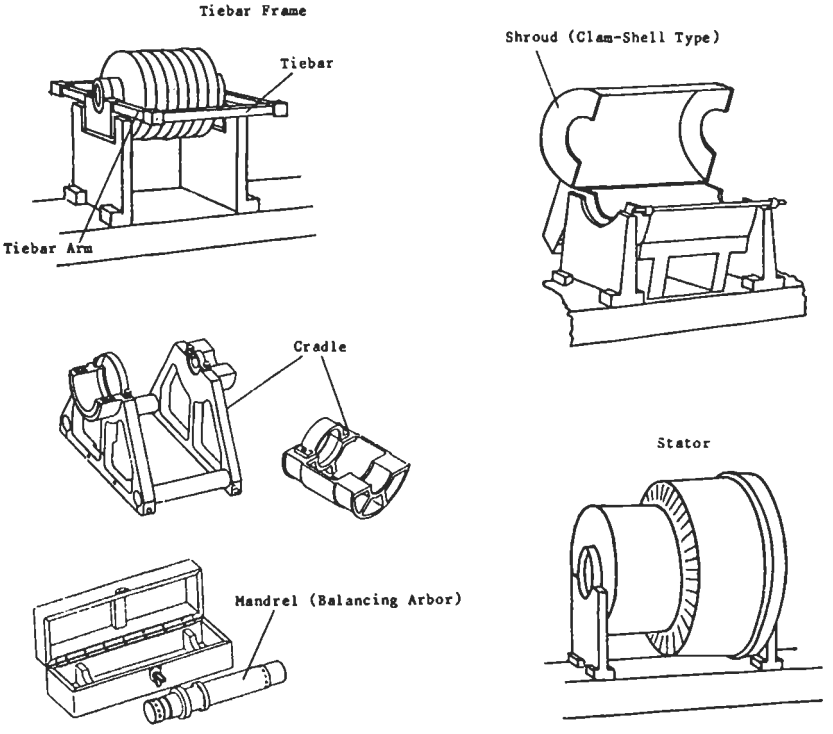
V-type Headstock With End-Drive And Bed



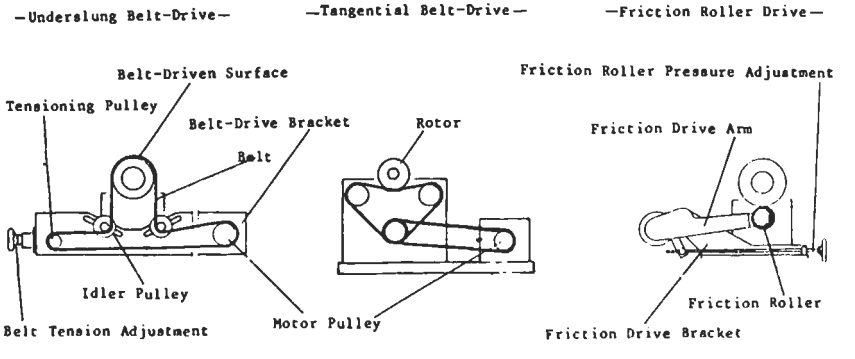

Support
Swing Diameter
Roller (with Crowned Surface)
Journal Diameter Range
Roller Carriage
Hold-down
Journal Diameter Scale
Clamping Lever
Bridge
Height Adjustment
Pickup
Riser
Ratchet
Pickup Leverage
Moving Mechanism (Assembly)
Pinion (with Gear Rack or Sprocket)


Accessories
Negative Load Bearing
Axial Thrust Stop
Offset Rollers
V-Block
Slave Bearing
V-Roller Carriage
V-Roller
Open Sleeve Bearing
Oil Supply
Sleeve Bearing Housing
Sleeve Bearing Insert
Sleeve Bearing Carriage
Saddle Bearing Insert

Tooling



Belt and Other Drives



Appendix 6-C
Balancing and Vibration Standards

Balancing Standards

ISO 1925 *Balancing Vocabulary.* Contains definitions of most balancing and related terms. (Same as ANSI S2.7-1982)

ISO 1940 *Balance Quality of Rotating Rigid Bodies.* Classifies all rigid rotors and recommends balance tolerances for them. (Same as ANSI S2.19-1975).

ISO 3080 *The Mechanical Balancing of Marine Steam Turbine Machinery for Merchant Service.* Furnishes guidance in applying ISO 1940 to this type of rotor.

ISO 2371 *Field Balancing Equipment—Description and Evaluation.* Recommends to the equipment manufacturer how to describe his systems, and to the user how to evaluate them. (Same as ANSI S2.38-1982)

ISO 2953 *Balancing Machines—Description and Evaluation.* Tells a prospective balancing machine user how to describe his requirements to a balancing machine manufacturer, then enumerates the points that a proposal should cover, and finally explains how to test a machine to assure compliance with the specification.

ISO 5406 *The Mechanical Balancing of Flexible Rotors.* Classifies rotors into groups in accordance with their balancing requirements and gives guidance on balancing procedures for flexible rotors. (Same as ANSI S2.42)

ISO 5343 *Criteria for Evaluating Flexible Rotor Unbalance.* Recommends balance tolerances for flexible rotors. Must be read in conjunction with ISO 1940 and ISO 5406.

ISO 3719[*1] *Balancing Machines—Symbols for Front Panels.* Establishes symbols for control panels of balancing machines.

DIS 7475[*2] *Enclosures and Other Safety Measures for Balancing Machines.* Identifies hazards associated with spinning rotors in balancing machines, classifies enclosures, and specifies protection requirements.

Vibration Standards

ISO 2041 *Vibration and Shock Vocabulary.* Contains definitions of most vibration and shock related terms.

ISO 2372 *Mechanical Vibration of Machines with Operating Speeds from 10 to 200 Rev/s.* Basis for specifying evaluation standards.

ISO 2373 *Mechanical Vibration of Certain Rotating Electrical Machinery with Shaft Heights Between 80 and 400 mm.* Measurement and evaluation of vibration severity.

ISO 2954 *Mechanical Vibration of Rotating and Reciprocating Machinery.* Requirements for instruments for measuring vibration severity.

ISO 3945 *Mechanical Vibration of Large Rotating Machines with Speed Range from 10 to 200 RPS.* Measurement and evaluation of vibration severity in situ.

US National Standards

ANSI S2.19-1975:*[3] Balance Quality of Rotating Rigid Bodies (Identical to ISO 1940–1973)

ANSI S2.17-1980: Techniques of Machinery Vibration Measurement

ANSI S2.7-1982: Balancing Terminology (Identical to ISO 1925-1981)

ANSI S2.38-1982: Field Balancing Equipment—Description and Evaluation (Identical to ISO 2371-1982)

ANSI S2.42-1982: Procedure for Balancing Flexible Rotors (Identical to ISO 5406-1980)

All standards (ISO as well as ANSI) may be ordered from:
American National Standards Institute, Inc.
1430 Broadway
New York, NY 10018

---

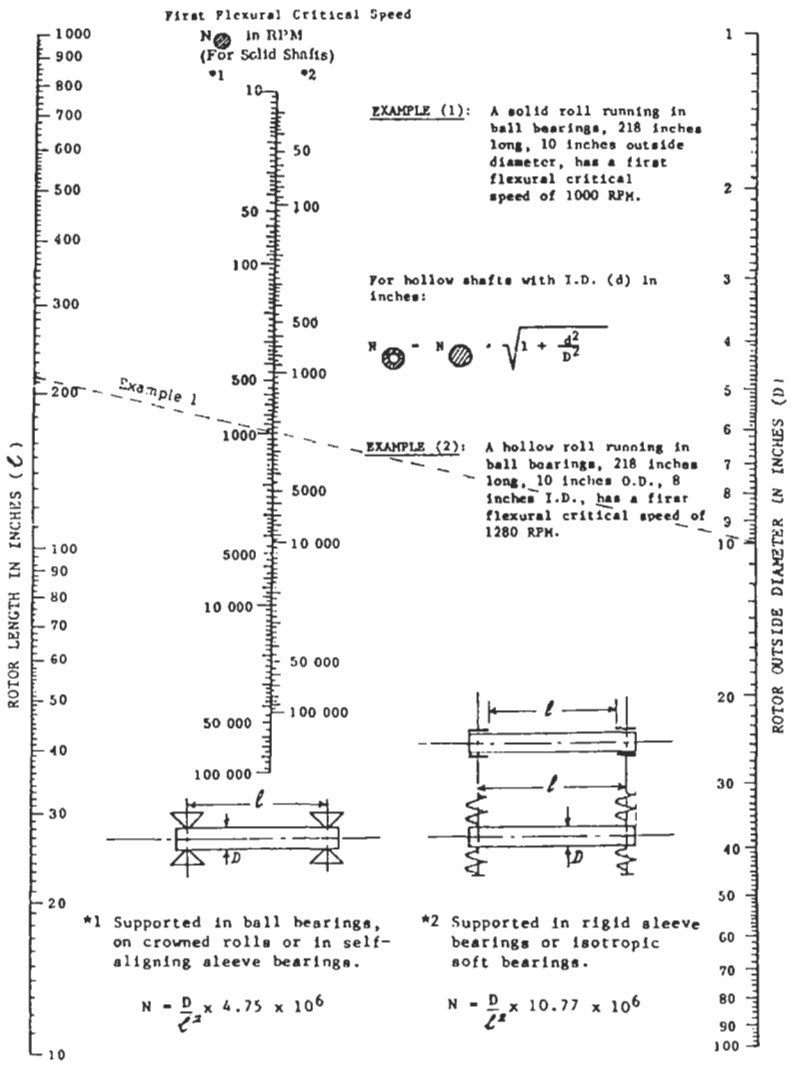
*1 ISO = International Standard Organization, Geneva, Switzerland
*2 Draft International Standard, to be released 1983
*3 ANSI = American National Standard Institute

For Jet Engine Balancing:

May be ordered from:	Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. (SAE) 400 Commonwealth Drive Warrendale, PA 15096 Tel. (412) 776-4841
SAE ARP 587A	Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressors and Turbines, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One or More Than One Transverse Planes. Contains machine and proving rotor parameters and the all important SAE acceptance test for horizontal machines.
SAE ARP 588A	Static Balancing Equipment for Jet Engine Components, Compressor and Turbine, Rotating Type, for Measuring Unbalance in One Transverse Plane. Contains machine and proving rotor parameters and acceptance test for vertical machines.
SAE ARP 1340	Periodic Surveillance Procedures for Horizontal Dynamic Balancing Machines. An abbreviated test that may be run periodically to assure proper machine function.
SAE ARP 1342	Periodic Surveillance Procedures for Vertical, Static Balancing Machines. An abbreviated test that may be run periodically to assure proper machine function.
SAE ARP 1382	Design Criteria for Balancing Machine Tooling. Describes rotor supports, cradles, arbors, shrouds and other typical accessories for horizontal and vertical balancing machines. Also useful for general balancing work.
SAE ARP 1202	Bell Type Slave Bearings for Rotor Support in Dynamic Balancing Machines. Specifies dimensions and tolerances for special balancing bearings.
SAE ARP 1134	Adapter Interface—Turbine Engine Blade Moment Weighing Scale. Standardizes adapter tooling interface for blade moment weighing scales.
SAE ARP 1136	Balance Classification of Turbine Rotor Blades. Standardizes blade data and markings for classifying moment weight.

Appendix 6-D

Critical Speeds of Solid and Hollow Shafts


First Flexural Critical Speed
N in RPM
(For Solid Shafts)
*1
*2
ROTOR LENGTH IN INCHES (ℓ)
ROTOR OUTSIDE DIAMETER (D) IN INCHES
Example 1
EXAMPLE (1): A solid roll running in ball bearings, 218 inches long, 10 inches outside diameter, has a first flexural critical speed of 1000 RPM.
For hollow shafts with I.D. (d) in inches:
EXAMPLE (2): A hollow roll running in ball bearings, 218 inches long, 10 inches O.D., 8 inches I.D., has a first flexural critical speed of 1280 RPM.
*1 Supported in ball bearings, on crowned rolls or in self-aligning sleeve bearings.
N = D/ℓ² x 4.75 x 10⁶
*2 Supported in rigid sleeve bearings or isotropic soft bearings.
N = D/ℓ² x 10.77 x 10⁶

Part III

Maintenance and Repair of Machinery Components

Chapter 7
Ball Bearing Maintenance and Replacement

The fundamental purpose of a bearing is to reduce friction and wear between rotating parts that are in contact with one another in any mechanism. The length of time a machine will retain its original operating efficiency and accuracy will depend upon the proper selection of bearings, the care used while installing them, proper lubrication, and proper maintenance provided during actual operation.

The manufacturer of the machine is responsible for selecting the correct type and size of bearings and properly applying the bearings in the equipment. However, maintenance of the machine is the responsibility of the user. A well-planned and systematic maintenance procedure will assure extended operation of the machine. Failure to take the necessary precautions will generally lead to machine downtime. It must also be remembered that factors outside of the machine shaft may cause problems.

Engineering and Interchangeability Data

Rings and Balls—The standard material used in ball bearing rings and balls is a vacuum processed high chromium steel identified as SAE 52100 or AISI-52100. Material quality for balls and bearing rings is maintained by multiple inspections at the steel mill and upon receipt at the bearing manufacturing plants. The 52100 bearing steel with standard heat treatment can be operated satisfactorily at temperatures as high as 250°F (121°C). For higher operating temperatures, a special heat treat-

* Source: MRC Bearings, formerly TRW Bearing Division, now SKF Industries, Forms 455 and 382-13. Material copyrighted by TRW, Inc., 1982; all rights reserved. Reprinted by permission.

ment is required in order to give dimensional stability to the bearing parts.

Seals—Standard materials used in bearing seals are generally nitrile rubber. The material is bonded to a pressed steel core or shield. Nitrile rubber is unaffected by any type of lubricant commonly used in anti-friction bearings. These closures have a useful temperature range of −70° to +225°F (−56° to 107°C). For higher operating temperatures, special seals of high temperature materials can be supplied.

Ball Cages—Ball cages are pressed from low carbon steel of SAE 1010 steel. This same material is used for bearing shields. Molded nylon cages are now available for many bearing sizes. The machined cages ordinarily supplied in super-precision ball bearings are made from laminated cotton fabric impregnated with a phenolic resin. This type of cage material has an upper temperature limit of 225°F (107°C) with grease and 250°F (121°C) with oil for extended service. For periods of short exposure, higher temperatures can be tolerated.

Lubricant—Prelubricated bearings are packed with an initial quantity of high quality grease which is capable of lubricating the bearing for years under certain operating conditions. As a general rule, standard greases will yield satisfactory performance at temperatures up to 175°F (79°C), as long as proper lubrication intervals and lube quantities are observed. Special greases are available for service at much higher temperatures. Estimation of grease life at elevated temperatures involves a complex relationship of grease type, bearing size, speed, and load. Volume 4 of this series can provide some guidance, although special problems are best referred to the product engineering department of major bearing manufacturers.

Standardization

Bearing envelope dimensions and tolerances shown in this chapter are based on data obtained from MRC/TRW Bearing Division. They comply with standards established in the United States by the Annular Bearing Engineers' Committee (ABEC) of the Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (AFBMA). These standards have also been approved by the American Standards Association (ASA) and the International Standards Organization (ISO). This assures the bearing user of all the advantages of dimensional standardization. However, dimensional interchangeability is not necessarily an indication of functional interchangeability. Cage type, lubricant grade, internal fitting practice, and many other details are necessary to establish complete functional interchangeability.

Ball Bearing Variations

Special purpose bearings are generally one of the types shown in Table 7-1 but with special features as noted. For ease of reference we are including Table 7-2, "Commonly Used MRC Bearing Symbols," and Table 7-3, "Ball Bearing Interchange Table."

(Text continued on page 358)

Table 7-1
Special Purpose Bearings

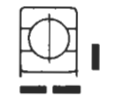
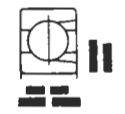
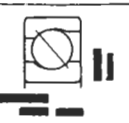
Bearing Type	Description	Load Capability	Relative Capacity
Type S Conrad Deep Groove	Ordinarily supplied with loose internal clearance. Other degrees of internal clearance may be necessary for special conditions. Outer and inner races have full depth on each side. Ball assembly is made by eccentric displacement of rings.	Has equal load-carrying capacities in either direction. Recommended for moderately heavy radial loads, thrust loads in either direction, or combination loads.	
Type M Maximum-Capacity Filling Notch	Ordinarily supplied with standard internal clearance. Other degrees of internal clearance may be necessary for special conditions. This type has a filling notch on one side of the outer and inner rings to insert full quota of balls.	Can carry heavier radial loads than Type S and heavier combined radial and thrust loads. Recommended for a majority of heavily loaded bearing positions — heavy industrial machinery, farm equipment, tractors and trucks.	
Type R Angular-Contact Counterbored Outer Ring	Supplied with loose internal clearance for normal applications. Other degrees of internal clearance may be necessary for special conditions. Counterbored outer ring. To assemble full quota of balls, rings are expanded by heating. Non-separable type.	Higher radial load-carrying capacity than Type S. Heavy thrust load in one direction only, or combined loads where radial load predominates and thrust is always against heavy shoulder of outer ring.	
7000 Series Angular-Contact Counterbored Outer Ring	Counterbored outer ring, non-separable type with initial contact angle of 29°. Two-piece steel cage for normal use or one-piece non-metallic or solid bronze cage for high speed, high operating temperature or severe vibration applications.	Very high thrust load in one direction, combined radial and thrust load where thrust load predominates.	
7000-P Series Angular-Contact Heavy Duty Type	Similar in design to 7000 Series Bearings but 40° contact angle. Ball complement and race groove depth designed for increased thrust capacity which varies with individual sizes depending on change in ball complement.	Capacity is 1.18 to 1.40 times that of 7000 Series, varies with individual sizes. Restricted to primarily thrust loads. Should not be used for radial loads only or combined radial and thrust loads where radial load is predominant.	
9000 Series Angular-Contact Split Inner Ring	Designed with solid one-piece outer ring and two-piece inner ring, maximum ball complement and one-piece machined cage.	Construction allows bearing to carry greater thrust in either direction than Type S. May be used where there is substantial radial load providing there is always sufficient thrust load present.	
5000 Series Double-Row C Type Conrad M Type Maximum-Capacity	C Type assembled by elastic displacement of rings. Does not have ball filling notches. M Type has filling notches on one side only for inserting full quota of balls. Supplied with standard clearance but tighter or looser internal clearance can be supplied to suit special service conditions.	C Type will support very heavy radial loads, and equal heavy thrust loads in either direction, or heavy combined radial and thrust loads. M Type has very heavy radial capacity. Also has heavy thrust capacity in one direction and can take light thrust load in reversing direction.	
	Sizes 5200-5203, 5300-5303 (SB suffix) made in conrad type with inverted contact angle. 5400 Series, a non-rigid type, has filling notches on both sides. Contact angles converge inwardly. 5219 thru 5222 and 5330 thru 5322 have similar construction.		

Table 7-2
Commonly Used MRC Bearing Symbols

Prefix	Suffix	Description	Prefix	Suffix	Description
	-B	Outwardly convergent contact angle when used with 5000 series (see SB, SBK)	R-		Cylindrical roller bearing
CONV.		Conveyor roll bearing	R-		Extra small, inch size bearing (was S-S)
	-D	Bearing with controlled relationship of ring faces, used in duplex sets		-R	Single-row, maximum-capacity, counterbore outer, angular-contact type bearing
	-DB	Duplex bearing, back-to-back mounting		-RJ	Angular-contact type bearing, inner and outer rings counterbored, non-separable
	-DD	Two glass fabric reinforced PTFE (polytetrafluoroethylene) seals.		-S	Single-row, deep-groove; conrad type bearing (1900, 200, 300)
	-DF	Duplex bearing, face-to-face mounting		-SB	Double-row, conrad type with outwardly convergent contact angles
	-DS	Duplex bearing, universal, preload requirement		-SBK	Double-row, conrad type bearing with outwardly convergent contact angles, standard width
	-DT	Duplex bearing, tandem mounting		-SFFC	Cartridge width bearing, conrad type with two shields
	-DU	Duplex bearing, universal, free running, no end play		-SFFCG	Cartridge width bearing, conrad type with two shields, snap ring
FB-		Flanged bearing, tapered O.D.		-ST	Stainless Steel
	-FF	Two shields		-SWI	Single-row, deep-groove, conrad type bearing with wide inner ring
	-FFM	Two metal shields		-SZZC	Cartridge width bearing, conrad type with two Synthe-Seals
	-FFP	Two rubber-beaded shields		-SZZCG	Cartridge width bearing, conrad type with two Synthe-Seals, snap ring
	-FFS	Two felt seals		-U	Split inner ring bearing (9000 series)
	-FFSG	Two felt seals and snap ring		-UH	Split inner and split outer ring bearing (9000 series)
	-FM	One metal shield		-UK	Split inner ring bearing (9100 series)
	-FP	One rubber-beaded shield		-UP	Split inner ring bearing (9000 series)
	-FS	One felt seal		-WI	Single-row, maximum-capacity, filling notch type bearing, wide inner ring
	-FSF	One felt seal and one shield		-X	Tapered bore ball bearing
	-FSFG	One felt seal and one shield, snap ring	XLS-		Single-row, maximum-capacity, counterbore outer, radial type bearing, inch dimensions
F-	-WI	Shield on flush side of wide inner	XO-	-RBDS	Excello replacement bearings
	-G	Snap ring		-Y	Adapter sleeve
G-	-MF	Snap ring opposite side from standard shield (also G-SF)		-Z	One synthetic rubber seal
	-H	Split outer ring bearing (9000 series)		-ZZ	Two synthetic rubber seals
	-K	Standard width, double-row bearing		-ZZC	Cartridge width bearing, extra-small type, two Synthe-Seals
	-KR	Single-row, maximum-capacity, counterbore outer, radial type bearing (100-K and 7100-K series)			
	-KS	Single-row, deep-groove, conrad type bearing (100-K series)			
	-KSB	Conrad type bearing with counterbored separable inner ring			
	-M	Single-row, maximum-capacity, filling notch type bearing			
	-P	Heavy duty, angular-contact bearing			

Table 7-3
Ball Bearing Interchange Table

MRC Ball Bearing Series	B C A	Fafnir	FAG	Federal	Hoover NSK	New Departure-Hyatt	SKF
R-2	.....	33-K-3	R-2	R2	R2	R-2	EE-0
R-2-F	.....	33-KD-3	R-2-Z	R2F	7R2	7-R-2	EE-0/Z
R-2-FF	.....	33-KDD-3	R-2-2Z	R2FF	77R2	77-R-2	EE-0/2Z
R-2-Z	.....	.....	R-2-RS	R2R	9R2	9-R-2	EE-0/RS
R-2-ZZ	.....	.....	R-2-2RS	R2RR	99R2	99-R-2	EE-0/2RS
†R-2-A	.....	33-K-4	R-2-A	R2A	R2A	R-2-A	.....
†R-3	.....	33-K-5	R-3	R3	R3	R-3	EE-1
†R-4	.....	S-1-K-7	R-4	R4	R4	R-4	EEA-2
†R-4-A-4	.....	S-1-K	R-4-A	R4A	R4A	R-4-A	EE-2
†R-6	.....	S-3-K	R-6	R6	R6	R-6	EE-3
†R-8	.....	S-5-K	R-8	R8	R8	R-8	EE-4
†R-10	.....	S-7-K	R-10	R10	R10	R-10	EE-5
†R-12	.....	S-8-K	R-12	R12	R12	R-12	EE-6
†R-14	.....	S-9-K	R-14	R14	R14	R-14	EE-8
†R-16	.....	S-10-K	R-16	R16	R16	R-16	EE-9
†R-18	.....	S-11-K	R-18	R18	R18	R-18	EE-10
†R-20	.....	S-12-K	R-20	R20	R20	R-20	EE-11
†R-22	.....	.....	R-22	R22	.....	R-22	.....
†R-24	.....	.....	R-24	R24	R24	R-24	.....
XLS	XLS§	XLS§	XLS§	XLS§	.....	.....	.....
30	30	30-K	600	30	30	30	R-4
30-F	30-S	30-KD	600-Z	30-F	7030	7030	R-4-Z
30-FF	30-SS	30-KDD	600-2Z	30-FF	77030	77030	R-4-2Z
30-FFS	.....	30-KLL	.....	FS88030	.....	88030	.....
30-FS	.....	30-KL	.....	FS8030	.....	8030	.....
30-FSF	.....	30-KLD	.....	FS87030	.....	87030	.....
30-FZ	.....	.....	600-RSZ	.....	.....	97030	.....
30-Z	30-D	30-P	600-RS	30-R	9030	9030	R-4-RS
30-ZZ	30-DD	30-PP	600-2RS	30-RR	99030	99030	R-4-2RS
100-KR	7100-N	9100-WI	B-7000-C	.....	.....	0-L-00	7000-C
100-KRD	D7100-N	9100-WI-DU	(2) B-7000-CUO	.....	.....	0-L-00-D	(2) 7000-CG
100-KS	100	9100-K	6000	9100	3L00	3-L-00	6000
100-KSF	100-S	9100-KD	6000-Z	9100 F	73L00	73-L-00	6000-Z
100-KSFF	100-SS	9100-KDD	6000-2Z	9100-FF	773L00	773-L-00	6000-2Z
100-KSFFG	100-SSL	9100-KDDG	6000-2ZNR	.....	773L00-G	4773-L-00	6000-2ZNR
100-KSFG	100-SL	9100-KDG	6000-ZNR	9100-GF	73L00-G	473-L-00	6000-ZNR
100-KSFZ	.....	9100-NPD	6000-RSZ	.....	973L00	973-L-00	6000-RSZ
100-KSFZG	.....	.....	6000-RSZNR	.....	973L00-G	4973-L-00	6000-RSZNR
100-KSG	100-L	9100-KG	6000-NR	9100-CG	3L00 G	43-L-00	6000-NR
100-KSZ	100-D	9100-P	6000-RS	9100 R	93L00	93-L-00	6000-RS
100-KSZG	100-DL	9100-PG	6000-RSNR	9100-GR	93L00-G	493-L-00	6000-RSNR
100-KSZZ	100-DD	9100-PP	6000-2RS	9100-RR	993L00	993-L-00	6000-2RS
100-KSZZG	100-DDL	9100-PPG	6000-2RSNR	9100-GRR	993L00-G	4993-L 00	6000-2RSNR
200-FFS	88500	200-KLL	.....	FS-88500	88500	88500	.....
200-FFSG	.....	200-KLLG	.....	.....	88500-G	488500	.....
200-FS	8500	200-KL	.....	FS-8500	8500	8500	.....
200-FSF	87500	200-KLD	.....	FS-87500	87500	87500	.....
200-FSFG	.....	200-KLDG	.....	.....	87500-G	487500	.....
200-M	1200	200-W	200	1200-M	M-200	1200	200
200-MF	1200-S	200-WD	200-Z	1200-MF	M-7200	7200	200-Z
200-MFF	1200-SS	200-WDD	200-2Z	1200-MFF	M-77200	77200	200-2Z
200-MFFG	1200-SSL	200-WDDG	200-2ZNR	1200-MGFF	M-77200-G	477200	200-2ZNR
200-MFG	1200-SL	200-WDG	200-ZNR	1200-MGF	M-7200-G	47200	200-ZNR
200-MFZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	M-97200	.....	.....
200-MG	1200-L	200-WG	200-NR	1200-MG	M-200-G	41200	200-NR
200-MZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	M-9200	9200	.....
200-R	7200-N	7200-W	B-7200-C	7200	7200-C	20200	7200-C
200-RD	D7200-N	7200-W-DU	(2) B-7200-CUO	.....	7200-C-D	20200-D	(2) 7200-CG
200-S	200	200-K	6201	1200	200	3200	6200
200-SF	200-S	200-KD	6200-Z	1200-F	7200	7500	6200-Z
200-SFF	200-SS	200-KDD	6200-2Z	1200-FF	77200	77500	6200-2Z
200-SFFC	W-200-CC	W-200-KLL	S-3500	W1200-FF	S-3500	.....	462200
200-SFFCG	.....	.....	S-3500 NR	W1200-GFF	S-3500-G	.....	.....
200-SFFG	200-SSL	200-KDDG	6200-2ZNR	1200-GFF	77200-G	477500	6200-2ZNR
200-SFG	200-SL	200-KDG	6200-ZNR	1200 GF	7200-G	47500	6200-ZNR
200-SFZ	.....	200-PD	6200-RSZ	1200-FR	97200	97500	6200-RSZ
200-SFZG	.....	.....	6200-RSZNR	.....	97200-G	497500	.....
200-SG	200-L	200-KG	6200-NR	1200-CG	200-G	43200	6200-NR
200-SX	.....	5500N	.....	1200-X	.....	.....	.....
200-SXY	.....	5500-N-A	.....	1200-XY	.....	.....	.....
200-SZ	200-D	200-P	6200-RS	1200-R	9200	9500	6200-RS
200-SZG	200-DL	200-PG	6200-RSNR	1200-GR	9200-G	49500	6200-RSNR
200-SZZ	200-DD	200 PP	6200-2RS	1200-RR	99200	99500	6200-2RS
200-SZZC	.....	W-200-KLL	S-3500-2RS	W1200-KK	.....	.....	462200
200-SZZG	200-DDL	200-PPG	6200-2RSNR	1200-GRR	99200-G	499500	6200-2RSNR
300-M	1300	300-W	300	1300-M	M-300	1300	300
300-MF	1300-S	300-WD	300-Z	1300-MF	M-7300	7300	300-Z

Shielded or sealed types—to determine interchange see MRC R-2, R-2-F, R-2-FF, R-2-Z, R-2-ZZ. Add to competitive bearing number their prefix or suffix as shown opposite MRC R-2 Series. For Fafnir sealed bearing numbers, substitute P for single seal, PP for double seal in place of D or DD

* This table indicates methods of numbering. Some sizes not in production.

§ MRC Bearing has counterbored outer ring.

Table 7-3. Continued.

BALL BEARING INTERCHANGE TABLE* — BASIC SERIES

MRC Ball Bearing Series	B C A	Fafnir	FAG	Federal	Hoover NSK	New Departure-Hyatt	SKF
300-MFF 300-MFG 300-MG	1300-SS 1300-SL 1300-L	300-WDD 300-WDG 300-WG	300-2Z 300-ZNR 300-NR	1300-MFF 1300-MGF 1300-MG	M-77300 M-7300-G M-300-G	77300 47300 41300	300-2Z 300-ZNR 300-NR
300-MZ 300-R 300-RD	1300-D 7300-N D7300-N	..... 7300-W 7300-W-DU	..... B-7300-C (2) B-7300-CUO	..... 7300	M-9300 7300-C 7300-C-D	..... 20300 20300-D	....
300-S 300-SF 300-SFF	300 300-S 300-SS	300-K 300-KD 300-KDD	6300 6300-Z 6300-2Z	1300 1300F 1300FF	300 7300 77300	3300 7600 77600	6300 6300-Z 6300-2Z
300-SFFC 300-SFFCG 300-SFFG	W-300-CC 300-SSL	W-300-KLL 300-KDDG	S-3600 S-3600-NR 6300-2ZNR	W1300FF W1300GFF 1300GFF	S-3600 S-3600-G 77300-G	 477600	462300 ..... 6300-2ZNR
300-SFG 300-SFZ 300-SFZG	300-SL	300-KDG 300-PD	6300-ZNR 6300-RSZ 6300-RSZNR	1300GF 1300FR 1300GFR	7300-G 97300 97300-G	47600 97600 497600	6300-ZNR 6300-RSZ 6300-RSZNR
300-SG 300-SWI	300-L	300-KG W1R-300-K	6300-NR	1300CG	300-G	43300 4600	6300-NR .....
300-SX 300-SXY 300-SZ	.... 300-D	6600N 6600-N-A 300-P	.... 6300-RS	1300X 1300XY 1300R	 9300	 9600	.... 6300-RS
300-SZG 300-SZZ 300-SZZC 300-SZZG	300-DL 300-DD 300-DDL	..... 300-PP W-300-KLL 300-PPG	6300-RSNR 6300-2RS S-3600-2RS 6300-2RSNR	1300GR 1300RR W1300KK 1300GRR	9300-G 99300 S-3600 99300-G	49600 99600 499600	6300-RSNR 6300-2RS 462300 6300-2RSNR
300-WI 400-M 400-MF	..... 1400 1400-S	WIR-300-W 400-W	....	1300MWI 1400-M 1400-MF	..... M-400 M-7400	4300 1400 7400	....
400-MFF 400-MG 400-R	1400-SS 1400-L	....	....	1400-MFF 1400-MG 7400	M-77400 M-400-G	77400 41400 20400	....
400-S 400-SF 400-SG	400 400-S 400-L	400-K	6400 6400-Z	1400 1400-F 1400-CG	400 7400 400-G	3400 7700 43400	6400 ....
400-SZ 400-SZZ 1900-R	400-D 400-DO	....	....	1400-L 1400-LL	....	....	....
1900-S 5200 * 5200 F	....	9300-K	61900	1900 5200N 5200F§	....	3LL00	6900 ....
* 8200-FG * 5200-K * 5200-KF	..... 5200 5200-S	..... 5200-W† 5200-WD†§	..... 3200† 3200-Z†	..... 5200 FS5500	..... 5200† 5200-F†	..... 5200-W 5500-W	..... 5200† .....
* 5200-KFF * 5200-KFG * 5200-KG	5200-SS 5200-SL 5200-L	.... 5200-WG†	3200-2Z†	FS55500 FS5500CG 5200CG	5200-FF† 5200-FG† 5200-G†	55500-W 45500-W 45200-W	....
* 5200-SB * 5200-SBF * 5200-SBK	....	5200-K 5200-KD 5200-K	3200 3200	A5200 ..... A5200	C-5200 ..... C-5200	5200 5200	5200 5200
* 5200-SBKF * 5200-SBKFF * 5200-SBKFG	....	5200-KD§ 5200-KDD§ 5200-KDG§	3200-Z 3200-2Z	FSA5500 FSA55500 FSA5500CG	C-5200-F C-5200-FF C-5200-FG	5500 55500 45500	....
* 5200-SBKG * 5200-SBKZ * 5200-SBKZZ	....	5200-KG	....	A5200CG	C-5200-G	45200 95200 995200	....
* 5300 * 5300-F * 5300-FG	5300 1300-S 5300-SL	5300-W† 5300-WD†§	3300†	5300 5300F	5300†	5300-W	5300† ....
* 5300-G * 5300-KF * 5300-KFG	5300-L 5300-S 5300-SL	5300-WG†	..... 3300-Z†	5300CG FS5600 FS5600CG	5300-G† 5300-F† 5300-FG†	45300-W 5600-W 45600-W	....
* 5300-SB * 5300-SBF * 5300-SBG	....	5300-K 5300-KG	3300	A5300 ..... A5300CG	C-5300 C-5300-F C-5300-G	5300 45300	5300 ....
* 5300-SBKF * 5300-SBKFF * 5300-SBKFG	....	....	3300-Z 3300-2Z	FSA5600 FSA55600 FSA5600-CG	C-5300-F C-5300-FF C-5300-FG	5600 55600 45600	....
5400 5400-F 5400-G	5400 ..... 5400-L	5400-W† 5400-WD† 5400-WG†	....	....	....	5400 5700	5400† ....
7100-KR 7100-KRD 7200	7100-A D7100-A 7200-A	.... 7200-W	B-7000-E (2) B-7000-EUO B-7200-E	 7200	.... 7200-A	H0-L-00 ..... H20200	7000-C (2) 7000-CG 7200
7200-D 7200-P 7200-PD	D7200-A 7200-J D7200-J	7200-W-DU 7200-PW 7200-PW-DU	(2) B-7200-EUO 7200-B (2) 7200-BUO	DU7200	7200-A-D 7200-B 7200-B-D	H20200-D 30200 30200-D	(2) 7200-G 7200-B (2) 7200-BG
7300 7300-D 7300-P	7300-A 7300-A D7300-J	7300-W 7300-W-DU 7300-PW	B-7300-E (2) B-7300-EUO 7300-B	7300 DU7300	7300-A 7300-A-D 7300-B	H-20300 H-20300-D 30300	7300 (2) 7300-G 7300-B
7300-PD 7400 7400-D	....	7300-PW-DU 7400 7400-D	(2) 7300-BUO	..... 7400 DU7400	7300-B-D	30300-D H-20400 H-20400-D	(2) 7300-BG 7400 (2) 7400-G

* This table indicates methods of numbering. Some sizes not in production

† MRC bearing contact angles converge inwardly.

§ On certain sizes width may be greater than corresponding MRC Bearing

• These double-row bearing types have been superseded by new C and M types. Interchange to new types and with other makes shown on page 50

Table 7-3. Continued.

5000 SERIES DOUBLE-ROW BALL BEARINGS

Interchangeability of MRC 5000 Series Bearings with various other makes. This table indicates methods of marking. Some competitive sizes in the series are not in production.

MRC Ball Bearing Series	BCA	Fafnir	FAG	Federal	Hoover NSK	New Departure-Hyatt	SKF
5200-C	.....	5200K	.....	.....	5200	5200	5200H
5200-CF	.....	5200KD	.....	.....	.....	5500	5200Z
5200-CFF	.....	5200KDD	.....	.....	5200ZZ	55500	5200-2Z
5200-CFFG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	455500	.....
5200-CFG	.....	5200KDG	.....	.....	.....	45500	.....
5200-CFZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-CFZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-CG	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200NR	45200	5200NRH
5200-CZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200RS
5200-CZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-CZZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200-2RS
5200-CZZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-M	5200W	5200W	3200	A5200	3200	5200	.....
5200-MF	5200WS	5200WD	.....	FSA5500	.....	5500	.....
5200-MFF	5200WSS	.....	.....	FSA55500	3200ZZ	55500	.....
5200-MFFG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	455507	.....
5200-MFG	5200WSL	.....	.....	FSA5500CG	.....	45500	.....
5200-MFZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-MFZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-MG	5200WL	5200WG	.....	FSA5200CG	3200NR	45200	.....
5200-MZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-MZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-SB	.....	5200K	.....	.....	5200	5200	5200
5200-SBKF	.....	5200KD	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200Z
5200-SBKFF	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200ZZ	.....	5200-2Z
5200-SBKFG	.....	5200KDG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-SBKZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200RD
5200-SBKZZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5200-2RS
5300-C	.....	5300K	3300	.....	5300	5300	5300H
5300-CF	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	5600	.....
5300-CFF	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	55600	.....
5300-CFFG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	455600	.....
5300-CFG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	45600	.....
5300-CFZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-CFZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-CG	.....	5300KG	.....	.....	5300NR	45300	5300NRH
5300-CZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-CZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-CZZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5200-CZZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-M	5300W†	5300W	3300	A5300	3300	5300	.....
5300-MF	5300WS†	.....	.....	FSA5600	.....	5600	.....
5300-MFF	.....	.....	.....	FSA55600	3300ZZ	55600	.....
5300-MFFG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	455600	.....
5300-MFG	5300WSL†	.....	.....	FSA5600CG	.....	45600	.....
5300-MFZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-MFZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-MG	5300WL†	5300WG	.....	FSA5300CG	3300NR	45300	.....
5300-MZ	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-MZG	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5300-SB	.....	5300K	.....	.....	5300	5300	.....
5400	5400	5400W•	.....	.....	.....	5400•	5400
5400F	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5400G	5400L	5400WG•	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

† BCA bearing contact angles converge inwardly
• MRC bearing contact angles converge inwardly

(Text continued from page 353)

"Special" bearings include:

Adapter Type—Conrad type with a tapered adapter sleeve.
Aircraft Bearings—A category by themselves. Not related to other types listed here.
Cartridge Type—Conrad type with both rings same width as a double-row bearing.
Conveyor Roll—Conrad type. Special construction, wider than standard built-in seals.
Felt Seal—Conrad type, unequal width rings.

Cleanliness and Working Conditions in Assembly Area

Many ball bearing difficulties are due to contaminants that have found their way into the bearing after the machine has been placed in operation. Contaminants generally include miscellaneous particles which, when trapped inside the bearing, will permanently indent the balls and raceways under the tremendous pressures generated by the operating load (Figure 7-1).

Average contact area stresses of 250,000 lbs per square in. are not uncommon in bearings. Due to the relatively small area of contact between

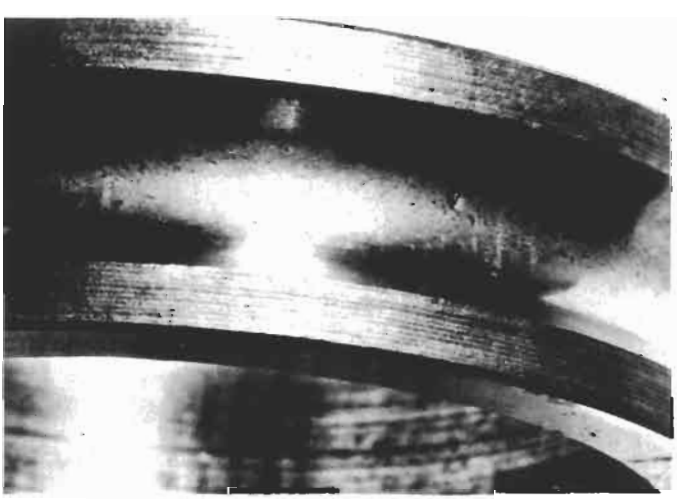


Figure 7-1. Hard, coarse foreign matter causes small, round-edged depressions of various sizes.

the ball and raceway, contact area pressures are very high even for lightly loaded bearings. When rolling elements roll over contaminants, the contact areas are greatly reduced and the pressure becomes extremely high.

When abrasive material contaminates the lubricant, it is frequently crushed to finer particles that cause wear to the ball and race surfaces. The wear alters the geometry of the balls and races, increases the internal looseness of the bearing, and roughens the load-carrying surfaces (Figure 7-2). Therefore, it is highly important to maintain a clean environment when working on all bearing applications during servicing operations.

The assembly area should be isolated from all possible sources of contamination. Filtered air will help eliminate contamination and a pressurized and humidity-controlled area is advantageous to avoid moist and/or corrosive atmospheres. Work benches, tools, clothing, and hands should be free from dirt, lint, dust, and other contaminants detrimental to bearings.

Surfaces of the work bench should be of splinter-free wood, phenolic composition, or rubber-covered to avoid possible nicking of spindle parts that could result from too hard a bench top. To maintain cleanliness, it is suggested that the work area be covered with clean poly-coated kraft paper, plastic, or other suitable material (Figure 7-3) which, when soiled, can be easily and economically replaced.

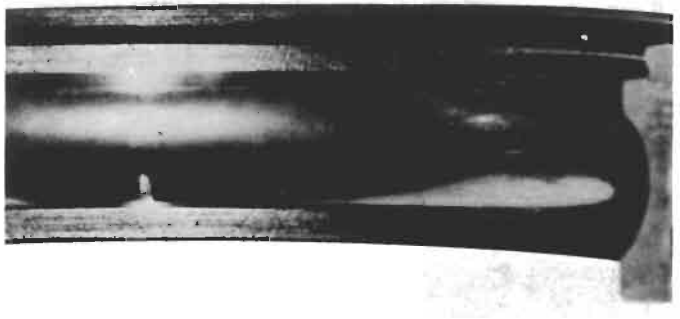


Figure 7-2. Fine foreign matter laps the ball surfaces and ball races, causing wear.

Figure 7-3. Cover workbench with clean, lint-free paper, plastic, or similar material. Also, isolate work area from contamination sources.

Removal of Shaft and Bearings from Housing

The first step in dismantling a spindle or shaft is to remove the shaft assembly from the housing. To do this, it is generally necessary to take off the housing covers from each end.

Most machine tool spindle and API pump housings are constructed with bearing seats as an integral part of the housing. This contributes to the rigidity of the spindle. However, it makes disassembly more difficult and extreme care must be taken to avoid bearing damage. Also, it is not generally possible to remove bearings from the shaft unless the shaft assembly is first removed from the housing.

On most spindle assemblies this can be done by first placing the entire spindle in an arbor press and in alignment with the press ram. Next, carefully apply pressure to the end of the shaft making sure that there is clearance for the expulsion of the shaft assembly on the press table. As pressure is applied, the shaft is forced from the housing along with the bearing mounted on the opposite end of the shaft.

The bearing on the end where pressure is applied remains in the housing. It is removed from the housing either with hand pressure or by carefully pushing it out of the housing from the opposite side with rod tubing having a diameter slightly smaller than the housing bore. The tubing should contact the bearing outer ring and should push it from the housing

with little or no pressure on the balls and inner ring. Following this procedure will help avoid brinelling of the raceways due to excessive pressure on the rolling elements and races.

Electric motor shafts are generally constructed to permit removal of one end bell, leaving the shaft and bearings exposed. The rotor or shaft assembly is then free to be removed by drawing it through the stator.

Bearing Removal from Shaft

Removal of bearings from spindle shafts is a highly important part of the maintenance and service operation. In most cases, it is far more difficult to remove a bearing from the shaft than to put it on. For this reason, a bearing can be damaged unnecessarily in the process. Every precaution must be taken to avoid damage to any of the parts including the bearings. If the bearings are damaged during removal, the damage often is not noticed and may not become known until the spindle is completely reassembled.

Bearing damage during removal from the shaft can occur in many ways, of which these are the most common:

- *The smooth, highly-polished surface of the ball raceways may be brinelled, i.e., indented, by the balls* (Figure 7-4). Brinell marks on

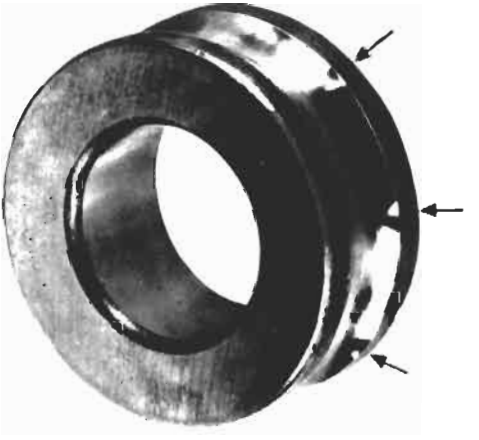


Figure 7-4. Brinell marks or nicks, indicated by arrows, are the most common result of improper bearing removal.

the surface of the races are usually caused when a bearing is forced off the shaft by applying excessive or uneven pressure through the rolling element complement. Any shock load, such as hammer blows on the inner or outer rings, is apt to cause brinelling. Major brinelling can sometimes be discovered on the job by applying a thrust load from each direction while rotating the inner or outer ring slowly. As the ring is turned through the brinelled area on either of the race shoulders, it can often be felt as a catch or rough spot. *A brinelled bearing is unfit for further use. Never put it back into service.*

- *Ball raceways may be roughened due to dirt particles or metal chips working into the bearing.* As soon as the shaft has been removed from the housing, it should be placed in a clean work area and suitably covered so that no contaminant can become lodged in the bearing prior to removal from the shaft. If contaminants enter the housing and the bearing is subsequently rotated, it is possible that they will roughen and damage the raceways.

- *The ball cage may be damaged if the bearing puller is used incorrectly.* Use of improper tools such as a hammer or chisel to pound or pry the bearing off the shaft may result in damage to the bearing in addition to the hazard of contaminating the bearing.

Removal From Shaft

Because of operating conditions or location of the shaft, bearings are often tight and resist easy removal. This holds true even though they were originally mounted with a "push" fit, usual in most machine tool spindle applications. A "push" fit means ability to press the bearing on the shaft with hand pressure.

If these conditions occur, mechanical means such as a bearing puller (Figure 7-5) or the use of an arbor press (Figure 7-6) should be employed to effect bearing removal. The hammer and drift tube method, sometimes used to pound the bearing from the shaft, generally is not recommended, especially on machine tool spindle bearings. There is always the chance that the hammer shocks conducted through the tube will cause brinelling.

For some types of bearings, electrical means of removal are possible as well. These removal methods will be described later.

Bearings are mounted on shafts or spindles in several ways so that dismounting must be accomplished by different means. Here are the most common conditions:

- The bearing is free of grease and/or other parts. Place the shaft in an arbor press in line with the ram and with the inner ring of the bearing supported by a split ring having a bore slightly larger than the shaft

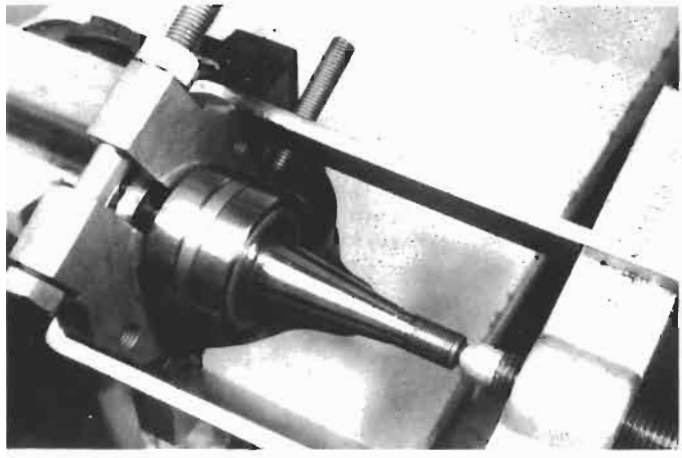


Figure 7-5. Bearing puller with two claws.

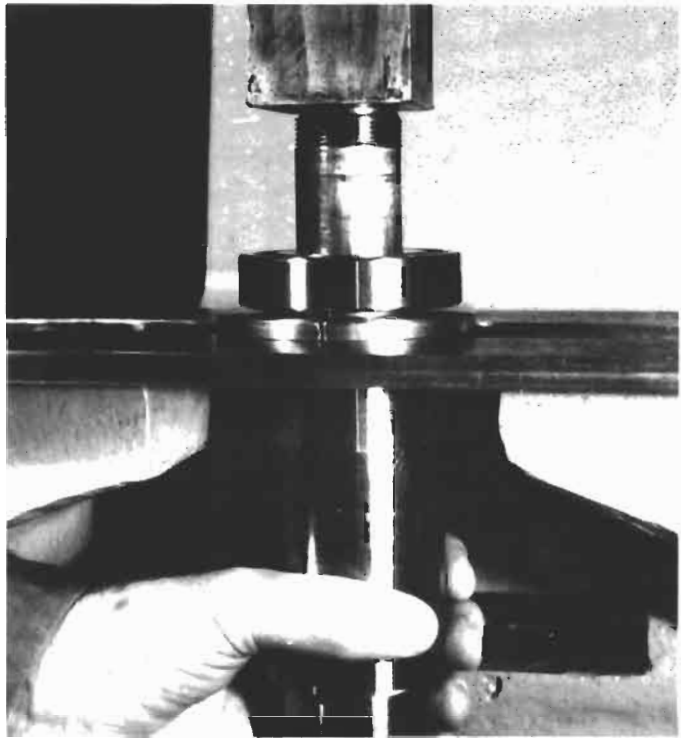


Figure 7-6. Using arbor press and split ring to remove bearing from shaft.

(Figure 7-7). Press the shaft from the bearing with an even pressure, making sure it does not drop free and become damaged. If the split ring is not available, two flat bars of equal height could support the bearing (Figure 7-8).

Another means of removing a bearing from the shaft is by use of a bearing puller, several of which are shown in Figures 7-13 to 7-15.

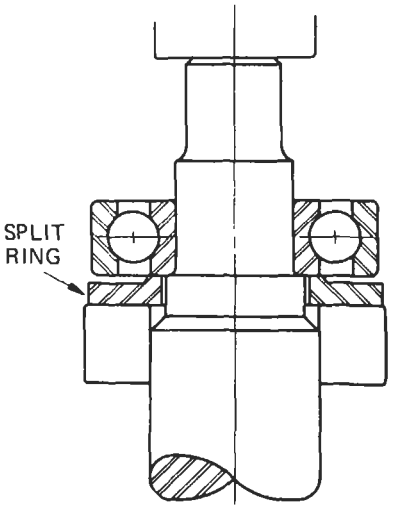


Figure 7-7. Split ring supports inner ring of bearing.

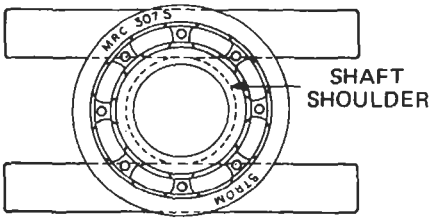


Figure 7-8. Equal height bars spaced to support both inner and outer rings.

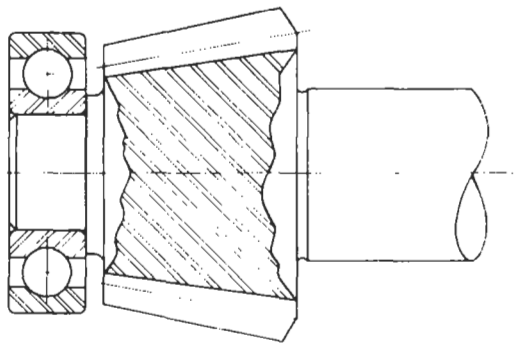


Figure 7-9. Bearing mounted with other parts abutting it.

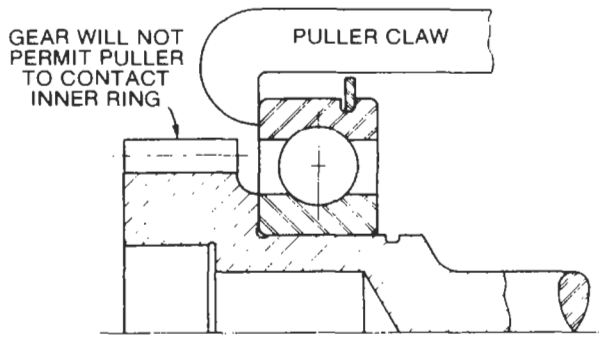


Figure 7-10. Where shaft parts obstruct inner ring accessibility, apply pressure with bearing puller on outer ring as evenly and squarely as possible. On bearings with one high and one low shoulder, pressure should be applied against the deep shoulder only.

- The bearing mounted with gears and/or other parts abutting it (Figure 7-9). In most cases, a bearing in this location can only be removed by a bearing puller which applies pressure on the outer ring (Figure 7-10). Extreme care must be exercised when applying pressure to make sure that the pull is steady and equal all around the outer ring. If the gears or other parts are removable, it may be possible to apply pressure through them to force the bearing off the shaft. An arbor press may be employed to do the job if the bearing or gear can be adequately supported while pressure is applied.

Applying Pressure with Bearing Puller

Whenever possible, bearings always should be moved from the shaft by square and steady pressure against the *tight* ring. Thus with a tight fit on the shaft, pressure should be against the inner ring; with a tight fit in the housing, pressure should be against the outer ring. If it is impractical to exert pressure against the tight ring, and the loose ring must be used, it is imperative that the same square and steady pull method be used.

Pressure may be applied in either direction on bearings with shoulders of equal height (Figure 7-11). On counterbored bearings with one deep and one low shoulder, pressure should be applied against the deep shoulder. If pressure is applied against the low shoulder, disassembly of the bearing or serious damage may result. When the pairs of bearings on each end of the shaft are mounted in a back-to-back (DB) relationship, the counterbored outer ring is always exposed. In such cases, it will be necessary to apply the pressure against the low shoulder (counterbored ring) to effect bearing removal from the shaft even though the risk of damage to the inboard bearing is great.

Most machine tool spindles employ Type R or angular-contact bearings (7000 Series) that do not have seals or shields. However, it is possible that a Conrad type bearing equipped with seals or shields may be used in some applications. When using pullers for bearing removal, care must be exercised to avoid damage to the seal or shield (Figure 7-12). If dented and then remounted, an early bearing failure during operation could result.

Bearing removal damage can be caused by the selection of the wrong puller type as easily as it can with improper use of the correct puller. No

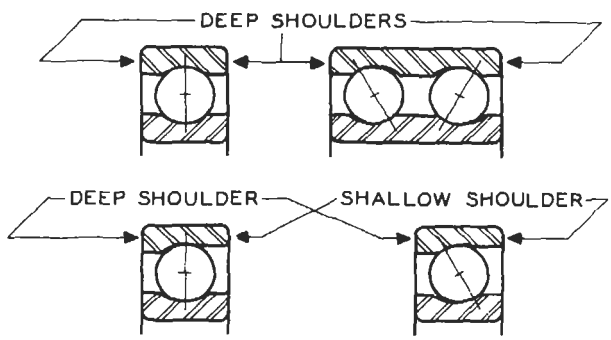


Figure 7-11. Pressure may be applied in either direction with shoulders of equal height.

matter which puller is used, *remember:* the bearing must be pulled off squarely under steady pressure.

Identification and Handling of Removed Bearings

As it is possible that bearings may be suitable for remounting after servicing, it is necessary to replace them in exactly the same position on the shaft. Therefore, each bearing must be specifically tagged to indicate its proper location. Duplex bearings should be tied together in their proper relationship, DB, DF, or DT and the tag should also indicate the relationship. If a spacer is used between duplex bearings, the tag should indicate its position and relationship to the bearings.

On jobs where the bearing is being removed because performance has not been fully successful, it is often desirable to find out why. Be sure to preserve the bearing until it is practical to examine it. The bearing frequently contains direct evidence as to the cause of failure. It should not be permitted to rust badly and the parts should be abused as little as possible during disassembly.

If the bearing is being removed for reasons other than bearing failure, be certain that it is thoroughly cleaned and oiled immediately after removal. Otherwise there is a good chance that it will get dirty and rusty, which would prevent its reuse.

Bearing Pullers

There are numerous types of bearing pullers on the market, any of which would be satisfactory to use depending upon the dismounting situ-

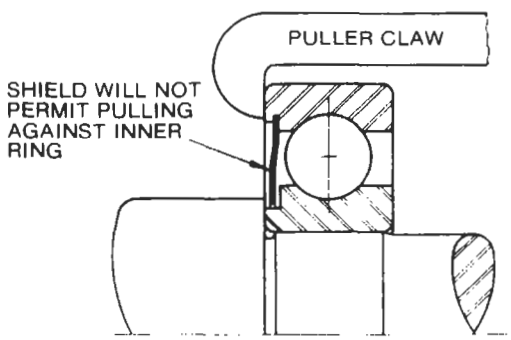


Figure 7-12. Where a shield or seal does not permit inner ring pressure, use bearing puller with extreme care to avoid denting shield or seal.

ation encountered. A conventional claw type is used where there is sufficient space behind the bearing puller claws to apply pressure to the bearing. In the illustration (Figure 7-13), the claws are pressing against the bearing preloading spring pack which in turn will force the duplex pair of bearings and spacers from the spindle.

Another type of puller (Figure 7-14) uses a split-collar puller plate (Figure 7-15), the flange of which presses against the inner ring of the

Figure 7-13. Claws pressing against the bearing spring pack will force the duplex pair of bearings and spacers from the spindle.

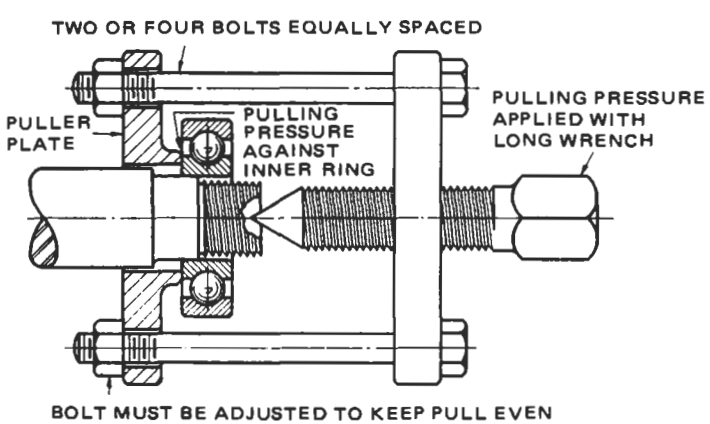

TWO OR FOUR BOLTS EQUALLY SPACED
PULLER PLATE
PULLING PRESSURE AGAINST INNER RING
PULLING PRESSURE APPLIED WITH LONG WRENCH
BOLT MUST BE ADJUSTED TO KEEP PULL EVEN

Figure 7-14. Another type of puller. Pulling pressure is applied to inner ring.

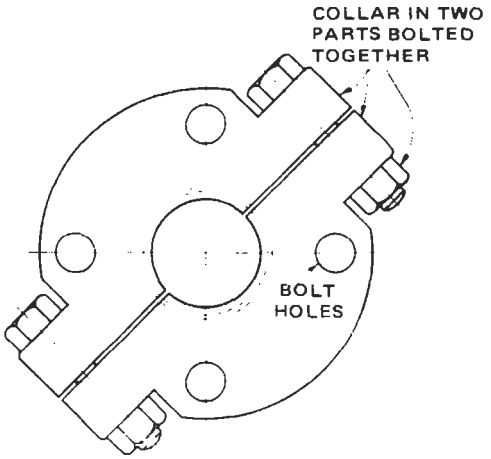


Figure 7-15. Split collar puller plate.

bearing. The puller bolts must be carefully adjusted so that the pulling pressure is equal all around the ring. The collar must be made in two pieces so that it can be slipped behind the bearing. The collar hole should be large enough so that the two pieces may be bolted together without gripping the shaft.

Most bearing companies do not manufacture bearing pullers, but many bearing distributors stock a variety of the various pullers described above.

Bearing Removal Through Application of Heat

The application of heat via special devices provides a rather straightforward way of removing inner bearing rings without damaging shafts. The device shown in Figure 7-16 is initially heated by an induction heater (see Figures 7-59 through 7-61, later in this chapter).

To remove the inner ring from a bearing assembly [Figure 7-17(1)], the outer race and rolling elements must first be removed [Figure 7-17(2)]. The device is then heated to approximately 450°C (813°F) and slipped over the exposed ring, Figure 7-17(3). By simultaneously twisting and pulling [Figure 7-17(4)], the operator clamps the heated pull-off device onto the ring. Within approximately 10 seconds, the ring will have expanded to the point of looseness [Figure 7-17(5)] and can be removed.

Cleaning and Inspection of Spindle Parts

Insufficient attention is paid to small dust particles which constantly blow around in the open air. But should a particle get in one's eye, it

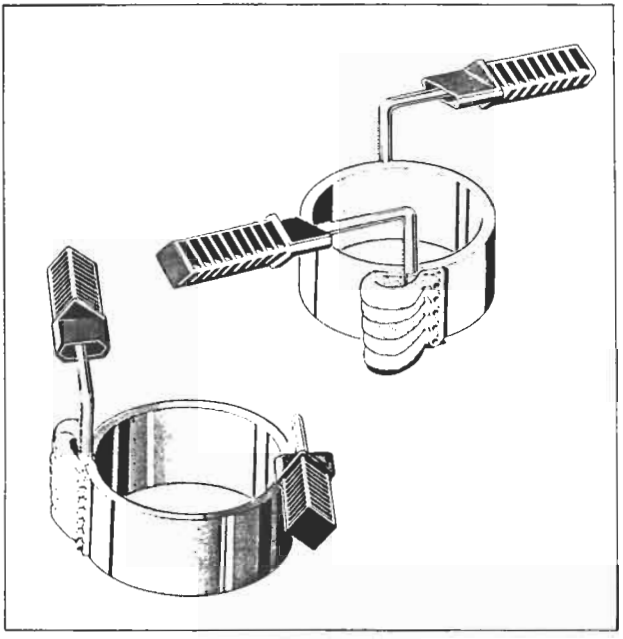


Figure 7-16. Electrically heated "demotherm" device for removal of bearing inner rings from shafts (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D-8045 Ismaning, Federal Republic of Germany).

becomes highly irritating. In like manner, when dirt or grit works into a ball bearing, it can become detrimental and often is the cause of bearing failure.

It is so easy for foreign matter to get into the bearing that more than ordinary care must be exercised to keep the bearing clean. Dirt can be introduced into a bearing simply by exposing it to air in an unwrapped state. Within a short period of time, the bearing can collect enough contaminants to seriously affect its operation. Special care must be taken when the bearing is mounted on a shaft, a time when it is most susceptible to contamination. This cleanliness requirement also extends to the handling of spindle parts, as everything must be clean when replaced in the assembly.

Cleaning the Bearing

During the process of removal from a shaft, the bearing is likely to have become contaminated. The following procedure should be used to

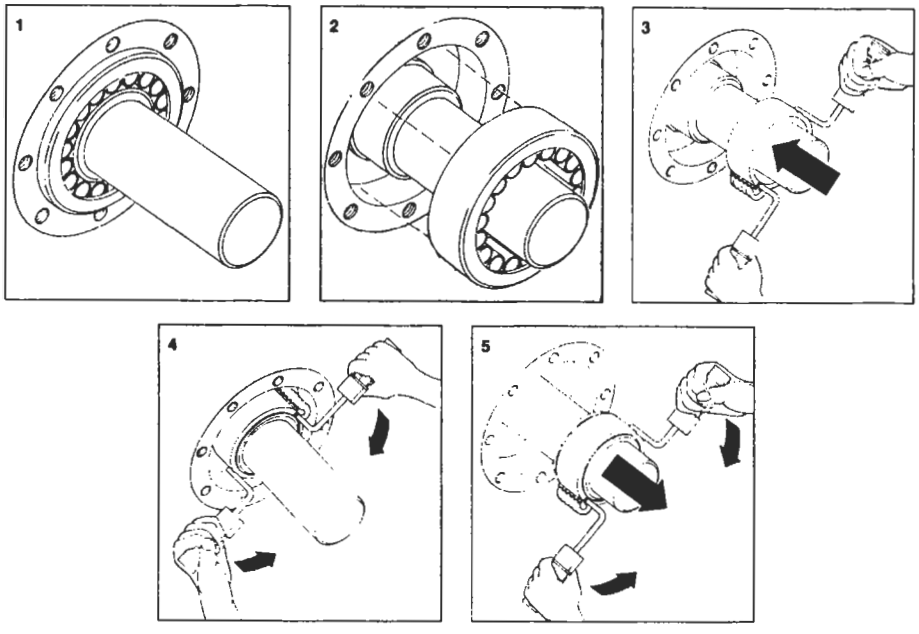


Figure 7-17. An induction-heated pull-off device will effectively remove bearing inner rings from shafts (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D-8045, Federal Republic of Germany).

clean the bearing for inspection purposes as well as to prepare it for possible remounting on the shaft:

1. Dip the bearing in a clean solvent and rotate it slowly under very light pressure as the solvent runs through the bearing (Figure 7-18). Continue washing until all traces of grease and dirt have been removed. *Do not force the bearing during rotation.*
2. Blow the bearing dry with clean, dry air while holding both inner and outer rings to keep the air pressure from spinning them. This avoids possible scratching of balls and raceways if grit still remains in the bearing. A slow controlled hand rotation under light pressure is advisable.
3. After blowing dry, rotate the bearing again slowly and gently to see if dirt can still be detected. Rewash the bearing as many times as necessary to remove all the dirt.
4. When clean, coat the bearing with oil immediately. Special attention should be given to covering the raceways and balls to ensure prevention of corrosion to the highly finished surfaces. Rotate the bearing gently to coat all rolling surfaces with oil.

Figure 7-18. A metal basket strainer is useful when dipping bearings in clean solvent. Rotate bearing slowly with very light pressure in solvent.

After cleaning, the bearing should be wrapped with lint-free material such as plastic film to protect it from exposure to all contaminants. Unless this is done, it may be necessary to repeat the cleaning procedure immediately prior to remounting. As other spindle parts are cleaned, they also should be covered to exclude contamination which could ultimately work into the bearing.

Cleaning the Shaft

The shaft must be cleaned thoroughly with special attention being paid to the bearing seats and fillets. If contaminants or dirt remain, proper seating of the shaft and/or against the shaft shoulder could be impossible. Don't overlook the cleaning of keyways, splines, and grooves.

Cleaning the Housing

Care should be taken to remove all foreign matter from the housing (Figure 7-19). Suitable solvents should be used to remove hardened lu-

bricants. All corrosion should be removed. After cleaning, inspect in a suitable light the bearing seats and corners for possible chips, dirt, and damage, preferably using low power magnification for better results.

The most successful method to maintain absolute cleanliness inside a clean housing is to paint the nonfunctional surfaces with a heat-resisting, quick-drying engine enamel. Do not paint the bearing seats of the housing. This would reduce the housing bore limits, making it difficult, if not impossible, to mount the bearings properly. Painting seals the housing and prevents loose particles such as core sand from contaminating the bearing lubricants and eventually the bearings. It also provides a smooth surface which helps to prevent dirt from clinging to the surfaces. The housing exterior also may be painted to cover areas where old paint is worn or chipped; but do not paint any of the locating mating surfaces. This type of work should be done in a place outside of the spindle assembly area.

Keep Spindle Parts Coated With Oil

As most of the spindle parts are usually of ferrous material, they are subject to corrosion. When exposed to certain atmospheric conditions, even nonferrous parts may become corroded and unusable in the spindle. Therefore, it is important to make certain that parts are not so affected from cleaning time until they are again sealed and protected in the spindle assembly.

Figure 7-19. Clear bearing seats of housing thoroughly to remove all foreign matter. Then inspect bearing seats and corners for possible damage.

The best protection is to keep parts coated with a light-weight oil, covered, and loosely sealed with a plastic film or foil. Such a covering will exclude contaminants such as dust and dirt. When it is necessary to handle parts for inspection, repair, transportation, or any other purpose, precautions must be taken to ensure they are recoated with oil as some may have rubbed off during handling of the part.

Inspect All Spindle Parts

After the spindle parts have been cleaned thoroughly, the various parts should be inspected visually for nicks, burrs, corrosion, and other signs of damage (Figure 7-20). This is especially important for locating surfaces such as bearing seats, shaft shoulders, faces, and corners of spacer rings if any are used in the spindle, etc.

Figure 7-20. After cleaning, inspect spindle parts by visual means and under magnification. It is important that locating surfaces are free of nicks, burrs, corrosion, etc.

Sometimes damage may be spotted by scuff marks or bright spots on the bearing, shaft, or in the housing. This scoring may be caused by heavy press fits or build-up of foreign matter drawn onto the mating surfaces. Bright spots may also indicate early stages of "fidgeting" or scrubbing of mating surfaces. The shaft should also be checked for out-of-round and excessive waviness on both two-point and multiple point gauging or checking on centers.

Shaft and Housing Preparation

Bearing Seats on Shaft

The shaft seat for the inner ring of a ball bearing is quite narrow and subject to unit pressures as high as 4,000 lbs per square in. Because of this pressure, particular attention must be paid to the shaft fit to avoid rapid deterioration of the bearing seats due to creepage under heavy load and/or "fretting."

The required fit of the inner ring on the shaft will vary with the application and service. It is dependent on various factors such as rotation of the shaft with respect to the direction of the radial load, use of lock nuts, light or heavy loads, fast or slow speeds, etc. In general, the inner ring must be tight enough not to turn or creep significantly under load (Figure 7-21).

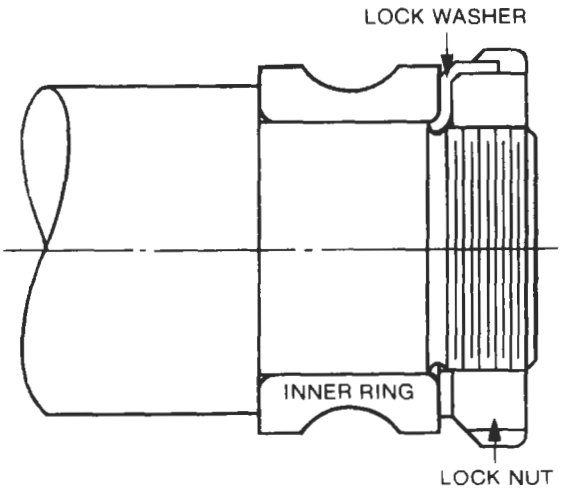


Figure 7-21. To help prevent a heavily loaded bearing from turning on a shaft, a lock nut should be used. The lock nut must be pulled up tight to be effective.

When the bearing has too tight a fit on the shaft, the inner race expands and reduces or eliminates the residual internal clearance between the balls and raceways. Usually bearings, as supplied for the average application, have sufficient radial clearance to compensate for this effect. However, when extremes of shaft fit are inadvertently combined with insufficient radial clearance, extreme overload is caused and may result in heating and premature bearing failure. Tight fits in angular-contact type

bearings used for machine tools may cause changes in preload and contact angle, both of which have an effect upon the operating efficiency of the machine. Finally, rings may be split by too heavy a fit.

Excessive looseness under load is also very objectionable because it allows a fidgeting, creeping, or slipping of the inner ring on the rotating shaft (Figure 7-22). This action causes the surface metal of the shaft and bearing to fret, scrub, or wear off which progressively increases the looseness. It has been noticed that, in service, this working tends to scrub off fine metal particles which oxidize quickly, producing blue-black and brown oxides on the shaft and/or the bore of the bearing. The bearing should be tight enough on the shaft to prevent this action.

If any of these conditions are noticed on a shaft that has been in service, it may be necessary to repair it to correct size and condition. If the shaft is machined for the bearing seat, it is important not to leave machining ridges, even minute ones. The load very soon flattens down the tops of these ridges and leaves a fit that is loose and will rapidly become looser. For best results, bearing seats should be ground to limits recommended for the bearing size and application.

Shaft Shoulders

Correct shoulders are important because abutment against the shoulder squares the bearing. The bearing is actually squared up when it is pushed home against the shaft shoulder and no further adjustment is necessary.

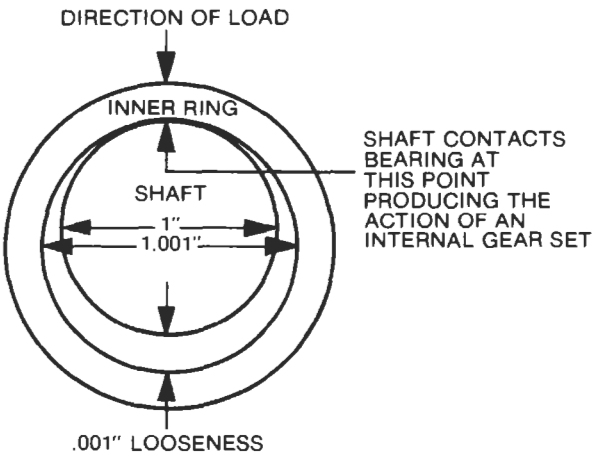


Figure 7-22. Excessive looseness under load allows fidgeting, creeping, or slipping of the inner ring on the rotating shaft.

If a heavy thrust load against the shaft shoulders has occurred during operation, it is possible that the load may have caused the shoulder to burr and push over. Therefore, check the shoulder to make sure that it is still in good condition and square with the bearing seat. If it is not, the condition must be corrected before the spindle assembly operations are begun.

Poor machining practices may result in shaft shoulders that do not permit proper bearing seating.

The shoulder in Figure 7-23A is tapered. This results in poor seating of the bearing against the corner of the inner ring.

The shaft shoulder in Figure 7-23B is so low that the shoulder actually contacts the bearing corner rather than the locating face of the bearing.

With the condition shown in Figure 7-23C, contact between the shoulder and the bearing face is not sufficient. Under heavy thrust loads, the shoulder might break down.

Figure 7-23D is exaggerated to illustrate distortion of the inner ring when forced against off-square shoulder. An off-square bearing shortens bearing life.

Some of these conditions can be corrected when repairs are made on the inner ring seat of the shaft. Such work should be done away from the clean assembly area to avoid possible contamination of the bearing and spindle parts by metal chips or particles from the machining or grinding operations.

The shaft shoulder should not be too high as this would obstruct easy removal of the bearing from the shaft. As described previously, a pulling tool must be placed behind the inner ring and a surface must be left for the tool. Preferably, the inner ring should project somewhat beyond the shaft shoulder to permit pulling the bearing off against this surface. This may not be possible in the case of shielded or sealed bearings where the bearing face is small.

Shaft Fillets and Undercuts

During shaft repair work, it is important to pay attention to the fillet. When it is ground, the fillet frequently becomes larger as the wheel wears, causing an oversize fillet. This in turn locates the bearing on the corner radius instead of the shaft shoulder. In other cases, the corner fillet is not properly blended with the bearing seat or shaft shoulder. This too may produce incorrect axial location of the bearing.

The bearing corner radius originally may be a true 90° segment in the turning, but when the bores, OD's, and faces are ground off, it becomes a portion of a circle less than 90° while the shaft fillet may be a true radius (Figure 7-24A).

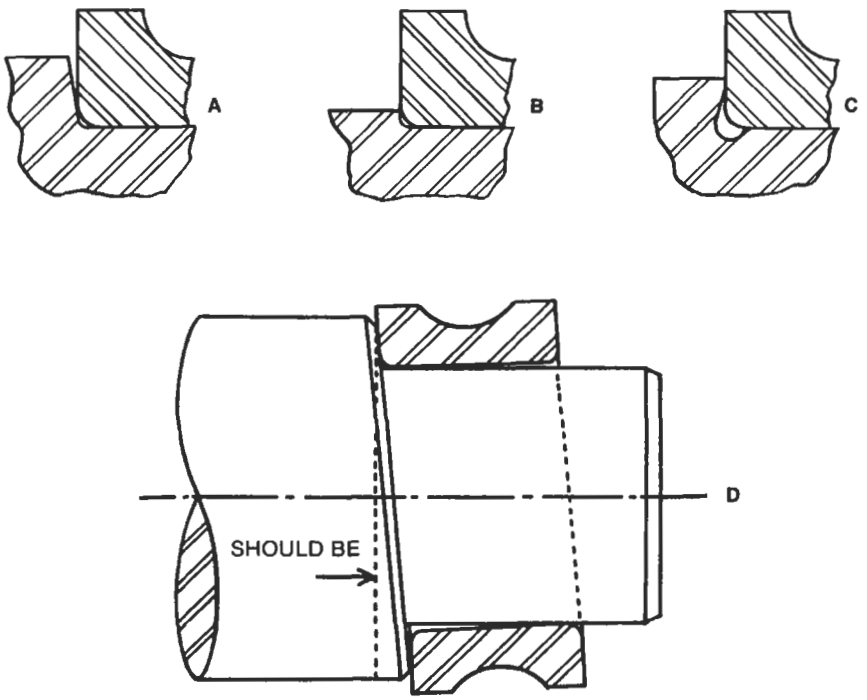


Figure 7-23. Poor seating of the bearing against the corner of the inner ring will result if the shoulder is tapered (A). In (B) the shaft shoulder is so low that it contacts the bearing corner. The condition shown in (C) illustrates that contact between the shoulder and the bearing face is not sufficient. An exaggerated distortion of the inner ring when forced against off-square shoulder is shown in (D).

Shaft fillet radius specifications are shown in bearing dimension tables with the heading "Radius in Inches" or "Corner Radius." This dimension is not the actual corner radius of the bearing but is the maximum shaft fillet radius which the bearing will clear when mounted. The radius should not exceed this dimension.

The actual bearing corner is controlled so that the above mentioned maximum shaft fillet will always yield a slight clearance. Figure 7-24B illustrates the conventional fillet construction at the shaft shoulder.

Where the shaft has adequate strength, an undercut or relief may be preferred to a fillet. Various types are shown in Figure 7-24 C, D, and E. Where both shaft shoulder and bearing seat are ground, the angled type of undercut is preferred.

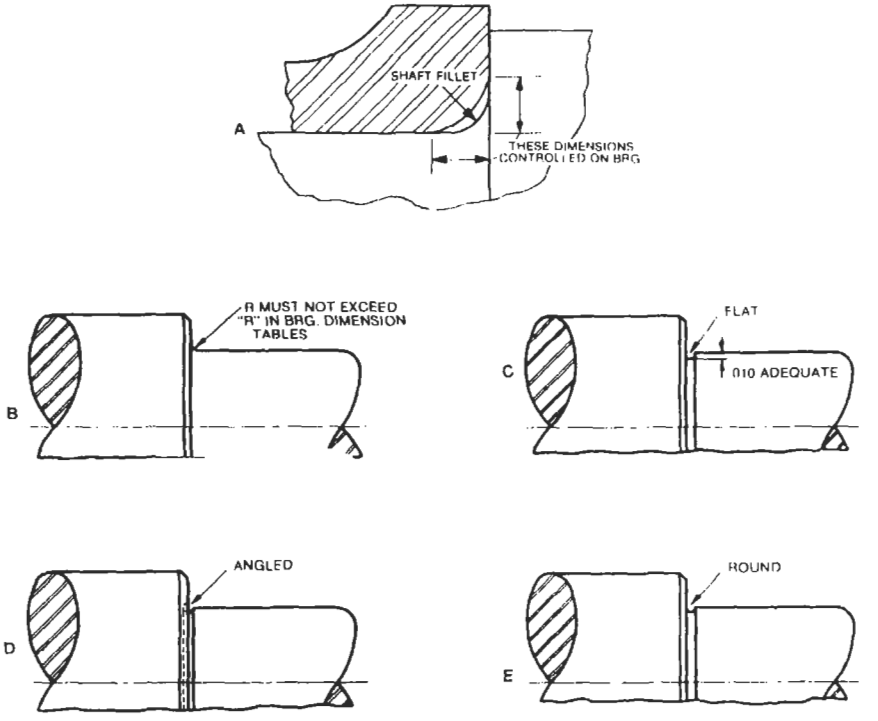


Figure 7-24. When the bores, ODs, and faces are ground off, the bearing corner radius becomes less than 90° as shown in (A). The conventional fillet construction at the shaft shoulder is shown in (B). Various types of relief are shown in (C), (D), and (E).

Break Corners to Prevent Burrs

When the shaft shoulder or bearing seat is repaired by regrinding, it is desirable to break the corner on the shaft. This will help prevent burrs and nicks which may interfere with the proper seating of the inner ring face against the shaft shoulder (Figure 7-25). If left sharp, shoulder corners are easily nicked, producing raised portions which, in turn, may create an off-square condition in bearing location.

The usual procedure to break a corner is to use a file or an abrasive stone. This should be done while the shaft is still in grind position on the machine after regrinding the bearing seat and shoulders. The corner at the end of the bearing seat also should be broken, thus providing a lead to facilitate starting the bearing on the shaft.

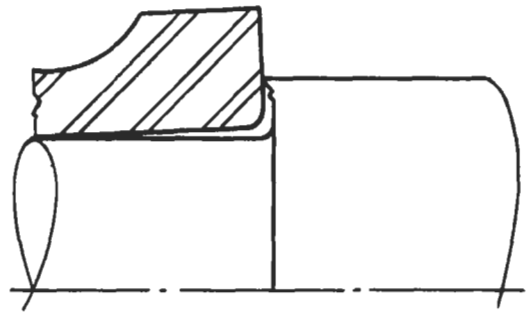


Figure 7-25. Burrs and nicks may interfere with proper seating of the inner ring face against the shaft shoulder.

If nicks or burrs are found during an inspection and no other work is necessary on the shaft, they can be removed by careful use of a file or stone (Figure 7-26). This work should be done elsewhere than in the clean assembly area. Any abrasive material should be removed from the part before returning it to the assembly area.

Check Spindle Housing Surfaces

In many cases, housings will require as much preparatory attention as the shaft and other parts of the spindle. Check the surfaces which mate with the machine mount. Frequently burrs and nicks will be evident and they must be removed before remounting the bearings. Failure to do so may cause a distortion in the bearing, resulting in poor operation and reduced life. These precautions apply to both bearing seats and shoulders.

Shaft and Housing Shoulder Diameters

Recommended shaft and housing shoulders (Figure 7-27) for various sizes of bearings are shown in Table 7-4.

Checking Shaft and Housing Measurements

After all repair work on the shaft has been completed, shafts should be given a final check to make sure the repairs are accurate and within the recommended tolerances. This work may be done with suitable gauging equipment such as an air gauge, ten-thousandths dial indicator, electronic

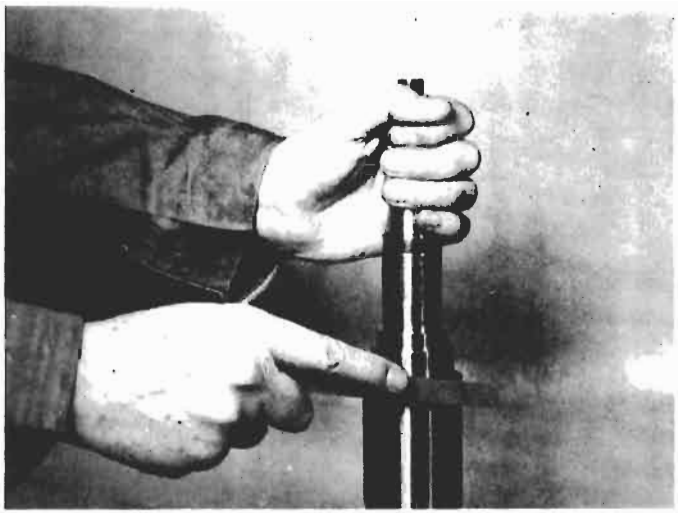


Figure 7-26. A file or stone may be used to remove nicks and burrs.

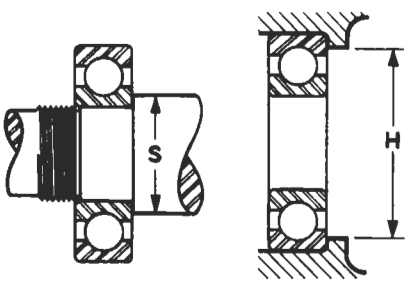


Figure 7-27. Shaft and housing shoulders.

comparator, an accurate micrometer, and other instruments as necessary. Accuracies of readings depend on the quality of equipment used, its precision, amplification; and the ability and care exercised by the operator.

It is usually advisable to use a good set of centers which will hold the shaft and permit accurate rotation. The center points should be examined to make sure they are not scored and should be kept lubricated at all times to prevent possible corrosion. Center holes of the shaft must also be of sufficient size, clean and smooth, and free from nicks. Be sure to remove

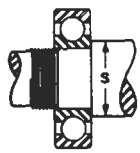
(Text continued on page 384)

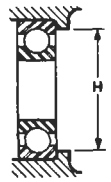
Table 7-4
Shaft and Housing Shoulder Diameters

Shaft and Housing Shoulder Diameters

Shoulder Diameters for Millimeter and Inch-Size MRC brand Bearings

The tables on these pages show Minimum Shaft Shoulder Diameters and Maximum Housing Shoulder Diameters as established by the TRW Bearings Division Product Engineering Department. However, the user may wish to modify these diameters to meet specific requirements such as assembly or disassembly problems or extremely heavy thrust loads.





Basic Brg. No.	S		H		Basic Brg. No.	S		H		Basic Brg. No.	S		H	
	Inch	MM	Inch	MM		Inch	MM	Inch	MM		Inch	MM	Inch	MM
34	.22	5.51	.56	14.2	138-K	7.95	202.0	10.95	276.0	232	6.85	174.0	10.87	276.0
35	.26	6.61	.67	17.0	140-K	8.35	212.0	11.73	296.0	234	7.40	188.0	11.50	292.0
36	.30	7.81	.67	17.0	144-K	9.21	234.0	12.84	326.0	236	7.80	198.0	11.89	302.0
37	.34	8.61	.79	20.0	148-K	10.00	254.0	13.62	346.0	238	8.19	208.0	12.68	322.0
38	.38	9.71	.79	20.0	152-K	10.95	278.0	15.04	382.0	240	8.58	216.0	13.47	342.0
39	.45	11.4	.92	23.4	156-K	11.73	298.0	15.83	402.0	242	9.13	232.0	14.13	359.0
100-K	.47	11.9	.95	24.1	160-K	12.52	318.0	17.40	442.0	244	9.37	238.0	15.04	382.0
101-K	.55	14.0	1.02	25.9	164-K	13.31	338.0	18.19	462.0	246	10.00	254.0	15.63	397.0
102-K	.67	17.0	1.18	30.0						248	10.16	258.0	16.61	422.0
103-K	.75	19.1	1.30	33.0	200	.50	12.7	.98	24.9	250	10.92	277.0	17.07	434.0
104-K	.89	22.6	1.46	37.1	201	.58	14.7	1.06	26.9	252	11.10	282.0	18.03	458.0
105-K	1.06	27.4	1.65	41.9	202	.69	17.5	1.18	30.0	256	11.89	302.0	18.82	478.0
106-K	1.34	34.0	1.93	49.0	203	.77	19.6	1.34	34.0	260	12.68	322.0	20.39	518.0
107-K	1.53	38.9	2.21	56.1	204	.94	23.9	1.81	40.9	264	13.47	342.0	21.97	558.0
108-K	1.73	43.9	2.44	62.0	205	1.14	29.0	1.81	46.0					
109-K	1.94	49.3	2.72	69.0	206	1.34	34.0	2.21	56.1	300	.50	12.7	1.18	30.0
110-K	2.13	54.1	2.91	73.9	207	1.53	38.9	2.56	65.0	301	.63	16.0	1.22	31.0
111-K	2.33	59.2	3.27	83.1	208	1.73	43.9	2.87	72.9	302	.75	19.1	1.42	36.1
112-K	2.53	64.3	3.47	88.1	209	1.94	49.3	3.07	78.0	303	.83	21.1	1.61	40.9
113-K	2.72	69.1	3.66	92.9	210	2.13	54.1	3.27	83.1	304	.94	23.9	1.77	45.0
114-K	2.91	73.9	4.06	103.0	211	2.41	61.2	3.68	93.5	305	1.14	29.0	2.17	55.1
115-K	3.11	79.0	4.25	108.0	212	2.67	67.8	3.98	101.0	306	1.34	34.0	2.56	65.0
116-K	3.31	84.1	4.65	118.0	213	2.86	72.6	4.37	111.0	307	1.69	42.9	2.80	71.1
117-K	3.50	88.9	4.84	123.0	214	3.06	77.7	4.57	118.0	308	1.93	49.0	3.19	81.0
118-K	3.84	97.5	5.16	131.0	215	3.25	82.6	4.76	121.0	309	2.13	54.1	3.58	90.9
119-K	4.06	102.0	5.35	136.0	216	3.55	90.2	5.12	130.0	310	2.36	59.9	3.94	100.0
120-K	4.23	107.0	5.55	141.0	217	3.75	95.3	5.51	140.0	311	2.56	65.0	4.33	110.0
121-K	4.53	115.0	5.91	150.0	218	3.94	100.0	5.91	150.0	312	2.84	72.1	4.65	118.0
122-K	4.72	120.0	6.30	160.0	219	4.21	107.0	6.22	158.0	313	3.03	77.0	5.04	128.0
124-K	5.12	130.0	6.69	170.0	220	4.41	112.0	6.61	168.0	314	3.23	82.0	5.43	138.0
126-K	5.51	140.0	7.48	190.0	221	4.61	117.0	7.01	178.0	315	3.43	87.1	5.83	148.0
128-K	5.91	150.0	7.87	200.0	222	4.80	122.0	7.40	188.0	316	3.62	91.9	6.22	158.0
130-K	6.38	162.0	8.39	213.0	224	5.20	132.0	7.99	203.0	317	3.90	99.1	6.54	166.0
132-K	6.77	172.0	8.98	228.0	226	5.67	144.0	8.50	216.0	318	4.09	104.0	6.93	176.0
134-K	7.17	182.0	9.76	248.0	228	6.06	154.0	9.29	236.0	319	4.29	109.0	7.32	186.0
136-K	7.56	192.0	10.55	268.0	230	6.46	164.0	10.08	256.0	320	4.49	114.0	7.91	201.0

Table 7-4. Continued.

Shaft and Housing Shoulder Diameters

Basic Brg. No.	S Inch	S MM	H Inch	H MM
321	4.69	119.0	8.31	211.0
322	4.88	124.0	8.90	226.0
324	5.28	134.0	9.69	246.0
326	5.83	148.0	10.32	262.0
328	6.22	158.0	11.10	282.0
330	6.81	168.0	11.89	302.0
332	7.01	178.0	12.68	322.0
334	7.40	188.0	13.47	342.0
336	7.80	198.0	14.25	362.0
338	8.35	212.0	14.88	378.0
340	8.74	222.0	15.67	398.0
342	9.43	240.0	16.21	412.0
344	9.53	242.0	17.24	438.0
348	10.32	262.0	18.82	478.0
352	11.34	288.0	20.16	512.0
356	12.13	308.0	21.73	552.0
403	.95	24.1	2.17	55.1
404	1.06	26.9	2.56	65.0
405	1.34	34.0	2.80	71.1
406	1.54	39.1	3.19	81.0
407	1.73	43.9	3.58	91.0
408	1.97	50.0	3.94	100.0
409	2.17	55.1	4.33	110.0
410	2.44	61.9	4.65	118.0
411	2.64	67.0	5.04	128.0
412	2.84	72.1	5.43	138.0
413	3.03	76.9	5.83	148.0
414	3.31	84.0	6.54	166.0
415	3.50	88.9	6.93	176.0
416	3.70	93.9	7.32	186.0
417	4.06	103.0	7.56	192.0
418	4.25	108.0	8.15	207.0
419	4.30	109.0	9.10	231.0
420	4.75	120.0	9.64	245.0
421	5.10	129.0	10.52	267.0
422	5.42	137.0	11.57	294.0
1900	.44	11.2	.82	20.8
1901	.52	13.2	.90	22.9
1902	.64	16.3	1.06	26.9
1903	.71	18.0	1.14	29.0
1904	.85	21.6	1.39	35.3
1905	1.05	26.7	1.57	39.9
1906	1.25	31.8	1.79	45.5
1907	1.46	37.1	2.08	52.8
1908	1.68	42.7	2.34	59.4
1909	1.88	47.8	2.57	65.3
1910	2.06	52.3	2.74	69.6
1911	2.29	58.2	3.02	76.7
1912	2.49	63.2	3.22	81.8
1913	2.68	68.1	3.42	86.9
1914	2.91	73.9	3.78	96.0
1915	3.09	78.5	3.99	101.0
1916	3.30	83.8	4.18	106.0
1917	3.52	89.4	4.56	116.0
1918	3.71	94.2	4.75	121.0
1919	3.93	99.8	4.93	125.0
1920	4.13	105.0	5.33	135.0
1921	4.33	110.0	5.51	140.0
1922	4.52	115.0	5.70	145.0
1924	4.93	125.0	6.28	160.0
1926	5.36	136.0	6.85	174.0
1928	5.76	146.0	7.24	184.0
1930	6.21	158.0	7.97	202.0
1932	6.62	168.0	8.33	212.0
1934	7.01	178.0	8.74	222.0
1936	7.44	169.0	9.50	241.0
1936	7.83	199.0	9.89	251.0
1940	8.27	210.0	10.61	269.0
R-2 Series				
R-2	.179	...	.325	...
R-2-A	.179	...	.466	...
R-3	.244	...	.466	...
R-4	.310	...	.565	...
R-4-A-4	.322	...	.678	...
R-6	.451	...	.799	...
R-8	.625	...	1.025	...
R-10	.750	...	1.250	...
R-12	.875	...	1.500	...
R-14	1.000	...	1.750	...
R-16	1.125	...	1.875	...
R-18	1.250	...	2.000	...
R-20	1.375	...	2.125	...
R-22	1.500	...	2.375	...
R-24	1.625	...	2.500	...
XLS Series				
XLS-1⅜	1 $^{9}/_{16}$	...	2 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-1½	1 $^{11}/_{16}$	...	2 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-1¾	1 $^{13}/_{16}$	...	2 $^{13}/_{16}$	...
XLS-1⅞	1 $^{15}/_{16}$	...	2 $^{15}/_{16}$	...
XLS-2	2 $^{1}/_{16}$	...	3	...
XLS-2⅛	2 $^{3}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-2¼	2 $^{5}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{5}/_{16}$	...
XLS-2⅜	2 $^{7}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-2½	2 $^{9}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{9}/_{16}$	...
XLS-2⅝	2 $^{11}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{11}/_{16}$	...
XLS-2¾	2 $^{13}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{13}/_{16}$	...
XLS-2⅞	2 $^{15}/_{16}$	...	3 $^{15}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3	3 $^{1}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{1}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3⅛	3 $^{3}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{3}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3¼	3 $^{5}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{5}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3⅜	3 $^{7}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{7}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3½	3 $^{9}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{9}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3⅝	3 $^{11}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{11}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3¾	3 $^{13}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{13}/_{16}$	...
XLS-3⅞	3 $^{15}/_{16}$	...	4 $^{15}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4	4 $^{1}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{1}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4⅛	4 $^{3}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{3}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4¼	4 $^{5}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{5}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4⅜	4 $^{7}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{7}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4½	4 $^{9}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{9}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4⅝	4 $^{11}/_{16}$	...	5 $^{11}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4¾	5 $^{1}/_{16}$	...	6 $^{1}/_{16}$	...
XLS-4⅞	5 $^{3}/_{16}$	...	6 $^{3}/_{16}$	...
XLS-5	5 $^{5}/_{16}$	...	6 $^{5}/_{16}$	...
XLS-5⅛	5 $^{1}/_{2}$	...	6 $^{7}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5¼	5 $^{5}/_{8}$	...	8 $^{7}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5⅜	5 $^{3}/_{4}$	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5½	5 $^{7}/_{8}$	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5⅝	6	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5¾	6 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-5⅞	6 $^{1}/_{4}$	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-6	6 $^{3}/_{8}$	...	7 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-6¼	6 $^{5}/_{8}$	...	8 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-6⅜	6 $^{7}/_{8}$	...	8 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-6¾	7 $^{1}/_{4}$	...	8 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-7	7 $^{1}/_{2}$	...	9	...
XLS-7¼	7 $^{3}/_{4}$	...	9 $^{1}/_{4}$	...
XLS-7½	8	...	9 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-7¾	8 $^{1}/_{4}$	...	10	...
XLS-8	8 $^{1}/_{2}$	...	10 $^{1}/_{4}$	...
XLS-8¼	8 $^{3}/_{4}$	...	10 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-8½	9	...	11	...
XLS-8¾	9 $^{1}/_{4}$	...	11 $^{1}/_{4}$	...
XLS-9	9 $^{1}/_{2}$	...	11 $^{1}/_{2}$	...
XLS-9½	10 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	12 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-10	10 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	12 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-10½	11 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	13 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-11	11 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	13 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-11½	12 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	14 $^{1}/_{8}$	...
XLS-12	12 $^{1}/_{8}$	...	15 $^{1}/_{8}$	...

(Text continued from page 381)

particles of foreign matter that could change the centering of the shaft on the points.

V-blocks will also be helpful to hold the shaft while making various checks. It is important that the V-blocks are clean on the area where the shaft contacts the blocks. Foreign matter and nicks will change the position of the shaft in the blocks and affect any measurements taken.

Check Bearing Seat for Out-of-Round

A simple check may be made with a hand gauge on the bearing seat (Figure 7-28). This will provide a reading at two points on the shaft 180° apart. However, it does not indicate how those points are related to other points on the shaft.

For a more accurate reading on out-of-round (radial runout) of a bearing seat, mount the shaft between centers and place a suitable indicator in a position perpendicular to the axis of the shaft and contacing the bearing seat. On rotating the shaft slowly by hand, a check is obtained on all points of the shaft which the indicator contacts (Figure 7-29).

Another method of measuring out-of-round is the three-point method using a set of V-blocks and a dial type indicator (Figure 7-30). The shaft should lay in the V-blocks and be rotated slowly while the indicator is centrally located between the points of shaft contact with the V-blocks and perpendicular to these lines of contact. This method will reveal out-

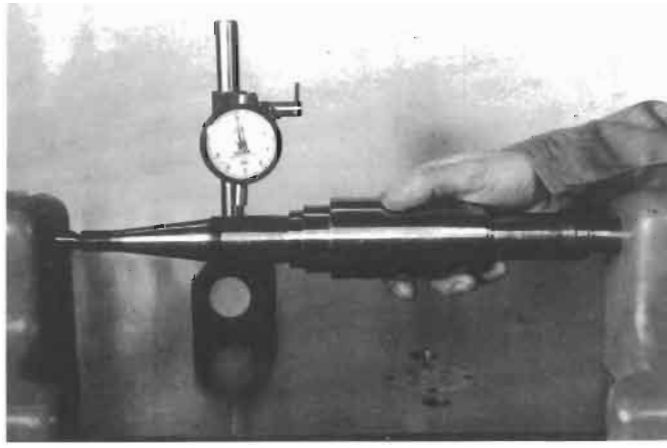


Figure 7-28. A hand gauge may be used to check the bearing seat for out-of-round.

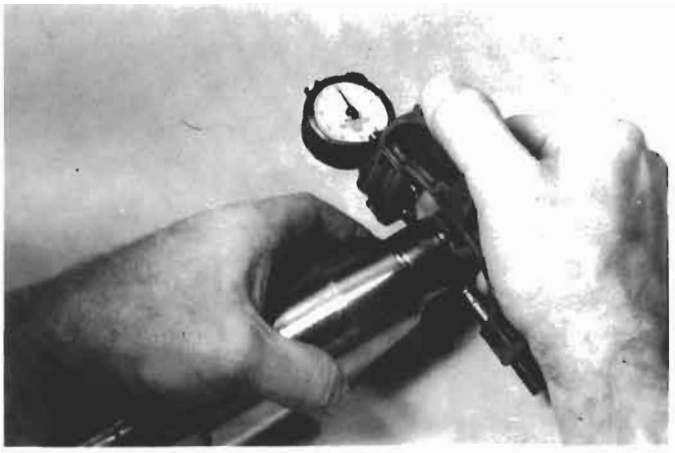


Figure 7-29. By rotating the shaft by hand, a check is obtained on all points the indicator contacts.

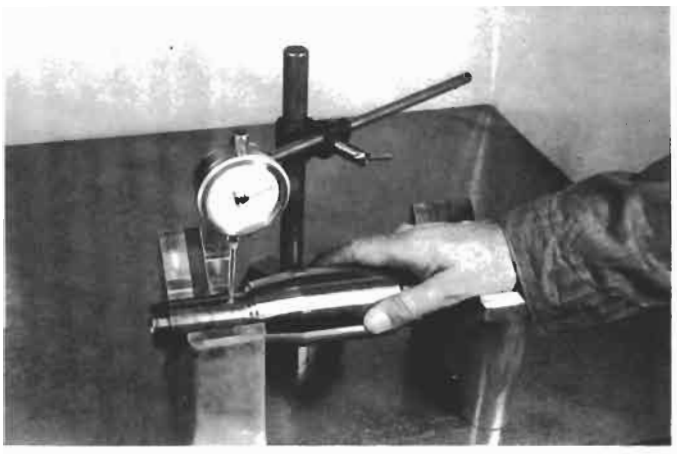


Figure 7-30. The three-point method.

of-round which would not have been found by the two-point method of gauging. Therefore, if the equipment is available, it is desirable to check bearing seats using centers or V-blocks as well as two-point gauging.

In all of these checks, the gauge should be placed in different locations on the bearing seat. This will give assurance that the seat is within the recommended tolerances in all areas. While the spindle is mounted on centers, the high point of eccentricity of the bearing seat should be lo-

cated. Using a dial type indicator, find the point and mark it with a crayon so that it can be easily located when the bearing is to be remounted. The high point of eccentricity is covered in more detail later.

Check Shoulders for Off-Square (Figure 7-31)

The shaft shoulder runout should be checkd with an indicator contacting the bearing locating surface on the shaft shoulder while the shaft is still supported on centers (or V-blocks) with the center of the shaft against a stop. Tolerances have been established for this. If the runout is outside these tolerances, the inner ring of the bearing will be misaligned causing vibrations when the spindle is in operation (Figure 7-32).

Check Housing Bore Dimensions

The housing bore dimensions and shoulder should be checked to make sure that they are within the recommended tolerancc for size, out-of-round, taper, and off-square. The gauge commonly used for this purpose is an indicator type (Figure 7-33).

Recheck Dimensions if Necessary

It is important to be absolutely sure that all dimensions are correct before any assembly is begun. If there is any question, a rccheck should be made. If variations are noted, the shaft should be repaired to obtain the correct measurements and then rechecked for accuracy and compliance with the recommended tolerances.

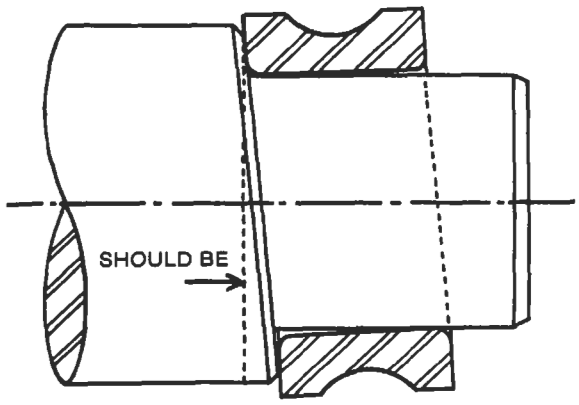


Figure 7-31. Checking shoulders for off-square.

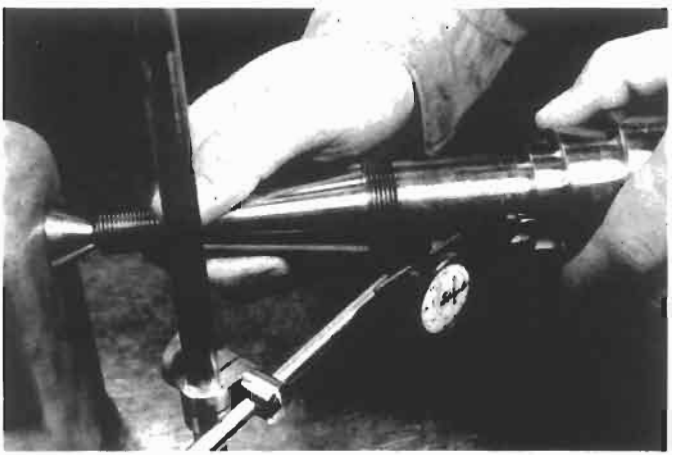


Figure 7-32. If runout is outside established tolerances, the inner ring of the bearing will be misaligned.

Figure 7-33. Indicator-type gauge commonly used to check housing bore dimensions.

Duplex Bearings

Many methods are used to mount bearings because of various machine tool spindle designs. The simplest spindles incorporate two bearings, one at each end of the shaft. Others are more complicated using additional bearings mounted in specific combinations to provide greater thrust ca-

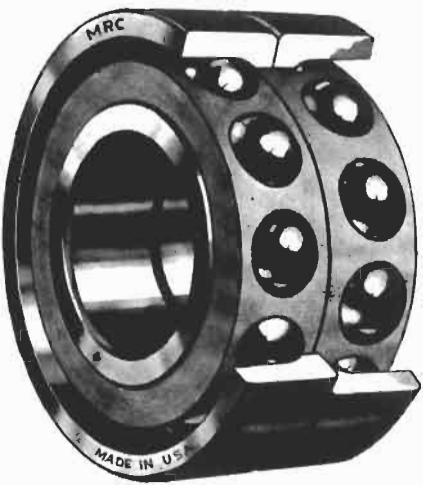


Figure 7-34. Duplex bearings set in back-to-back relationship.

pacity and shaft rigidity. As duplex bearings are usually used in these instances, mounting arrangements for duplex bearings should be understood before actual spindle assembly is begun.

Duplex bearings are produced by specially grinding the faces of single-row bearings with a controlled relationship between the axial location of the inner and outer ring faces. A cross section of a duplex bearing set in back-to-back relationship is shown in Figure 7-34. Note that it consists of two identical bearings placed side by side. The two units of the pair are clamped tightly together on the shaft with adjacent backs (or faces if DF type) of the inner and outer in actual contact.

Certain definite characteristics and advantages are derived from this mounting which make duplex bearings particularly applicable to several kinds of difficult service and loading conditions. They are recommended for carrying pure radial or thrust loads, or combined radial and thrust loads. Through their use, it is possible to minimize axial and radial deflections thereby, for example, increasing the accuracy of machine tool spindles.

Before explaining the basic mounting methods, it is necessary to understand the difference between the face and back of a bearing as well as to know what a contact angle is.

Referring to the bearing drawing in Figure 7-35, note that the counterbored low shoulder side of the bearing is called the "face" side. The deep shoulder side (also called high side), stamped with the bearing number and other data, is designated as the "back" side.

As defined by AFBMA standards, a contact angle is the nominal angle between the line of action of the ball load and a plane perpendicular to the bearing axis (Figure 7-36). Essentially, this means that when a load is applied to a bearing, it forces the balls to contact the inner and outer raceway at other than a right angle (such as in a Type S bearing).

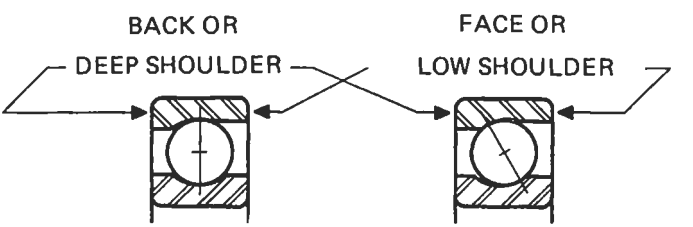


Figure 7-35. The counterbored low shoulder side of the bearing is called the "face" side. The deep shoulder or "high" side, stamped with bearing number, is designated as the "back" side.

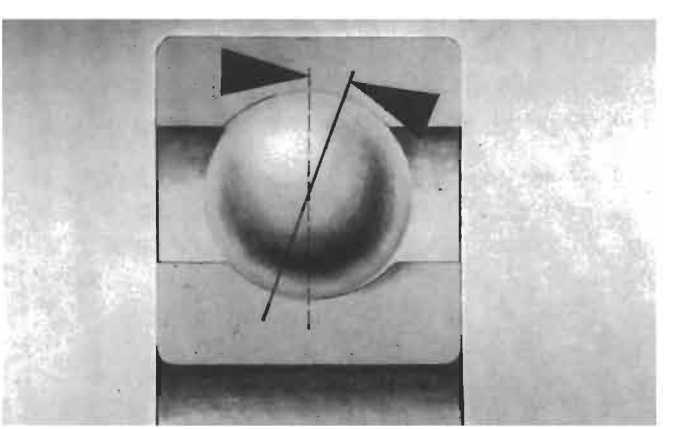


Figure 7-36. A contact angle is the nominal angle between the line of action of the ball load and a plane perpendicular to the bearing axis.

Basic Mounting Methods

Duplex bearings can be mounted in three different ways to suit different loading conditions. The three positions bear the symbols, "DB," "DF," and "DT."

DB—Back-to-Back bearings are placed so that the stamped backs (high shoulders) of the outer rings are together. In this position, the contact angle lines diverge inwardly (Figure 7-37).

DF—Face-to-Face bearings are placed so that the unstamped face (low shoulders) of the outer rings are together. Contact angle lines of the bearing will then converge inwardly, toward the bearing axis (Figure 7-38).

DT—Tandem bearings are placed so that the stamped back of one bearing is in contact with the unstamped face of the other bearing. In this case, the contact angle lines of the bearings are parallel. (Figure 7-39).

Sometimes when duplex bearings are used in a number of arrangements, it is desirable to eliminate the need to stock duplex bearings ground specifically for DB, DF, or DT applications. Two types of single bearings, also called a 1/2 pair, can be used in such circumstances.

DS—Bearings are ground with special control of faces to provide either specific preloading or end play. Preloads can be light, medium, heavy, or special while end plays are always special. Normally MRC brand "DS" replacement duplex bearings will be supplied ground with predetermined light preload for universal mounting. It is important not to mix DS bearings with other types. Be sure that bearings which are used together have identical markings on their individual boxes.

DU—Bearings are free-running and have no end play. The inner and outer rings are ground flush and may be matched in DB, DF, or DT mountings, thus permitting complete interchangeability with like bearings. As with DS bearings, they should be paired only with bearings which have identical box markings.

Packaging

All MRC brand DB, DF, and DT duplex bearings are banded in pairs in the manner in which they are to be mounted on the shaft. The duplex set is then packaged and the box stamped with the appropriate symbol.

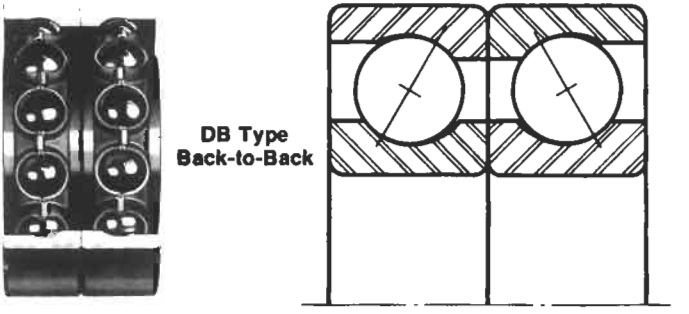


Figure 7-37. Back-to-back bearings are placed so the high shoulder of the outer rings are together.

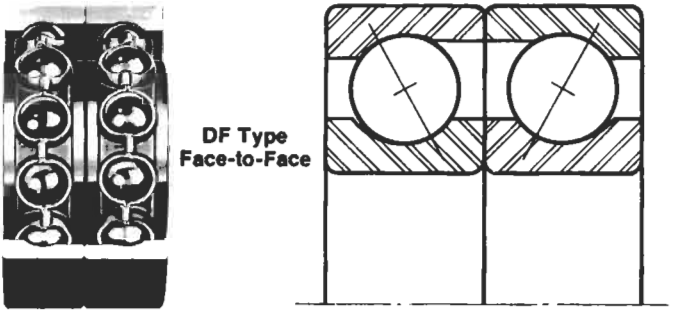


Figure 7-38. Face-to-face bearings are placed so the low shoulder of the outer rings are together.

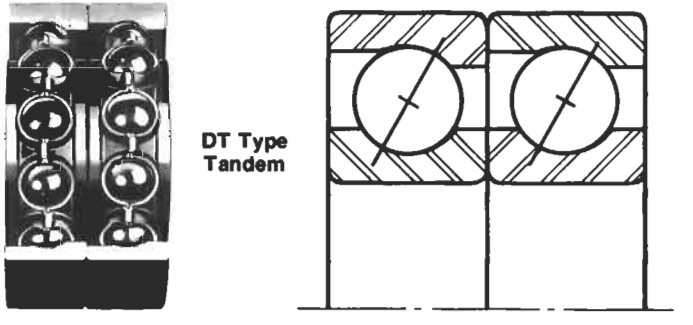


Figure 7-39. Tandem bearings are placed so that the stamped back of one bearing is in contact with the unstamped face of the other bearing.

Universally ground DS and DU bearings may be packaged separately or two to a box (Figure 7-40). Bearing number, tolerance grade, cage type and preload are shown on each box. It is this information that must be used when pairing MRC brand DS and DU bearings for mounting.

Spacers Separating Duplex Bearings

Equal length spacers mounted between the two inner and outer rings of a duplex pair of bearings are intended to provide greater rigidity to the assembly and incidentally may increase the rigidity of the shaft.

The relative rigidity of DB and DF mountings compared to the DB pair with a spacer is indicated by the heavy black bar (moment arm) between the extended lines of the bearing contact angles (Figure 7-41). Within reasonable limits, the longer the moment arm, the greater resistance to misalignment. In the DF arrangement, space between the converging contact angles is short and shaft rigidity is relatively low. However, this mounting permits a greater degree of shaft misalignment. As the angles are spread by the DB mounting to cover a greater space on the shaft, rigidity is correspondingly increased. With spacers between the DB pair, greatest resistance of misalignment is obtained. Figures 7-42 and 7-43

Figure 7-40. Universally ground DS and DU bearings may be packaged separately or two to a box.

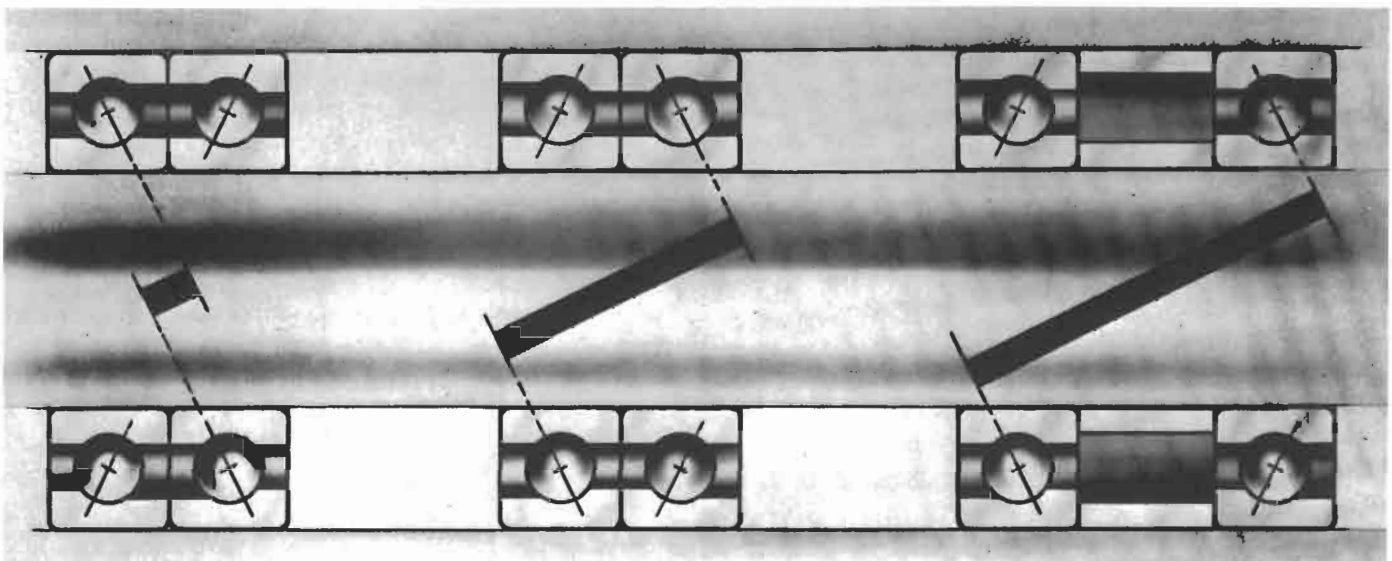


Figure 7-41. The heavy black bar indicates the relative rigidity of DB and DF mountings compared to the DB pair with a spacer.

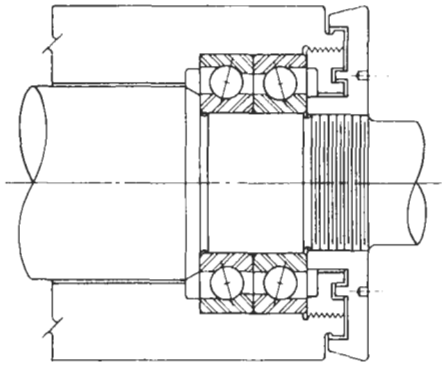


Figure 7-42. Duplex pair mounted in back-to-back (DB) arrangement without spacers.

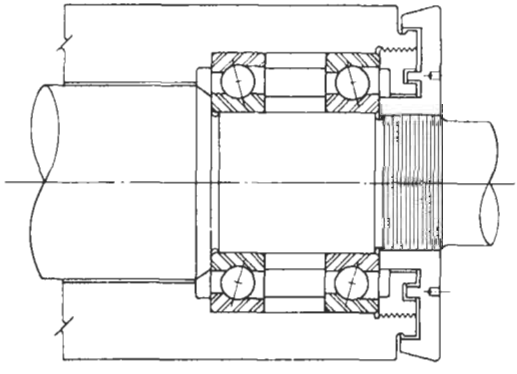


Figure 7-43. Duplex tandem pair separated by equal length spacers between inner and outer rings.

show typical examples of mounting bearings for high speed operation using a pair of DB type bearings and a pair of DT type bearings with spacers.

Faces of these spacers must be square with the bores and OD's of their respective locating surfaces. During removal of bearings from the shaft, spacers and bearings must be identified as to radial position so that they may be remounted in exactly the same relationship as removed. Changing position of any of the elements is likely to change the balance of the assembled spindle.

If it is necessary to replace the spacers for any reason, the new ones must be exactly the same length as the original pair. Faces must be paral-

lel and square with the bore of OD depending on whether it is the inner or outer spacer. In addition, the bore and outside diameter of the inner and outer spacers, respectively, should have dimensions and tolerances nearly the same as the bearings they separate. The spacers will then be properly centered on the shaft and in the housing, preventing an unbalance of the assembled spindle.

Hints on Mounting Duplex Bearings

If duplex bearings are mounted in any combination other than the one for which they were originally ground, the following conditions may occur:

1. Preload bearings may lose their preload or be greatly overloaded, respectively causing poor performance and premature failure.
2. If mounted DB instead of DF, the bearing will not take care of possible misalignment.
3. If mounted DF instead of DB, the bearing will not give the proper rigidity to the shaft.
4. If mounted DF with the outer rings floating instead of DB, the bearing may be loose and have no preload. In addition, the balls might run over the low shoulder, causing extreme localized loading and premature failure.
5. If mounted DT in the wrong direction, the bearings may support excessive thrust load against the counterbore or the low shoulder of the outer ring.

Do Not Use Two Single-Row Bearings as Duplex Bearings Unless Properly Ground or Shimmed

Two ordinary angular-contact or radial single-row bearings generally cannot be combined to make a duplex pair. Duplex bearings are usually produced with extreme accuracy, and the twin units are made as identical as possible. Pairing of unmatched single-row bearings will result in any one of a variety of conditions: excessive or inadequate preload, too much end play, internal looseness, etc. In any case, spindle operation will be affected and early bearing failure could occur. However, it is permissible to separate a duplex bearing into two halves (each a single-row bearing) and use them as separate bearing supports.

Fit on Shaft

Duplex bearings generally have a looser fit on the shaft than other standard types of bearings. "Push" fits, (finger pressure fits) are generally employed. This helps prevent a change of internal characteristics and facilitates removal and remounting of the bearings. Where heavier fits are employed, special provisions must be made internally in the bearing.

Faces of Outer Rings Square With Housing Bore

It is very important that, in the back-to-back (DB) position, the faces of the outer rings be perfectly square with the housing bore. It is possible that the units of a duplex bearing can be tilted even though preloaded, thus introducing serious inaccuracies into the assembly. The primary cause of tilting is an inadequate and/or off-square shoulder contacting the low shoulder face. This forces the outer ring to assume an incorrect position in respect to the inner ring resulting in excessive bearing misalignment. Localized overloading is caused and generally results in early failure. Foreign matter between the bearings or between the shaft and housing shoulders and faces, inaccurate threads and off-square face of nut with respect to threads also are contributing causes of misalignment that may result in premature failure.

Dismounting and Remounting of Duplex Bearings

Duplex bearings must be kept in pairs as removed from the spindle. Tag the bearings to indicate which end of the shaft and in which position they were so that they can be replaced in the same position when reassembling.

When new bearings are to replace old ones, they should be the exact equivalent of those removed from the shaft and must be mounted in the same relationship. Even if only one old bearing in a set requires replacement, it is recommended that all bearings be replaced at the same time. This will avoid the dangers involved when trying to match two bearings, one of which has unknown characteristics and unknown life expectancy.

Preloading of Duplex Bearings

Bearings are made with varying degrees of internal looseness. This allows for expansion of the inner ring and increases the capacity of a bearing when it is subjected to a thrust load. An excessive amount of interference between the inner ring bore and the shaft seat or a higher-

than-anticipated temperature differential between the inner and outer rings of the bearing will reduce internal clearance in the bearing below the optimum value, creating a detrimental effect on bearing life and performance.

In a bearing subjected to a load with a very small or no thrust component, an excessive amount of internal clearance may result in poor shaft stability and high heat generation due to ball skidding in the unloaded segment of the bearing. A thrust load applied to the bearing by preloading, or applying a spring load, will alleviate both of these undesirable conditions.

When a load is applied to a bearing, deflection occurs in the contact area between the balls and races due to the elastic properties of steel. The relationship between load and deflection is not a straight line function. For example, if the load applied to a bearing is multiplied by a factor of two, the deflection in the contact areas between the balls and races is multiplied by a factor considerably less than two. As the load on a bearing is increased, the lack of linear relationship between the load and the deflection becomes very pronounced. A point is reached where rather large increases in load result in very insignificent increases in deflection.

In Figure 7-44, the three curves show the difference in the axial deflections among Type R bearings with standard (AFBMA Class 0) and loose (AFBMA Class 3) internal fits and the 7000 Series angular-contact bearings (29° contact angle). Using the Type R standard fit curve as a basis of comparison, the deflection for Type R loose fit bearings with 100 pounds

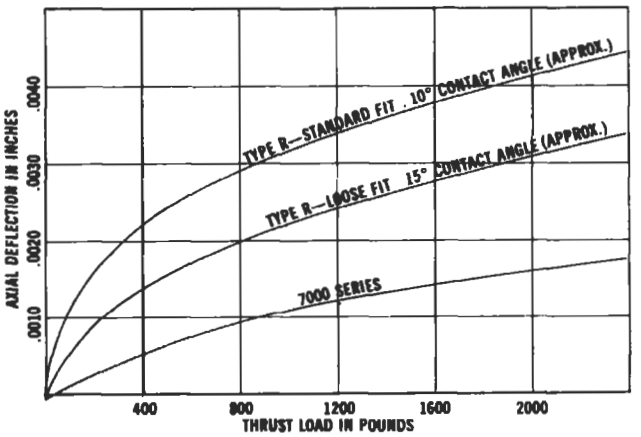


Figure 7-44. Axial deflections.

of thrust load is approximately 50 percent less while the 7000 Series is about 85 percent less. As the thrust load is increased, the abrupt rise in deflection shown for lower thrust loads is nearly eliminated. The leveling out of curves continues and, at 2,400 pounds, the deflection rate is reduced 25 percent and 58 percent respectively. This ratio between the curves remains fairly constant for loads above this point.

This comparison shows that bearings which have a low degree of contact angle (Type R standard fit) usually have the highest rate of axial deflection. The greatest increase takes place under low thrust load. Bearings with a high angle of contact, such as the 7000 Series, tend to retain a more even rate of deflection throughout the entire range of thrust loads.

Figure 7-45 illustrates the difference in radial deflection among the same types of bearings in Figure 7-44. The amount of radial deflection for all three types is more closely grouped with small differences between each type for the amount of radial load applied. In contrast to Figure 7-44, radial deflection increases in relation to the degree of contact angle in the bearing type. The Type R standard fit bearing which has an initial contact angle of approximately 10° has a lower rate of radial deflection than the 7000 Series bearing with an initial contact angle of 29°.

Figures 7-46, 7-47, and 7-48 illustrate the effects of light, medium, and heavy preloads on bearings of each type. The top curve on each chart is for duplexed unpreloaded bearings and is the same curve used on Chart 1, for a single bearing of the same type. The light, medium and heavy preload curves show reduction of axial deflection that can be obtained for bearings of each type. It is interesting to note that, in all cases, the axial deflection for preloaded types is reduced throughout the entire curve. At

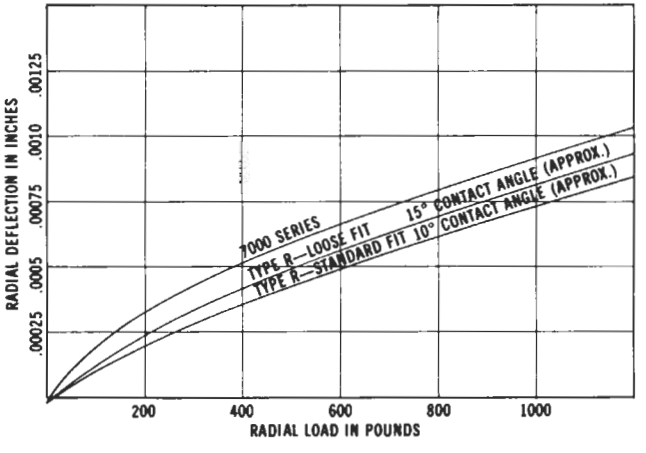


Figure 7-45. Radial deflections.

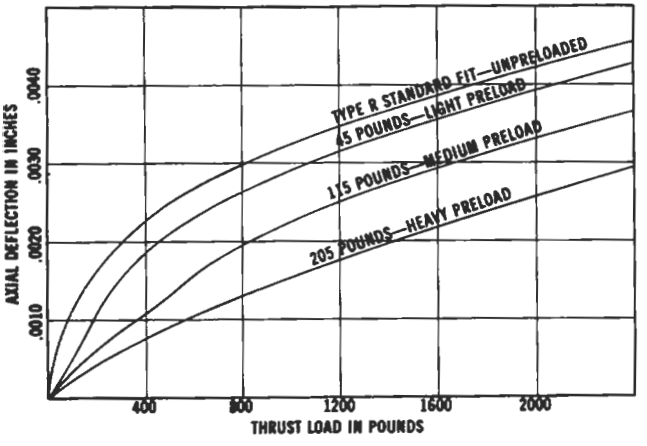


Figure 7-46. Axial deflections for type R standard fit bearings.

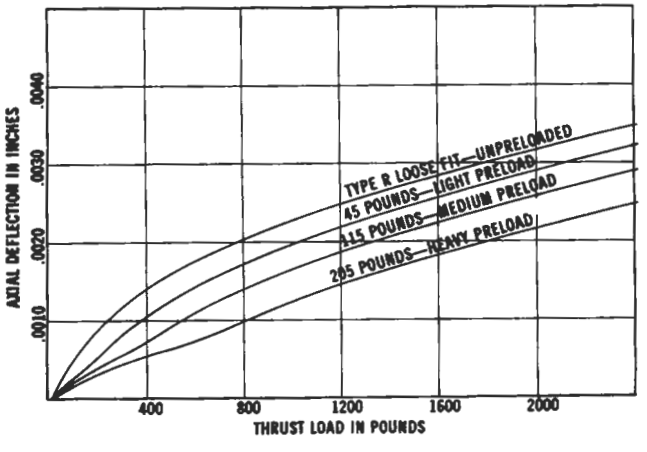


Figure 7-47. Axial deflections for type R loose fit bearings.

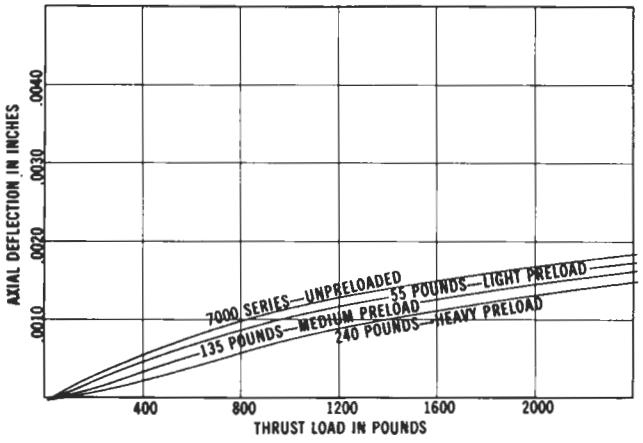


Figure 7-48. Axial deflections for 7000 series bearings.

the low end of the applied loads, the increase is considerably less than in unpreloaded bearing types and the deflection rate levels off throughout the entire curve.

The deflection curves presented on these charts represent calculations determined from 207-R and 7207 bearings. These specific axial and radial deflection conditions occur only in these bearings. However, in general, these curves do indicate what may occur in other bearings in the same series. Both axial and radial deflection characteristics will change in general proportion as the bearing size in the same series is increased.

It is the relationship between load and axial and radial deflections that frequently makes it desirable to preload bearings. Preload refers to an initial predetermined internal thrust load incorporated into bearings for the purpose of obtaining greater axial and radial rigidity. By careful selection of bearing type and amount of preload, axial and radial deflection rates best suited to a specific application can be obtained.

When a duplex pair with preload is mounted back-to-back (Figure 7-49) there is a gap between the two inner rings. As the two bearings are clamped together, the two inner rings come in contact to eliminate the gap. This changes the ball position to contact both inner and outer raceways under load establishing the basic contact angle of the bearings. The centerline on the balls shows this change. Bearings duplexed back-to-back greatly increase the effective shaft rigidity especially to misalign-

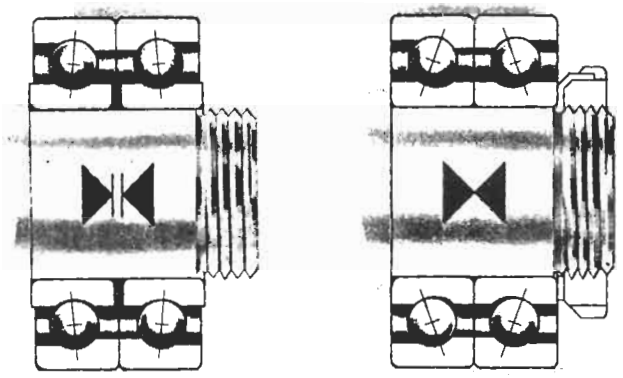


Figure 7-49. Duplex pair with preload mounted back-to-back.

ment. When equal (and square) pairs of spacers are used with these bearings, effective rigidity is increased still further.

In the face-to-face arrangement (Figure 7-50), the preload offset is between the outer rings. After clamping, the balls come into contact with both inner and outer races at the basic contact angle. Effective radial rigidity of the shaft is equal to that of the back-to-back arrangement; but less rigidity is given to conditions of misalignment.

Preloading is accomplished by controlling very precisely the relationship between the inner and outer ring faces. A special grinding procedure creates an offset between the faces of the inner and outer rings of the bearing equal to the axial deflection of the bearing under the specified preload.

When two bearings processed in an identical manner are clamped together, the offset is eliminated, forcing the inner and outer rings (depending on where the offset occurs) to apply a thrust load on the balls and raceways even before rotation is started. This results in deflection in the contact areas between the balls and races that corresponds to the amount of preload that has been built into the bearings. Balls are forced to contact the raceways immediately upon clamping the bearings together, thus eliminating the internal looseness. An additional load applied to the set of bearings will result in deflections of considerably smaller value than would be the case if the bearings were not preloaded.

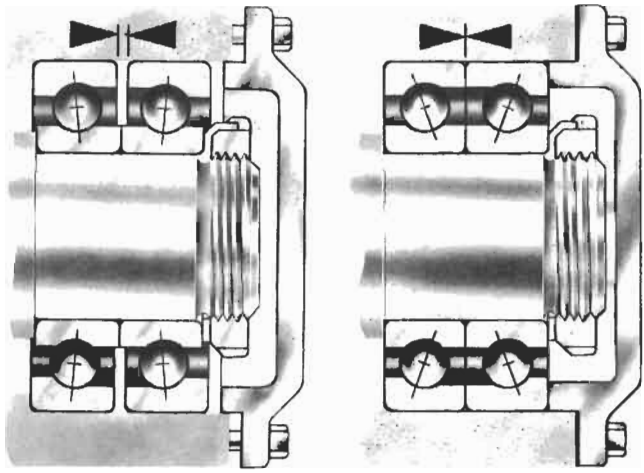


Figure 7-50. Face-to-face arrangement.

Preload Offset

The relationship of the inner and outer ring faces of DB and DF pairs of bearings duplexed for preload is shown in Figures 7-49 and 7-50. Note the gap between the inner rings of the DB pair and the outer rings of the DF pair. This is referred to as preload offset. In the illustrations the offset has been greatly exaggerated to show the action that takes place. In most cases the offset is so small that it cannot be detected without the proper gauging equipment.

DTDB and DTDF Sets

Tandem duplex bearings may be preloaded under certain conditions. These are applications where a tandem set of two or more bearings is assembled either DB or DF with a single bearing (Figure 7-51) or another tandem set of two or more bearings. Preload in these sets is the clamping force, applied across outboard sides of the set, necessary to bring all mating surfaces in contact.

Preload for individual tandem bearings in a set must be equal to the preload of the set divided by the number of bearings on each side.

Figure 7-51. A tandem set of two or more bearings is assembled DB or DF with single bearing.

Example: Three DT bearings are matched DB with two DT bearings. The set has a 600 lb preload.

Each of these DT bearings (one side) must have preload of 600/3 or 200 lbs.

Each of the two DT bearings (other side of set) must have 600/2 or 300 lbs.

Importance of the Correct Amount of Preload

Since the deflection rate of a bearing decreases with increasing load as shown in Figures 7-44 and 7-45, it is possible, through preloading, to eliminate most of the potential deflection of a bearing under load. It is important to provide the correct amount of preload in each set of duplex bearings to impart the proper rigidity to the shaft. However, rigidity is not increased proportionately to the amount of preload. Excessive preload not only causes the bearings to run hotter at a higher speed but also reduces the operating speed range. As machine tools must perform many types of work under varying conditions, the proper preload must be provided for each bearing to meet these conditions while retaining operating temperatures and speed ranges to which the bearings are subjected.

Duplex bearings are generally manufactured so that the proper amount of preload is obtained when the inner and outer rings are simply clamped together. If the duplex bearing has the correct preload, the machine will function satisfactorily with the proper shaft rigidity and with no excessive operating temperature. Any change in the initial preload is generally undesirable and should be made only if absolutely necessary. This is especially true for machine tool spindle bearings that are made to extremely fine tolerances. Any attempt to change the initial preload in these bearings is more likely to aggravate the faulty condition than correct it.

Factors Affecting Preload

There are various conditions which may adversely affect the initial preload in duplex bearings:

- Inaccurate machining of parts can produce a different preload than originally intended, either increasing or decreasing it depending upon the nature of the inaccuracy.
- Use of spacers that are not equal in length or do not have the faces square with the reference diameter (OD or ID) can produce an improper preload.
- Foreign matter deposited on surfaces or lodged between abutting parts as well as nicks caused by abuse in handling may produce cocking of the bearing and misalignment. Either condition can result in a variation of the preload or binding in the bearing.

The following precautions should be taken to avoid distortion when the parts are clamped together.

- Make a careful check of the shaft housing shoulder faces and the end cover surfaces abutting the bearing to see that they are square with the axis of rotation.
- Make sure that the end surfaces of each spacer are parallel with each other and square with the spacer bore.
- Carefully inspect the lock nut faces for squareness.
- Inspect all contacting and locating surfaces to make sure they are clean and free from surface damage.

Preload Classifications

MRC brand Type R and 7000 Series angular-contact ball bearings are available with any of three classes of preloads—light, medium, or heavy. The magnitude of the preload depends upon the speed of the spindle and required operating temperatures and rigidity requirements.

Preloaded Replacement Bearings

Normally replacement duplex bearings will be supplied universally ground with predetermined light preload. These are designated as "DS" bearings. If preload recommendations are desired when ordering bearings, all data possible, such as the equipment in which the spindle is used, spindle speeds, loads, and lubrication, should be supplied.

Preloaded Bearings with Different Contact Angles

Less than 5% of all pump bearings reach their calculated life. Compared to the *average* calculated thrust bearing life of 15 to 20 years, actual application life in the hydrocarbon processing industry (HPI) is only 13 months or less.

Preloaded bearings with different contact angles can significantly increase the service life of bearings in many pump applications. The key to their superior performance lies in the system's directionally dissimilar yet interactive spring rates. One such bearing system, MRC's "PumPac," consists of a matched set of 40° and 15° angular contact ball bearings with computer-optimized internal design. It is designed to interact as a system, with each component performing a specific function.

By using this special set of bearings, ball skidding and shuttling are virtually eliminated. The result: lower operating temperatures, stable oil viscosity, consistent film thickness, and longer service life.

Figure 7-52 depicts a shaft equipped with MRC's "PumPac." The two bearings are mounted back-to-back, with the apex of the etched "V" pointing in the direction of predominant thrust.

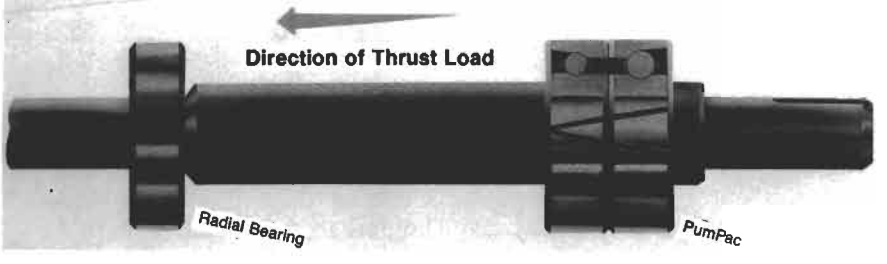


Figure 7-52. Preloaded thrust bearing set with different contact angles counteracts skidding of rolling elements (Courtesy MRC Bearings, Jamestown, New York).

Assembly of Bearings on Shaft

Bearing Salvage vs. Replacement Considerations

The final decision now must be made whether to reuse the bearings removed from the spindle or to replace them with new bearings. The choice probably will be self-evident, especially after the visual inspection mentioned in item #5 on the checklist in Table 7-5.

If the bearing has defects that will affect its operation, it must be replaced with a new bearing of the same size and tolerance grade.

Experience will be a guide in determining if the bearing is to be replaced. The apparent condition of a bearing will not be always a deciding factor. Bearings can still be used if they are not badly pitted or brinelled on nonoperating surfaces. This also applies to bearings that do not show excessive wear or signs of overheating. There are some instances where the boundary dimensions may have been affected by operation. Where possible, they should be checked to determine if they are within the desired tolerances.

Table 7-5
Spindle Servicing Checklist

SPINDLE SERVICING CHECK LIST

At this point, all cleaning and repair work on the shaft and spindle parts should have been completed. A review of all steps taken in the servicing of a spindle are listed here for checking purposes.

1. Remove shaft and bearings from the housing.
2. Dismount bearing from shaft using arbor press or bearing puller.
3. Tag bearings and spacers (if any) for identification and proper location when remounting on the shaft.
4. Clean bearings and spindle parts.
5. Make visual inspection of all spindle parts for nicks, burrs, corrosion, other signs of damage.
6. Prepare shaft for remounting of bearings. Make any repairs necessary on bearing seat, shaft shoulders, fillets, etc.
7. Prepare housings by making any required repairs on machine mounting surfaces. Paint non-functional surfaces as necessary.
8. Check shaft and housing measurements for bearing seat out-of-round, off-square shoulders, housing bore, etc.

Often a simple check on a bearing's internal contact surfaces can be made by spinning the bearing by hand. This may be done after the bearing has been thoroughly cleaned to eliminate possible harmful grit inside it. If the bearing has some imperfect contact surface, this can be felt when spinning the outer ring slowly while holding the inner ring (Figure 7-53). This test should be made under both lubricated and dry conditions. However, when dry, extreme care must be taken when spinning the bearing as the rolling surfaces of the balls and raceways are even more sensitive to possible scratching by grit.

Another point to consider is anticipated bearing life. If a bearing has been in service for a long time and, according to the records, is nearing the end of its natural life, it should be replaced with a new bearing. If a longer life can be expected, then an evaluation must be made comparing the cost of a replacement bearing against the remaining life of the old bearing and its later replacement. Also, the evaluation should take into account the possibility of *new* bearings in certain services having a statistically provable *higher* failure rate than bearings that have been in successful short time service.

Figure 7-53. Check internal contact surfaces by turning outer ring slowly while holding inner ring.

If a replacement bearing is to be used, it should be understood that dimensional interchangeability does not necessarily guarantee functional interchangeability. In certain applications, there are other characteristics such as internal fit, type and material of cage, lubricant, etc., that are of vital importance. If you have questions about the selection of the correct ball bearing replacement, it is always wise to consult the product engineering department of capable major bearing manufactuers.

Cautions to Observe During Assembly of Bearings into Units

Whether using the original bearing or replacing it with a new one, care must be taken to avoid contamination when mounting the bearing. A critical period in the life of a bearing starts when it leaves the stockroom for the assembly bench where it is removed from its box and protective covering. This critical period continues until the bearing passes its first full-load test after assembly. Here are a few rules that should be observed during this crucial period.

1. Do not permit a bearing to lie around uncovered on work benches (Figure 7-54).
2. Do not remove a bearing from its box and protective covering until ready for installation.
3. When handling bearings, keep hands and tools clean.
4. Do not wash out factory-applied lubricant unless the bearing has become exposed to contamination.
5. If additional lubrication must be applied, be sure it is absolutely clean. In addition, the instrument used for application must be clean, and chip and splinter proof.
6. If subassemblies are left for any length of time, they should be lightly covered with clean, lintless material (Figure 7-55).

Figure 7-54. Keep unboxed bearings covered until ready for mounting.

Figure 7-55. Cover subassemblies, especially those with mounted bearings, with plastic material while waiting to assemble into housing.

Some other precautions to be exercised during assembly were discussed under "Cleanliness and Working Conditions" earlier. If there is any chance that the bearing may have become contaminated, don't take any chances—wash the bearing again following the procedure outlined in that section.

In summary, many precautions have been taken by the bearing manufacturer to make sure that the bearings are delivered in a clean condition. In a few seconds, carelessness can destroy the protective measures of the manufacturer . . . shorten the life of the bearing . . . jeopardize the reputation of the organization for which you work. It pays to do everything possible to prevent abrasive action caused by dirt in a bearing. But assembly precautions do not stop here. The user must resist his inclination to "clean" a bearing by removing the preservative coating applied by the bearing manufacturer. Prelubrication is not usually necessary and extreme vulnerability can be introduced by precoating certain rolling element bearings with extreme light viscosity or inferior quality oils.

High Point of Eccentricity

When remounting bearings with tolerance grades of ABEC-5, ABEC-7, or ABEC-9, it is essential to orient them on the shaft with reference to the "high point of eccentricity." Super-precision bearings are usually marked to indicate this detail.

The high point of eccentricity of the outer ring is the highest reading obtained when measuring its radial runout. It is found by placing the

bearing on a stationary arbor and applying an indicator directly over the ball path on the outside diameter of the outer ring. When the outer ring is rotated, the difference between the highest and lowest reading is the amount of radial runout of the outer ring. The high point of eccentricity of the inner ring is determined in the same manner except that the inner ring is rotated. To indicate the high point of eccentricity, a dot is burnished on both inner and outer rings (Figure 7-56) on Type R and 7000 Series angular-contact bearings of ABEC-5 or higher tolerance grades.

The burnished dots are applied to the rings so that the bearings can be mounted to reduce or cancel the effects of shaft seat runouts. When mounted, the dots should be 180° from the high point of eccentricity of the bearing seat on each end of the shaft. The high point of eccentricity of the shaft also should be determined and marked when the shaft is on centers (or V-blocks). This method of mounting will help keep radial runout of the spindle assembly to a minimum. This is important especially in high speed applications. Matching the burnish marks in duplexed bearings will reduce internal fight between bearings.

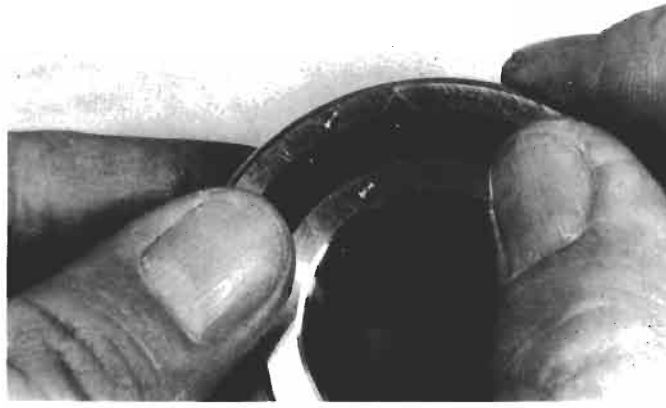


Figure 7-56. Burnished dots show high point of eccentricity.

Thrust Here

The words "Thrust Here" are stamped on the back of the outer ring of all MRC brand Type R and angular-contact bearings. This serves as a guide when mounting the bearing so that the shaft thrust carries through the bearing (Figure 7-57). Note that in the "right" method of mounting,

the thrust is along the shaft, through the inner ring along the angle of contact of the balls, through the heavy shoulder of the outer ring (stamped "Thrust Here") to the shoulder of the housing.

If the bearing position were reversed as shown in the "wrong" method, the shaft thrust would follow the angle of contact through the low shoulder side of the outer ring. As the outer ring will not carry loads of any magnitude, it is likely that the thrust would then force the balls to ride the edge of the low shoulder. This could cause early failure due to concentrated loads at the race-shoulder intersection and possibly even cause cracking of the balls.

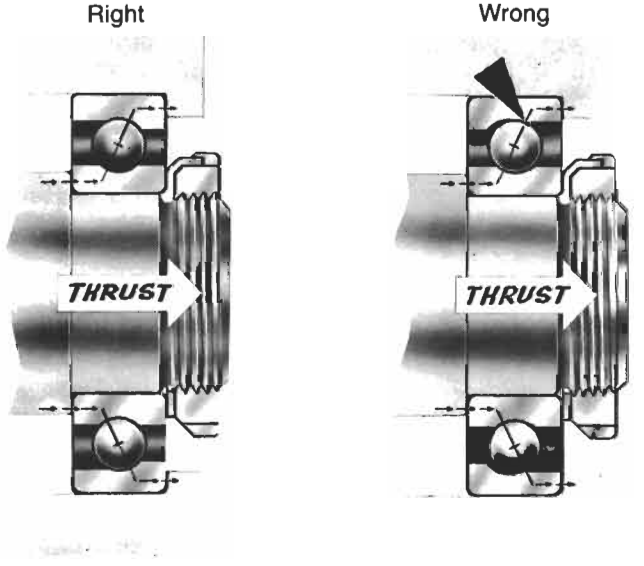


Figure 7-57. "THRUST HERE" on outer ring shows the side of the ring to which shaft thrust is to be imposed. Improper mounting may force balls to ride the edge of the low shoulder.

Mount Bearings with Push Fit

Precision bearings used in the machine tool industry normally are mounted on the shaft with a push fit, that is, pressing the bearing in place (Figure 7-58) with hand pressure. In some cases, the original bearings may be used again. No difficulty should be encountered while mounting them. However, if a new bearing is to be used, the proper tolerance grade bearing must be selected so that a push fit results. An application of light oil on the shaft will increase ease of mounting.

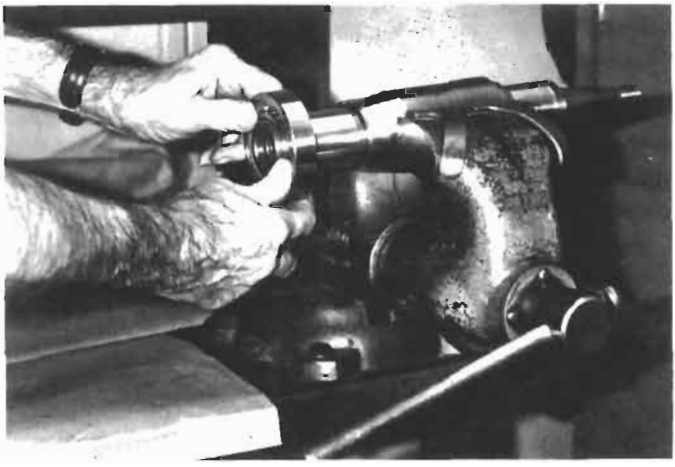


Figure 7-58. Shaft is held in a vise when mounting bearing with a push fit. Cover vise jaws with wood or soft metal.

Mounting with Heat

If a bearing is to be mounted with a tighter than "push" fit, a convenient and acceptable method of mounting is to expand the rings by moderate heating. To make sure the bearing is not overheated, a thermostatically controlled heat source should be used. An inexpensive type of household oven will usually serve the purpose satisfactorily. The oven also protects the bearing from contamination while being heated.

Before heating, the bearing must be removed from its plastic packing bag or other wrapping as the temperature reached may melt the material. If gloves are used when handling the bearing, they should be made of a lint-free material such as nylon or neoprene. Set the thermostat to a temperature between 175°F and 200°F (80°C to 94°C). In most cases, this will be adequate to expand the bearing without overheating it. Heat the bearing a sufficient amount of time to allow for ring expansion. Upon removal, slip the bearing on the shaft immediately with full regard for direction of thrust as well as orientation of the high points of eccentricity of both bearing and shaft. Certain bearings not employing cages, seals, or lubricants susceptible to damage at the higher temperature may be heated to 275°F (136°C).

Induction heaters (Figures 7-59 through 7-61) offer several different heating programs to suit user requirements in a variety of situations. The heaters are suitable for continuous use, and their compact temperature probes ensure exceptionally exact temperature control. Most importantly, properly engineered, state-of-the-art induction heaters completely

Figure 7-59. Typical induction heater for mounting rolling element bearings (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D-8045 Ismaning, Federal Republic of Germany).

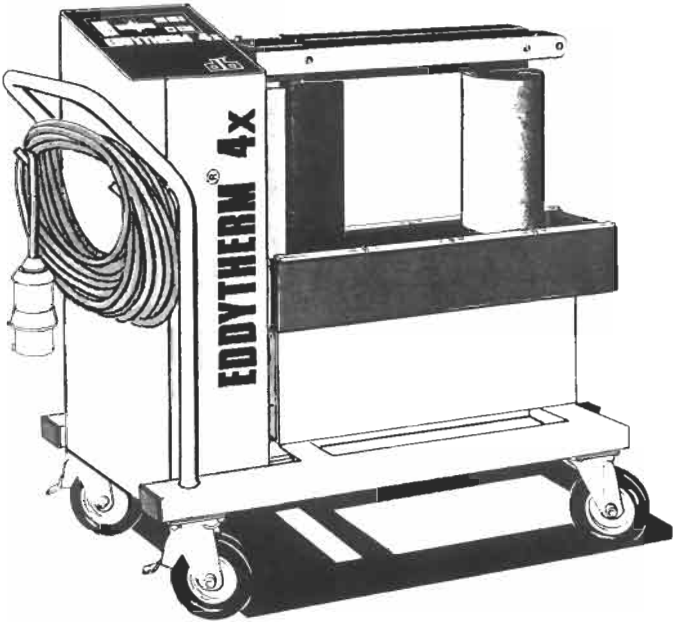


Figure 7-60. Large induction heater used for bearing assembly on machinery shafts. (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D-8045 Ismaning, Federal Republic of Germany.)

Figure 7-61. Compact bearing induction heater. (Courtesy Prueftechnik Dieter Busch, D-8045 Ismaning, Federal Republic of Germany.)

demagnetize the bearing automatically at the end of the heating cycle, because, otherwise, the magnetized bearing would literally act as a trash collector for ferritic particles, leading to an untimely demise of the bearing.

Large induction heaters include features such as swivel-arm crossbar design and a pedal-operated crossbar lift, which allows one-man operation even when mounting extremely large workpieces, while the heavy, welded-steel carriage provides on-site portability. Further features might include auto demagnetization, automatic temperature probe recognition, dynamic heating power regulation, and suitability for continuous operation.

Typical technical data of large units are as follows:

Power consumption:	14 kVA max.
Heating capacity:	approx. 400 kg (880 lb)
Heating duration:	10 sec.–1 hr
Precision, Time:	+ 1 sec.
Temperature:	+ 2°C (3.6°F)

More compact and still robust, smaller units may offer such standard features as microprocessor-controlled heating by time or temperature, auto demagnetization, automatic temperature probe recognition, and dy-

namic heating power regulation. Technical data of the more compact units are typically as follows:

Power consumption:	3.5 kVA max.
Heating capacity:	approx. 15 kg (33 lb)
Heating duration:	10 sec.–1 hr
Precision:	better than 3°C (5.4°F)
Time:	+ 1 sec.
Temperature:	+ 2°C (3.6°F)

Other Mounting Methods

A variation of the dry heat method to expand the bearing involves the use of infrared lamps inside a foil-lined enclosure. The lamps should be focused on the inner ring. Care must be taken to keep the temperature below 200°F (94°C), except as noted previously (Figure 7-62).

It also is possible to use dry ice to cool the shaft which will then contract sufficiently to permit mounting of the bearing with the proper finger pressure. In this method, special precautions should be used to prevent resulting condensation from producing corrosion on the bearing components.

An arbor press and a hollow tube (Figure 7-63) are frequently employed to mount bearings on shafts in those cases where press fits are involved. When doing so, the press and the tube should be completely clean to avoid possible contamination of the bearing. The tube must contact the inner ring when pressing the bearing on the shaft (Figure 7-64). This will avoid possible brinelling of the bearing which might occur if pressure were applied on the outer ring. The press ram, tube, and bearing axis should be in good alignment. If abnormal pressures are required, the alignment probably is not good enough. In this case, alternate application of pressure and relief may help ease the pressure required.

Exercise Caution When Starting Bearing On Shaft

To start the bearing, the shaft should have a lead and the bearing face should be square with the shaft (Figure 7-64). Pressure should be in line with the shaft and must be uniform against the face when pressing the bearing into place. If excessive binding occurs, it generally indicates an off-square condition, a burr, high spots, a tapered shaft, dirt or chips wedged under the bearing. When sticking or binding occurs, the bearing should not be forced on the shaft as the hard inner ring is apt to cut the softer metal of the shaft and raise a ridge or burr (Figure 7-65). Remove the bearing from the shaft to determine and correct the problem.

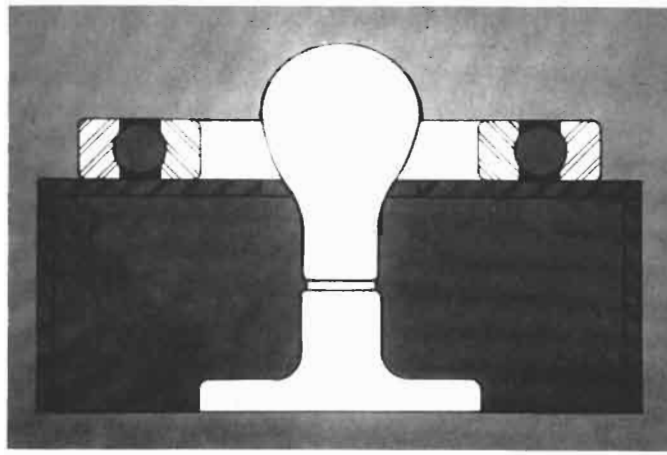


Figure 7-62. A variation of the infra-red lamp method suited for large size bearings. Take care not to overheat the bearing.

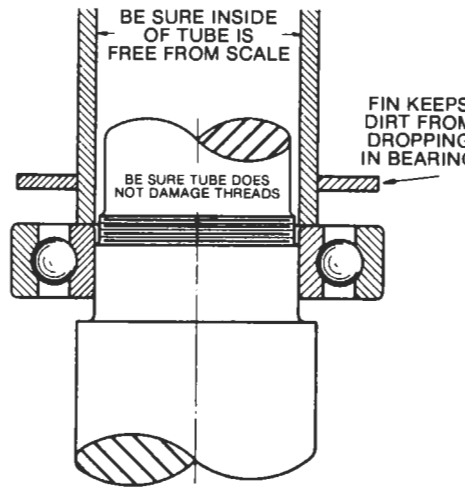


Figure 7-63. Arbor press and hollow tube method used to mount bearings on shafts when press fits are involved.

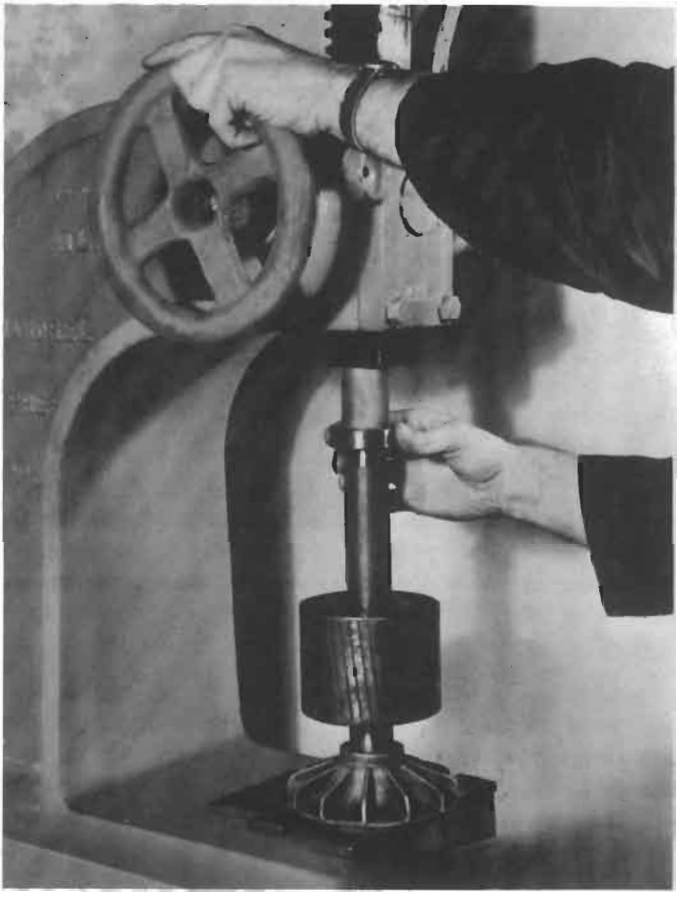


Figure 7-64. Bearing may be pressed on shaft using a tube and arbor pres .

Checking Bearings and Shaft After Installation

After the bearings have been assembled on the shaft, a number of points should be checked to make certain the bearings have been correctly installed. These include visual checks and the use of various gauges to determine the accuracy of the mounting. It also may be necessary to balance the shaft assembly before insertion into the housing.

Check for Internal Clearance

The outer rings should rotate freely without binding except in unusual cases where a tight fit has been specified or where preloaded duplexed

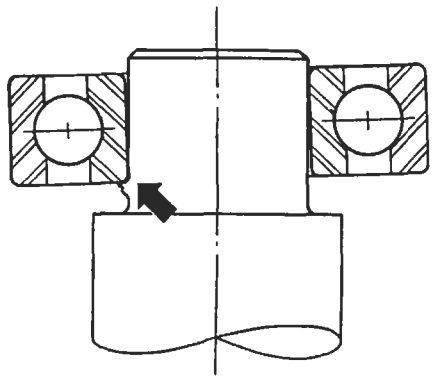


Figure 7-65. Result of starting bearing off-square.

bearing sets are used. Residual internal clearance can be felt by holding the outer ring between the thumb and forefinger (Figure 7-66) and rocking it back and forth. If the bearing is free, the ring will have a slight axial freedom of movement or "rock." This applies to all single-row bearings except a single bearing of the angular-contact type which is very loose.

Make Visual Check of Bearing

Be sure that the bearing is flush against the shaft shoulder all the way around. The best simple check for this is to hold the shaft in front of a light source such as a window or an electric light. If no light shows between the inner ring face and the shaft shoulder, the bearing may be considered in proper position. This check should be made all the way around the shaft. If light is visible at any point, carefully remove the bearing and recheck the shoulder and fillet for burrs, out-of-round or too large a radius on the fillet.

Check the height of the shoulder against the height of the inner ring. In general, it should be a minimum of about half the width of the inner ring face. If heavy thrust pressures are involved, the shoulder should be higher.

Check for Bearing Squareness on the Shaft

Check the face of the outer ring for squareness of the inner ring with the shaft using a suitable indicator (Figure 7-67). The assembled front and rear bearings or sets of bearings should be placed in V-blocks with an

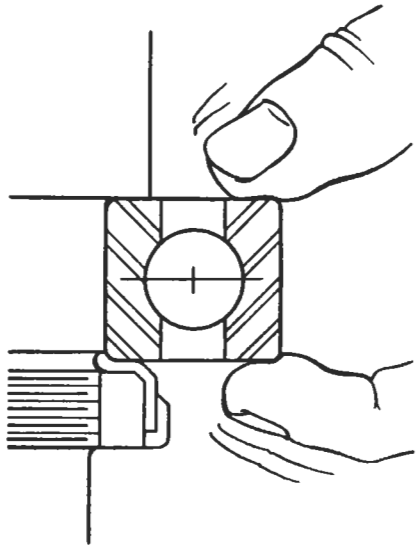


Figure 7-66. Check a mounted bearing for internal clearance by rocking outer ring back and forth.

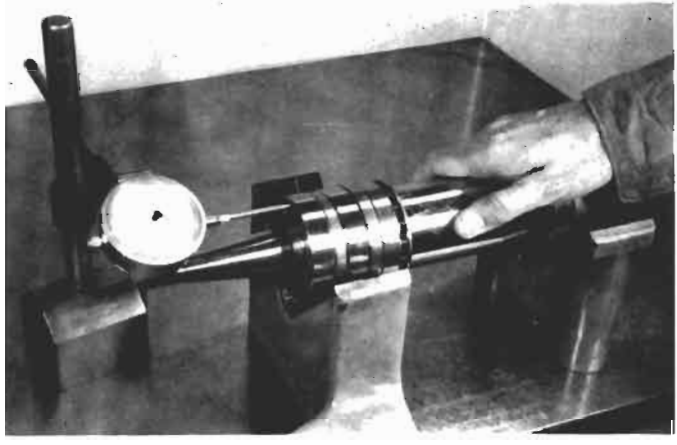


Figure 7-67. Checking for squareness of bearing on shaft.

indicator point contacting the face of the outer ring. When the shaft and inner rings are turning, any off-square condition is transmitted through the balls to the outer ring. This will cause the outer ring to rock or tilt and shows up as a variation on the indicator reading. Readings in excess of the bearing tolerances indicate an effective misalignment, resulting from an off-square condition.

Foreign matter between the bearings and shaft shoulder, fillet interference, a nick on the shaft shoulder, raised metal from the bearing seat, a nick on the spacer rings, and many other causes will produce this off-square condition. Under these circumstances, remove the bearing from the shaft to determine the actual cause and make the necessary repairs.

Balancing the Shaft Assembly

After the bearings and other units such as pulleys, etc., are properly seated on the shaft, the assembly should be balanced, preferably dynamically, to obtain a smooth-running spindle (Figure 7-68). All parts that rotate with the assembled spindle should be included in the balancing operation with whatever is applied to retain the bearings on the shaft.

Common Causes of Unbalance in Shaft Assemblies

Unbalance is commonly introduced through an eccentricity in some portion of the shaft assembly that has not been properly finished. Eccentricities may be present in the components affixed to the shaft. Ground bearing seats may not be concentric with turned portions of the assembly. Strains may develop in a shaft that has been heat-treated, causing warp in the shaft that may create misalignment of the bearings. In other cases, a thread may not be true to the shaft center. If the bore of the bearing spacer is too loose when used, it may not be properly centered with respect to the shaft axis. Causes of unbalance could include other factors in addition to these items.

Correction of Unbalanced Shaft Assemblies

There are several methods to correct unbalance in either hardened or soft shafts. In general, balancing consists of removing material from the heavy side of the shaft or adding material to the light side of the shaft. Any balancing operations should be conducted in an area removed from the clean assembly area.

To balance a hardened shaft, sufficient material usually is removed to create proper balance by grinding on the heavy side of the shaft nearest

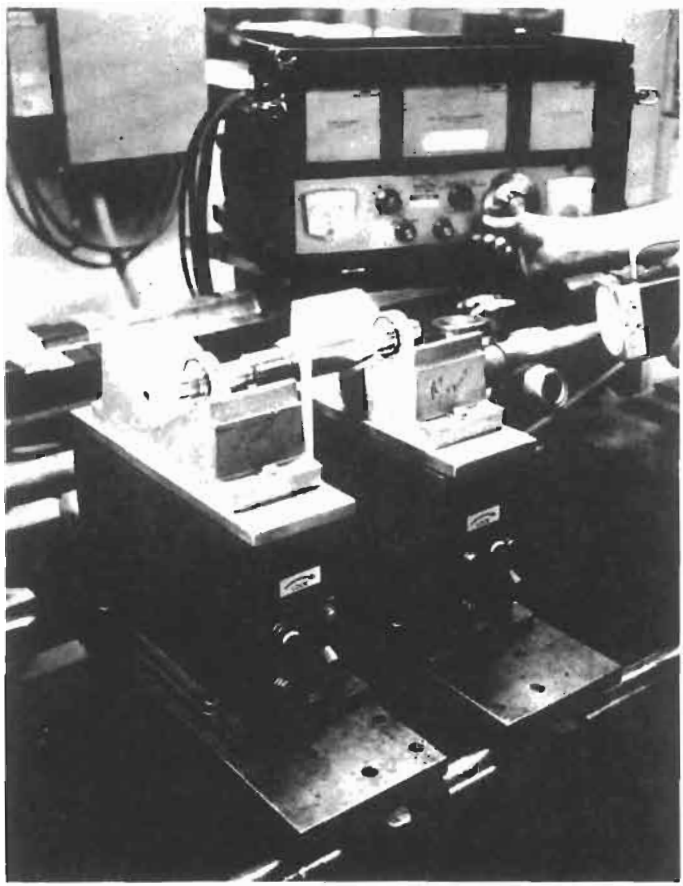


Figure 7-68. Dynamics of balancing spindle assembly. This equipment is used by TRW's Spindle Maintenance Dept., but other types are available which will balance assemblies as accurately as necessary.

the end which needs to be balanced. The grinding is usually done on a portion of the shaft where the largest diameter occurs.

Several methods may be used to bring a soft shaft into balance. It is possible to apply a correct amount of weight. It may be preferable to drill a hole of the correct size and depth in the shaft. Metal generally is removed from the shaft in the area of the largest diameter and at the greatest possible distance from the center of the shaft toward the end which must be balanced. Extreme care must be taken to prevent the removed metal from being introduced into the bearings mounted on the shaft.

Protect Bearings and Shaft Assembly from Contamination

After a ball bearing has been mounted on a shaft, often there is a time interval, possibly overnight, before final installation in the housing can be started. In such cases, it is advisable to wrap the bearings and shaft in plastic film to protect them from contamination (Figure 7-69). If the bearings are left exposed on the shaft, or even when installed in the housing, dust and/or other contaminants may enter the bearing. If installed in the housing, always be sure to cover the open end with film until all assembly work is completed and the housing is completely closed.

Assembly of Shaft and Bearings Into Housing

After the bearings have been assembled on the shaft, checked and balanced, the entire assembly is ready for insertion into the housing (Figure 7-70) in accordance with the methods outlined in the manufacturer's manual. During this operation, care must be taken to start the bearings into the housing seats squarely to avoid damage to the bearings or housing. Any force exerted on the shaft passes through the bearings and, if excessive, can cause bearing damage.

The outer ring generally should have a slightly loose fit in the housing. This is necessary to permit the bearing axial movement to assume its normal operating position regardless of temperatures which occur during operation. If the bearing is too tight, axial movement is prevented and violent overloads could result in nonfixed radial positioning of the shaft. This causes noisy operation, excessive fretting and pounding out of the housing seat and, occasionally, excessive spinning in the housing.

Testing of Finished Spindle

When the spindle has been completely assembled, a final check of the eccentricity should be made as follows. Place an indicator point against the center of the shaft extension on the work end of the spindle and rotate the spindle by hand (Figure 7-71). Where possible, the opposite end of the spindle also should be checked. Sometimes it is possible to detect roughness or vibration in the spindle when turning the shaft by hand. Roughness may be felt as a hitch or click. Do not attempt to run the spindle if these conditions are major. Dismantle it and find the cause of the roughness. The cause may be the application of excessively dirty lubricant or dirt that has worked its way into the bearing during assembly. Under conditions of slow rotation, necessary cage looseness also may create some binding which disappears when running to speed and under load.

Vibration is usually detected when the spindle reaches its normal operating speed. Causes of vibration include excessive runout of the pulley, a

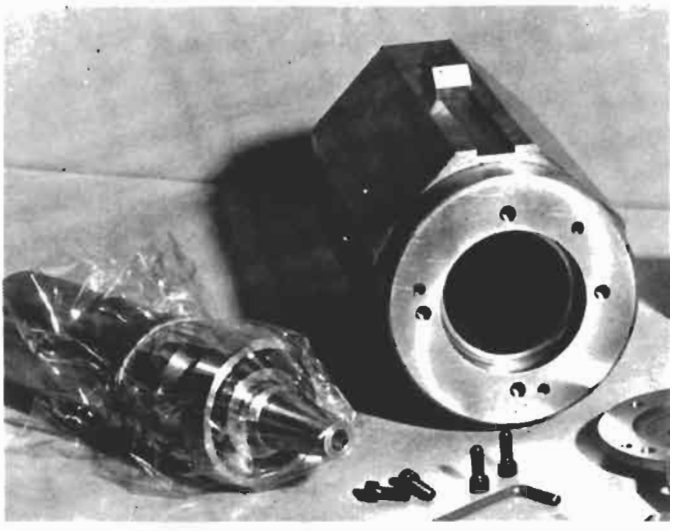


Figure 7-69. Protect bearings and shaft from contamination until assembled and completely sealed in housing. Use plastic film to cover spindle.

Figure 7-70. Start bearings into housing seat squarely to avoid damage to either bearings or housing. A "push" fit should be used.

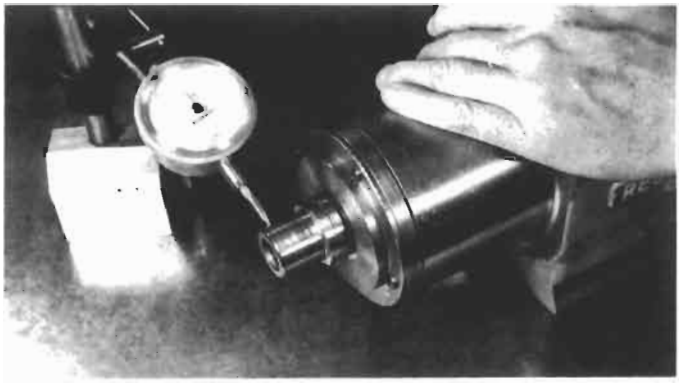


Figure 7-71. Check eccentricity of assembled bearing with indicator gauge on shaft extension.

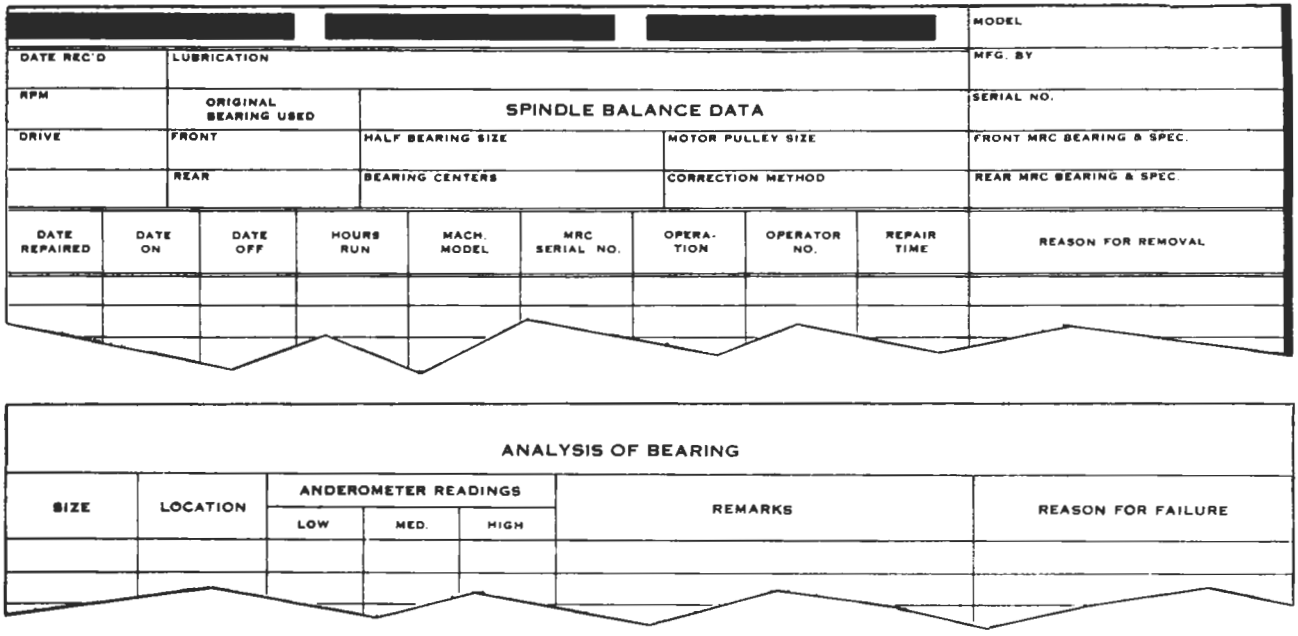
loose cap on the spindle assembly, bearings damaged in assembly, or possibly loose bearing spacers. In any case, when vibration is detected, spindle run-in should be discontinued to investigate the cause.

During run-in, a close check should be kept on the temperature attained, especially in the first part of the run. This is particularly true for spindles which are grease-packed. If the heat becomes excessive, over 140°F to 150°F (60°C to 66°C), it is usually advisable to stop the spindle and permit it to cool off. This type of excessive heat is commonly caused by insufficient channeling of the lubricant in the spindle. Stopping the spindle will allow the temperature to equalize, reducing the risk of radial or axial preloading. When restarted, the spindle usually will run at temperatures within the recommended range unless excessive quantities of grease are in the housing or if overloads are present. If the spindle continues to heat excessively, checks should be made to determine the cause.

Maintain Service Records on All Spindles

The maintenance department in any company should keep records regarding the history of each shaft or spindle serviced (Figure 7-72). All particulars should be recorded from the day the spindle was placed in operation until retirement. Such a record may be as complete and detailed as possible. It may simply record dates when the spindle or shaft was checked to correct certain conditions. In either case, it is recommended that the record state clearly the corrective actions taken to place the spindle in proper operating condition.

Shop records also will enable the maintenance department to keep a close periodic check on spindles thoughout the plant. It is possible to es-



				MODEL
DATE REC'D	LUBRICATION			MFG. BY
RPM	ORIGINAL BEARING USED	SPINDLE BALANCE DATA		SERIAL NO.
DRIVE	FRONT	HALF BEARING SIZE	MOTOR PULLEY SIZE	FRONT MRC BEARING & SPEC.
	REAR	BEARING CENTERS	CORRECTION METHOD	REAR MRC BEARING & SPEC.

DATE REPAIRED	DATE ON	DATE OFF	HOURS RUN	MACH. MODEL	MRC SERIAL NO.	OPERATION	OPERATOR NO.	REPAIR TIME	REASON FOR REMOVAL

ANALYSIS OF BEARING

SIZE	LOCATION	ANDEROMETER READINGS			REMARKS	REASON FOR FAILURE
		LOW	MED.	HIGH		

Figure 7-72. Form provides space to record complete history of spindle from date of purchase.

tablish a regular inspection procedure which will help assure continued spindle operation. This will reduce machine downtime, always a factor in maintaining a low cost operation.

Shaft and Housing Shoulder Diameters

Table 7-4 (pages 382 and 383) shows minimum shaft shoulder diameters for general purpose installations.

Bearing Maintenance Checklist

Finally, we direct your attention to Table 7-6, which summarizes all necessary bearing maintenance steps in checklist form.

Table 7-6
Bearing Maintenance Checklist

Don't	Recommended Action
Don't open the bearing box until you are ready to install the bearing.	Leave the bearing in the manufacturer's box and protective wrapping until it is necessary to remove it for installation. The package is designed to protect the bearing from contamination and keep it in factory fresh condition.
Don't work in an area having a hostile environment.	Ideally areas designated for bearing installation should have controlled humidity, controlled temperature and clean air to help prevent bearing exposure to particulate or corrosive contamination.
Don't work on bench tops that are not in good condition.	The working surface should be material that is not likely to produce contamination by abrading or chipping. Splinter-free wood, phenolic composition, hard rubber or smooth metal are satisfactory surfaces for this kind of work.
Don't work on a dirty bench top.	Make certain that the working surface is free from contamination that could find its way into the bearing or corrode the bearing surfaces.
Don't force the bearing off the shaft by uneven pressure or with hammer blows if you plan to reuse the bearing.	Use a bearing puller or an arbor press with adapters which will exert a balanced load on the inner ring face. This avoids a static load on the balls and possible shaft damage.
Don't place the shaft assembly in a dirty area when it has been removed from the housing.	After the shaft assembly has been removed from the unit it should be protected from contamination and corrosion by placing it in a clean covered container, or covered with a lint and dirt-free material such as plastic film. Rotating a contaminated bearing will damage the ball and race surfaces.
Don't strike or apply pressure to the ball cage while the bearing is being dismounted.	Select the proper removal tools and adapters to insure that a load is not applied to the balls through the cage.

Table 7-6. Continued.

Don't	Recommended Action
Don't use improper tools to remove the bearing from the shaft.	Study the assembly and select the removal method, tools and fixtures that are least likely to cause damage to the bearing or the shaft.
Don't apply pressure to the outer ring of the bearing when removing it from the shaft if it can be avoided.	Remove bearings from the shaft with pressure on the inner ring face to prevent loading the balls. In those applications where the only surface available for pulling the bearing is the outer ring face, care should be taken to pull evenly and smoothly. The bearing should then be examined for possible damage.
Don't damage seals or shields of the bearing while it is being removed.	Place bearing puller jaws on adapter or inner ring as required by the method of mounting. This will avoid damage to the seals or shields caused by possible contact with the puller.
Don't push a bearing from the housing with pressure on the inner ring in applications where the bearing is a tight fit in the housing unless it cannot be avoided.	Use a section of rod or tubing slightly smaller than the bore of the housing. This will apply pressure to the outer ring face and will not brinell the bearing by actually loading the ball assembly.
Don't overlook scuff marks, burrs, nicks or other indications of damage on the bearing locating surfaces during inspection of the shaft and housing.	Carefully inspect the bearing locating surfaces and correct any damaged areas that could prevent intimate contact between the bearing and the locating surfaces.
Don't make shaft or housing repairs which may cause contamination or produce wear products in the clean assembly area.	Remove any parts from the clean assembly area when performing procedures that produce wear products, such as reworking with abrasives. Make certain the parts are clean before reintroducing them into the clean assembly area.
Don't allow too large a fillet radius between the shaft seat and the shaft shoulder or the housing seat and the housing shoulder.	Make sure the radius in each location is no larger than recommended in the bearing manufacturer's catalog. If the radius is large enough to act as a bearing locating surface it is very likely to result in bearing misalignment or ring distortion.
Don't regrind shaft shoulders without breaking corners.	Break corners while the shaft is still mounted on centers. Removal of burrs, etc. on the corners will permit proper seating of the inner ring against the shaft shoulder. Also it makes the shaft less susceptible to damage.
Don't nick or scratch housing bearing locating surfaces.	The housing bearing locating surfaces should be examined for indications of damage. Any damage found that could prevent proper location of the bearing outer ring in the housing must be corrected.
Don't wash the original lubricant from a new bearing.	New bearings are either prelubricated with grease or protected with a preservative that is compatible with most bearing lubricants. It will continue to protect the bearing until the unit is put into service.

(Table continued on next page)

Table 7-6. Continued.

Don't	Recommended Action
Don't allow a bearing to spin rapidly when drying it with compressed air.	When drying a bearing with compressed air, hold both the inner and outer rings to prevent them from rotating. Spinning an unloaded bearing in this manner can result in ball and race surface damage caused by the balls skidding against the race surfaces.
Don't neglect to clean the shaft and housing and flush out oil lubricating systems.	Remove both free and caked-on deposits from all parts of the shaft and housing assembly. This will provide clean parts which will not contaminate bearings with dirt, etc. when the spindle is reassembled and run.
Don't paint bearing seats in housing.	It is a good practice to seal the internal surfaces of the housing using a sealer that is made for this purpose. It will reduce the presence of core sand and other particles which could contaminate the bearing lubricant. The bearing locating surfaces should not be painted.
Don't mount bearings until the high point of eccentricity of the shaft has been determined.	Align bearing high points of eccentricity and mount them 180° from the high point of eccentricity on the shaft. This practice reduces the radial runout to a minimum.
Don't mount counterbored type bearings in a manner that will allow the thrust load to be imposed on the low shoulder side of the outer ring race.	A thrust load applied to a counterbored type bearing must be applied in such a manner that it will be carried on the high shoulder side of the outer ring race. The face of the outer ring on the thrust-carrying side will be marked "THRUST HERE."
Don't use two or more bearings as a pair or set of bearings unless they have been properly duplex ground for use in this manner.	MRC brand bearings that have been duplex ground to be used as a component in a pair or set of bearings are identified by the letter "D" as a suffix to the bearing number. The suffix will be DU for bearings that have been duplexed to have no end play and no preload when mounted in a back-to-back or face-to-face arrangement. The suffix DS identifies the bearings duplex ground for either preload or negative preload (end play) when matched either back-to-back or face-to-face. Bearings mounted in a tandem arrangement must also have the same suffix.
Don't mix duplex bearings and spacers which have been removed from the shaft if old bearings are to be reused.	Replace bearings and spacers in exactly the same position as they were before removing them from the shaft. Any change in position of the components is likely to result in a change in preload in the bearing pairs or sets.
Don't use spacers which are not equal in length.	The preload ground into a pair or set of bearings will be altered in applications where spacers are used between bearings if the spacer between the inner ring faces is not exactly the same length as the spacer between the outer ring faces. It is also essential that the faces of the spacers must be ground parallel and remain free from damage.

Table 7-6. Continued.

Don't	Recommended Action
Don't attempt to adjust preload which is built into the bearings.	Use only bearings that have been duplexed for the proper amount of preload for the application. Attempts to adjust preload by using spacers that are not the same length are likely to result in unsatisfactory bearing operation or possibly premature bearing failure
Don't use worn V-blocks or centers for measuring the geometry of shaft bearing seats.	Use a good set of centers and clean center holes for accuracy. Worn centers or V-blocks can result in misleading results when measuring the concentricity of the shaft seats to the shaft center.
Don't force a bearing on the shaft seat in applications where an interference fit between the bearing shaft seat is not specified.	In applications where an interference fit between the bearing and the shaft is not called for, either strong finger pressure or a very light press is all that should be necessary to mount the bearing. If more pressure is required the shaft bearing seat diameter should be measured to insure that it is not oversized. Too tight a fit on the shaft will remove an excessive amount of internal clearance, or may alter the preload in a pair of bearings.
Don't overheat the bearings when trying to expand the inner rings to facilitate mounting them on to the shaft seat.	Use a thermostatically controlled heat source to heat bearings. Excessive temperatures can result in softening of the parts, loss of dimensional stability and damage to non-metallic separators
Don t hold the shaft in a metal vise without protecting the shaft from the vise jaws	Cover the vise jaws with wood or soft metal. This will avoid marring or nicking of the shaft.
Don't press bearings onto the shaft seat in an off-square manner.	Be very careful to start the bearing onto the shaft seat squarely and to use tooling or fixtures that are accurate enough to maintain squareness between the bearing and the shaft center. Off-square mounting is likely to damage the shaft seat or the bearing. Shaft seats that are damaged in this manner would not allow the bearing inner ring to have intimate contact with the ring locating surfaces.
Don't balance spindle with parts missing that will be rotating with the spindle in the final assembly.	Balance shafts with the entire bearing and pulley assembly as well as assembled accessories. This will eliminate any possible unbalance when the unit is completely assembled.
Don't leave bearings unprotected for any significant length of time.	After the bearings have been removed from the manufacturer's package they should never be left unprotected for a significant length of time. If the bearings are not mounted they can be repackaged or protected by wrapping them in a suitable material. If they have been mounted, the entire assembly should be wrapped or covered with a suitable material such as plastic film.
Don't overlubricate the bearings.	Too much grease or oil will result in excessive heat generation and can lead to unsatisfactory operation of the bearings or shorten the bearing life.
Don't use a lubricant that hasn't been protected from contamination.	Contaminated lubricant is a major cause of premature bearing removal. Lubricants should always be stored in a clean, covered container.

Chapter 8

Repair and Maintenance of Mechanical Seals and Rotating Equipment Components

Mechanical Seal Installation, Repair, and Maintenance*

Sealing performance and seal life will depend to a great extent upon the operating condition of the equipment in which the seals are used. Careful inspection of the equipment before installing the seals will do much to minimize seal failure and maintenance expenses.

Following is a list of the major trouble spots.

1. **Seal housing.** The seal housing bore and depth dimensions must match those shown on the seal's assembly drawing within ±0.005 in. (±0.13 mm). Shaft or sleeve dimensions must be within ±0.001 or + .000 in.-.002 (± 0.03 mm or + 0.00 mm-0.05). See Figure 8-1 for complete seal housing requirements.
2. **Axial shaft movement.** Axial shaft movement (end play) must not exceed 0.010 in. (0.25 mm) T.I.R. To measure axial movement, install a dial indicator with the stem bearing against the shaft shoulder as shown in Figure 8-2. Tap the shaft—first on one end then the other—with a soft hammer or mallet, reading the results.

Excessive axial shaft movement can cause the following problems:

- Pitting, fretting, or excessive wear at the point of contact between the seal's shaft packing and the shaft (or sleeve) itself. It is sometimes helpful to replace any PTFE shaft packings or secondary sealing elements with those made of the more resilient elastomer materials to reduce fretting damage.
- Spring overloading or underloading and premature seal failure.

* Courtesy Durametallic Corporation, Kalamazoo, Michigan 49001.

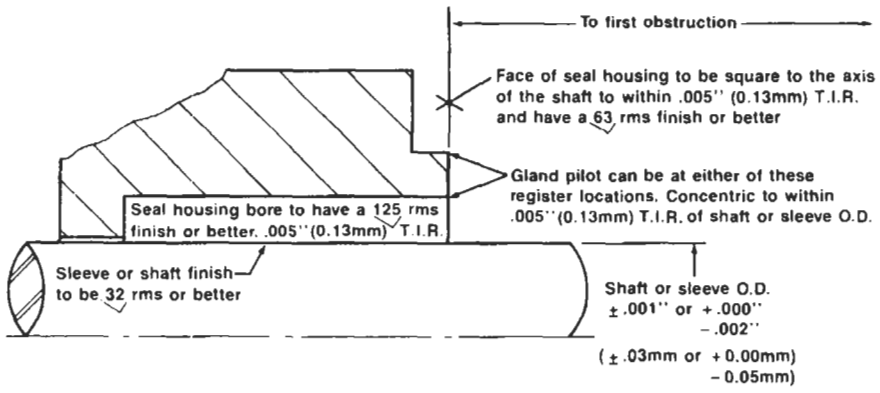

To first obstruction
Face of seal housing to be square to the axis of the shaft to within .005" (0.13mm) T.I.R. and have a 63 rms finish or better
Gland pilot can be at either of these register locations. Concentric to within .005" (0.13mm) T.I.R. of shaft or sleeve O.D.
Seal housing bore to have a 125 rms finish or better. .005" (0.13mm) T.I.R.
Sleeve or shaft finish to be 32 rms or better
Shaft or sleeve O.D. ±.001" or +.000" -.002" (±.03mm or +0.00mm -0.05mm)
• Bearings must be in good condition.
• Maximum lateral or axial movement of shaft (end play) - .010" (0.25mm) T.I.R.
• Maximum shaft runout at face of seal housing - .003" (0.07mm) T.I.R.
• Maximum dynamic shaft deflection at face of seal housing - .002" (0.05mm) T.I.R.

Figure 8-1. Seal housing requirements.

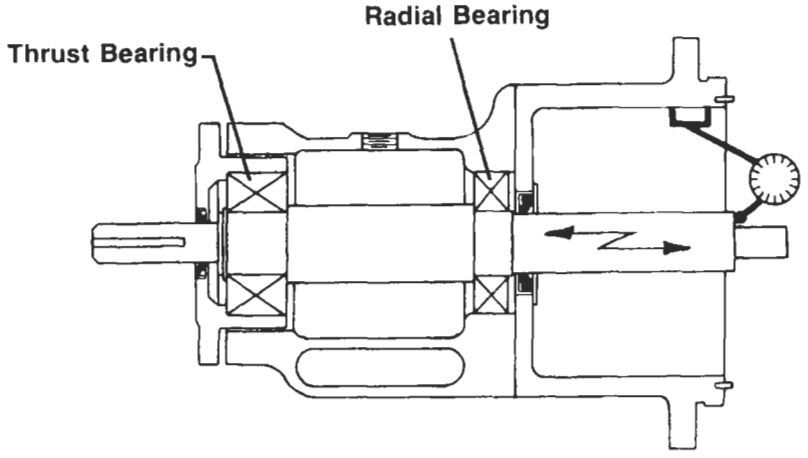


Figure 8-2. Checking for end-play.

- Chipping of seal faces. Carbon and silicon carbide faces are especially vulnerable to axial shaft movement.

3. **Radial shaft deflection.** Radial shaft deflection at the face of the seal housing must not exceed 0.002 in. (0.05 mm) Total Indicator

Reading (T.I.R.). To measure radial movement, install a dial indicator as close to the seal housing face as possible. (See Figure 8-3.) Lift the shaft or exert light pressure at the impeller end. If movement is excessive, examine for damaged radial bearings and bearing fits—especially the bearing cap bore.

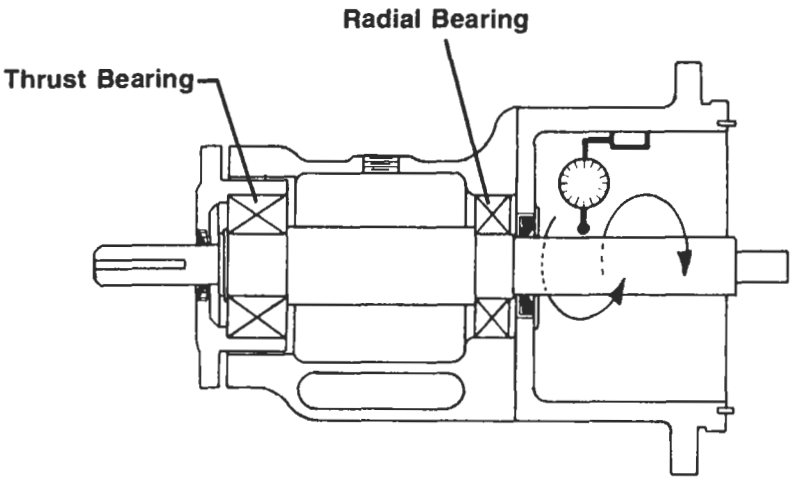


Figure 8-3. Checking for whip or deflection.

Excessive radial shaft movement can cause the following problems:

- Fretting of the shaft or sleeve.
- Excessive leakage at the seal faces.
- Excessive pump vibration, which can reduce seal life and performance.

4. **Shaft sleeve run-out.** Shaft run-out (bent shaft) must not exceed 0.003 in. (0.07 mm) at the face of the seal housing. Clamp a dial indicator to the pump housing as shown in Figure 8-4, and measure shaft run-out at two or more points on the outside dimension of the shaft. Also measure the shaft run-out at the coupling end of the shaft. If run-out is excessive, repair or replace the shaft.

   Excessive run-out can shorten the life of both the radial and the thrust bearings. A damaged bearing, in turn, will cause pump vibration and reduce the life and performance of the seal.
5. **Seal chamber face run-out.** A seal chamber face which is not perpendicular to the shaft axis can cause a serious malfunction of the mechanical seal. Because the stationary gland plate is bolted to the

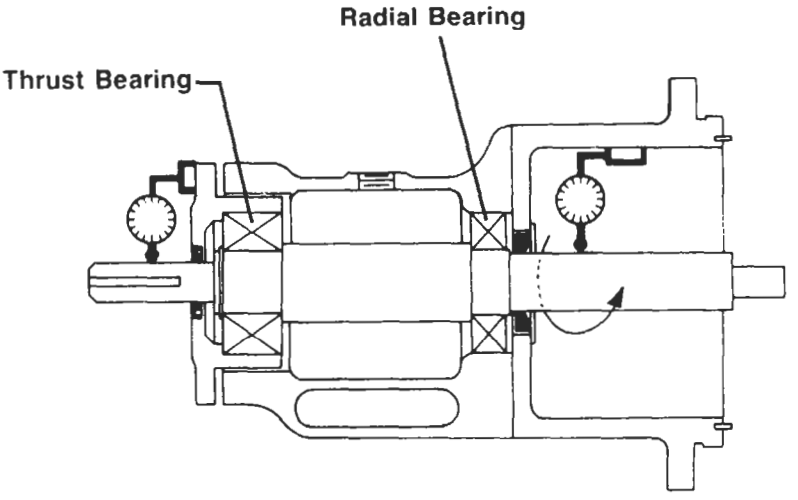


Figure 8-4. Checking for run-out.

face of the seal housing, any misalignment will cause the gland to cock, which causes the stationary element to cock and the entire seal to wobble. This condition is a major cause of fretting wear where the mechanical seal shaft packing contacts the shaft or sleeve. A seal that wobbles can also cause wear or fatigue of metal bellows or drive pins, which can cause premature seal failure.

To measure seal chamber face squareness, leave the housing bolted in place and clamp the dial indicator to the shaft as shown in Figure 8-5, with the stem against the face of the housing. The total indicator run-out should not exceed 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) T.I.R.

6. **Seal chamber register concentricity.** An eccentric chamber bore or gland register can interfere with the piloting and centering of the seal components and alter the hydraulic loading of the seal faces, resulting in reduction of seal life and performance.

   To measure chamber-bore concentricity, leave the housing bolted in place and insert the dial indicator stem well into the bore of the housing. To measure the gland register concentricity, the indicator stem should bear on the register O.D. The bore or register should be concentric to the shaft within 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) of the total indicator reading (T.I.R.).

   If the bore or register are eccentric to the shaft, check the slop or looseness in the pump-bracket fits at location "A" as shown in Figure 8-6. Corrosion, whether atmospheric or due to leakage at the gaskets, can damage these fits and make concentricity of shaft and

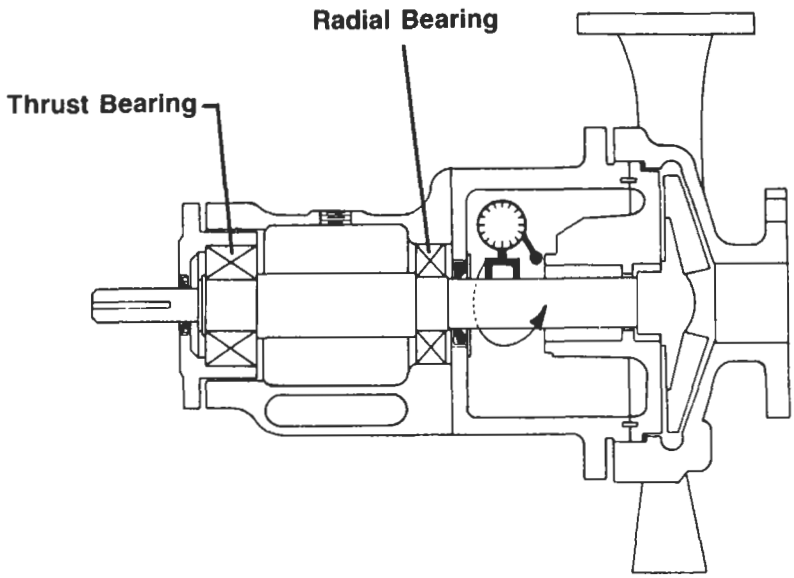


Figure 8-5. Checking for seal chamber face run-out.

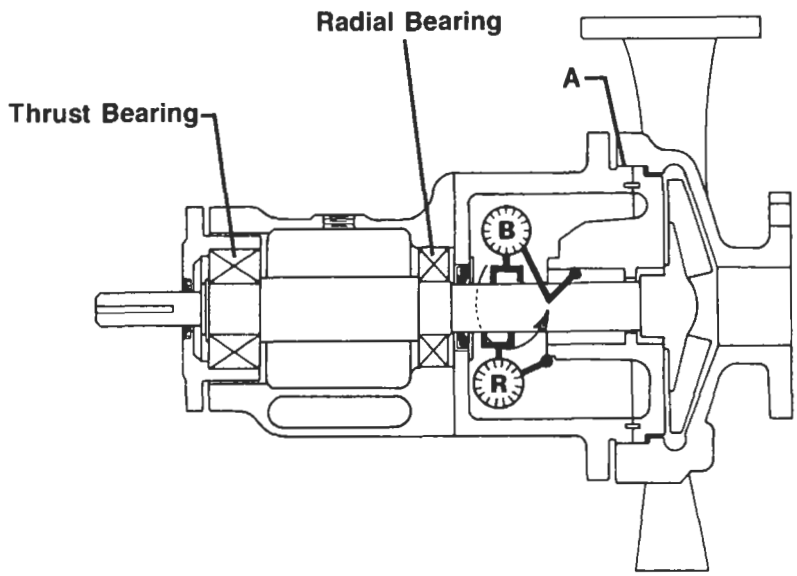


Figure 8-6. Checking for seal chamber bore concentricity.

housing bore impossible. A remedy can sometimes be obtained by welding the corroded area and re-machining it to proper dimensions, or by replacing the damaged parts. If this is not practicable, it may help to center the entire housing and dowel it in place.

7. **Driver alignment and pipe strain.** Regularly scheduled inspections are absolutely essential to maintain proper coupling and driver alignment. Follow the recommendation of the coupling manufacturer to check coupling alignment. Because temperature can affect coupling alignment due to thermal growth of pump parts, be sure to check pump coupling alignment at the operating temperature.

   Pipe strain can cause permanent damage to pumps, bearings, and seals. Many plants customarily blind the suction and discharge flanges of their inactive pumps. These blinds should be removed before aligning the pump driver. After the blinds have been removed, and while the flanges on the suction and discharge are being connected to the piping, read the dial indicator at the O.D. of the coupling half as the flanges are being secured. Any fluctuation indicates that pipe strain is present.

Seal Checkpoints

The following should be included in regular maintenance routines of seals repaired at the plant site. These points should have been prechecked on all new and factory-reconditioned components.

- Make sure that all parts are clean, especially the mating faces of the seal ring and insert.
- Check the seal rotary unit and make sure the drive pins and spring pins are free in the pin holes or slots.
- Check the setscrews in the rotary unit collar to make sure they are free in the threads. Note: Setscrews should be replaced after each use.
- Check the thickness of all gaskets against the dimensions specified in the assembly drawing. An improper gasket thickness will affect the seal setting and the spring load imposed on the seal.
- Check the fit of the gland ring to the equipment. Make sure there is no interference, binding on the studs or bolts, or other obstructions. Be sure any gland ring pilot has a reasonable guiding fit for proper seal alignment.
- Make sure all rotary unit parts of the seal fit over the shaft. Particular care should be given to PTFE V-rings.
- Check both mating faces of the seal (seal ring and insert) for nicks or scratches. Imperfections of any kind on either of these faces will cause seal leakage. Face flatness should be three lightbands or better. This will be discussed later in this chapter.

Installation of the Seal

Many seal failures can be traced to installation errors. Careful installation is a major factor in the life of a seal.

1. Read the instruction booklet and review the drawing that accompanies each seal.
2. Remove all burrs and sharp edges from the shaft or shaft sleeve, including sharp edges of keyways and threads. Replace worn shaft or sleeves.
3. Make sure the seal housing bore and face are clean and free of burrs.
4. On the shaft or sleeve, scribe a reference mark "A" that lines up with the face of the seal housing, Figure 8-7.
5. Scribe the seal setting point "B" at the desired distance from the first scribed reference mark. The seal drawing should give the seal setting dimensions from the face of the housing to the back of the rotary unit collar.
6. Prior to seal assembly, lubricate the shaft or sleeve lightly with silicone lubricant. Do not use oil or silicone at the seal faces. Keep them dry.
7. Flexibly mounted inserts should be lightly oiled and pressed in the gland by hand pressure only. Where an insert has an O-ring mounting on the back shoulder, it is usually better to nest this O-ring into the gland cavity and then push the insert into the nested O-ring.
8. Install the gland with the insert over the shaft. Place them as close to the bearing bracket as possible. Avoid bumping the insert against the shaft, because the insert may chip, crack, or break. Note: With some equipment designs, this step may come later.
9. Install the rotary unit parts on the shaft or sleeve in the proper sequence. When installing metal bellows seals, avoid overcompressing the bellows leaflets.

   Such "bottoming out" of the bellows leaflets can cause permanent distortion. Handle all secondary elastomeric seal parts and especially V-rings with extreme care. V-rings must be assembled individually and not pushed on the shaft or sleeve while they are part of the seal ring or rotary unit assembly. Avoid nicking or pinching either lip of the V-ring. When two V-rings are furnished, use both together—they work to form an effective seal.
10. Set the back of the collar at the seal setting point as described above.
11. Tighten all setscrews firmly and evenly.

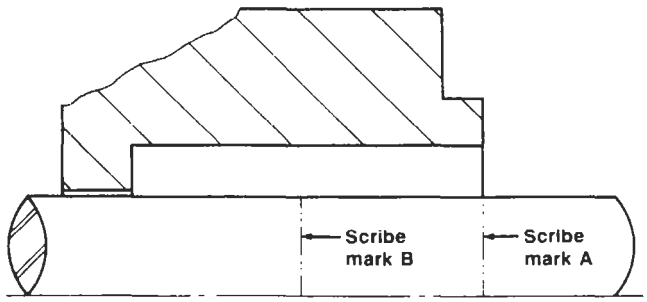


Figure 8-7. Seal collar setting.

12. Wipe the seal faces clean before completing the equipment assembly. Again, seal faces should not be lubricated, but should be left clean and dry.
13. Complete the equipment assembly, taking care when compressing the seal in the seal housing. Seat the gland ring and the gland ring gasket to the face of the housing by tightening the nuts and bolts evenly and firmly. Make sure the gland ring is not cocked. Follow proper gland gasket torquing instructions. Metal gaskets require special attention. Excessive tightening of the gland ring bolts may cause distortion that can be transmitted to the mating faces, resulting in leakage.

If the seal drawing is not availabe, the proper seal setting dimension for inside seals can be determined as follows for seals configured as shown in Figure 8-8.

1. Establish a reference mark on the shaft or sleeve flush with the face of the stuffing box (point "A" in Figure 8-8).
2. With the insert in place, stack up the gland and the rotary unit on a clean bench.
3. Compress the seal rotary unit until the spring gap, dimension "B" in Figure 8-8, equals the dimension stamped on the collar for pusher-type seals. This can be done by inserting an Allen wrench or piece of tool stock of the proper dimension between the collar and the compression unit before compressing the rotary unit.
4. Measure the distance "C" between the gasket face and the end of the collar. This is the collar-setting dimension.

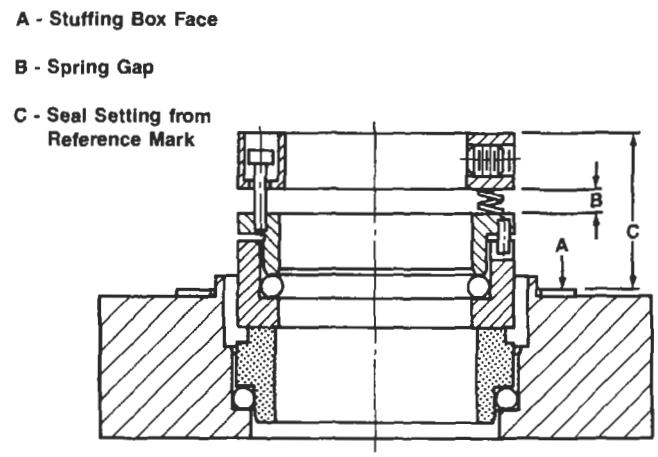


Figure 8-8. Calculation of seal collar setting.

If the seal is configured as shown in Figure 8-9, proceed as follows:

1. Measure the distance from the reference mark "A" to the face of the stationary insert in the gland plate. Be sure to include any gland gasket for proper measurement. This is shown as dimension "B" in Figure 8-9.
2. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for the correct installed length of the rotary unit (Figure 8-9, dimension "G").
3. Subtract dimension "B" from dimension "G". This is the collar setting dimension.

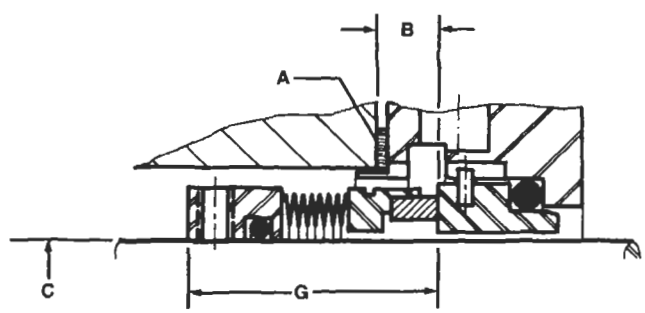


Figure 8-9. Calculation of seal collar setting.

Outside seals should be set with spring gap ("A" in Figure 8-10) equal to the dimension stamped on the seal collar.

Cartridge seals, Figure 8-11, are set at the factory and are installed as complete assemblies. No setting measurements are needed. These assemblies contain centering tabs or spacers that must be removed after the seal assembly is bolted in position and the sleeve collar is locked in place. Retain the tabs to be used when resetting the seal for impeller adjustments or when removing the seal for repairs.

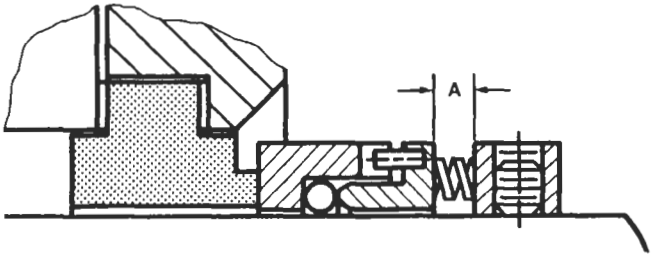


Figure 8-10. Setting for outside seal.

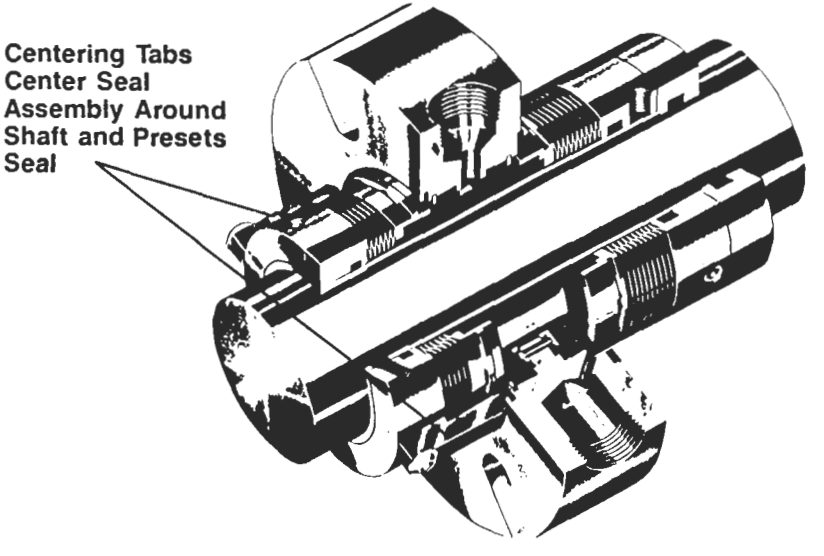


Figure 8-11. Preset cartridge seal.

Removal of the Seal

Seal parts should never be slid over sharp marks or burrs on the shaft. All residue should be cleaned from the shaft and seal parts before disassembly.

- All seal parts should be thoroughly cleaned before reassembly, including the inside bores.
- Seal faces and other seal parts should be examined closely for evidence of conditions affecting the performance and life of the seal. Unusual conditions should be carefully noted for further discussion with the seal manufacturer.

Replacing Seal Parts

Mechanical seal parts are precision produced in both flatness and finish. Every effort should be made to protect these qualities during reassembly. Knowledge of the following considerations will be helpful.

- Carbon will not take bumps or strain.
- Solid ceramic, silicon carbide, tungsten carbide, and ceramic-faced seal rings are also delicate and should be handled with extreme care.
- A used seal face should never be mated with a new seal face. Seal faces should be flat to within three lightbands.
- Inexpensive elastomer rings should never be reused except in emergencies. However, rings which seal axially against both the insert and the end of the gland plate, may be reused if necessary.

Lapping and Seal Face Flatness

The rate of flow of a liquid between two surfaces depends upon many factors, but the distance between the two surfaces is the one factor having the greatest influence. Therefore, to control leakage at the sealing faces of a mechanical seal, it is vital that the distance between these two faces be minimized. In other words, seal faces must be as flat as is reasonably possible.

Several geometric configurations for controlling the distance between two mating surfaces are available. For manufacturing and cost considerations, the mechanical seal industry utilizes the "flat-plane-versus-flat-plane" geometric configuration in the design of sealing faces. In this configuration, the distance between the two mating faces is controlled by the flatness of the two face surfaces.

Lapping and Polishing

A seal face is first lapped to clean and rough-shape the surface. Then it is polished to obtain a reflective finish. A cast iron plate with a free abrasive, or a 30-micron diamond-impregnated plate, depending on the hardness of the surface material, is recommended for the lapping process. Emery polishing paper or a 6-micron diamond-impregnated plate, once again determined by the hardness of the surface material, is recommended for the polishing process.

When the surface has been polished to a high reflective finish, light band readings can be taken to determine the degree of flatness achieved.

The round, flat plates used for lapping and polishing are available in many materials and configurations. Selection of a specific material or configuration is determined by the part to be lapped or polished. Plates are commonly made of cast iron or aluminum. Other materials such as meehanite, ceramic, or steel can also be used.

Both lapping and polishing plates must have spiral grooves, radial troughs, or circular troughs for flushing the spent abrasive and dislodged material from the surface while a piece is being worked. See Figure 8-12. A plate with a diameter at least twice the diameter of the part to be processed should be selected. Plates are normally available in sizes ranging from 6 in. to 64 in. (150 mm to 1,620 mm) in diameter.

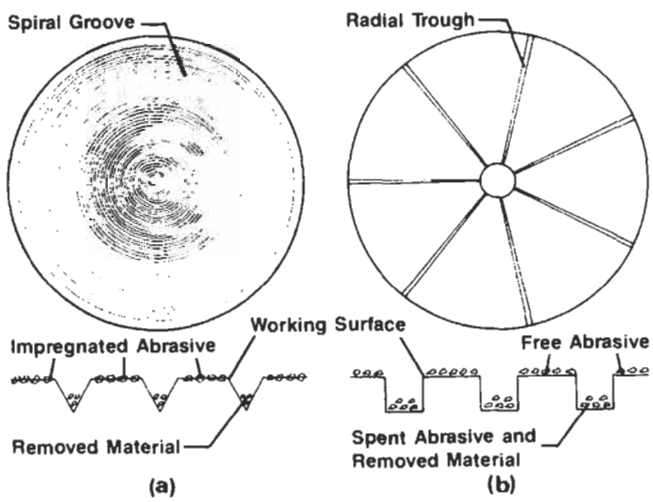


Figure 8-12. Lapping plate designs.

Plate working surfaces must be maintained flat to prevent transposition of flaws to the work piece. Polishing plates and impregnated lapping plates will require periodic re-impregnation, involving the removal of the old impregnation, the use of a loose abrasive to bring the plate back to flatness, a thorough cleaning, and then impregnation with a new abrasive.

A work piece must be applied to the lapping plate with a regular pattern of motion and a uniform pressure to ensure uniform material removal and plate wear. Special techniques, as discussed later in this chapter are recommended for hand lapping. Design features incorporated into production lapping equipment ensure more uniform results and promote uniform wear of the lapping plate surface.

An abrasive, either free or impregnated into the plate, is used to remove material from the part being processed. Abrasive particle size and material are important factors in proper lapping and polishing. The size of the abrasive particle determines the rate at which material is removed from the work piece in lapping, and controls the surface finish of the work piece in polishing.

The abrasive material for a specific application is selected according to the hardness of the work piece material. A work piece with a hardness of less than 60 on the Rockwell C scale (Rc), for example, should be lapped or polished with either an aluminum oxide or a silicon carbide abrasive. A work piece with a hardness of 60 Rc or greater should be lapped or polished with a diamond abrasive.

In impregnated-plate lapping and polishing applications, a clean lubricant should be used to reduce frictional heat and to flush away removed material. A clean mineral seal oil provides a good lubricant for these applications.

Neither a vehicle nor a lubricant is used when lapping or polishing a carbon-graphite part, because the carbon and the lubricant would form a gum which would interfere with the action of the abrasive.

In free abrasive lapping applications, a fluid vehicle is used to suspend the abrasive on the lapping plate surface. This vehicle also serves as a wetting agent for the plate. The ideal vehicle is an oil with a low viscosity but still heavy enough to carry the abrasive in suspension throughout the lapping process. A slurry of specific proportions of vehicle and abrasive is applied to the plate in closely controlled amounts. Excess slurry would tend to wash out the outer edges of the part being lapped, but too little slurry would cause the plate to dry, possibly resulting in galling between the plate and the workpiece.

A vehicle of high quality mineral seal oil is recommended for most hand lapping. In some applications water or vegetable oil can be used until a better solution is available. Two parts vehicle to one part abrasive

is the normal ratio for a hand lapping slurry. A specially formulated oil, available from the lapping equipment manufacturer, should be used for machine lapping. Four parts vehicle to one part abrasive is the normal ratio for a machine lapping slurry.

Hand Lapping and Polishing Processes

Hand lapping and polishing with a manual plate can be successfully accomplished by anyone if the simple steps in this section are carefully followed.

The sealing face surface must first be examined to determine whether it is repairable. (See Figure 8-13.) If wear is 1/32 in. (0.8 mm) or more into the sealing surface [Figure 8-13(a)] or if there is evidence of heat checking on the sealing surface [Figure 8-13(b)], the seal face should be discarded and replaced. If the wear pattern is deeper than .005 in. (.13 mm), the surface should be ground on a surface grinder before processing. Carbon may be turned on a lathe. The material of construction and its degree of hardness must then be determined.

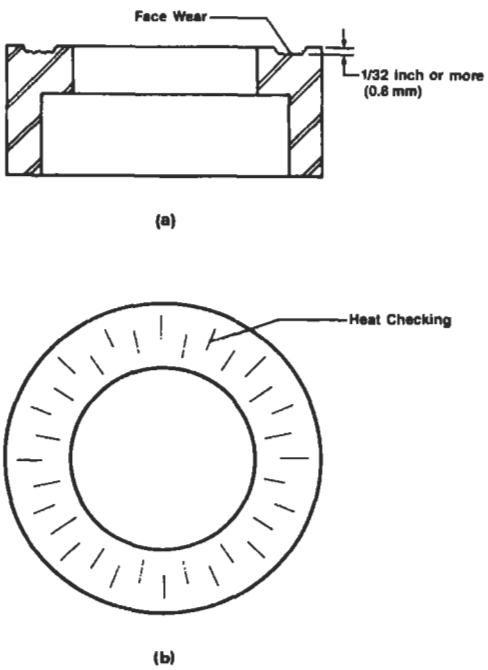


Figure 8-13. Non-repairable conditions.

Non-carbon materials with more than 60 Rockwell C hardness. Non-carbon materials with high hardness typically require a diamond-impregnated plate for both lapping and polishing. The process for lapping and polishing carbon is different from that used for the other materials and is discussed later in this chapter.

If the sealing surface of a material with hardness greater than 60 Rc shows excessive wear, that is, 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) or greater, grinding with a diamond wheel on a surface grinder may be required before lapping. Minimal wear, up to 0.005 in. (0.13 mm), can be removed by rough polishing, using a coarse micron diamond plate.

When the surface is prepared to begin lapping:

1. Select a 30-micron diamond-impregnated plate.
2. Apply mineral seal oil to plate.
3. Move part across plate in a straight, back-and-forth motion. Cover the entire plate while applying maximum down pressure. [See Figure 8-14(a).] A figure-eight pattern will not allow adequate application of pressure.
4. After the wear pattern has been removed from the part's surface, clean the plate and the part. Any residue from the coarse micron diamond particles will scratch the part surface during polishing and the above steps will have to be repeated.
5. Use a 6-micron diamond-impregnated plate for polishing.
6. Apply a mineral seal oil to the plate.
7. Using a figure-eight pattern [Figure 8-14(b)], work the part across the plate until its finish reflects enough light for flatness inspection.

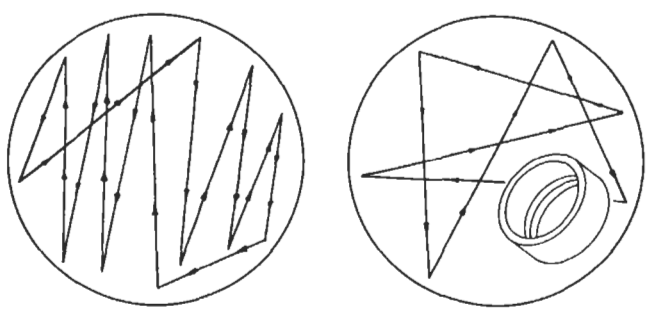


Figure 8-14. Hand motion for full plate utilization.

Carbon materials. Repeat lapping and polishing steps as above, except do not use lubricant. Oil will pick up carbon residue and become gummy. Since carbon material is relatively soft, a figure-eight motion is recommended. Lap and polish on dry non-rotating plates for best results.

Non-carbon materials with less than 60 Rockwell C hardness. The lapping slurry, consisting of an abrasive suspended in a vehicle, will control the rate of removal of material and the degree of surface finish obtained. For economic and efficient seal face lapping, the proper slurry must be selected and the proper amount must be applied.

1. Prepare a slurry of one part coarse-grit abrasive and two parts mineral seal oil. Abrasives well suited for high removal rates are often available from the seal manufacturer.
2. After shaking the slurry, apply a small amount to the plate working surface with a sweeping motion, to distribute slurry evenly across the entire surface.
3. Work the part in a figure-eight pattern across the plate. [See Figure 8-14(b).] Use the entire plate surface to maintain plate flatness. Apply maximum down pressure with the palm of the hand.
4. Continue working the part until the wear pattern has been removed.
5. Clean both the plate and the part until no residue of the coarse-grit abrasive remains. Any residual abrasive will scratch the part surface during fine lapping and the above steps will have to be repeated.
6. Prepare a slurry of one part fine-grit abrasive and one part vehicle to enhance the surface finish in preparation for polishing.
7. Repeat Steps 2 and 3.
8. Clean the plate and the part again. Any residual abrasive will scratch the part surface during polishing and the above steps will have to be repeated.
9. Affix a 4/0 Emery polishing cloth to a clean, flat surface.
10. Using a straight-line, back-and-forth motion, work the part straight across the cloth until the part's surface finish reflects enough light for flatness inspection.

Measurement of Seal Face Flatness

In the absence of ideal measuring equipment, one of the following two methods may be satisfactory to detect out-of-flat areas on a seal face surface.

Flatness can be determined by an impression test. Lightly oil a known flat surface and set the face of a part squarely down over the oiled area.

taking care not to rotate the part. When the part is lifted from the oiled surface, any dull areas appearing in the impression made on the oil coating indicate lack of flatness.

Flatness can also be determined by a comparison test. Paint toolmaker's bluing on a sealing face surface. Press a known flat surface to the face, rotate slightly, and remove. High areas on the painted surface of the face will be wiped clean, indicating lack of flatness. By far the most accurate way of inspecting a seal face for an out-of-flat condition is through the use of an optical flat and monochromatic light.

Optical flat. An optical flat is a transparent quartz or pyrex disc having at least one surface flat within 0.000001 in. to 0.000005 in. (0.025 to 0.125 microns). (See Figure 8-15.) The least expensive optical flats, those in the 0.000005 in. (0.025 microns) accuracy range, are suitable for measuring seal face flatness.

Select an optical flat with a diameter at least equal to the diameter of the part being measured. Optical flats in sizes up to 8 in. (200 mm) in diameter are available from most seal manufacturers. Care must be taken not to slide or lay the flat side of an optical flat on any rough surface, because it is easily scratched.

Figure 8-15. Optical flat.

Monochromatic light. White light from the sun is actually a combination of several colors, each of which represents a different wavelength of electromagnetic energy. If sunlight were used to measure seal face flatness, each color would generate its own pattern of bands on the optical flat. A far more practical light source for this purpose is one that provides light of only one color—a monochromatic light source.

Helium gas in a tube, when excited by an electrical charge, emits fewer colors than sunlight. One of these colors—yellow orange—is so prominent it overrides all the others. The yellow-orange wavelength is measurable and constant at 23.13 millionths of an inch (0.58 microns). A helium lamp. therefore, is described as emitting a monochromatic light of that wavelength.

Flatness Readings. After a seal part has been polished, it is placed under a monochromatic light, and an optical flat is positioned over its surface. Both the surface of the optical flat and the surface of the part must be absolutely dry and free from any particles of dirt, dust, or lint.

A pattern of light and dark lines appears where the reflection of the surface of the part and the reflection of the surface of the optical flat meet. The dark lines, called "light interference bands," will be visible every half-wavelength. Therefore, one interference band equals one-half wavelength or 11.6 micro-inches (0.29 microns). These bands are used to measure the degree of flatness of the surface. The presence either of several straight interference bands, or of a single circular interference band, indicates a surface that is flat within 11.6 micro-inches (0.29 microns).

When several curved interference bands appear, the degree of flatness is measured by plotting an imaginary straight-line tangent with one of the curved interference bands. If this straight line intersects only one interference band, the lapped surface is said to be flat within one light band. When two or more curved interference bands are intersected by this line, the degree of flatness is determined by multiplying the number of intersected bands by 11.6. Thus, if three interference bands are intersected by a straight tangent line, the surface is out-of-flat by three light bands or 34.8 micro-inches (0.87 microns).

Although a maximum tolerance of three light bands is considered adequate for proper seal face performance, seal faces from experienced manufacturers consistently exhibit a flatness between one and two light bands. Special concave or convex geometries are available if special conditions warrant.

A seal face with a diameter greater than 10 in. (250 mm) and a thin cross-section is difficult to measure precisely for flatness.

See Figures 8-16 and 8-17 for sample light-band readings. Note that when the band pattern is inconsistent or seems to be missing some bands, as in Figure 8-17(e), (f), and (g), the tangent line "AB" is drawn to connect the two points at which two imaginary radii—90° apart and perpendicular to the axis of the part—intersect with the outer circumference of the seal face.

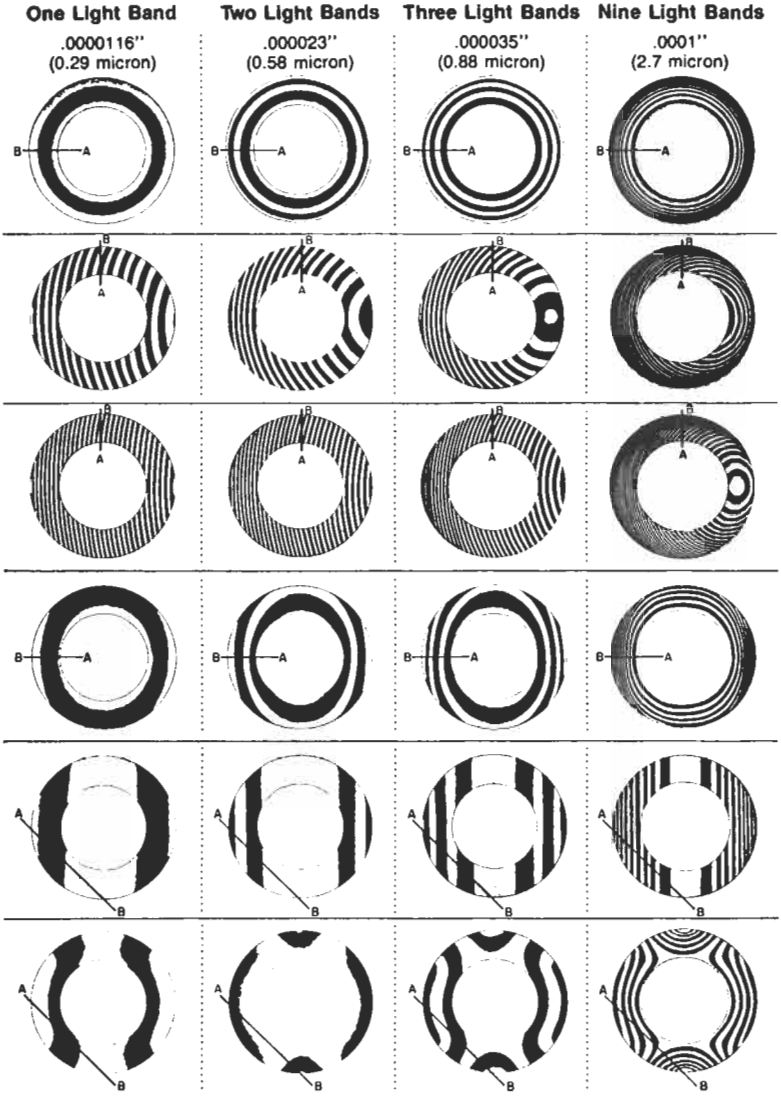
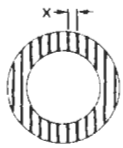
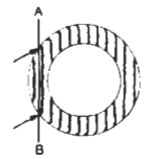


Figure 8-16. Band patterns that indicate flatness accuracy.



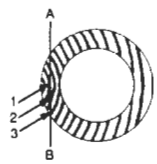
(a)

FLAT—The most prominent seal face band pattern produced at Duralmetallic is flat to within one light band. Distance "X" is dependent on the amount of air between the optical flat and the face, and has nothing to do with flatness.



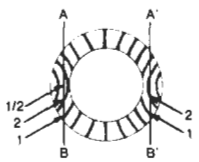
(b)

Bands bend at outer edges and indicate wash out of the periphery due to the polishing process. This is a normal pattern and is related to flatness. Line AB intersects one black band. The areas contacted by AB show the face out 1 light band.



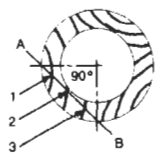
(c)

Bands bend on one side and show an out of flat condition of 3 light bands. Since line AB intersects 3 bands as illustrated by arrows, this pattern is out of flat beyond the acceptable quality level imposed on *Dura Seal* seal faces.



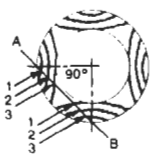
(d)

2 bands are intersected by Line AB and fall between 2 at the center of the ring indicating 2½ light band curvature. Line A'B' intersects 2 bands that curve in opposite direction to those intersected by Line AB. This indicates an egg shaped curvature of 2½ light bands.



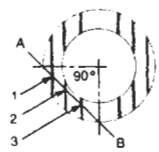
(e)

Bands show a saddle shape out of flat condition of 3 light bands.



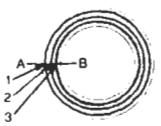
(f)

Bands again show a saddle shape out of flat condition. However, in this illustration, we have 6 bands intersected or 6 light bands out of flatness.



(g)

Band pattern shows a cylindrical shaped part with a 3 light band reading error.



(h)

Band symmetrical pattern indicates a concave or convex flat. In this case, we count the total number of bands on the part. Line AB intersects 3 bands. Light pressure on the part will cause the symmetrical lines to move. If the lines move toward the center the surface is concave. If the lines move toward the edge the surface is convex.

Figure 8-17. Lightband readings.

Once flatness has been achieved, a seal face must be kept clean while being returned to service.

INSTALLATION OF STUFFING BOX PACKING*

Maintenance of a stuffing box consists primarily of packing replacement. This may sound simple, but certain rules must be followed if the best results are to be obtained from the packing.

* Source: PACKING PUMP PACKINGS, H. A. Schneller, Allis Chalmers Mfg. Co.

The following procedure should be preceded by a careful study of the pump manufacturer's instruction manual to determine the correct type and size, number of packing rings, location of lantern ring, and possible special features of construction, operation, or maintenance.

1. Remove gland and packing. If the box contains a lantern ring, make certain that all the packing inboard of it is also removed. Flexible packing hooks are available.
2. Inspect the shaft or shaft sleeve for score marks or rough spots. A badly worn sleeve or shaft must be replaced; minor wear must be dressed smooth and concentric. Inspect lantern ring to make sure that holes and channels are not plugged up.
3. Clean bore of box thoroughly and be sure sealing-fluid passages are open.
4. Depending on operating conditions, it is recommended that at least the outside diameter of the replacement packing rings be lightly oiled or greased. Start by installing one end of the first ring in the box and bring the other end around the shaft until it is completely inserted. NOTE: Preformed or die-molded rings will ensure an exact fit to the shaft or sleeve and stuffing box core. A uniform packing density is an added benefit since molded rings are partially compressed. If the packing comes in continuous coil form, make sure that the ends are cut square, on a correctly sized mandrel.
5. Push the packing ring to the bottom of the box with the aid of a split bushing. Leave the bushing in place, and replace the gland. Pull up on the gland and seat the ring firmly and squarely. Ideally, the split bushing should be a slip fit over the shaft and in the bore. This precaution will prevent the formation of a lip on the packing being seated.
6. Repeat this method for each ring, staggering the joints 90°. It is especially important to seat the first few bottom rings firmly, otherwise the rings immediately under the gland will do most of the sealing.
7. The location of the lantern ring, if used, should be predetermined. This can be done via the pump manufacturer's instruction manual or by counting the number of packing rings on the inboard and outboard side of it while removing them. Proper location at the point of fluid-seal is necessary.
8. Replace the gland and tighten the gland bolts. Make sure that the gland enters the stuffing box squarely. A cocked gland causes uneven compression and can damage the shaft or sleeve when the pump is placed in operation.

9. Keep the packing under pressure for a short period of time, say 30 seconds, so that it can cold flow and adjust itself.
10. Loosen the gland; allow packing to fully expand with no fluid pressure in the pump, then tighten the gland and bring it up evenly to the packing, but this time only finger tight. The packing should be loose enough to enable you to turn the pump shaft by hand, assuming that the pump is not too large to turn by hand.
11. Precheck the lines to the lantern ring or quench gland for flow and proper pressure.
12. Start the pump. The leakage may be excessive, but do not take up on the gland bolts for the 20–30 minute run-in period. If too tight, shut pump down and repeat steps 8–11 or keep pump running and loosen gland bolts a couple of flats.
13. If leakage is still more than normal after the run-in period, tighten the gland bolts evenly, one flat or a sixth of a turn at a time. This should be done at 20–30 minute intervals until leakage is reduced to normal. This may take several hours, but will pay for itself many times over in maximum packing and sleeve life.

Steady Leakage Flow is a Must

Leakage must be sufficient to carry away the packing friction heat. Without sufficient leakage—a steady flow, as opposed to a drip—the packing will burn and the shaft or sleeve will be scored. It follows, then, that a planned maintenance program must be developed around the amount of leakage that is considered normal. Pumps in continuous service may require a daily, or even an hourly inspection. Inspection need be no more than a visual check to determine any deviation from the normal leakage, and make slight corrections as required.

Correct procedure and scheduled maintenance will make the repacking of a pump a predictable job rather than an emergency repair.

Welded Repairs to Pump Shafts and Other Rotating Equipment Components*

This section will highlight some of the technical aspects of welded repairs to rotating equipment, with particular emphasis on pump shafts. We believe this to be a reasonable alternative to new part installation.

* Courtesy of Mr. Thomas Doody, Aramco, Dhahran, Saudi Arabia. From a paper presented at the National Petroleum Refiners Association, Plant Maintenance Conference, Feb. 8–11, 1983.

Welded repairs to rotating equipment can be an extremely useful maintenance method; however, it should be emphasized that welding is *not* a panacea for all problems. In fact, many people refuse to recommend or even consider welded repairs on any rotating components. This reluctance is probably due to unsuccessful experiences in controlling distortion. However, other methods of reconditioning, such as sleeving, plating, and spraying also have their limitations.

The primary problems with these alternative repair methods are the limitations on allowable coating thickness and lack of bonding with the substrate. For example, sleeving has both minimum and maximum thickness limitations and is also limited to the stepped end areas of a shaft.

The advantages of welded repairs are:

1. Full fusion of the overlay with the base material is achieved.
2. Shaft strength is maintained.
3. The corrosion or wear resistance can be improved over the original material.
4. The overlay thickness is essentially unlimited (minimum or maximum).

The only real disadvantage of welded repairs is the possibility of distortion. For many engineering applications, this is of negligible concern. However, for most rotating equipment components, this is the major concern and the reason many people recommend against attempting welded repairs. If the distortion problem can be eliminated, then welded repairs can be used with confidence as a standard maintenance procedure. The techniques discussed here are designed primarily to minimize distortion.

How to Decide if Welded Repairs are Feasible

These questions must be answered in determining if welded repairs are suitable for a particular situation:

1. *What is the damage and what type of repair is required?*

As previously mentioned, the advantages of welded repairs must be balanced against the increased risk of shaft warpage. However, there are situations where welding is the only possible method of saving a shaft and returning it to service. A good example is damage to a coupling area, where all other repair techniques are unsuitable because of the mechanical strength and bonding requirements.

In general, the damaged area should not have reduced the shaft diameter by more than 15 percent and should not exceed 10 percent of the shaft length. The repair should be limited generally to one area or two well-separated areas. These figures are only guidelines; there is no hard infor-

mation on which these values are based. Situations exceeding these restrictions may be repairable but a more careful consideration of shaft strength, possible distortion, and economics needs to be made on an individual basis.

2. *What is the shaft material?*

The shaft material must have good weldability. Some common shaft materials that can be included in this category are:

304 Stainless Steel
316 Stainless Steel
Monel 400
Monel K-500
Nitronic 50 (XM-19)
Ferralium
A 638 Gr 660
Inconel 625

Typical compositions are listed in Table 8-1.

Table 8-1
Nominal composition of materials used for rotating equipment weld repairs.

	C	Mn	Fe	Cr	Ni	Mo	Cu	Other
304	.08	2.0	bal.	18.0 – 20.0	8.0 – 10.5	—	—	—
316	.08	2.0	bal.	16.0 – 18.0	10.0 – 14.0	2.0 – 3.0	—	—
MONEL* 400	0.12	2.0	2.5	—	63.0 – 70.0	—	bal.	
MONEL* K-500	0.13	1.5	2.0	—	63.0 – 70.0	—	bal.	Al 2.8 Ti 0.6
NITRONIC* 50 (XM-19)	0.06	4.0 – 6.0	bal.	20.5 – 23.5	11.5 – 13.5	1.5 – 3.0	—	Cb 0.1 – 0.3 V 0.1 – 0.3 N 0.2 – 0.4
FERRALIUM*	0.04	0.8	bal.	25.5	5.2	3.5	1.7	N 0.17
A 638 Gr 660	.08	2.0	bal.	13.5 – 16.0	24.0 – 27.0	1.0 – 1.5	—	Al .35 B .001 – .01 Ti 1.9 – 2.35 V .1 – .5
INCONEL* 625	.10	0.5	5.0	20.0 – 23.0	bal.	8.0 – 10.0	—	Cb 3.15 – 4.15 Ti 0.40 Al 0.40

* TRADEMARKS: Monel and Inconel - International Nickel Co.
Nitronic - ARMCO Inc.
Ferralium - Langley Alloys Ltd.
Stellite - Cabot Corp.

All of these materials are very ductile, do not exhibit hardened heat-affected zones, and will usually maintain adequate corrosion resistance in the "as welded" conditions.

There does appear to be a common problem with dimensional stability of the Ferralium and the 300 series stainless steel. These materials appear to creep, even under static conditions. The other materials listed do not seem to be quite as sensitive to this problem. It is obvious that welded repairs will exacerbate this situation, but it is not possible to address this problem at this time.

Shaft materials that should *not* normally be considered for welding are:

4140
4340
410 Stainless Steel

Although many companies have probably done emergency or spot repairs on shafts of these materials, it should be emphasized that welded repairs are not generally recommended.

3. *What is the overlay material?*

Given the previously mentioned shaft materials that would be considered for welded repairs, Inconel 625 (AWS A5.13 ERNiCrMo-3) would normally be selected as the filler metal. Although other materials could be used, it is easiest to standardize on one filler metal that gives a deposit of exceptional corrosion resistance. The deposit may or may not match the tensile strength of the original shaft material, but since the deposit is extremely ductile and has complete fusion at the interface, it has only a marginal effect on total shaft strength. It should be remembered that alternative repair methods require undercutting the shaft diameter, thus permanently and perhaps significantly reducing the total shaft strength.

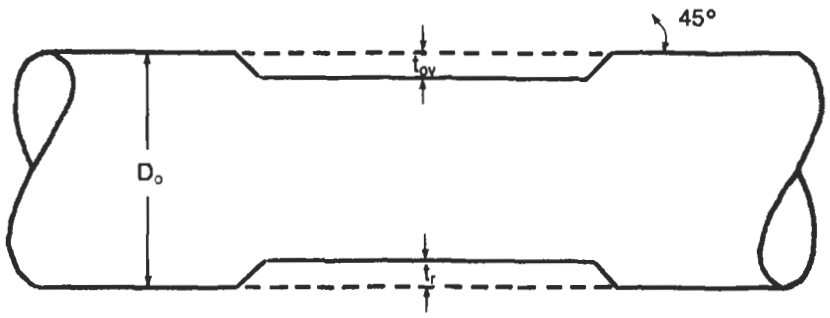
For other components, such as wear rings, Stellite 6 (AWS A5.13 RCoCr-A) can be used to give a hard, wear resistant, anti-galling deposit. The Stellite overlay requires a more careful application because the deposit is crack sensitive. As a result, the depth of overlay is restricted and repairs to the overlay may be difficult.

Other overlay materials might be required for special cases but these would need to be considered on an individual basis.

Repair Techniques

1. *Shaft Preparation* (Figure 8-18)

The damaged area should be undercut by machining the shaft, but the amount of material removed should be limited as much as possible. For a



t_{ov} = 1/32–1/16-inch (0.8–1.6 mm) for corrosion or wear resistant overlays
t_r = 7.5% of shaft diameter (D_o) for repair of mechanical damage

Figure 8-18. Shaft preparation by machining.

shaft with only surface-type damage—such as pitting corrosion—the depth of cut should be between 1/32 and 1/16 in. (0.8 to 1.6 mm). The minimum depth of cut is specified to avoid having the fusion line positioned directly on the final machined surface. The maximum depth is limited in order to reduce distortion. For mechanical damage, the depth should not have reduced the shaft diameter by more than 15 percent, i.e., depth not to exceed 7.5 percent × D. The edges of all machined areas should be tapered at 45° to ensure good sidewall fusion.

The area to be welded must be thoroughly cleaned and degreased.

2. *Welding Procedure*

The GTAW (TIG)* process should always be used in order to limit the heat input and reduce the possibility of weld defects. The welding current should be reduced to where good fusion and adequate bead thickness are still obtained but without resorting to long dwell times. There is a trade-off between current, travel speed, and filler rod diameter. These variables need to be adjusted to give the lowest heat input in order to control distortion.

In general, a current of 100A or less (using a 3/32 in. EWTh-2 tip) and a filler rod size of 3/32 or 1/8-in. (2.5 or 3.2 mm) diameter should be used.

* Gas-Tungsten-Arc-Welding (Tungsten-Inert-Gas)

3. *Welding Technique*

The shaft should be well-supported on rollers and mounted in a turner. The shaft is to be rotated at all times during welding and for 30 minutes after completion. The rotational speed should be set for the welding speed (2–3 in. per minute). This will usually be about 0.1–0.2 revolutions per minute for most large shafts.

The welding is always done in a spiral pattern (Figure 8-19). The undercut depth is limited in order to obtain the required thickness in one thin pass. This helps to minimize distortion by limiting the volume of weld metal and reducing the heat input. The maximum bead width should be limited to 3/8-in. (10 mm). As a minimum, one complete circumferential bead should be completed before stopping or interrupting the welding sequence. In general, welding is started on the edge to be repaired closest to the middle of the shaft and should proceed toward the shaft end.

The maximum interpass temperature is limited to 350°F (175°C). This is of primary importance since the thermal profile of the heat-affected zone is a major determinant of residual stress and distortion. As heat build-up occurs, the width of the heat-affected zone increases, which increases shrinkage.

In one case, the shaft runouts were monitored during a portion of the welding. It was found that shaft end deflections (the weld area was 20 in. from the end) of up to .015 in. (0.38 mm) occurred during the actual welding but would return to less than 0.005 in. (.13 mm) during cooling periods.

Some cold straightening may be required to correct any residual distortion, but this has not usually been a difficult problem.

The finish-machined shaft surface should be completely free of any defects, such as porosity or lack of fusion. Other components, such as hardfacing on wear rings or impellers, are not as critical and an acceptance criterion for rounded indications (porosity) has been adopted.

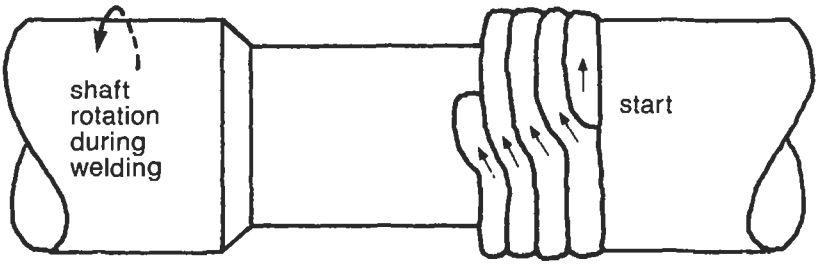


Figure 8-19. Spiral welding sequence for shafts.

Case Histories

A number of recent experiences are summarized below:

Pump Shafts, all overlaid with Inconel 625:

1. *Water injection pump* (Figures 8-20 and 8-21)—Monel K-500 shaft, 5-in. dia, approximately 27 in. length overlaid on coupling end, 1/16-in. deep; approximately 21 in. length overlaid on thrust end, 1/32–1/16-in. deep. Successful.
2. Numerous other water injection pumps (identical to 1)—small areas on shaft ends: Locknut areas, O-ring seal areas, etc. All successful.
3. *Seawater vertical lift pumps shafts*—Monel K-500 shaft, 5-in. dia. Overlaid at both ends (coupling and bearing area) and center bearing. All successful.
4. *Water injection pump*—A 638 Gr 660 shaft, 5-in. dia. Repair of mechanical damage (3/4-in. wide, 3/16-in. deep). Successful.
5. *Brine injection pump*—XM-19 shaft, 5-in. dia. Numerous areas with corrosion damage, of which 8 were impeller fit areas; up to 1/8-in. deep. Unsuccessful.

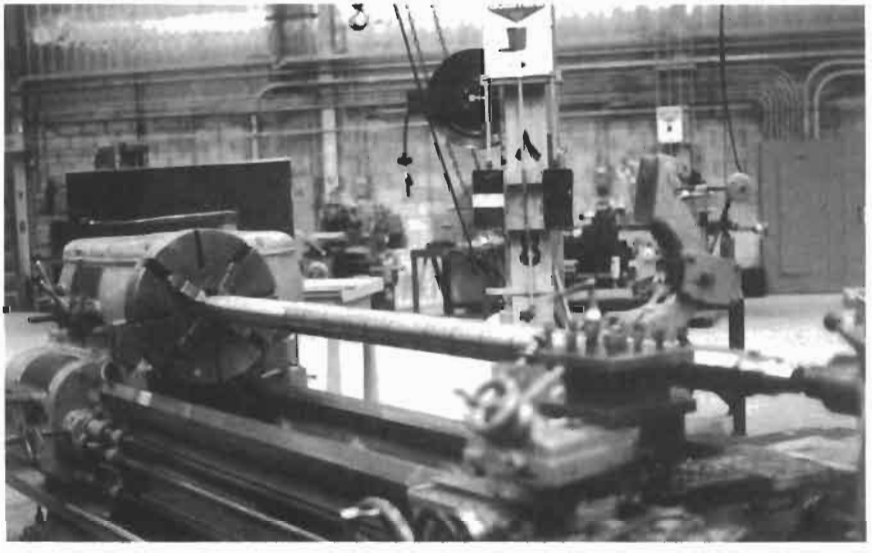


Figure 8-20. General view of repaired shaft during machining.

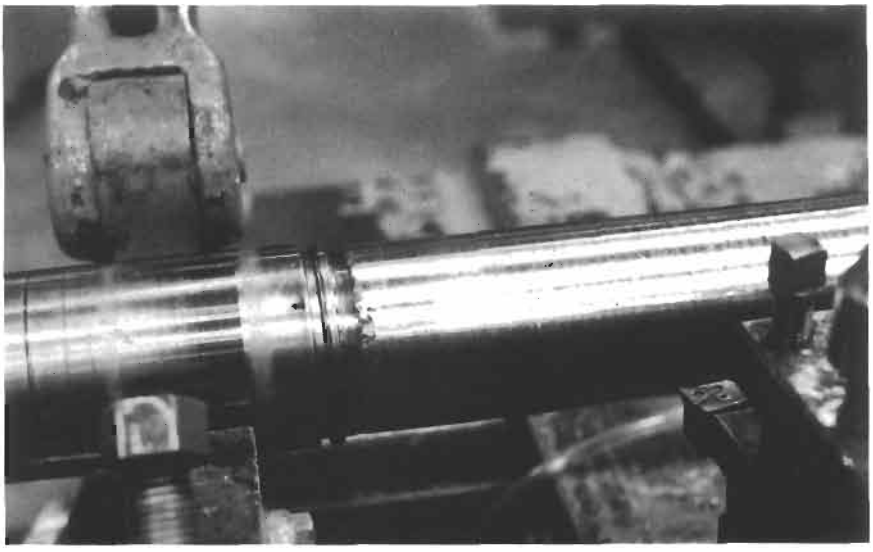


Figure 8-21. Edge of weld repair area in the rough machined condition.

Since any unsuccessful attempt should generate as much useful information as a successful result, it is worthwhile to discuss the lessons learned from this last case:

a. The undercut depth may have been excessive (specified at 1/16 to 1/8-in.), which when combined with excessive and unnecessary overfill, caused excessive residual stress and distortion.
b. A large number of separate repairs on the same shaft can create complex distortions that are difficult to correct by straightening. A single repair, even if over a large area, will usually create only a simple bend that can be easily machined and straightened. These particular repairs were closely spaced with critical tolerance areas between them. It was not possible to mechanically straighten the shaft to correct the variety of distortions in these critical areas.

Other Components

1. *Impellers*

   Water injection pump impellers (CF8M) are routinely repaired by welding, such as for cavitation damage and bore dimension buildup. A modification has now been instituted to eliminate the

impeller wear rings by direct Stellite overlay on the impeller. If, for example, the pump is a 10-stage design and over 50 pumps are in operation, any potential savings for even one part are well amplified. In addition, the elimination of the wear ring also eliminates the problems of stellited wear ring installation and fracture during operational upsets.

The basic procedure involves building up the impeller shoulder with E316L electrodes (SMAW* process) to the specified wear ring diameter, machining .060 in. undersize on the diameter (.030-in. cut), Stellite 6 overlay (GTAW process), and final machining to size (Figures 8-22 and 8-23).

Using this procedure, matched spare sets of impellers and case wear rings are produced, which are exchanged as a complete set for the existing components during a pump rebuild.

---

* Submerged Metal Arc Welding.

Figure 8-22. Impeller with direct overlay of Stellite to replace wear rings.

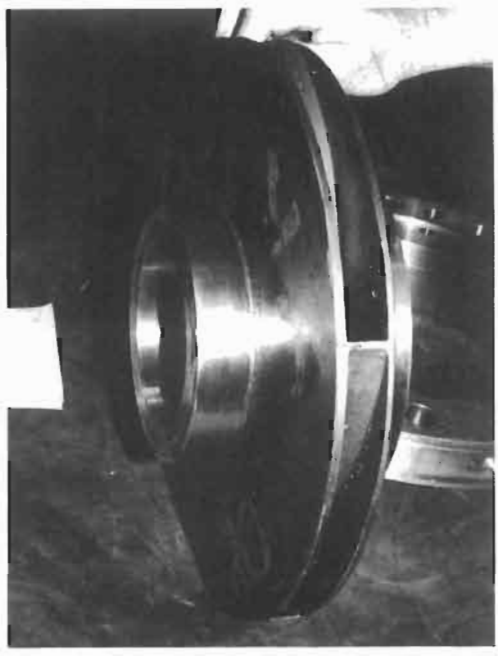


Figure 8-23. Impeller with direct Stellite overlay in final machined condition.

As mentioned previously, an important part of the procedure is to limit the heat input, particularly during the buildup of the shoulder using SMAW electrodes. If this is not controlled, distortion of the impeller shrouds can occur. In order to prevent this, 1/8-in. diameter electrodes, a stringer bead technique, and a maximum interpass temperature of 350°F are specified.

2. *Water Injection Pump Case*

   Due to a combination of the water chemistry and the pump design, the carbon steel pump cases were experiencing interstage leakage due to erosion/corrosion under the case wear rings and along the case split line faces. The repair procedure developed consists of undercutting (1/8-in. deep) the centerline bore and the inner periphery of the split line face. These areas are overlaid with Inconel 182 (AWS A5.11 ENiCrFe-3). After rough machining, the cases are stress relieved and then machined to final dimensions (Figures 8-24 and 8-25). The erosion/corrosion problem has been effectively eliminated while providing a significant savings compared to the cost of a stainless or alloy replacement case.

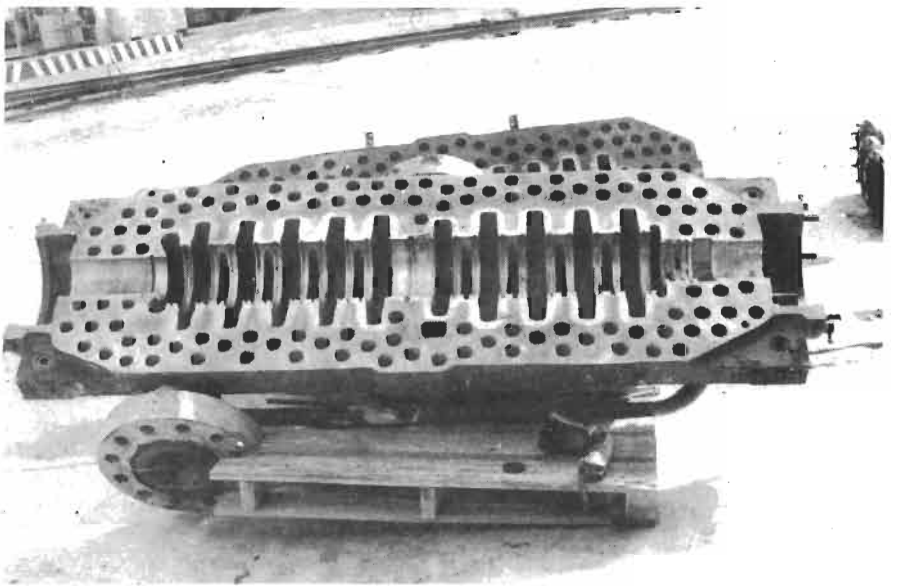


Figure 8-24. Pump case with overlay along centerline bore and edge of split line face.

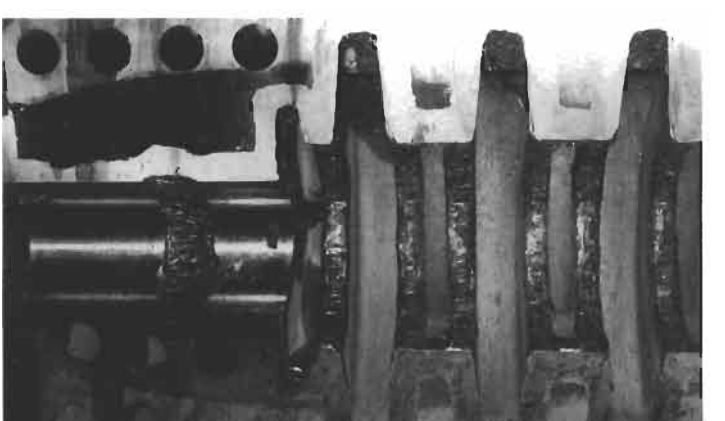


Figure 8-25. Close-up of pump case overlay in the partially machined condition.

3. *Seal Flanges*
   The Monel seal flanges (glands) on a water injection pump were experiencing pitting corrosion on the sealing faces. A localized overlay using Inconel 625 (Figure 8-26) has eliminated the problem.
4. *Impeller Wear Rings*
   Prior to the decision to hardface directly on the impeller, attempts were made to fabricate replacement wear rings. The first attempts used core billets as raw stock, however, it appears easier to use solid bar stock. The OD is overlaid before drilling the center bore.

Unsolved Problems

1. Split bushings have not yet been successfully overlaid. This is due to the nonuniform stresses that are created. The distortion resulting from these unbalanced stresses can be enormous. These stresses also change significantly during machining; thus, it is extremely difficult to obtain the proper dimensions.
2. Materials such as 4140, 4340, and 410 SS have not been included in this discussion, although some 4140 shafts have been welded for emergency repairs. For these materials, the primary concern is the possibility of cracking in the hard heat-affected zone formed during welding. Cracking can occur either during (or slightly after) welding due to delayed hydrogen cracking or during service. If a temper

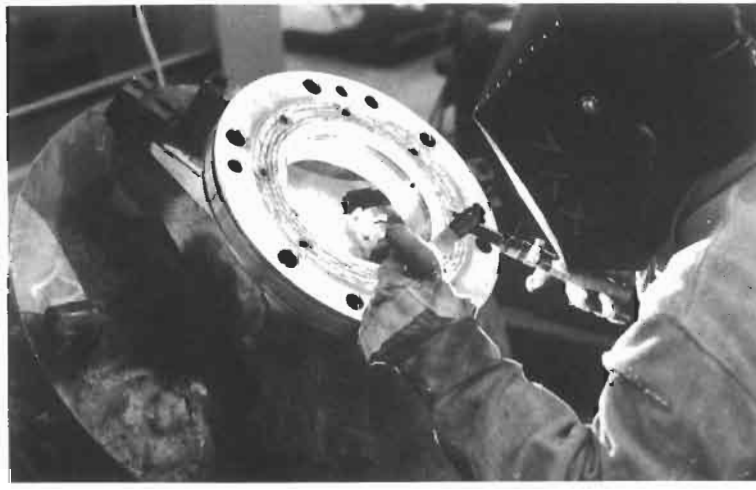


Figure 8-26. Overlaying of seal flange faces.

bead technique can be effectively developed or if a vertical localized post-weld heat treatment could be accomplished without shaft distortion, then welded repairs to these materials might also become feasible.

Outlook and Conclusions

1. The possibility of using a low temperature stress relief of 600° to 800°F (315° to 425°C) for several hours has been considered for the impeller and wear ring repairs; however, this has not yet been tried on a controlled basis in order to judge its effectiveness.
2. The use of heat absorbing compounds may be tried in order to minimize heat buildup for more critical components, such as shaft repairs.

We conclude:

- Experience has shown that welded repairs to shafts and other rotating equipment components can be successfully accomplished.
- Welding techniques and procedures must be selected in order to minimize distortion. This includes the use of low heat inputs and special sequences.
- Filler metal selection can provide improved properties, such as corrosion and wear resistance, over the original base metal.

High Speed Shaft Repair

In the foregoing we saw several successful pump shaft repair techniques described. Quite often the restoration of low speed shafts with less damage than we saw previously does not represent any problems. Flame spraying by conventional oxyacetylene methods most often will lead to satisfactory results. The market abounds in a variety of flame spray equipment, and most in-house process plant maintenance shops have their preferred makes and techniques. We would now like to deal with the question of how to repair damaged journals, seal areas, and general geometry of high speed turbomachinery shafts. We will mainly focus on centrifugal compressor and turbine rotor shafts in excess of 3,600 revolutions per minutes.

Four repair methods can generally be identified : Two, that result in the restoration of the original diameter, i.e.,

1. Flame spraying—hard surfacing
2. Chemical plating

The other two methods result in a loss of original diameter. They are:

1. Polishing
2. Turning down the diameter

Chemical Plating. Later, in Chapter 10, we will discuss the technique of industrial hard chrome plating of power engine cylinders. Worn bearing journals, shrink fit areas of impellers and turbine wheels, thrust collar areas and keyed coupling hub tapers have been successfully restored using industrial hard chrome. We do not see much benefit in describing hard chrome specifications. We recommend, however, that our readers always consult a reputable industrial hard chrome company.

Since chrome plating is too hard to be machined, grinding is the only suitable finishing process. Again, experience and skill of the repair organization is of the utmost importance: Soft or medium grinding wheels should be applied at the highest possible, but safe speeds. Coolant must be continuous and copious. Only light cuts not exceeding 0.0003 in. (7.5 μm) should be taken, as heavy cuts can cause cracking and heat checks.

As a rule of thumb, final ground size of a chrome plated shaft area should not exceed 0.007 to 0.010 in. Chrome plating for radial thickness in excess of these guidelines may require more than one chrome plating operation coupled with intermediate grinding operations. Knowing this, it would be well to always determine the required time for a shaft chrome plating project before a commitment is made.

Flame spray coatings. The available flame spray methods will be described in Figure 10-2 of Chapter 10. As of this writing (1984), the authors consider the detonation gun, jet gun, and plasma arc processes acceptable spray techniques in high speed machinery. There is, however, reason to believe that other attractive techniques will become available before long. We believe that coatings applied by conventional oxyacetylene processes tend to have a weaker bond, lower density, and a poorer finish than other coatings. Further, there are too many things "that can go wrong," a risk to which we would not want to subject high speed machinery components. The authors know of an incident where a critical shaft had been allowed to be stored several hours before oxyacetylene metallizing. Dust and atmospheric humidity subsequently caused a problem with the coating well after the machine was up and running. In conclusion, we think that the occasional unavailability of D-gun or plasma coating facilities and the high cost of these methods far outweigh the risk that is inherent in applying oxyacetylene flame sprays.

Shaft repair by diameter reduction. In polishing up the shaft journal, minor nicks and scratches can be dressed up by light stoning or strapping. It goes without saying that depth of scratches, affected journal area, roundness and taper—or shaft geometry—are factors that should be considered when making the repair decision. Generally, scratch depths of .001 in. or less are acceptable for use. A good method is to lightly run the edge of a coin over the affected area in order to obtain a feel for scratch severity. Deeper scratches, from .001 in. to approximately .005 in. must be strapped or stoned. Usually scars deeper than .005 in. should call for a clean-up by machining of the shaft.

Strapping. This is done with a long narrow strip of #200 grit emery cloth. The strap is first soaked in kerosene and abraded against a steel surface to remove sharper edges of the abrasive material. It is then wrapped around the journal at least two times and pulled back and forth in order to achieve a circumferential polishing motion. This can best be accomplished by two persons—one on each end of the strap. The amount of material removed from the journal diameter must not exceed .002 in.

Stoning. This consists of firm cutting strokes with a fine grit flat oil stone following the journal contour. The stone is rinsed frequently in diesel oil or cleaning solvent to prevent clogging. To avoid creating flat spots on the journal, stoning should be limited to removing any raised material surrounding the surface imperfection.

If the journal diameter is .002 in. or more outside of the tolerance, then journal, packing ring, and seal surfaces can be refinished to a good surface by turning down and grinding to the original finish. This introduces the need for special or nonstandard bearings or shaft seals. Stocking and future spare parts availability become a problem. Machining of shaft diameters for nonstandard final dimensions can therefore only be an emergency measure.

Generally, the diameters involved should be reduced by the minimum amount required to clean up and restore the shaft surface. For this the shaft must be carefully set up between centers and indicated to avoid eccentricity. "Standard" undersize dimensions are in .010 in. increments.

The maximum reduction is naturally influenced by a number of factors. It would mainly depend on the original manufacturer's design assumptions. Nelson[1] quotes the U.S. Navy cautioning against reducing journal diameters by more than 1/4 in., or beyond that diameter which will increase torsional shear stress 25 percent above the original design, whichever occurs first. Table 8-2 shows this guideline.

Table 8-2
Limiting high speed shaft journal reductions.(1)

Original Design Diameter	Minimum Diameter To Which Shaft May Be Reduced
Less than 3.6 inches	93% of original design diameter
3.6 inches or greater	Original design diameter less 1/4 inch

Table 8-3
Recommended eccentricity limits for high speed turbomachinery rotors.

SURFACE	TOLERANCE (In.)
Impeller eye seal	0.002
Balance piston	0.002
Shaft labyrinth	0.002
Impeller spacer	0.002
All other	0.0005

Finally, the assembled rotor should be placed in "V" blocks and checked for eccentricity. Table 8-3 shows suggested guidelines for this check.

Shaft Straightening*

Successful straightening of bent rotor shafts that are permanently warped has been practiced for the past 40 or more years, the success generally depending on the character of the stresses that caused the shaft to bend.

In general, if the stresses causing the bend are caused from improper forging, rolling, heat treating, thermal stress relieving, and/or machining operations, then the straightening will usually be temporary in character and generally unsuccessful.

If, however, a bent shaft results from stresses set up by a heavy rub in operation, by unequal surface stresses set up by heavy shrink fits on the shaft, by stresses set up by misalignment, or by stresses set up by improper handling, then the straightening will generally have a good chance of permanent success.

* From "Repair Techniques for Machinery Rotor and Case Damage", by H. A. Erb, Elliott Co., Greensburg, Pa. *Hydrocarbon Processing*, January 1975. By permission.

Before attempting to straighten a shaft, try to determine how the bend was produced. If the bend was produced by an inherent stress, relieved during the machining operation, during heat proofing, on the first application of heat during the initial startup, or by vibration during shipment, then straightening should only be attempted as an emergency measure, with the chances of success doubtful.

The first thing to do, therefore, is to carefully indicate the shaft and "map" the bend or bends to determine exactly where they occur and their magnitude. In transmitting this information, care should be taken to identify the readings as "actual" or "indicator" values. With this information, plus a knowledge of the shaft material available, the method for straightening can be selected.

Straightening Carbon Steel Shafts

Repair Techniques for Carbon Steel Shafts

For medium carbon steel shafts (carbon 0.30 to 0.50), three general methods of straightening the shaft are available. Shafts made of high alloy or stainless steel should not be straightened except on special instructions that can only be given for individual cases.

The peening method. This consists of peening the concave side of the bend at the bend. This method is generally most satisfactory where shafts of small diameters are concerned—say shaft diameters of 4 in. or less. It is also the preferred—in many cases, the only—method of straightening shafts that are bent at the point where the shaft section is abruptly changed at fillets, ends of keyways, etc. By using a round end tool ground to about the same radius as the fillet and a 2½-lb machinist's hammer, shafts that are bent in fillets can be straightened with hardly any marking on the shaft. Peening results in cold working of the metal, elongating the fibers surrounding the spot peened and setting up compression stresses that balance stresses in the opposite side of the shaft, thereby straightening the shaft. The peening method is the preferred method of straightening shafts bent by heavy shrink stresses that sometimes occur when shrinking turbine wheels on the shaft. Peening the shaft with a light (½ lb) peening hammer near the wheel will often stress-relieve the shrink stresses causing the bend without setting up balance stresses.

The heating method. This consists of applying heat to the convex side of the bend. This method is generally the most satisfactory with large-diam-

eter shafts—say 4 1/2 in. or more. It is also the preferred method of straightening shafts where the bend occurs in a constant diameter portion of the shaft—say between wheels. This is generally not applicable for shafts of small diameter or if the bend occurs at a region of rapidly changing shaft section. Because this method partially utilizes the compressive stresses set up by the weight of the rotor, its application is limited and care must be taken to properly support the shaft.

The shaft bend should be mapped and the shaft placed horizontally with the convex side of the bend placed on top. The shaft should be supported so that the convex side of the bend will have the maximum possible compression stress available from the weight of the rotor. For this reason, shafts having bends beyond the journals should be supported in lathe centers. Shafts with bends between the journals can usually be supported in the journals; however, if the end is close to the journal, it is preferable to support the shaft in centers so as to get the maximum possible compression stress at the convex side of the bend. In no event should the shaft be supported horizontally with the high spot on top and the support directly under the bend, since this will put tension stresses at the point to be heated, and heating will generally permanently increase the bend. Shafts can be straightened by not utilizing the compressive stress due to the weight of the rotor, but this method will be described later.

To straighten carbon steel shafts using the heating method, the shaft should be placed as just outlined and indicators placed on each side of the point to be heated. Heat should be quickly applied to a spot about two to three in. in diameter using a welding tip of an oxyacetylene torch. Heat should be applied evenly and steadily. The indicators should be carefully watched until the bend in the shaft has about tripled its previous value. This may only require perhaps 3 to 30 seconds, so it really is very important to observe the indicators. The shaft should then be evenly cooled and indicated. If the bend has been reduced, repeat the procedure until the shaft has been straightened. If, however, no progress has been made, increase the heat bend as determined by the indicators in steps of about .010 in. to .020 in. or until the shaft spot heated approaches a cherry red. If results are not obtained on the third or fourth try, using heat, a different method must be tried.

The action of heat applied to straighten shafts is that the fibers surrounding the heated spot are placed in compression by the weight of the rotor, the compression due to the expansion, and the resistance of the other fibers in the shaft. As the metal is heated, its compressive strength decreases so that ultimately the metal in the heated spot is given a permanent compression set. This makes the fibers on this side shorter and by tension they counterbalance tension stresses on the opposite side of the shaft, thereby straightening it.

The heating and cooling method. This is especially applicable to large shafts, which cannot be supported so as to get appreciable compressive stresses at the point of the bend. This method consists of applying extreme cold—using dry ice—on the convex side of the bend and then quickly heating the concave side of the bend. This method is best used for straightening shaft ends beyond the journals or for large vertical shafts that are bent anywhere.

The action is that the shaft side having the long fibers is artificially contracted by the application of cold. Then this sets up a tensile stress in the fibers on the opposite side which, when heated, lose their strength and are elongated at the point heated. This sets up compressive stresses in the concave side that balance the compressive stresses in the opposite side. Indicators should also be used for this method of shaft straightening—first bending the shaft in the opposite direction from the initial bend, about twice the amount of the initial bend—by using dry ice on the convex side—and then quickly applying heat with an oxyacetylene torch to a small spot on the concave side.

Shafts of turbines and turbine-generator units have been successfully straightened by various methods. These include several 5,000-kw turbine-generator units, one 6,000-kw unit, and many smaller units. Manufacturers of turbines and other equipment have long used these straightening procedures, which have also been used by the U.S. Navy and others. With sufficient care, a shaft may be straightened to 0.0005 in. or less (0.001 in. indicator reading). This is generally satisfactory.

Casting Salvaging Methods

Repair of Castings. Quite often cast components of process machinery cannot be repaired by welding. We will now deal briefly with these salvaging methods:

1. Controlled-atmosphere furnace brazing of pump impellers.
2. Application of molecular metals.
3. Metal stitching of large castings.

Braze repair of cavitation damaged pump impellers is an adaption of a braze-repair method originally developed for jet engine components.[2]

The first step is rebuilding the eroded areas of the impeller blades with an iron-base alloy powder. The powder is mixed with an air-hardening plastic binder and used to fill the damaged areas. Through-holes are backed up with a temporary support and packed full of the powder/binder mixture. After hardening, the repaired areas are smoothed with a file to restore the original blade contour.

A nickel-base brazing filler metal in paste form is then applied to the surface of the repaired areas and the impeller is heated in a controlled atmosphere furnace. In the furnace, the plastic binder vaporizes and the brazing filler metal melts, infiltrating the alloy powder. This bonds the powder particles to each other and to the cast iron of the blade, forming a strong, permanent repair.

After the initial heating, the impeller is removed from the furnace and cooled. All nonmachined surfaces are then spray coated with a cavitation-resistant nickel-base alloy and the impeller is returned to the furnace for another fusion cycle. After the treatment, the impeller will last up to twice as long as bare cast iron when subjected to cavitation.

Because the heating is done in a controlled-atmosphere furnace, there is no localized heat build-up to cause distortion and no oxidation of exposed surfaces. Unless the machined surfaces are scored or otherwise physically damaged, repaired impellers can be returned to service without further processing.

An average impeller can be repaired for less than a third of the normal replacement cost.

Molecular metals have been applied successfully to the rebuilding and resurfacing of a variety of process machinery components. Molecular metals[3] consist of a two-compound fluidized metal system that after mixing and application assumes the hardness of the work piece. The two compounds are a metal base and a solidifier. After a prescribed cure time the material can be machined, immersed in chemicals, and mechanically or thermally loaded.

Molecular metals have been used to repair pump impellers, centrifugal compressor diaphragms, and engine and reciprocating compressor water jackets damaged by freeze-up.

Metal stitching is the appropriate method to repair cracks in castings. One reputable repair shop describes the technique.[4]

1. The area or areas of a casting suspected of being cracked are cleaned with a commercial solvent. Crack severity is then determined by dye penetrant inspection. Frequently, persons unfamiliar with this procedure will fail to clearly delineate the complete crack system. Further, due to the heterogeneous microstructure of most castings, it is quite difficult to determine the paths the cracks have taken. This means that the tips of the cracks—where stress concentration is the highest—may often remain undiscovered. This also

means that cracks stay undiscovered until the casting is returned to service, resulting in a potential catastrophe. It takes an experienced eye to make sure that the location of the tips is identified.

2. To complete the evaluation of the crack system, notice is taken of the variations in section thickness through which the crack or cracks have propagated. This step is critical because size, number, and strength of the locks and lacings—see Figure 8-27—are primarily determined by section thickness. Where curvatures and/or angularity exist, the criticalness of this step is further increased.
3. Metallurgical samples are taken to determine the chemical composition, physical properties, and actual grade of casting. This enables the repair shop to select the proper repair material. And this, along with the cross-sectional area of the failure, determines how much strength has actually been lost in the casting.
4. After these decisions have been taken, the actual repair work is started.
   a. Repair material is selected. This material will be compatible with the parent material, but greater in strength.

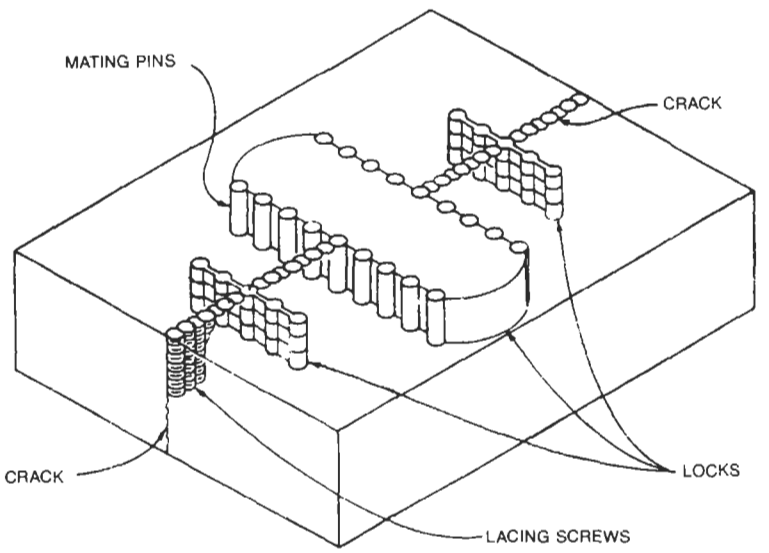


Figure 8-27. Metal locking a machinery casting.[4]

b. The patterns for the locks are designed onto the casting surface.
c. These patterns are then "honey combed" using an air chisel. This provides a cavity in the parent metal that will accept the locks. Improper use of these tools produces a cavity which is not properly filled by the lock. The result is a joint that lacks strength and from which new cracks may emanate.
d. Assuming the lock is properly fitted, a pinning procedure is now undertaken. This consists of mating the lock to the parent metal by drilling holes so that one half of the hole circles are in the parent metal and the remaining halves are in the locks. High alloy, high strength, slightly over-sized mating pins are driven into these holes with an air gun. This produces a favorable residual stress pattern: In the immediate area of the lock, tensile stresses exist which change to desired compressive stresses as one moves out into the parent metal. This is to prevent future crack propagation. Additionally, these pins prevent relative movement between the locks and the parent metal.
e. The final repair step aside from dress-up is the insertion of high strength metallic screws into previously drilled and tapped holes along the cracks paths in between the locks. To clarify, it should be noted that the orientation of the locks is such that the longitudinal axis of the locks is perpendicular to the path of the crack. Thus, between locks, the lacing screws are used to "zipper-up" the crack. Care must be exercised to make sure each lock is properly oriented. Care must also be exercised so that, when the lacing screws are driven to their final positions, a harmonious blending with the parent metal is achieved.

The entire repair sequence can be easily visualized by referring to Figure 8-28. Figures 8-29 through 8-38 depict the amazing variety of machines that have been successfully repaired using metal stitching techniques.

The outside repair shop. In the foregoing we already alluded to the fact that process plant maintenance persons have to look for outside help when faced with a more unusual machinery repair and modification task. A number of reputable and well-established specialized repair and service organizations are available. Their emphasis is on quick turnaround, salvage of worn or obsolete components, saving maintenance costs, and reducing downtime.[5] Table 8-4 shows in an overview the spectrum of maintenance and repair work offered by specialized process machinery service shops. Often the list of machine tools and equipment operated by these firms is impressive. Figure 8-39, for example, shows the hard sur-

(Text continued on page 482)

Table 8-4
Typical field and shop repair services offered by process machinery repair shops[5][6]

Machinery Repairs—Field & Shop Work / Components	Repair Operations																						
	Grouting	Alignment	Straightening	Machining	Milling	Boring	Line-Boring	Grinding	Honing	Metal Locking	Babbitting	Plasma Sprayed Coating	Welding	Fabricating	Chrome Plating	Micro Finishing	Replacement	Rebuilding	Dynamic Balancing	Visual Inspection	Physical Inspection	N.D.T.*	Vibration Analysis	Field Service
Process Pumps Centrifugal Compressors Rotary Blowers Fans Steam Turbines Large Motors (Rotors) Gears & Transmissions Turbo Chargers																							●	●
Bearings						●					●						●			●	●	●		
Shafts			●	●				●				●			●					●				
Wheels/Impellers												●	●	●				●	●	●	●	●		
Rotors																		●	●					
Diaphragms/Diffusers				●	●	●		●		●		●	●					●		●		●		
Casings				●	●	●	●			●		●	●	●				●		●		●		
Reciprocating Compressors Power Pumps																								●
Foundation	●																	●		●				
Base										●				●				●						
Frame				●	●	●				●								●		●		●		
Crankshaft		●	●	●				●							●	●	●	●		●		●		
Main Bearings				●							●							●		●		●		
Main Brg. Saddles		●		●	●	●							●					●		●		●		
Journals								●							●	●				●		●		
Valves								●									●	●			●			
Cylinders				●		●		●	●	●							●	●		●	●			
Cylinder Liners				●		●		●	●						●		●			●		●		
Plungers				●				●				●			●		●			●		●		
Pistons				●													●			●	●	●		

* *Non Destructive Testing:*
- Ultrasonic - Radiography - Eddy Current
- Magnaflux - Dye Penetrant - Strain Gauging

(Table continued on next page)

Table 8-4 Continued
Typical field and shop repair services offered by process machinery repair shops[5][6]

Machinery Repairs— Field & Shop Work	Repair Operations																								
Components	Grouting	Alignment	Straightening	Machining	Milling	Boring	Line-Boring	Grinding	Honing	Metal Locking	Babbitting	Plasma Sprayed Coating	Welding	Fabricating	Chrome Plating	Micro Finishing	Replacement	Rebuilding	Dynamic Balancing	Visual Inspection	Physical Inspection	N.D.T.*	Vibration Analysis	Field Service
Piston Rings																	●			●				
Piston Rods								●				●			●	●	●			●		●		
Connecting Rods		●	●	●	●	●														●		●		
Coolant Passages																				●				
Diesel & Gas Engines																								●
Foundation	●																			●				
Base	●	●		●	●	●				●			●	●				●		●		●		
Frame				●	●	●				●										●		●		
Crankshaft		●	●	●				●							●	●	●	●	●	●		●		
Main Bearings				●							●						●			●		●		
Main Brg. Saddles		●		●	●	●	●					●								●		●		
Journals								●							●	●				●		●		
Cylinder Heads				●	●	●		●		●								●		●		●		
Cylinders						●		●		●										●		●		
Cylinder Liners-Wet/Dry				●		●		●							●		●			●		●		
Pistons				●																●		●		
Piston Rings																	●			●				
Connecting Rods		●	●	●	●	●														●		●		
Inlet Valves								●									●	●		●		●		
Exhaust Valves								●									●	●		●		●		
Gas Injection Valves				●													●	●		●		●		
Valve Train		●		●							●				●	●	●	●		●		●		
Cooling Water Systems																				●		●		
Manifolds (Int./Exh.)				●						●			●	●			●	●		●		●		
Fuel & Ignition Systems																	●			●				
Auxiliaries				●													●			●				

* *Non Destructive Testing:*
- *Ultrasonic* - *Radiography* - *Eddy Current*
- *Magnaflux* - *Dye Penetrant* - *Strain Gauging*

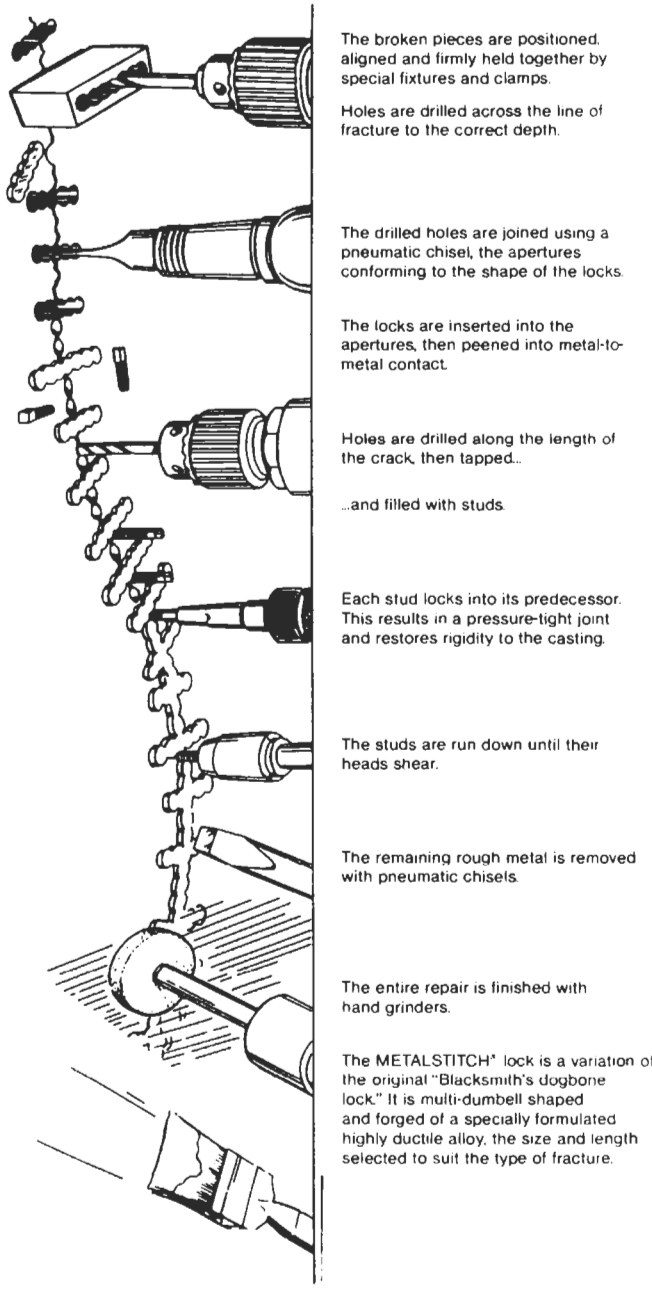

The broken pieces are positioned, aligned and firmly held together by special fixtures and clamps.
Holes are drilled across the line of fracture to the correct depth.
The drilled holes are joined using a pneumatic chisel, the apertures conforming to the shape of the locks.
The locks are inserted into the apertures, then peened into metal-to-metal contact.
Holes are drilled along the length of the crack, then tapped...
...and filled with studs.
Each stud locks into its predecessor. This results in a pressure-tight joint and restores rigidity to the casting.
The studs are run down until their heads shear.
The remaining rough metal is removed with pneumatic chisels.
The entire repair is finished with hand grinders.
The METALSTITCH® lock is a variation of the original "Blacksmith's dogbone lock." It is multi-dumbell shaped and forged of a specially formulated highly ductile alloy, the size and length selected to suit the type of fracture.

Figure 8-28. Metalstitch® process of casting repair (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-29. Metalstitch® repair of large transmission case (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-30. Paper machine roll being repaired by metalstitching® technique (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-31. Grinder frame being repaired by the metalstitching® method (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-32. Flywheel/drum part after metalstitch® repair (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-33. Major steam turbine components can be repaired by metalstitch® technique (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-34. Broken gear motor casing before metalstitch® repair (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

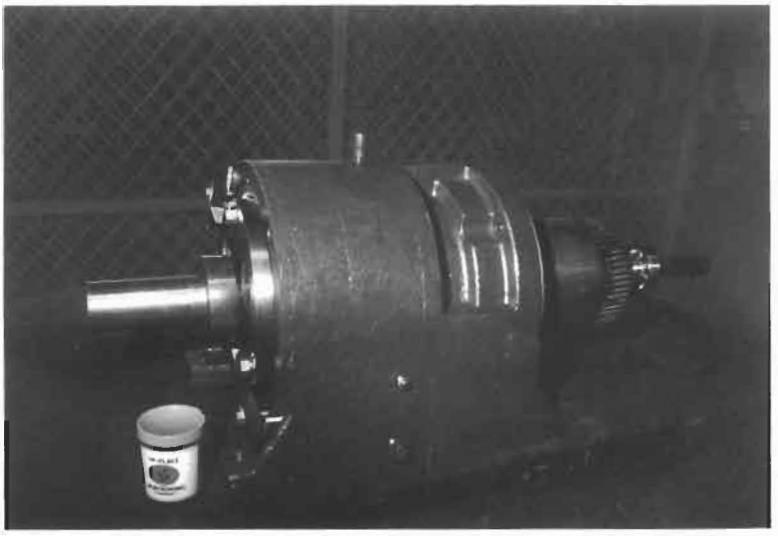


Figure 8-35. Gear motor after repair (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-36. Broken diesel engine jacking gear (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-37. Diesel engine jacking gear being prepared for metalstitching® (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

Figure 8-38. Two replacement teeth inserted in jacking gear and metalstitched® in place (Courtesy In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin).

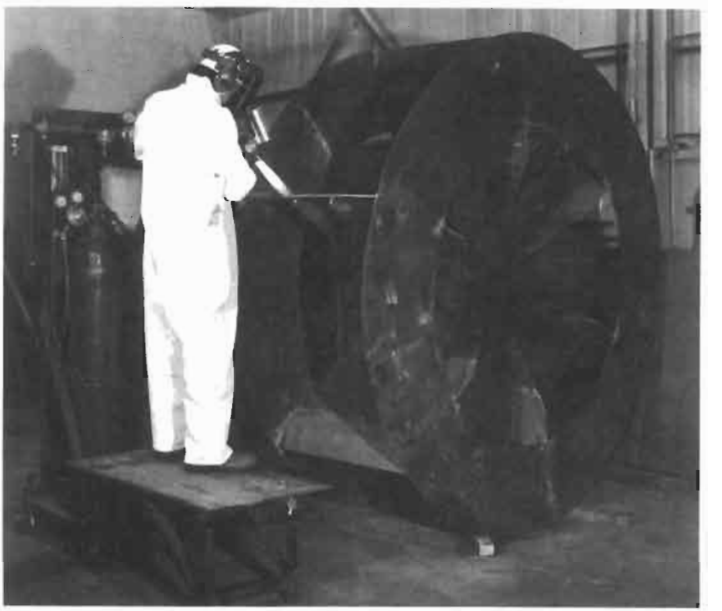


Figure 8-39. Hardsurfacing a fan wheel (Courtesy Peacock Inc.).

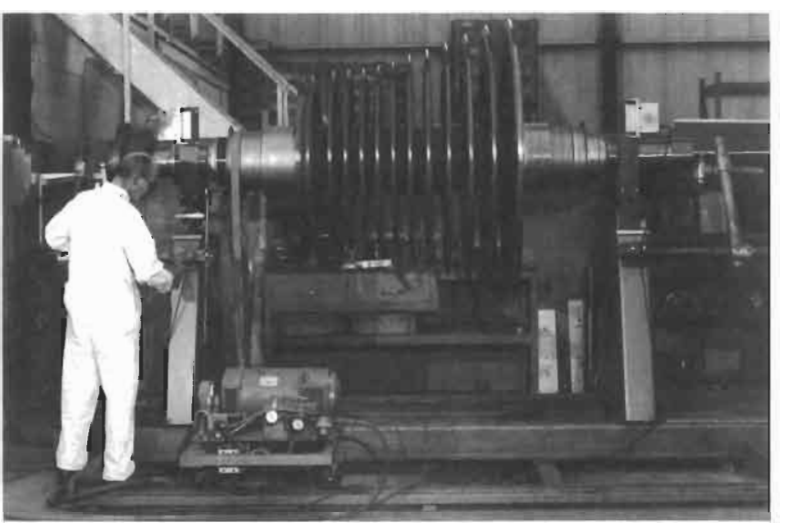


Figure 8-40. Balancing a turbine rotor (Courtesy Peacock Inc.).

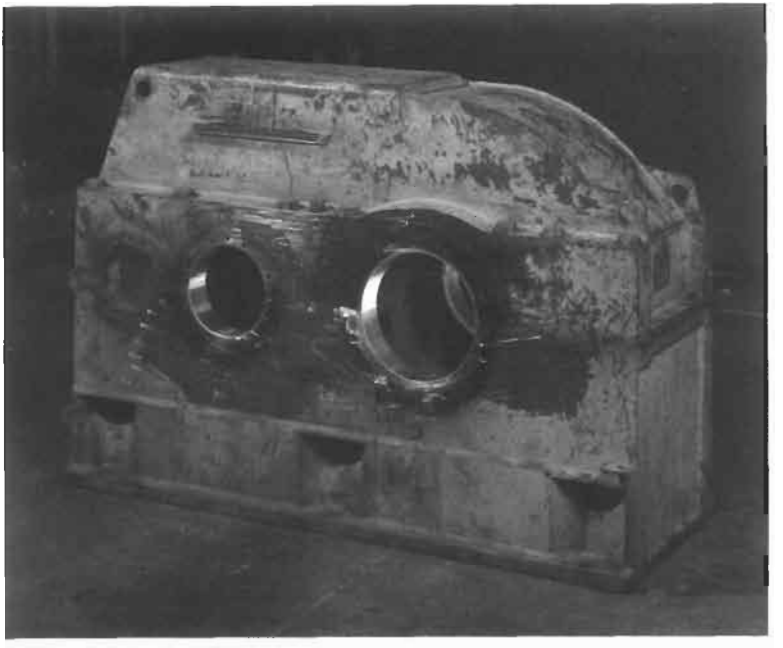


Figure 8-41. Rebuilt bearing bores—gear box (Courtesy Peacock Inc.).

(Text continued from page 472)

face operation of a large fan wheel, Figure 8-40 features the balancing operation of a large multistage turbine rotor, and Figure 8-41 the rebuilt bearing bores of a gear box.

On-site, or "in situ" emergency repair using portable machine tools is another service available from capable shops. The advantages of "field processing"[6] in certain cases are:

- Service large unwieldy equipment.
- Eliminate equipment removal.
- Reduce downtime.
- Lower maintenance costs.

Successful on-site repair and rebuilding tasks have been:

- Remachining seal faces of turbine generators.
- Reboring main cylinders of gas transmission compressors.
- Machinery casing flange refacing.
- Machinery bearing housings.
- Line boring of large gas and diesel engine main bearing saddles.
- Machinery casting repair.

- Electrochemical plating.
- Oxyacetylene flame spraying.

A typical list of portable field machinery equipment comprises the following:

- Boring mill, Figure 8-42.
- Flange facing mill, Figure 8-43.
- Lathe, Figure 8-44.
- Keyway or slotting mill, Figure 8-45.

Selecting a Repair Shop. Process machinery repair shops are selected by the plant engineering department, maintenance department, stores or parts department, purchasing department, or materials department—depending on the petrochemical process plant size and its organizational setup. Selection may be either on a scientific, quoted best cost, convenience, "inherited," or seat-of-the pants basis.[7] However, in all cases the machinery maintenance specialist's input should be utilized.

In any event, in order to be successful with outside machinery repair service shops, a good record keeping system is essential:

- To establish any problem areas by analyzing and changing repair methods to improve equipment life.
- To determine any measurable differences in repair life between various service organizations.
- To make warranty claims when justified.

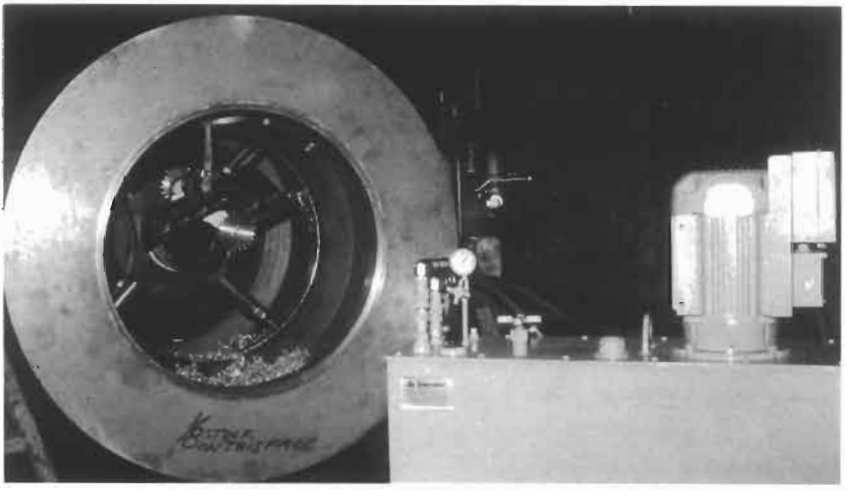


Figure 8-42. Portable boring mill—cutting end (Courtesy Byron Jackson Pumps).

Figure 8-43. Portable flange facing machine (Courtesy Byron Jackson Pumps).

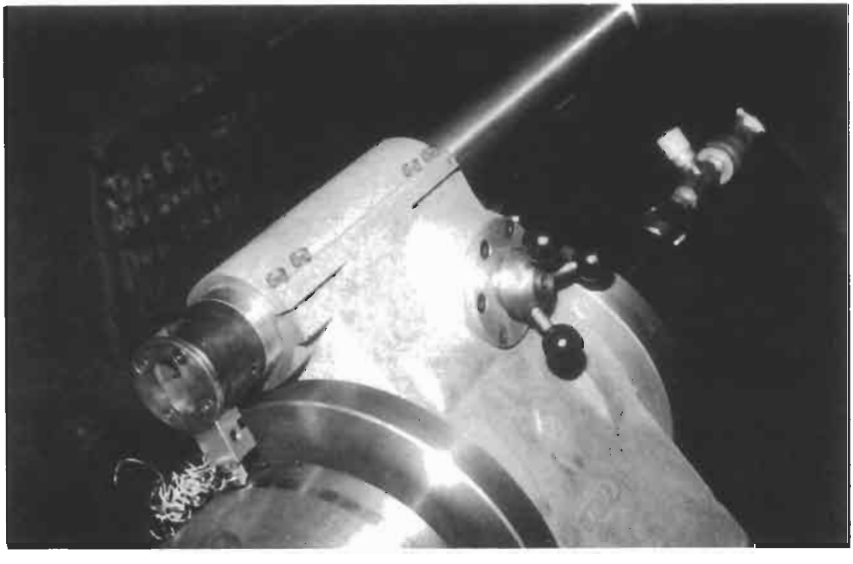


Figure 8-44. Portable shaft turning machine (Courtesy Byron Jackson Pumps).

Figure 8-45. Portable milling machine—keyway/slotting (Courtesy Byron Jackson Pumps).

The person or persons responsible and accountable for machinery repair and maintenance should establish contact with service shops. This is best done by visiting them and judging their facilities, "track record" and personnel. This could lead to a numerical rating on a scale of one to ten to help with the final decision.

It goes without saying that quotations for new equipment prices should be obtained, so that the practicality of a rebuild or repair order can be ascertained. For instance, as a rule of thumb it would not be advisable to have an electric motor rewound if costs exceeded 70 percent of a new equivalent replacement, or if higher efficiency replacement motors are available. Also, if time is available, the purchase of surplus equipment may be considered. It would be advisable to maintain a subscription to at least one used or surplus equipment directory for that purpose.*

The machinery maintenance person, during his facility visit, should gather information as to what procedures the shop uses to comply with plant specifications. Obviously, a final sourcing decision should be made only after analyzing all available data and after the visit. The analysis can be made in form of a spreadsheet, using a marking pen to highlight pertinent facts and color-coding prices by relative position. In essence, this

* - "Used Equipment Directory", 70 Sip Ave., Jersey City, NJ 07036.
- "Locator of Used Machinery and Equipment, 1110 Spring St., Silver Spring, MD 20910.
- "The Surplus Record," 20 N. Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606.

rigorous procedure is similar to a formal bid evaluation process and would rank the bidders by shop capacity, experience, reputation, recent performance, order backlog, or even labor union contract expiration date and the like.

References

1. Nelson, W. E., and Wright, R. M., Amoco Oil Co., "Reengineering of Rotating Equipment through Maintenance," presented at the ASME Petroleum Division Conference and Workshop, Dallas, Tx., September 1981.
2. Wall Colmonoy Corporation, Detroit, Michigan. Reprint in *Welding Journal,* April 1971.
3. Technical Bulletin by Belzona Molecular Ltd., Harrogate, Yorkshire, U.K., publication No. 15673.
4. Harris, E. W., "Procedure for Repairing Large Castings or Forgings," Casting Repair Service, Inc., Center, Texas 75935, 1983, Pages 1-3.
5. Advertising Bulletin, Peacock Brothers Limited, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
6. Byron Jackson Marketing/Sales Department, Los Angeles, California, "The Advisor," Volume 1, No. 4.
7. Boak, J. D., "Selecting a Motor Repair Shop," *Plant Services,* June 1983, Pages 64-65.
8. Technical Bulletin by In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, 1990.

Chapter 9

Centrifugal Compressor Rotor Repair*

Turbomachinery rotor repair is a complex business. It involves knowledge of design concepts, good machinery practices, and above all, patience and keeping track of details.

Repair work on the rotating elements of compressors and turbines has traditionally been the field of the original equipment manufacturer, not the equipment owner. One major US petrochemical and refining company, Amoco (American Oil Company), got involved in rotor repairs in order to improve reliability and availability of the rotors and the machinery. With these capabilities, a 14,500 hp, 5,920 rpm, eight-stage spare compressor rotor was restored to operating condition less than 30 days after it was damaged. Returning it to a vendor for repairs could have meant a 12–15 month period without a backup rotor in a critical process.

Of course, in some instances the decision is made to send the rotor to the original equipment manufacturer (OEM). In other instances it is sent to a local machine shop with rotor repair capabilities, either independent or affiliated with an OEM; or, as in the majority of the cases, the repair work is done in Amoco's own shop.

What do they get out of their in-plant rotor repair program? There are several advantages:

1. Reduced cost of repairs because more judgment factors can be exercised by the owner than by someone at distant factory. In addition, overhead costs are reduced.

* Source: W. E. Nelson, Amoco Oil Company, Texas City, TX.

2. Quicker repairs result in shorter outage times.
3. The rotor can be re-engineered to remove problem areas more readily. For example, a redesigned thrust collar can be installed or an additional balance plane added.
4. In-plant skills are developed for emergency use.

Compressor Rotor Repairs

There are two basic types of compressor rotors: the drum type and the built-up type. There are two variations of each style.

Built-Up Rotor

This style is used for virtually all centrifugal compressors and some axial designs.

1. *Heavy-shrink Style*—The impellers are usually shrunk to the shaft with an interference fit of 3/4 to 1 1/2 mils/in. of shaft diameter. In other words, a six in. shaft may have an interference of four to nine mils total before the impellers are placed on the shaft. This requires heating of the wheels to 400–600°F for assembly. A small axial gap of about four to six mils is necessary between elements, consisting of sleeves and impellers, to allow for expansion during a rub and the flexing of the rotor during rotor mode shifts at critical speeds.

   Sleeves can be used at the interstage seals to protect the shaft from heavy rubs. The sleeve material can be selected with excellent rubbing and heat dissipation characteristics. Sleeves can also be replaced readily.
2. *"Stacked" Rotors*—This design is similar to the shrunk rotor, except that light shrink or press fits are used on the impellers. A large nut on one or both ends hold the impellers and sleeves together axially. This design permits very low tip speeds so it is usually limited to blowers that operate below their first critical speed.

Drum Type Rotor

This type is used only for axial flow-type rotors.

Impeller Manufacture

There are several manufacturing techniques for impellers.

1. The oldest form of impeller, produced by riveting blades of simple curvature between a disc and a shroud of contour-machined, forged steel, is still in use on multistage compressors of moderate tip speeds—600–800 ft/sec. With rivets milled integrally out of blade stock, and with alloy steel discs of 120,000 psi tensile stress or higher, tip speeds up to 1,000 ft/sec have been obtained operationally.
2. Fabricated shrouded impellers, assembled with the aid of welding. This permits greater aerodynamic refinement in blade curvature design and, with newly developed alloy steels and welding techniques, operational tip speeds up to 1,100 ft/sec.
3. Cast aluminum or cast steel impellers, both shrouded and open, are used where high production rates justify the pattern cost.
4. Aluminum alloy impellers produced by plaster mold or similar precision casting techniques are used on turbochargers up to 1,300 ft/sec tip speed.
5. For extreme tip speeds, 1,200–1,600 ft/sec, radially bladed, semishrouded impellers are contour-milled out of aluminum, magnesium, or steel alloy forgings, sometimes combined with separately machined or cast inducers at the inlet end. Also, EDM (electric discharging machining) is used to fabricate impellers from a single forging.

A controlling design factor is the rotor velocity expressed in the form of tip speed or peripheral speed of the impeller. The head produced by a compressor of given geometry will be a square function of the tip speed alone, quite independent of the size of the machine. Tip speed rather than shaft speed in rpm controls the mechanical stresses of a given rotor configuration.

The tip speed of a conventional impeller is usually 800 to 900 ft/sec. This means that an impeller will be able to develop approximately 9,500 ft of head (the resulting pressure depends on the gas being compressed). Multistage compressors are needed if duties exceed this value. Heavy gases such as propane, propylene, or Freon (mol wt 60 or above) require a reduction in tip speeds due to lower sonic velocities of these gases when compared with air. For these gases, the relative Mach number at the inlet side of the impeller generally is limited to 0.8.

Overspeed Test of Impellers

Overspeed tests are carried out at 115 percent of maximum operating speed (132 percent of operating stress) on most milled or fabricated steel impellers. Cast impellers are sometimes spun at 120–140 percent of design speed (that is, 144–200 percent of design stress levels). Overspeeding is done in a heavily shielded "spin pit" that can safely contain, if necessary, a bursting impeller. The pit is evacuated for each run to minimize the windage loss of the spinning impeller. Bursting speeds may range from 1,200 to 2,000 ft/sec (tip speed) on fabricated and cast impellers, and may be even higher on forged and milled wheels.

Impellers of a ductile material will deform long before reaching burst speed. If the operating tip speeds must be as high as 1,200–1,600 ft/sec, a 15 percent overspeed test will cause local yielding of the most highly stressed region near the hub bore. In a material of sufficient ductility—over about 8 percent—this local yield will redistribute the stresses and improve dimensional stability in later operation; the impeller will then have to be finish-machined after the spin test.

Impeller Materials

AISI 4140 is the most prevalent steel alloy used for impellers and shafts in petrochemical gas compression services. For hydrogen sulfide laden gases, corrosion engineers recommend that the heat treatment be held to 22 Rockwell "C," which results in a yield stress of 90,000 psi.

Impellers in relatively clean service such as in ammonia plants often exceed this value and 30–35 Rockwell "C" hardness is allowed here.

Working stresses of most impellers are about 50,000 psi.

Impeller Attachment

A half-sectional profile of an impeller disk is a right angle triangle shape having a peripheral angle of about 16°. The hub design is significant in that it constitutes the impeller suction eye configuration, transmits the driving torque from the shaft, provides the necessary disk and rigidity, and fixes the impeller balance position. Most U.S. manufacturers use keys staggered 90° to complement the balance of multi-stage machines. The impeller hubs are reamed to a shrink interference fit of .75 mil/in. to 1.5 mil/in. A sharp-cornered keyway with a snug fit can develop stress densities two to three times the nominal stress. A loose fit would com-

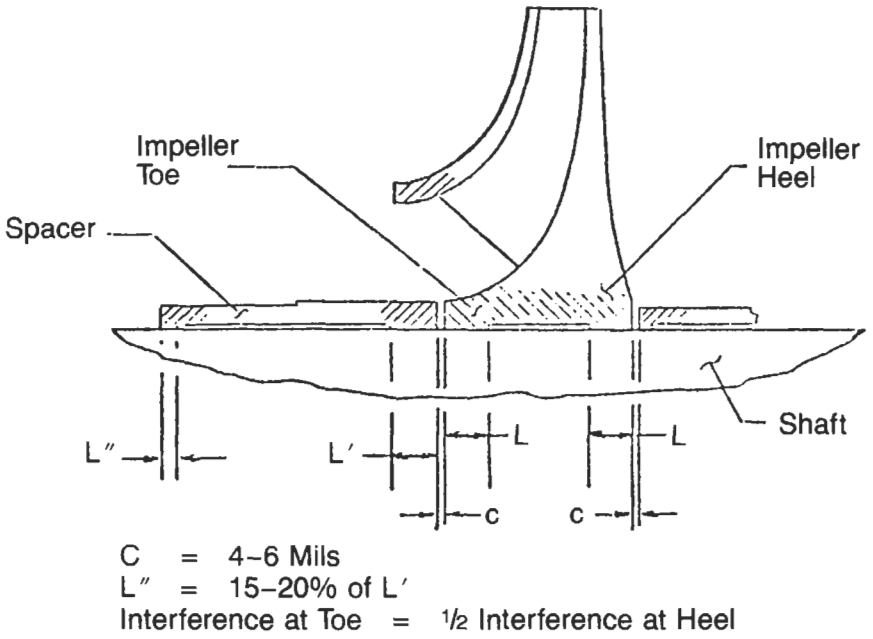


Figure 9-1. Typical arrangement of impeller and spacer mounted on the shaft.

pound this stress concentration. The use of two close fitted feather keys has merit. The thickness of a feather key is one-fourth of the width (peripheral) dimension. All keyways should have well-rounded fillets.

The principal source of rotor internal friction is the interference shrink fit of rotor elements on the shaft. The friction effect on built-up rotors could be minimized by making the shrink fit as short and heavy as possible. This led to the universal and most important practice of undercutting the bore of all elements mounted on the shaft, as shown in Figure 9-3.

The impellers are locked against axial movement by various methods: split rings with locking bands, threaded locknuts, or a combination of both designs. If threaded nuts or sleeves are used, a lock ring is needed. Special care is needed in setting the lock ring:

1. Most lock rings are AISI 410 stainless material.
2. Hardness should be dead soft, under Rockwell C-20 (255 Brinell).
3. The locking notches or grooves in the sleeve, impeller, or balancing drum should be deburred.
4. The locking ring should be installed, the sleeve tightened, and the location of the locking notches or grooves marked on the ring.

5. The ring should be removed and nicked or saw cut about one-third of the way through at the marks.
6. The ring and sleeve should be reinstalled with the cuts in the rings aligned with the locking notches or grooves.
7. A soft round-nosed tool should be used to bend the tabs (alternately) into the notches.
8. Do not overbend the tabs.
9. Locking rings should not be reused. *Important!*

Compressor Impeller Design Problems

The high speed rotation of the impeller of a centrifugal compressor imparts the vital dynamic velocity to the flow within the gas path. The buffeting effects of the gas flow can cause fatigue failures in the conventional fabricated shrouded impeller due to vibration-induced alternating stresses. These may be of the following types:

1. Resonant vibration in a principal mode.
2. Forced-undamped vibration, associated with aerodynamic buffeting or high acoustic energy levels.

The vibratory mode most frequently encountered is of the plate type and involves either the shroud or disc. Fatigue failure generally originates at the impeller OD, adjacent to a vane. The fatigue crack propagates inward along the nodal line, and finally a section of the shroud or disc tears out.

To eliminate failures of the plate type, impellers operating at high gas density levels are frequently scalloped between vanes at the OD. The consequent reduction in disc friction may cause a small increase in stage efficiency.

Several rotors have been salvaged by scalloping the wheels after a partial failure has occurred. Scalloping describes a machining procedure which removes material from the impeller periphery between adjacent vanes. The maximum diameter from vane tip to vane tip 180° apart remains unchanged by scalloping. One eight-stage, 6,520 hp, 10,225 rpm compressor in low molecular weight service, had 54 scallops done to each wheel during an emergency shutdown. To accomplish this, the rotor was unstacked. Each wheel was set up in the milling machine and scalloped. Then each wheel was individually balanced on a mandrel. The rotor was restacked and the machine returned to service in slightly over a week.

cost of double keys, these will probably be more economical, even for initial cost, but certainly when field problems and production loss are included.

A makeshift solution can be applied in the field, by relieving the shaft surface opposite the single keyway to get equal contact pattern. The relief need not be deep (say 20 mils or so). This will at least improve the contact pressure and thermal distortion.

Another possibility presently gaining favor is to eliminate the keys entirely, depending 100 percent on the shrink fit engagement. The parts are mounted with a very high shrink (2.5 mils/in. or more). Special methods must be used if disassembly becomes necessary, or the parts may be severely damaged. The possibility of stress-corrosion comes to mind with these high shrink stresses (~ 70,000 psi) but actually the stress in a keyway corner is much higher, usually exceeding yield strength, even with a moderate shrink fit (1 mil/in. or less).

Rotor Bows in Compressors and Steam Turbines

Rotors sometimes will operate very satisfactorily for years, then upon restarting after a shutdown, excessive vibration occurs at the first lateral critical speed. This vibration problem may originate from the following:

1. The unit is tripped at rated speed and the rotative speed abruptly drops.
2. The effective interference fit of the impellers or wheels shrunk on the shaft increases rapidly during this speed reduction. (The bore stress varies with the square of the rotative speed.)
3. At the first critical speed range, maximum vibration amplitudes result; the rotor is then in a simple bow configuration, with the maximum deflection at approximately mid-span.
4. The shrunk-on elements thus literally lock the rotor in this bow shape and the clamping action increases below the critical speed. The outermost fibers of the shaft are incapable of sliding axially at the clamp or interference fit areas.
5. At rest, the rotor exhibits a large residual shaft bow, and gross imbalance causes high vibration amplitudes upon restarting.
6. Usually, the shaft is bowed elastically; disassembly of the rotor generally results in restoration of the bare shaft to an acceptable run-out condition.

Multistage centrifugal compressors tend to be particularly susceptible to the foregoing if they incorporate the same interference fit at each end

of the impeller bore. It has been said that rotative speed tends to reduce the interference fit to near zero with the first lateral critical speed at 50 percent of the maximum continuous speed. In some cases the impellers will actually move on the shaft. Susceptibility to this problem increases as the ratio between the maximum continuous speed and the lateral critical speed increases. A very successful method of avoiding this problem is:

1. Making the static interference fit at the impeller *toe* equal to approximately *one-half* that at the *heel*, while maintaining the same land axial length.
2. Making the land axial length of the spacer at the end adjacent to the impeller heel equal to approximately 15–20 percent of the length at the opposite end, while maintaining the same interference fit.
3. A 4–6 mil axial gap between components (i.e., impellers, spacer sleeves, etc.) is provided.

Tightness of the impeller and spacer on the shaft at full operating speed is thus assured, while simultaneously providing for controlled axial sliding at the interference fits during deceleration. Some increase in rotor internal friction of course results, with a consequent minor effect on the nonsynchronous whirl threshold speed.

A transient bow condition similar to the above is sometimes produced in built-up rotors which are subject to rapid starting. This occurs if all shrunk-on elements are fitted tightly together axially during cold assembly. In effect, the shrunk-on elements heat up much faster than the bare shaft after startup; the resulting thermal growth of these elements, when combined with a lack of perpendicularity of the vertical mating faces, results in shaft bowing. An axial clearance is usually provided between an impeller or wheel and its adjacent spacer to avoid this. Four to six mils is usually adequate.

This discussion is paraphrased from some of the writings of Roy Greene, who has experience in centrifugal compressor design, manufacture, and operation for Clark, Cooper-Bessemer, and Ingersoll Rand, and who currently is a consultant.[9]

Balancing

Since the details of rotor balancing have been fully covered in Chapter 6, we can confine our discussion to a brief recap of this important topic. It is simple to balance a rigid rotor which runs on rigid bearings, so long as neither change shape, or deflect at operating speed. For a high-speed rotor, this is no longer true, because both the rotor and the bearings will

Impeller Balancing Procedure

The quality of any dynamic balancing operation depends upon the following:

1. The control of radial run-out.
2. The elimination of internal couples along the length of the rotor.

Individual balancing of impellers is vital. The following procedures are a *must*.

1. Prepare half-keys as required for the balancing of individual impellers on a mandrel. These keys must precisely fill the open keyways at the impeller bores.
2. An impeller precision balancing mandrel must be made; the actual geometry should match the minimum pedestal spacing and the roller configuration of the balancing machine.

Guidelines for designing the mandrel are:

1. The mandrel should preferably be made of low alloy steel, i.e., AISI 4140 or AISI 4340, which has been suitably stress-relieved.
2. The journal surfaces should preferably be hardened and ground, with a finish not poorer than 16 rms.
3. All diameters must be concentric within 0.0001 in. TIR.
4. The diameter of the section where the impeller is to be mounted, should be established on the basis of heating the impeller hub to a temperature of approximately 300°F for installation and removal.
5. Keyways are not incorporated in the mandrel.
6. The impeller balancing mandrel should be checked to assure that it is in dynamic balance. Make corrections on the faces, if required.
7. The impeller balancing mandrel should be free of burrs and gouges.
8. Mount each individual impeller, together with its half-key, on the balancing mandrel. A light coating of molybdenum disulfide lubricant should be first applied at the fits. Such mounting requires careful and uniform heating of the impeller hub, using a rosebud-tip torch, to a temperature of approximately 300°F; a temperature-indicating Tempil® stick should be used to monitor the heating operation. Install the mandrel, with the mounted impeller, in the balancing machine. Cool the impeller by directing a flow of shop air against the hub while slowly rotating the assembly by hand or with the balancing machine drive. When the impeller and mandrel have cooled to approximately room temperature, proceed to identify the

required dynamic corrections with the balancing machine operating at the highest permissible speed.

9. Make the required dynamic corrections to the impeller by removing material over an extended area, with a relatively fine grade grinding disc, at or near the impeller tip on both the cover and disc surfaces.

Other Compressor Balancing

1. Inspect all impeller spacers to assure that they are of uniform radial thickness in any plane perpendicular to their axis; minor axial taper variations are of no concern. The spacers may be mounted on a machining mandrel for concentricity checking.
2. The balance piston is considered to be the equivalent of an impeller.

Marking of Impellers

Stamping of numbers on impellers should never be allowed. Use a high speed pencil grinder, also called rotating pencil, in low stress areas. Burn marks from the rotating pencil are not as harmful as stamping marks. However, they do create stress raisers, which have occasionally caused fatigue failures. Therefore, even these marks should be used only where absolutely necessary, and in carefully selected locations.

Critical Areas

Sharp edges on impeller bore: These edges dig into the shaft, causing high stress concentrations and possible starting points for shaft cracks. Polished radii should be provided.

Sharp corners in keyways: Keyway radii should be about 1/4 of the keyway depth. Two keyways are preferable because single keyways will cause nonuniform heating of the shaft and also shaft warpage because there is no radial shrink stress at the keyway region, while full radial shrink stress acts on the shaft opposite to the keyway. This will cause a shaft bow which changes with shrink stress, i.e., with temperature and speed. The keyway in the impeller should be as shallow as possible, since this key is not meant to transmit torque, but to act only as a positioning and safety feature.

Two shallow keys instead of one deep key are expensive, because keyways must be positioned very accurately, and depth must be equal. But it eliminates a host of problems (cranking effect, contact-pressure effect, component balance problems, thermal bow), and when comparing cost of problems and balancing difficulties against the higher manufacturing

deflect as they are exposed to centrifugal forces, and these deflections will result in a very complex unbalance condition that was not there when the rotor was balanced at low speeds in a precision balancing machine. A low-speed balancing machine, no matter how precise and/or sophisticated, cannot detect such conditions: They lie dormant in the machine until high speeds are reached, and *only then* will the beast show its true nature. There is absolutely no way to accurately predict the behavior of an existing high-speed rotor, except to get it up to speed on its own bearings, in its own casing. Even then it is impossible to determine the precise location of unbalance, and to make definitive and 100 percent effective corrections that will eliminate the vibration throughout the speed range. The best one can hope for is to get a correction, essentially by compromise, that permits smooth operation at one speed.

The *only* way to get a predictable rotor is to maintain perfect balance of each individual component during all operations of machining and assembly and *never* to disturb this balance by making indiscriminate corrections on the finished assembly. To do all this properly is exceedingly difficult, and the methods and accuracies required border on (and often exceed) the limits of available technology of manufacturing and measuring. These limits dictate how fast a rotor may run and how many impellers can safely be used at a given speed, both factors being of great economic importance (cost, efficiency).

Once a high-speed rotor is assembled and found out of balance at operating speed, the *only* way to reestablish predictable balance is to completely disassemble the rotor and to start from scratch.

Clean Up and Inspection of Rotor

Compressor rotors must be carefully inspected for any damage. To accomplish this, these guidelines should be followed:

1. The rotor should rest on the packing area that must be protected by soft packing, annealed copper, or lead to avoid any marring of polished surfaces. *Do not use* Teflon® strips since Teflon® impregnation of the metal surfaces can alter the adhesion characteristics of the lubricant in contact with the journal. Lubrication problems could ensue.
2. The rotor should be given an initial inspection for the following:
   a. Impeller hub, cover, and vane pitting or damage.
   b. Are there any rubs or metal transfer on the hub or cover indicating a shifting of rotor position? All foreign metal should be ground off and the area inspected for heat checking as described in item 8.

c. Journals
- Journal diameter—Roundness and taper are the two most critical dimensions associated with a bearing journal. These dimensions are established with a four point check taken in the vertical and horizontal planes (at 90° to one another) at both the forward and aft edge of the journal. A micrometer is normally used for this purpose. The journal diameter must be subtracted from the liner bore diameter to determine the clearance. If the journal diameter is 0.002 in. or more outside of its drawing tolerance, it is necessary to remachine the journal. Another parameter that must be carefully watched is journal taper. Excessive taper produces an increase in the oil flow out one of the ends of the bearing, thereby starving the other end. This can result in excessive babbitt temperatures. Journal tapers greater than about 0.0015 in. require remachining.
- Journal surface—Surfaces that have been scratched, pitted, or scraped to depths of 0.001 in. or less are acceptable for use. Deeper imperfections in the range of 0.001 to 0.005 in. must be restored by strapping.
- Thrust collar—does it have good finish? Use same guidelines as for journals. Is the locking nut and key tight? If the collar is removed, is its fit proper? It should have .001 to .0005 in. interference minimum.

3. The journals, coupling fits, overspeed trip, and other highly polished areas should be tightly wrapped and sealed with protective cloth.
4. The rotor should be sandblasted using No. 5 grade, 80/120 mesh, polishing compound, silica sand, or aluminum oxide.
5. When the rotor is clean, it should be again visually inspected.
6. Impellers and shaft sleeve rubs—rubs in excess of 5 mils deep in labyrinth areas require reclaiming of that area.
7. Wheel location—have any wheels shifted out of position? Wheel location should be measured from a thrust collar locating shoulder. There should be a 4–5 mil gap between each component of the rotor; i.e., each impeller, each sleeve, etc.
8. On areas suspected of having heat checking or cracks, a dye penetrant check should be made using standard techniques or "Zyglo":
   a. Preparation

      Cracks in forgings probably have breathed; that is, they have opened and closed during heat cycles, drawing in moist air that has condensed in the cracks, forming oxides and filling cracks with moisture. This prevents penetration by crack detection so-

lutions. To overcome this condition, all areas to be tested should be heated by a gas torch to about 250°F and allowed to cool before application of the penetrant.

These tests require a smooth surface as any irregularities will trap penetrant and make it difficult to remove, thus giving a false indication or obscuring a real defect.

b. Application

The penetrant is applied to the surface and allowed to seep into cracks for 15 to 20 minutes. The surface is then cleaned and a developer applied. The developer acts as a capillary agent (or blotter) and draws the dyed penetrant from surface defects so it is visible, thus indicating the presence of a discontinuity of the surface. In "Zyglo" an ultraviolet light is used to view the surface.

9. A more precise method of checking for a forging defect would require magnetic particle check, "Magnaflux" or "Magnaglow." As these methods induce a magnetic field in the rotor, care must be taken to ensure that the rotor is degaussed and all residual magnetism removed.
10. The rotor should be indicated with shaft supported at the journals:
    a. Shaft run out (packing areas) .002 in. TIR max.
    b. Impeller wobble—.010 in. TIR—measured near O.D.
    c. Shroud band wobble—.020 in. TIR.
    d. Thrust collar—.0005 in. TIR measured on vertical face.
    e. Vibration probe surfaces .0005 in. TIR—no chrome plating, metallizing, etc., should be permitted in these areas.
    f. Journal areas—.0005 in. TIR, 20 micro in. rms or better.
    g. Gaps between all adjacent shrink fit parts—should be .004 to .005 in.
11. If the shaft has a permanent bow in excess of the limit or if there is evidence of impeller distress, i.e., heavy rubs or wobble, the rotor must be disassembled. Similarly, if the journals or seal surfaces on the shaft are badly scored, disassembly in most cases is indicated as discussed below.

Disassembly of Rotor for Shaft Repair

If disassembly is required the following guidelines will be helpful.

1. The centrifugal rotor assembly is made with uniform shrink fit engagement (3/4 to 1 1/2 mil/in. of shaft diameter), and this requires an impeller heating process or, in extreme cases, a combination process of heating the impeller and cooling the shaft.

2. The shrinks are calculated to be released when the wheel is heated to 600°F *maximum*. To exceed this figure could result in metallurgical changes in the wheel. Tempil® sticks should be used to ensure this is not exceeded. The entire diameter of an impeller must be uniformly heated using "Rosebud" tips—two or more at the same time.
3. Generally a turbine wheel must be heated so that it expands 0.006–0.008 in. more than the shaft so that it is free to move on the shaft.
4. The important thing to remember when removing impellers is that the heat must be applied quickly to the rim section first. After the rim section has been heated, heat is applied to the hub section, starting at the outside. *Never apply heat toward the bore with the remainder of the impeller cool.*
5. To disassemble rotors, naturally the parts should be carefully marked as taken apart so that identical parts can be replaced in the proper position. A sketch of rotor component position should be made using the thrust collar as a reference point. Measure and record distance from the thrust collar or shoulder to first impeller hub edge. Make and record distance between all impellers.
6. When a multistage compressor is to be disassembled, each impeller should be stencilled. From thrust end, the first impeller should be stencilled T-1, second wheel T-2, and so on. If working from coupling end, stencil first wheel C-1, second wheel C-2, and so on.
7. The rotor should be suspended vertically above a sand box to soften the impact of the impeller as it falls from the shaft. It may be necessary to tap the heated impeller with a lead hammer in order to get it moving. The weight of the impeller should cause it to move when it is hot enough.

Shaft Design

It is not uncommon to design for short-term loads approaching 80 percent of the minimum yield strength at the coupling end of the shaft. The shaft is not exposed to corrosive conditions of the compressed gas at this point. Inside of the casing, the shaft size is fixed by the critical speed rigidity requirements. The internal shaft stress is about 5,000–7,000 psi—very low compared to the impellers or at the coupling area. With drum-type rotors there is no central portion of the shaft, there are only shaft stubs at each end of the rotor. The purpose of the shaft is to carry the impellers, to bridge the space between the bearings and to transmit the torque from the coupling to each impeller. Another function is to provide surfaces for the bearing journals, thrust collars, and seals.

The design of the shaft itself does not present a limiting factor in the turbomachinery design. The main problems are to maintain the shaft straight and in balance, to prevent whipping of overhangs, and to prevent failure which may be caused by lateral or torsional vibration, chafing of shrunk-on parts, or manufacturing inadequacies. The shaft must be accurately made, but the limits of technology are not approached as far as theory or manufacturing techniques are concerned. A thermally unstable shaft develops a bow as a function of temperature. To reduce this bow to acceptable limits requires forgings of a uniformity and quality that can only be obtained by the most careful manufacturing and metallurgical techniques.

Rotors made of annealed material are not adequate, because many materials, for example AISI 4140, have a high ductility transition temperature in the annealed condition. This has caused failures, especially of shaft ends. Therefore, it is very important to make sure that the material has been properly heat-treated.

Most compressor shafts are made from AISI 4140 or 4340. AISI 4340 is preferred because the added nickel increases the ductility of the metal. Most of the time the yield strength is over 90,000 psi and the hardness no greater than 22 Rockwell "C" in order to avoid sulfide stress cracking.

While selection of the material is fairly simple, quality control over the actual piece of stock is complicated. There are several points to consider.

1. *Material Quality:* Forgings of aircraft quality (= "Magnaflux quality") are required for all but the simplest machines. Bar-stock may not have sufficient thermal stability, and therefore must be inspected carefully. Note that shafts—as well as all other critical components—must be stress-relieved after rough machining, which usually leaves 1/16 in. of material for finishing.
2. *Testing:* Magnaglo of finished shaft. Ultrasonic test is desirable for large shafts. Heat indication test is required for critical equipment.
3. *Shaft Ends:* Should be designed to take a moderate amount of torsional vibration, not only the steady operating torque.
4. The shaft must be able to withstand the shrink stresses. Any medium strength steel will do this. After some service the impeller hubs coin distinct depressions into such shafts, squeezing the shaft, so to speak. This squeezing process also causes shaft distortion and permanent elongation of the shaft, which can lead to vibration problems or internal rubbing. Since part of the initial shrink fit is lost, this may cause other types of problems, such as looseness of impellers, which then can lead to looseness-excited vibrations such as hysteresis whirl.

Rotor Assembly

1. Remove the balanced shaft from the balancing machine, and position it vertically in a holding fixture providing adequate lateral support; the stacking step on the shaft should be at the bottom.
2. Remove all of the half-keys.
3. Assembly of the impellers and spacers on the shaft requires heating, generally in accordance with the procedure previously outlined for mandrel balancing. The temperature that must be attained to permit assembly is determined by the micrometer measurement of the shaft and bore diameters, and calculation of the temperature differential needed.
4. Due to extreme temperatures, a micrometer cannot be used; therefore, a go-no go gauge, 0.006 in. to 0.008 in. larger than the shaft diameter at the impeller fit, should be available for checking the impeller bore before any assembly shrinking is attempted.
5. Shrink a ring (0.003 in. to 0.004 in. tight) on the shaft extending about 1/32 in. past the first impeller location. Machine the ring to the exact distance from the machined surface of the impeller to the thrust shoulder, and record it on a sketch. This gives a perfect location and helps make the impeller run true.
6. Heating the impeller for assembly is a critical step. The important thing to keep in mind is that the hub bore temperature must not get ahead of the rim temperature by more than 10–15°F. The usual geometry of impellers is such that they will generally be heated so that the rim will expand slightly ahead of the hub section and tend to lift the hub section outward. With long and heavy hub sections, extreme care must be taken to not attempt too rapid a rate of heating because the bore of the hub can heat up ahead of the hub section and result in a permanent inward growth of the bore.

   Heating of the wheel can be accomplished in three different ways:

   a. Horizontal furnace: the preferred method of heating the wheel for assembly because the temperature can be carefully controlled.
   b. Gas ring: The ring should be made with a diameter equal to the mass center of the impeller.
   c. "Rosebuds": The use of two or more large diameter oxyacetylene torches can be used with good results. The impeller should be supported at three or more points. Play the torches over the

impeller so that it is heated evenly, remembering the 600°F limitation. Tempil® sticks should be used to monitor the temperature.

7. The wheel fit of the shaft should be lightly coated with high temperature antiseize compound.
8. The heated wheel should be bore checked at about the center of the bore fits. As soon as a suitable go-no go gauge can be inserted freely into the impeller fit bore, the impeller should be quickly moved to the shaft. With the keys in place, the impeller bore should be quickly dropped on the shaft, using the ring added in step 5 as a locating guide.
9. Shim stock, of approximately 0.004–0.006 in. thickness, should be inserted at three equally-spaced radial locations adjacent to the impeller hubs to provide the axial clearance needed between adjacent impellers. This is necessary to avoid transient thermal bowing in service.
10. Artificial cooling of the impeller during assembly must be used in order to accurately locate the impeller at a given fixed axial position. Compressed air cooling must be immediately applied after the wheel is in place. The side of the impeller where air cooling is applied is nearest to the fixed locating ring and/or support point. The locating ring should be removed after the impeller is cooled.
11. Recheck axial position of the impeller. If an impeller goes on out of position and must be moved, thoroughly cool the entire impeller and shaft *before* starting the second attempt. This may take three to four hours.
12. After the impellers, with their spacers and full-keys, have been assembled and cooled, the shim stock adjacent to the impeller hubs should be removed.
13. If the rotor has no sleeves, another split ring is needed to locate the second impeller. This split ring is machined to equal the distance between the first and second wheels. Then, a split ring is required for the next impeller, etc. Any burrs raised by previously assembled impellers should be carefully removed and the surfaces smoothed out.
14. Check for shaft warpage and impeller runout as each impeller is mounted. It may be necessary to unstack the rotor to correct any deficiencies.
15. The mounting of sleeves and thrust collars requires special attention. Sleeves have a lighter shrink than wheels and because of their lighter cross section can be easily damaged by uneven heating or high temperature. Thrust collars can be easily warped by heat.

The temperature of the thrust collar and sleeves should be limited to about 300–400°F.

16. Mount the rotor, now containing all the impellers, in the balancing machine, and spin it at the highest possible speed for approximately five minutes.
17. Shut down and check the angular position of the high spots and runout at the three previously selected spacer locations between journals. The high spots must be within ±45°, and the radial runouts within ½ mil, of the values recorded during bare shaft checking. If these criteria are not satisfied, it indicates that one or more elements have been cocked during mounting, thus causing the shaft to be locked-up in a bow by the interference fits. It is then necessary to remove the two impellers and spacers from the shaft, and to repeat the vertical assembly process.
18. Install the rotor locknut, being careful not to over tighten it; *shaft bowing can otherwise result.* If the rotor elements are instead positioned by a split ring and sleeve configuration, *an adjacent spacer must be machined to a precise length determined by pin micrometer measurement after all impellers have been mounted.*
19. Many compressors are designed to operate between the 1st and 2nd lateral critical speeds. Most experts agree that routine check balance of complete rotors with correction on the first and last wheels is wrong for rotors with more than two wheels. The best method is to balance the *assembled* rotor in three planes.
    The residual dynamic couple imbalance should be corrected at the ends of the rotor, and the remaining residual static (force) imbalance should be corrected at about the middle of the rotor.
    For compressors that operate below the first critical (stiff shaft machines), two plane balance is satisfactory.
20. Install the thrust disc on the rotor; this should require a small amount of heating. *It is most important that cold clearances not exist at the thrust disc bore, since it will permit radial throwout of a relatively large mass at operating speed. Install the thrust-bearing spacer, and lightly tighten the thrust-bearing locknut.*
21. Spin the rotor at the highest possible balancing speed, and identify the correction(s) required at the thrust-bearing location. Generally, a static correction is all that is necessary, and it should be made in the relief groove at the OD of the thrust disc. No correction is permitted at the opposite end of the rotor.
22. Check the radial runout of the shaft end where the coupling hub will mount. This runout must not exceed .0005 in. (TIR), as before.

Shaft Balancing

Despite its symmetrical nature the shaft must be balanced. Again, the reader may wish to refer to Chapter 6 for details on the following.

1. Prepare half-keys for the keyways of the bare shaft. These should be carefully taped in position, using high-strength fiber-impregnated tape; several turns are usually required.

   Note: Tape sometimes fails during spinning in the balancing machine. It is therefore important that adequate shields be erected on each side of the balancing machine for the protection of personnel against the hazard of flying half-keys.

2. Mount the bare shaft, with half-keys in place, in the balancing machine with the supports at the journal locations. Spin the bare shaft at a speed of 300–400 rpm for approximately ten minutes. Shut down, and check the radial runout (TIR) at mid-span using a 1/10 mil dial indicator; record the angular position of the high spot and run out valve. Spin the bare shaft at a speed of 200–300 rpm for an additional five minutes. Shut down, and again check the radial run-out (TIR) at mid-span; record the angular position of the high spot and runout valve. Compare the results obtained after the ten minute and five minute runs; if they are the same, the bare shaft is ready for further checking and balancing. If the results are not repetitive, additional spinning is required; this should be continued until two consecutive five minute runs produce identical results.
3. Check the radial run-out (TIR) of the bare shaft in at least three spacer locations, approximately equidistant along the bearing span, and near the shaft ends. Record the angular position of the high spots and the runout values at each location. The shaft is generally considered to be satisfactory if both of these conditions are satisfied:
   a. The radial runout (TIR) at the section of the shaft between journals does not exceed 0.001 in.
   b. The radial runout (TIR) outboard of the journals does not exceed 0.0005 in.
4. With the balancing machine operating at its pre-determined rpm, make the required dynamic corrections to the bare shaft using wax. When satisfactory balance is reached, start removing material at the face of the step at each end of the center cylindrical section of the shaft. Under no circumstances should material be removed from the sections of the shaft outboard of the journal bearings.

Rotor Thrust in Centrifugal Compressors

Thrust bearing failure has potentially catastrophic consequences in compressors. Almost invariably, failure is due to overloading because of the following:

1. Improper calculation of thrust in the design of the compressor.
2. Failure to calculate thrust over the entire range of operating conditions.
3. A large increase in thrust resulting from "wiping" of impeller and balance piston labyrinth seals.
4. Surging of machine so that rotor "slams" from one side of thrust bearing to the other, and the oil film is destroyed.
5. Thrust collar mounting design is inadequate.

Rotor Thrust Calculations

Thrust loads in compressors due to aerodynamic forces are affected by impeller geometry, pressure rise through the compressor, and internal leakage due to labyrinth clearances. The impeller thrust is calculated, using correction factors to account for internal leakage and a balance piston size selected to compensate for the impeller thrust load. The common assumptions made in the calculations are as follows:

1. Radial pressure distribution along the outside of disc cover is essentially balanced.
2. Only the "eye" area is effective in producing thrust.
3. Pressure differential applied to "eye" area is equal to the difference between the static pressure at the impeller tip, corrected for the "pumping action" of the disc, and the total pressure at inlet.

These "common assumptions" are grossly erroneous and can be disastrous when applied to high pressure barrel-type compressors where a large part of the impeller-generated thrust is compensated by a balance piston. The actual thrust is about 50 percent more than the calculations indicate. The error is less when the thrust is compensated by opposed impellers, because the mistaken assumptions offset each other.

Magnitude of the thrust is considerably affected by leakage at impeller labyrinth seals. Increased leakage here produces increased thrust independent of balancing piston labyrinth seal clearance or leakage. A very good discussion of thrust action is found in Reference 3.

The thrust errors are further compounded in the design of the balancing piston, labyrinths, and line. API-617, "Centrifugal Compressors," specifies that a separate pressure tap connection shall be provided to indi-

cate the pressure in the balance chamber. It also specifies that the balance line shall be sized to handle balance piston labyrinth gas leakage at twice initial clearance without exceeding the load ratings of the thrust bearing, and that thrust bearings for compressors should be selected at no more than 50 percent of the bearing manufacturer's rating.

Many compressor manufacturers design for a balancing piston leakage rate of about 1 1/2–2 percent of the total compressor flow. Amoco and others feel that the average compressor, regardless of vendor, has a leakage rate of 3–4 percent of the total flow, and the balance line must be sized accordingly. This design philosophy would dictate a larger balance line to take care of the increased flow than normally provided. The balancing chamber in some machines is extremely small and probably highly susceptible to eductor type action inside the chamber which can increase leakage and increase thrust action. The labyrinth's leakage should not be permitted to exceed a velocity of 10 ft per second across the drum. The short balancing piston design of many designs results in a very high leakage velocity rate. Since the thrust bearing load is represented by the difference between the impeller-generated thrust and the compensating balance piston thrust, small changes can produce overloading, particularly in high-pressure compressors.

Design Solutions

Many of these problems have been handled at Amoco by retrofitting 34 centrifugal compressors (57 percent of the total) with improved bearing designs. Most of the emphasis has been toward increased thrust capacity via adoption of a Kingsbury-type design, but journal bearings are always upgraded as part of the package. Design features include spray-lubed thrust bearings (about a dozen cases), copper alloy shoes, ball and socket tilting pad journals, pioneered by the Centritech Company of Houston, Tx., and many other advanced state-of-the art concepts.

Some of the balancing piston leakage problems have been solved by use of honeycomb labyrinths. The use of honeycomb labyrinths offers better control of leakage rates (up to 60 percent reduction of a straight pass-type labyrinth). Honeycomb seals operate at approximately 1/2 the radial clearance of conventional labyrinth seals. The honeycomb structure is composed of stainless steel foil about 10 mils thick. Hexagonal-shaped cells make a reinforced structure that provides a larger number of effective throttling points.

Compressor shaft failures frequently occur because of loose fit of the thrust collar assembly. With no rotor positioning device left, the rotor shifts downstream and wrecks the machine. The practice of assembling thrust collars with a loose fit (1 to 5 mils) is very widespread because it

makes compressor end seal replacements easier. The collar is thin (sometimes less than 1 in. thick) and tends to wobble. The shaft diameter is small in order to maximize thrust bearing area. A nut clamps the thrust collar against a shoulder. Both the shoulder and the nut are points of high stress concentration. With a thrust action of several tons during surging, the collar can come loose. In addition, fretting corrosion between the collar and the shaft can occur.

The minimum thrust capacity of a standard 8-in. (32.0 square in.) Kingsbury-type bearing with flooded lubrication at 10,000 rpm is well in excess of 6½ tons. The thrust collar and its attachment method must be designed to accommodate this load. In most designs the inboard bearing has a solid base ring and the thrust collar must be installed after this thrust bearing is in place. The collar can be checked by revolving the assembled rotor in a lathe. The collar is subsequently removed for seal installation and must be checked for true running, i.e., the face is normal to the axis of the bearing housing again after it is finally fitted to the shaft.

This problem has been addressed at Amoco by redesigning the thrust collar to incorporate the spacer sleeve as an integral part and have a light shrink fit (0 to 1 mil tight). A puller is used to remove the collar after a small amount of heat is applied.

Managing Rotor Repairs at Outside Shops

When it becomes necessary to have rotor repairs performed away from your own plant, the outside shop should be required to submit such procedures as are proposed for inspections, disassembly, repair, reassembly, balancing, and even crating and shipping. And, while it is beyond the scope of this text to provide all possible variations of these procedures, two or three good sample procedures are given for the reader's information and review.

In the following section, the procedure proposed by a highly experienced repair shop for work to be performed on centrifugal compressor rotors is shown.

Procedures for Inspection, Disassembly, Stacking, and Balance of Centrifugal Compressor Rotors*

Incoming Inspection.

1. *Prepare incoming documentation.* Note any defects or other damage on rotor. Note any components shipped with rotor, such as coupling hub or thrust collar.

Source: Hickham Industries, Inc., La Porte, Texas 77571. Reprinted by permission.

2. *Clean rotor.* Protect all bearing, seal, probe, and coupling surfaces. Blast clean with 200 mesh grit. Glass bead, walnut shell, solvent, and aluminum oxide available if requested by equipment owner. After cleaning, coat all surfaces with a light oil.
3. *Perform non-destructive test.* Use applicable NDT procedure to determine existence and location of defects on any components. Record magnitude and location of any defects as indicated in Figure 9-2.

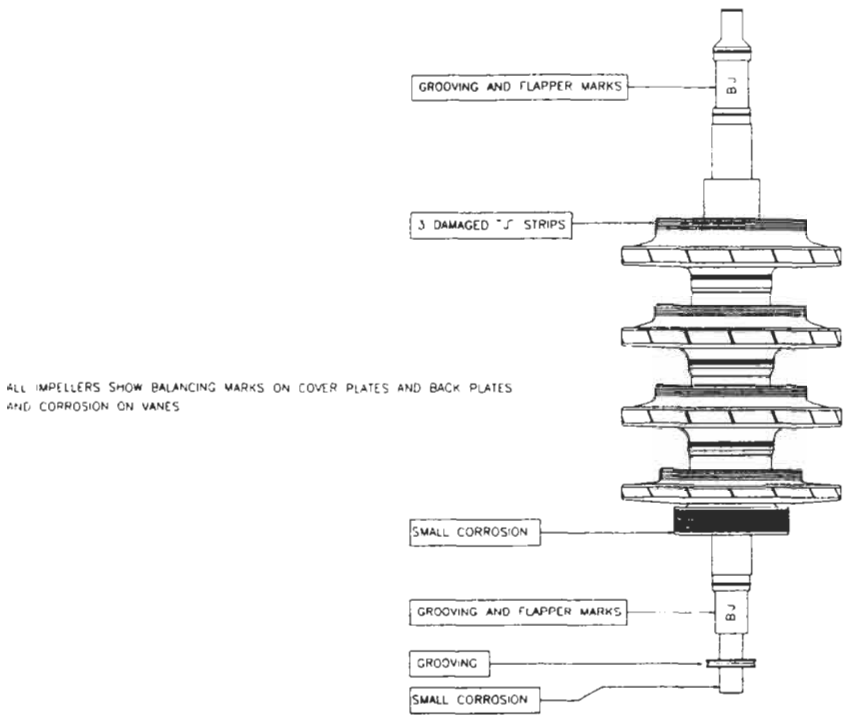


Figure 9-2. Recording rotor imperfections.

4. *Measure and record all pertinent dimensions of the rotor as shown in Figures 9-3 and 9-4.* Record on a sketch designed for the particular rotor. Record the following dimensions:
   - Impeller diameter and suction eye.
   - Seal sleeves, spacers, and shaft.
   - Journal diameters.
   - Coupling fits and keyways.
   - Gaps between adjacent shrunk-on parts.

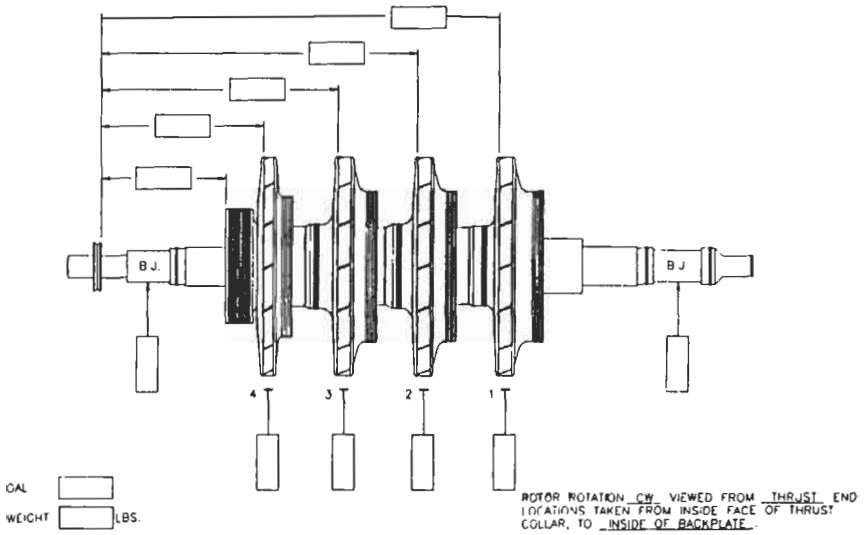


Figure 9-3. Typical record of axial distances for centrifugal compressor rotor.

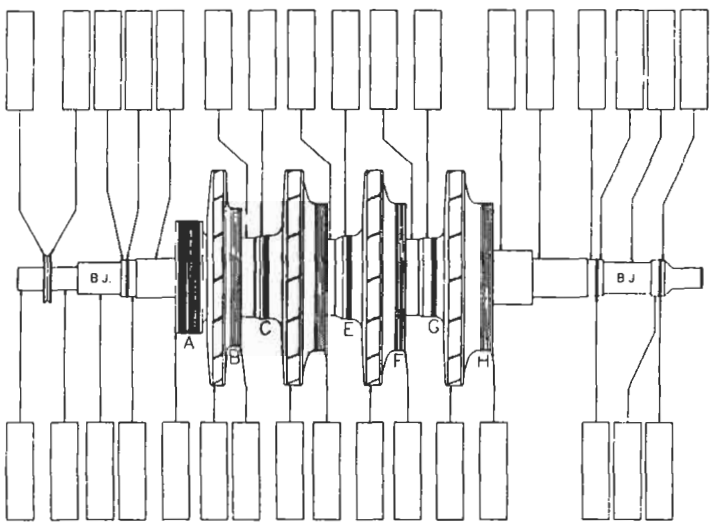


Figure 9-4. Dimensional record for compressor rotor sealing areas.

5. *Check and record pertinent runouts.* Rotor is supported at the bearing journals on "V" blocks. Runouts should be phase-related using the coupling (driven end) keyway as the 0° phase reference. If the coupling area is double-keyed or has no keyway, the thrust collar keyway should be used as the zero reference. If this is not possible, an arrow should be stamped on the end of the shaft to indicate plane of zero-phase reference.
6. *Check and record electrical runout probe area.* Use an 8-mm diameter eddy probe. Probe should be calibrated to shaft material only. Probe area tolerance should be .25 mil maximum.
7. *Check and record all pertinent axial stack-up dimensions.* Referenced from thrust collar shaft shoulder or integral thrust collar.

If Disassembly Is Required.

1. *Visually inspect.* Visually inspect each part removed. Measure and record all pertinent shaft and component dimensions as follows:
   - Impeller bore sizes—key size where applicable.
   - Shaft sleeve bore sizes.
   - Balance piston bore sizes.
   - Thrust collar bore size—key size where applicable.
2. *Use of applicable non-destructive test procedures.* Use NDT procedures to determine existence and location of any cracks on shaft and component parts. Maximum allowable residual magnetism 2.0 gauss.
3. *Completion of inspection procedures.* Upon completion of inspection procedures, customer is notified and the results evaluated and discussed. The repair scope most advantageous to the customer is confirmed and completed.

Assembly.

1. *Check dynamic balance.* Check dynamic balance of shaft. Balance tolerance, unless otherwise specified, is 4 w/n per plane. Correction of unbalance is analyzed and made on an individual basis.
   - Rotors that stack from the center out stack two wheels at a time.
   - Rotors that stack from one end stack one wheel at a time.
   - After each stacking step, allow components to cool to 120°F or less.
   - Runouts should not change more than 0.5 mil between component stacks.†
   - Maximum allowable runout on shaft is 1.0 mil.†

† Based on 5,000-lb, 5,000-rpm rotor

- Maximum allowable eye face runout is 2.0 mil.†
- If runouts exceed tolerance, de-stack (to problem point), check shaft runout, and restack.
- Perform 12-point residual per plane after final trim balance is completed.

Final Inspection.

1. *Document.* Document final runouts and submit to customer.
2. *Probe area.* As required, check and record vibration probe area for electrical/mechanical runouts; correct as required; maximum allowable 0.25 mil peak to peak.
3. *Preserve.* Preserve rotor as follows: coat rotor completely with Cesco 140, wrap rotor, and notify customer with shipping or storage information.

A sample specification or procedure that the responsible (and responsive) repair shop furnishes to its sub-vendors is shown in the following section.

Turbo Specification Chrome Plating and Finish Grinding*

Repair Facility to Provide to Vendor:

1. Clear, concise drawing detailing:
   - Areas requiring plating or grinding.
   - Finish dimension required and tolerance to hold—unless specified OD tolerance + .0005-.0000. Finish 16 RMS maximum.
   - Shop contact and job number.
   - Desired delivery date.
   - Hardness of area to be chromed.
2. Proper support cradle for safe transportation (when the repair facility is providing transportation).
3. A calibrated standard-taper ring gauge on taper coupling chroming.
4. No chroming on a sleeve area under any circumstances.

Vendor to Provide to Repair Facility:

1. Proper support cradle for safe transportation (when vendor furnishes transportation).
2. Incoming inspection, to note any areas of concern not covered in original scope.

† Based on 5,000-lb, 5,000-rpm rotor
Source: Hickham Industries, Inc., La Porte, Texas 77571. Adapted by permission.

3. Chrome plating. Prepare areas to be chromed by grinding all grooves, pits, scratches, and other blemishes in area to be plated.
4. Blending in of all sharp corners and edges, both internal and external, with adjacent surface. Chrome deposit should thus be blended into adjacent surfaces so as to prevent lack of deposit or build-up of deposit.
5. Anodic cleaning of surfaces to be coated to assure maximum adhesion of chrome.
6. Chrome plating deposited directly on the ground surface without the application of any undercoat.
7. Chrome plating free of any visible defects. It should be smooth, fine grained, and adherent. A dye penetrant inspection qualifies the above.
8. No chrome plating on top of chromium, unless specified by the repair facility.

Finish Grinding.

1. Chrome coating should be ground to finish dimensions specified. Tolerance on OD should be + .0005-.0000 unless otherwise specified.
2. Grinding should be done with proper coolant and wheel speed to produce proper surface finish.
3. Desired surface finish should be 16 RMS maximum unless otherwise specified.
4. Taper shaft fits—appropriate, calibrated, and approved; ring gauge should accompany to ensure standard taper. A blue check should be made prior to shipment.
5. Final inspection—dimensional and dye penetrant.
6. Prepare for shipment by wrapping finished areas with protective cloth to resist damage during handling and shipping, and notify the repair facility representative upon completion for shipping arrangements.

Mounting of Hydraulically Fitted Hubs*

Modern turbomachinery rotors are commonly fitted with coupling hubs. For years, these hubs have incorporated keys. Lately, however, keyless hubs have gained favor.

* Source: Koppers Company, Inc. Power Transmission Division, Baltimore, MD 21203. Reprinted by permission.

Hubs that are not provided with a keyway receive (or transmit) the torque from the shaft through friction. Hence, the hubs must grip the shaft tightly. This gripping is accomplished by advancing the hub on the tapered shaft a specified amount. To facilitate this advance one must expand the hub bore. Two methods are used most often: heating or hydraulic pressure.

When hydraulic pressure is used, a few specialized tools are needed. Basically, they are an installation tool, a high pressure oil pump with pressure gauge, and a low pressure pump with pressure gauge.

To ensure satisfactory performance, the following procedure is recommended for proper installation when using the hydraulic pressure method. It assumes that your installation employs O-rings, although experience shows that many modern coupling hubs can be installed *without* the use of O-rings. On these, please disregard any references to O-rings.

Check for proper contact. After the shaft and hub bore are thoroughly cleaned, spread a thin layer of mechanics blue on the shaft and push the hub snugly. A very slight rotation of the hub is permitted after it is pushed all the way. Remove the hub and check the bore for blue color. At least 80 percent of the bore should have contact.

Improve the contact. If less than 80 percent contact is found, the shaft and hub should be *independently* lapped using a ring and plug tool set.

Clean the lapped surfaces. Remove all traces of lapping compound using a solvent and lint-free towels. Immediately afterward, spread thin oil on the shaft and hub bore to prevent rusting. Recheck the hub to shaft contact.

Determine zero clearance (START) position. Without O-rings in the shaft or hub, push the hub snugly on the shaft. This is the "start" position. With a depth gauge, measure the amount the hub overhangs the shaft end and record this value.

Prepare for measuring the hub draw (advance). The hub must be advanced on the shaft exactly the amount specified. Too little advance could result in the hub spinning loose; too much advance could result in the hub splitting at or shortly after installation. As the overhang cannot be measured *during* installation, other means to measure the advance must be found. The best way is to install a split collar on the shaft, away from the hub by the amount of the specified advance. Use feeler gauges for accurate spacing. See Figure 9-5.

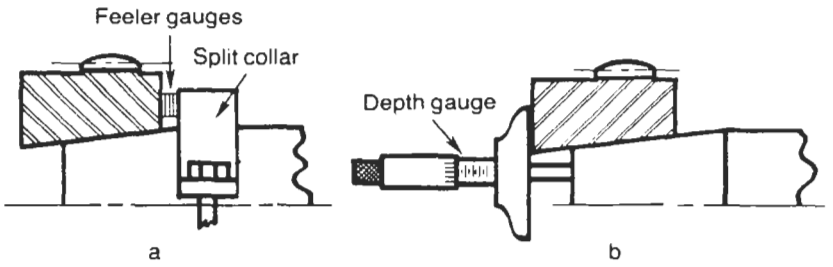


Figure 9-5. Methods of determining and limited hub advance on tapered shaft.

Install O-rings and back-up rings. The oil is pumped between the hub and shaft through a shallow circular groove machined either in the hub or in the shaft. Install the O-rings *toward* this groove, the back-up rings *away* from this groove. Do not twist either the O-rings or the back-up rings while installing. After they are installed, look again! The O-rings must be *between* the back-up rings and the oil groove! Spread a little bit of thin oil on the rubber surfaces.

Mount "other" components. Read the coupling installation procedure again. Must other components (such as a sleeve) be mounted on the shaft before hub? Now is the time to do it.

Mount the hub on the shaft. Avoid pinching the O-rings during mounting. The O-rings will prevent the hub from advancing to the "start" position. This is acceptable.

Mount the installation tool. Wet the threads with thin oil, and rotate the tool until it butts against the shaft shoulder. The last few turns will require the use of a spanner wrench.

Connect the hydraulic lines. Connect the installation tool to the *low* pressure oil pump (5,000 psi minimum). Connect the *high* pressure oil pump (40,000 psi minimum) to the hole provided either in the center of the shaft or on the outside diameter of the hub, depending on design. Loosen the pipe plug of the installation tool and pump all the air out; retighten the plug. Both pumps *must* be equipped with pressure gauges. See Figure 9-6.

Advance the hub to the start position, through pumping the low pressure oil pump. Continue pumping until the hub advances .005 to .010 in. beyond the start position.

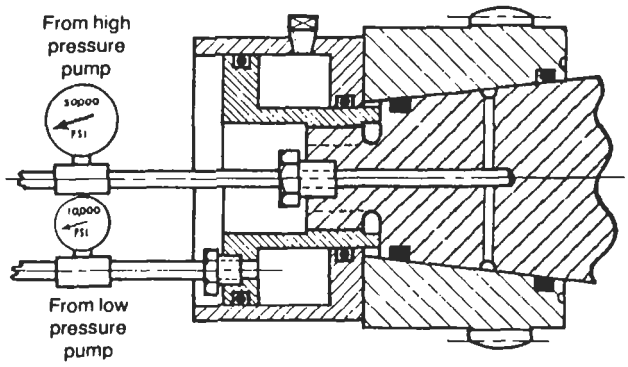


Figure 9-6. Hydraulic system for hub installation.

Expand the hub. Pump the high pressure pump until you read 15,000 to 17,000 psi on the gauge. As the pressure increases, the hub will tend to move off the shaft. Prevent this movement by occasionally increasing the pressure at the installation tool.

Check for oil leaks. The hub *should not* be advanced on the shaft if leaks exist! The pressure at the high pressure oil pump will drop rapidly at first because the air in the system escapes past the O-rings. Continue pumping until pressure stabilizes. A pressure loss of no more than 1,000 PSI *per minute* is acceptable. If the pressure drops faster than that, remove the hub and replace the O-rings. However, before removing the hub make sure that the leaks do not occur at the hydraulic connections.

Advance the hub. Increase the pressure at the installation tool and the hub will advance on the shaft. If all the previous steps were observed, the pressure at the high pressure gauge will gradually *increase* as the hub advances. If the pressure *does not* increase, then *stop*. Remove the hub and check O-rings. If the pressure increases, keep advancing the hub until it touches the split collar or until the specified advance is reached. *Do not* allow the pressure to exceed 30,000 psi. If it does, open the pressure valve slowly and release some oil. If in doing this the pressure drops below 25,000 psi, pump the high pressure pump to 25,000 psi, and continue the hub advance.

Seat the hub. *Very slowly* release *all* the pressure at the high pressure pump. Do not work on that hub for 1/2 hour, or one hour in cold weather. After that, release all the pressure at the installation tool and remove it.

Verify the advance. Measure and then record the new overhang of the hub over the shaft. Subtract from the overhang measured in the start position and the result must be the specified advance.

Secure the hub. Remove the split collar from the shaft and install the retaining nut, but do not overtighten. Secure the nut with the setscrews provided.

Dismounting of Hydraulically Fitted Hubs

In current practice, when a hydraulically fitted hub is removed, it comes off the shaft with sudden movement. Lead washers or other damping means are used to absorb the energy of the moving hub.

Koppers Company, Inc. engineers have developed a dismounting procedure that eliminates the sudden movement of the hub. Without this sudden movement the dangers related to removing hydraulically-fitted hubs are greatly reduced. However, normal safety procedures should continue to be used.

Koppers' dismounting method requires the use of the same tools used when mounting the hub. The following procedure is recommended:

1. *Remove the shaft nut.*
2. *Mount the installation tool.* Wet the shaft threads with thin oil and rotate the tool until it butts against the shaft shoulder. There should be a gap betwen the tool and the hub equal to or larger than the amount of advance when the hub was installed (check the records). If the gap is less than required, the wrong installation tool is being used.
3. *Connect the hydraulic lines.* Connect the installation tool to the *low* pressure oil pump (5,000 psi minimum). Connect the *high* pressure oil pump (40,000 psi minimum) to the hole provided either in the center of the shaft or on the outside diameter of the hub, depending on the design. Loosen the pipe plug of the installation tool and pump all air out; retighten the plug. Both pumps *must* be equipped with pressure gauges.
4. *Activate the installation tool.* Pump oil into the installation tool. The piston will advance until it contacts the hub. Continue pumping until the pressure is between 100 to 200 psi. Check for leaks.
5. *Expand the hub.* Pump oil between the hub and the shaft by using the high pressure pump. While pumping watch both pressure gauges. When the high pressure gauge reads about 20,000 psi the pressure at the low pressure gauge should start increasing rapidly.

This pressure increase is caused by the force that the hub exerts on the installation tool, and is an indication that the hub is free to move. Continue to pump until pressure reaches 25,000 psi. In case the low pressure at the installation tool does not increase even if the high pressure reaches 30,000 psi, wait for about 1/2 hour while maintaining the pressure. It takes time for the oil to penetrate in the very narrow space between the hub and the shaft. Do not exceed 30,000 psi.

6. *Allow the hub to move. Very slowly* open valve at the low pressure pump. The oil from the installation tool will flow into the pump and allow the hub to move. The pressure at the high pressure gauge will also drop. Do not allow it to fall below 5,000 psi. If it does, close the valve and pump more oil at the high pressure pump. Continue the process until the valve at the low pressure pump is completely open and the pressure is zero.
7. *Remove the hub.* Release the high pressure and back off the installation tool until only two or three threads are still engaged. Pump the high pressure pump and the hub will slide off the shaft. When the hub contacts the installation tool, release all the pressure and remove the tool. The hub should now come off the shaft by hand. *Do not remove the installation tool unless the pressure is zero.*
8. *Inspect O-rings.* Reusing even slightly damaged rings invites trouble. The safest procedure is to always use new seals and discard the old ones.

Chapter 10

Protecting Machinery Parts Against Loss of Surface

Many repairs of worn machinery surfaces can be achieved by hard surfacing. By definition, hard surfacing is the process of applying, by specialized welding techniques, a material with properties superior to the basis metal.

Perhaps the chief factor limiting wide acceptance of this process today is the aura of mystery surrounding the properties of the various hard-surfacing alloys. There are literally hundreds of hard-surfacing alloys commercially available, each with a strange sounding name and a vendor's claim that it is the ultimate material for this or that application. Rather than sift through the chaff to determine which should be used on an urgent problem, many machinery maintenance people drop the idea of hard surfacing and rely on more familiar techniques. This section will discuss the various forms of wear, and show how a few hard-surfacing materials can solve most wear problems. The following information is intended to simplify the field of hard surfacing so that maintenance and design engineers can effectively use the process to reduce maintenance and fabrication costs.

Basic Wear Mechanisms

The first step in solving any wear problem is to determine the mode or modes of wear present.[1] This is of the utmost importance. The same ap-

* From "Guide to Hard Surfacing," by K. G. Budinski, Eastman Kodak Co., in PLANT ENGINEERING, 1974. By permission.

proach must be taken in new designs, except that then the question to be asked is not, "How did this part fail?" but "How might wear occur on this part?" By way of a quick review, there are four basic types of wear: adhesive, abrasive, corrosive, and surface fatigue. Each basic type can also be further categorized, as in Figure 10-1.

Adhesive Wear

The mechanism of adhesive wear is the removal of material from one or both mating surfaces by the action of particles from one of the surfaces bonding to the other. With repeated relative motion between the surfaces, the transferred particles may fracture from the new surface and take on the form of wear debris. Adhesive wear is thus analogous to friction, and is present in all sliding systems. It can never be eliminated—only reduced.

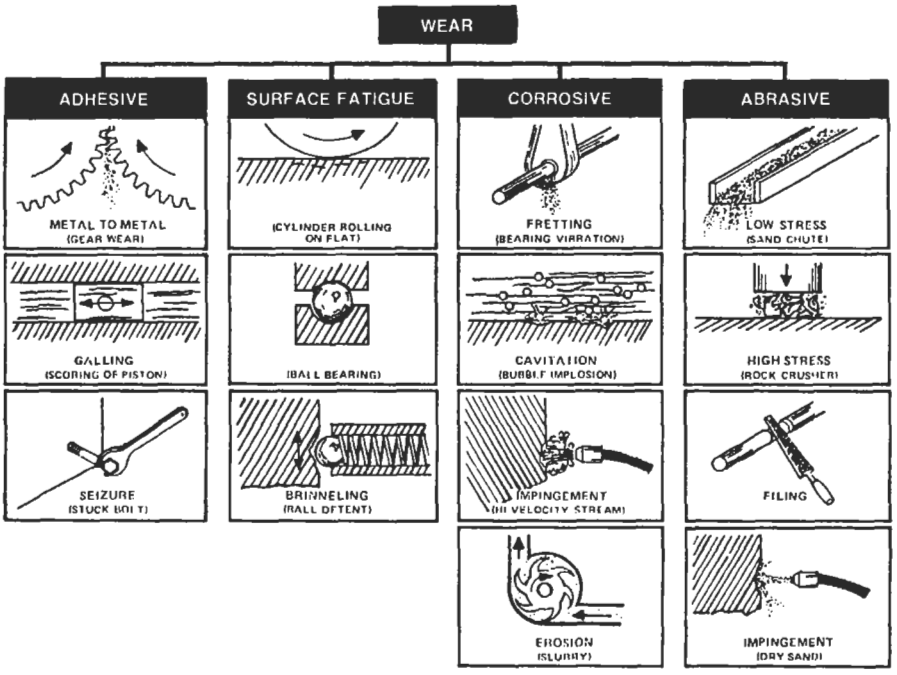


Figure 10-1. Wear mechanisms.

Abrasive Wear

Abrasive wear occurs when hard, sharp particles, or hard, rough surfaces, contact soft surfaces and remove material by shearing it from the softer surface. The amount of metal removed is a function of the nature of the abrading substance, and of the loading. For this reason, it is common to subdivide abrasive wear into high stress, low stress, high-velocity impingement, and filing.

Corrosive Wear

There is no one mechanism to describe corrosive wear. Fretting, the first form of corrosive wear shown in Figure 10-1, occurs in systems that are not supposed to move. One of the most common instances of fretting occurs on shafts, under the press-fitted inner race of a rolling element bearing. Vibration provides a slight relative motion between the shaft and the race. This oscillatory motion causes small fragments of one surface to adhere to the other (adhesive wear), and with repeated vibration or oscillation, the fragments oxidize (corrosive wear) and form abrasive oxides (abrasive wear) which amplify the surface damage.

Cavitation occurs in highly agitated liquids where turbulence and the implosion of bubbles cause removal of the protective oxide film on the metal surface, followed by corrosive attack on the base metal. If the implosion of the bubbles is particularly energetic, as is the case in ultrasonic devices, the material removal can be quite rapid.

Impingement by high velocity liquids causes removal of protective oxide films. Metal removal then occurs by corrosion of the active metal surface.

Erosion involves the same mechanism as impingement. However, the liquid in this instance contains abrasive particles that enhance the removal of surface films.

Surface Fatigue

This last form of wear to be discussed results from high compressive stress because of point or line-contact loading. These high stresses, with repeated rolling, produce subsurface cracks that eventually propagate and cause particles to be removed from the surface. Once this occurs, the deterioration of the entire rolling surface starts. This is a result of the additional compressive stresses that are generated when the first fragments detached are rerolled into the surface. Surface fatigue of this nature occurs in rolling-element bearings, rails, and other surfaces subjected to point or line-contact loads.

Hard Surfacing Techniques

Almost every welding technique can be used to apply a hard-surfacing material. Referring to the definition of hard surfacing—applying by welding or spraying techniques a material with properties superior to those of the basis metal—it can readily be seen that this can be accomplished in many ways. Figure 10-2 illustrates most of the methods used. Each has advantages and disadvantages. Shielded metal-arc welding is the most common and versatile welding technique, but many of the hard-surfacing alloys have not been available in a coated electrode form.

Oxyacetylene welding is the preferred method for applying bare filler metals, in that it minimizes "dilution" or mixing of the filler metal with

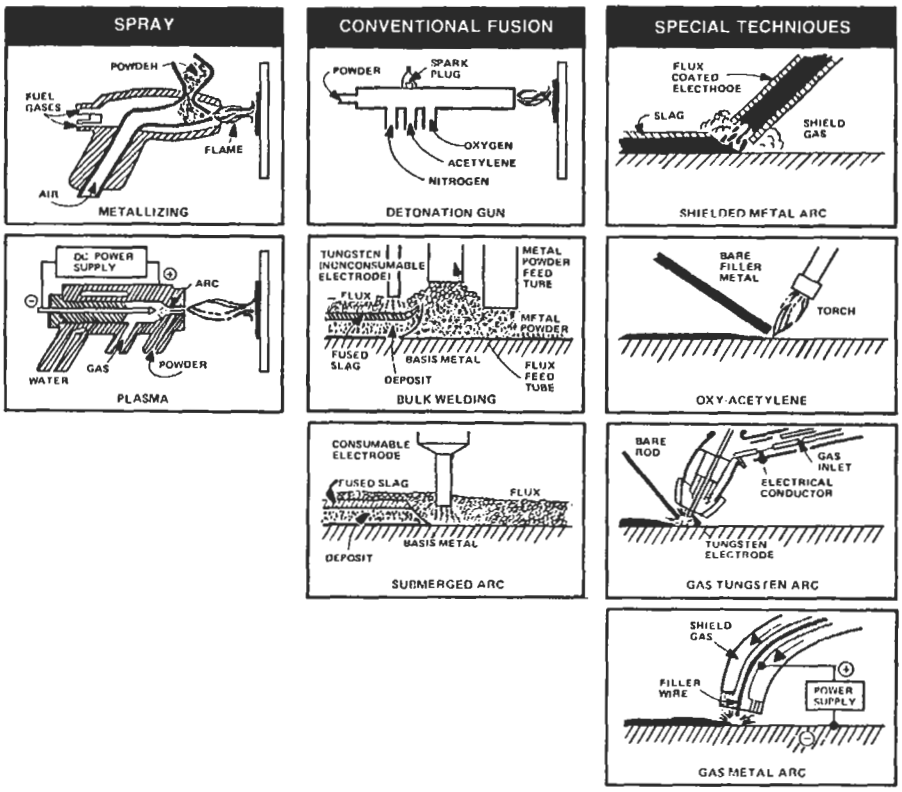


Figure 10-2. Hardsurfacing techniques.

the basis metal, so that the hardest deposit is achieved with this mode of deposition. Gas welding is slow, and it is difficult to control the deposit profile. Gas tungsten-arc welding is also slow, but provides the most accurate deposit profile of any of the fusion processes; it has the major disadvantage of significant dilution, with a corresponding loss in deposit hardness. Gas metal-arc welding is one of the fastest processes for applying hard surfacing; however (once again) not all surfacing alloys are available as wire that can be roll-driven through the welding gun. (When used for hard surfacing, the gas metal-arc process is often used without a shielding gas, and then is referred to as the "open arc" process.)

Under the heading of spray surfacing techniques, there are three primary processes: metallizing, plasma spray, and detonation gun. Metallizing is commonly done by spraying a powder at the surface with air pressure. The powder is heated to a highly plastic state in an oxyacetylene flame, coalesces and mechanically bonds to the substrate. Preparation of the substrate often involves knurling or abrasive blasting. In some systems, a wire, instead of a powder, is fed into the flame, and the molten droplets are sprayed on the surface with a gas assist. In another modification of this process, heating of the wire is accomplished by two carbon electrodes. In the powder system, it is also possible to spray ceramic materials; as in all spray systems, the deposit does not fuse to the basis metal, and there is a high degree of porosity. Some sprayed alloys may be heated with a larger torch after spraying, and the deposit will thus be fused to the substrate.

The plasma system is used only with powders, and its 15,000°F flame provides a denser deposit with improved bonding to the surface. Ceramics are commonly sprayed with plasma.

Special techniques used in hard surfacing include detonation gun, bulk welding, and submerged arc. The detonation gun system is a proprietary process which provides even greater densities and better bonds than can be achieved by plasma spraying. This process is described later.

Bulk welding is a process combining tungsten arc and submerged arc. It is designed for surfacing large areas quickly and cheaply. The mechanization involved in this process makes it more economical than most other fusion processes for hard surfacing large areas. Submerged arc welding, the last on the list of special techniques, is also used for surfacing large areas. However, it has the limitation that it is best suited to hard surfacings that are available in a coiled wire form. This rules out use on many of the hard cobalt and nickel-based alloys.

One of the principal factors that limit acceptance of hard surfacing is the confusion surrounding selection of an appropriate alloy for a given service. There are literally hundreds of alloys on the market. The American Welding Society (AWS) has issued a specification on surfacing mate-

rials (AWS A5.13), detailing 21 classes of electrodes and 19 classes of rods. Each class may contain rods from a dozen or so manufacturers, each slightly different. And many proprietary alloys are not included in this specification.

Each vendor of surfacing materials has his own selection system; most systems are based on application. If the machinery maintenance man's application is not included in the list, there is no way for him to know which material to choose. One thing that seems to be common to most vendors is a reluctance to supply information on the chemistry of their products. Many claim that this is proprietary and that the user does not need the information. This is like buying a "pig in a poke." No surfacing material should be used unless the plant engineer knows the composition of the alloy, the basic structure of the deposit, and the one and two layer as-deposited hardness. Other considerations of importance are cracking tendencies, bond, all position capability (for electrodes), and slag removal (again, electrodes).

Hard-surfacing alloys derive their wear characteristics from hard phases or intermetallic compounds in their structure. For example, due to their microstructure, two hardened steels may each have a Rockwell hardness of RC 60. However, the steel with the higher chromium content will have much greater wear resistance than the plain carbon steel. This is because of the formation of hard intermetallic compounds (chromium carbides) within the RC 60 martensitic matrix. Thus, in selecting tool steels and surfacing alloys, one must consider not only the macroscopic Rockwell-type of hardness, but the hardness and volume percentage of the micronconstituents.

If the machinery maintenance person wishes to solve an abrasive wear problem involving titanium dioxide, he or she must select a surfacing that is harder than TiO_2. Since many abrasive materials are harder than the hardest metals, this requires thinking in terms of absolute hardness. As indicated in Figure 10-3, TiO_2 has an absolute hardness of approximately 1100 Kg/mm^2. The hardest steel is only 900 on this scale.

To solve this wear problem, machinery maintenance personnel must select an alloy that has a significant volume concentration of chromium carbide, vanadium carbide, or some other intermetallic compound which is even harder than the TiO_2. Most surfacing alloys have significant amounts of these hard intermetallic compounds in their structure, and this is why they are effective.

In an attempt to simplify the subject of surfacing alloys without going into detail on microstructures, nine general classifications based on alloy composition have been established. These are illustrated in Figure 10-4. To effectively use hard surfacing, it is imperative that the engineer become familiar with the characteristics of each class.

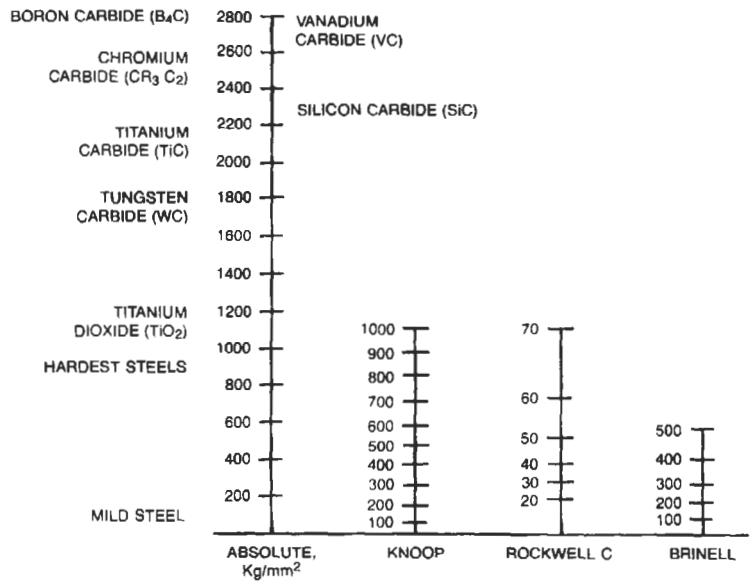


Figure 10-3. Comparison of commercial hardness tester scales.

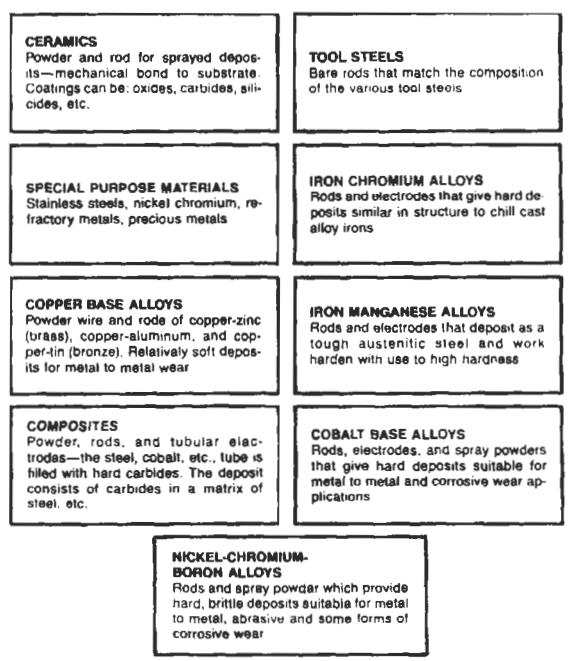

CERAMICS
Powder and rod for sprayed deposits—mechanical bond to substrate. Coatings can be: oxides, carbides, silicides, etc.
TOOL STEELS
Bare rods that match the composition of the various tool steels
SPECIAL PURPOSE MATERIALS
Stainless steels, nickel chromium, refractory metals, precious metals
IRON CHROMIUM ALLOYS
Rods and electrodes that give hard deposits similar in structure to chill cast alloy irons
COPPER BASE ALLOYS
Powder wire and rods of copper-zinc (brass), copper-aluminum, and copper-tin (bronze). Relatively soft deposits for metal to metal wear
IRON MANGANESE ALLOYS
Rods and electrodes that deposit as a tough austenitic steel and work harden with use to high hardness
COMPOSITES
Powder, rods, and tubular electrodes—the steel, cobalt, etc., tube is filled with hard carbides. The deposit consists of carbides in a matrix of steel, etc.
COBALT BASE ALLOYS
Rods, electrodes, and spray powders that give hard deposits suitable for metal to metal and corrosive wear applications
NICKEL-CHROMIUM-BORON ALLOYS
Rods and spray powder which provide hard, brittle deposits suitable for metal to metal, abrasive and some forms of corrosive wear

Figure 10-4. Classification of hardsurfacing materials.

Tool Steels

By definition, hard surfacing is applying a material with properties superior to the basis metal. In repair welding of tool steels, a rod is normally selected with a composition matching that of the basis metal. When this is done, repair welding of tool steels is not really rod surfacing. However, tool steel rods are available in compositions to match hot-work, air-hardening, oil-hardening, water-hardening, high-speed, and shock-resisting steels, and these rods can be applied to basis metals of differing composition. If the expected hardness is achieved, the surface deposit will have the service characteristics of the corresponding tool steel. Tool steel rods are normally only available as bare rod.

Iron Chromium Alloys

The iron-chromium alloys are essentially "white irons." For many years, the foundry industry has known that most cast irons will become very hard in the chilled areas if rapidly cooled after casting. If chromium, nickel, or some other alloying element is added to the cast iron, the casting may harden throughout its thickness. These alloy additions also provide increased wear resistance in the form of alloy carbides. Iron-chromium hard surfacings are based upon the metallurgy of these white irons. Hardnesses of deposit can range from RC 40 to RC 60. Some manufacturers use boron as the hardening agent instead of carbon, but the metallurgy of the deposit is still similar to white iron.

Iron-Manganese Alloys

These alloys are similar to the "Hadfield Steels." They are steels with manganese contents in the 10 to 16 percent range. The manganese causes the steel to have a tough austenitic structure in the annealed condition. With cold working in service, surface hardnesses as high as RC 55 can be obtained.

Cobalt-Base Alloys

These materials contain varying amounts of carbon, tungsten, and chromium in addition to cobalt, and provide hardnesses ranging from RC 35 to RC 60. Their wear resistance is derived from complex carbides in a cobalt-chromium matrix. The size, distribution and the types of carbides vary with the alloy content. The matrix can be harder than the austenitic matrix of some of the iron-chromium alloys.

Nickel-Chromium-Boron Alloys

This family of alloys forms deposits consisting of hard carbides and borides in a nickel eutectic matrix. The macrohardness can be as low as RC 35 and as high as RC 60, but at all hardness levels these alloys will provide good metal-to-metal wear resistance when compared with an alloy steel of the same hardness. These alloys are normally applied by oxyacetylene or gas tungsten-arc welding deposition of bare rod, or by powder spraying.

Composites

A composite, in hard surfacing, is a metal filler material containing substantial amounts of nonmetals. Typically, these are intermetallic compounds such as tungsten carbide, tantalum carbide, boron carbide, titanium carbide, and others. All of these intermetallics are harder than the hardest metal. Thus, they are extremely effective in solving abrasive wear problems. Composite electrodes usually consist of a steel, or soft alloy, tube filled with particles of the desired compound.

During deposition, some of these particles dissolve and harden the matrix, while the undissolved particles are mechanically included in the deposit of welding techniques. Oxyacetylene deposition is the preferred technique for application since fewer particles dissolve. The hard particles are available in various mesh sizes and can be so large that they can readily be seen on the surface. Composites are not recommended for metal-to-metal wear problems since these large, hard particles may enhance this type of wear. However, composites of smaller particle size can be applied by thermal spraying techniques, such as plasma and detonation gun.

Copper-Base Alloys

Brasses (copper and zinc) or bronzes (copper and aluminium, tin or silicon) can be deposited by most of the fusion welding techniques, or by powder spraying. Oxyacetylene deposition is the most common method. These alloys are primarily used for metal-to-metal wear systems with the copper alloy surfacing being the perishable component. These alloys should run against hardened steel for optimum performance.

Ceramics

Ceramics can be applied as surfacings by plasma, detonation gun spraying or with some types of metallizing equipment. Coating thicknesses are normally in the range of .002 to .040 in. Commonly sprayed

ceramics include carbides, oxides, nitrides, and silicides. These coatings are only mechanically bonded to the surface, and should not be used where impact is involved.

Special Purpose Materials

Many times metals are surfaced with austenitic stainless steels or soft nickel-chromium alloys for the sole purpose of corrosion resistance. For some applications, costly metals such as tantalum, silver or gold are used as surfacings. If a particular application requires a very special material, a surfacing technique probably can be used to put this special metal on only the functional surfaces, with a reduction in cost.

In an effort to come up with a viable hard surfacing selection system, a series of wear tests was conducted on fusion surfacing materials from each of the classifications detailed in the preceding pages. Several vendors' products in each classification were tested, and the welding characteristics of each material determined. Ceramics, tool steels, and special purpose materials were not tested.

The specific procedure for evaluating the fusion surfacings was to make multilayer test coupons, determine the welding characteristics, and run metal-to-metal and abrasive wear tests on the materials that performed satisfactorily in the welding tests. The compositions of the hard surfacing alloys tested are shown in Table 10-1.

Test Results. As shown in Figure 10-5, the abrasive wear resistances of certain compositions, such as FeCr-5 and Composites 2 and 3 were superior. (The three mentioned are notable for ease of application.) Harder nickel and cobalt-based alloys with macrohardnesses of approximately RC 60 did not perform as well. The manganese steels (FeMn-1 and 2), the low chromium iron alloys (Fe-1 and 2), and the copper-based alloy Cu-1 all had poor abrasive wear resistance.

Adhesive wear test results are shown in Figure 10-6. Co-2 had the lowest net wear. The composite surfaces, Com-1, 2, and 3 performed very well, but produced more wear on the mating tool steel than did the cobalt-based alloys. This result was also experienced with the nickel-based alloys. The copper-based alloy Cu-1 showed the highest surfacing wear rate, but one of the lowest shaft wear rates.

Discussion. The results of the abrasive wear tests indicated that the theoretical prediction that the abrasive wear rate is inversely proportional to the hardness of the material subjected to wear held true. However, as was mentioned earlier, this result does not refer to the macrohardness, but to a combination of macrohardness and microconstituent hardness. The sur-

Table 10-1.
Compositions of hard surfacing alloys.

Alloy**	Nominal Composition*													Hardness
	C	Si	Cr	W	Co	Al	Mn	B	Fe	Ni	Cu	Other	Other	Rockwell C
Fe-1 △	0.18	0.30	2.90				1.02		BAL					35
Fe-2 △	0.68	0.47	6.80				1.48		BAL					20
Fe Cr-1 △	2.20	0.90	30.00				1.30		BAL			3.8 Mo	1.50 Ti	50
Fe Cr-2 △	0.44	1.20	29.60				1.70		BAL			4.0 Mo		60
Fe Cr-3 △	4.00	1.00	23.00						BAL			0.5 Mo	7.50 Cb	60
Fe Cr-4 △	1.00	3.00	13.00				0.70	3.00	BAL					60
Fe Cr-5 △	6.00	1.00	13.00				2.70		BAL			5.2 Ti		62
FeMn-1 △	0.44	0.52	14.10				16.60		BAL					20
FeMn-2 △	0.64	0.26	0.47				13.60		BAL					20
Co-1 +	1.20	2.06	30.00	4.50	BAL		2.00		3.00	3.00		1.5 Mo		40
Co-2 +	1.80		29.0	9.00	BAL									50
Co-3 +	2.00	0.85	30.90	13.80	BAL				2.30					55
Co-4 +	2.50		32.50	17.50	BAL									58
Co-1A +	0.95	1.20	27.40	5.00	BAL				1.90					30
Co-1C △	1.10		29.00	4.50	BAL					3.00				40
Co-7 △														36
Cu-1 +						14.00			4.00		BAL			20
NiCr-4 +	0.45	2.25	10.00					2.00	2.50	BAL				35
NiCr-5 +	0.65	3.75	11.50					2.60	4.25	BAL				50
NiCr-6 +	0.75	4.25	13.50					3.00	4.75	BAL				56
NiCr-C +	0.04	0.86	15.50	4.10				0.24	5.70	BAL		16 Mo	0.34 V	30
COM-1 +									BAL			60 WC		62
COM-2 △									BAL			60 WC		62
COM-3 +	0.48	0.80	12.00	1.80	10.00		0.80		1.20	1.20		60 WC		60

* Fe - Iron Base; Fe Mn - Iron Manganese; Fe Cr -Iron Chromium; Co - Cobalt Base; Ni Cr - Nickel Chromium; Cu - Copper Base; COM - Composite

** + Rod; △Electrode

facings that performed best in the abrasive wear tests—Com-2 and 3, and FeCr-5—all had large volume percentages of intermetallic compounds with hardnesses greater than the abrading substance, which in this case was silicon dioxide.

Another significant observation was that the iron chromium alloy FeCr-5 with high carbon (6 percent) and titanium (5.2 percent) concentrations outperformed the arc-welded tungsten carbide deposit Com-1. Thus it was shown that a coated electrode (FeCr-5) could be used to get abrasive wear resistance almost as good as that of gas-deposited tungsten-carbide composite. All of the very hard alloys exhibited cracking after welding, making them unsatisfactory for some applications, such as

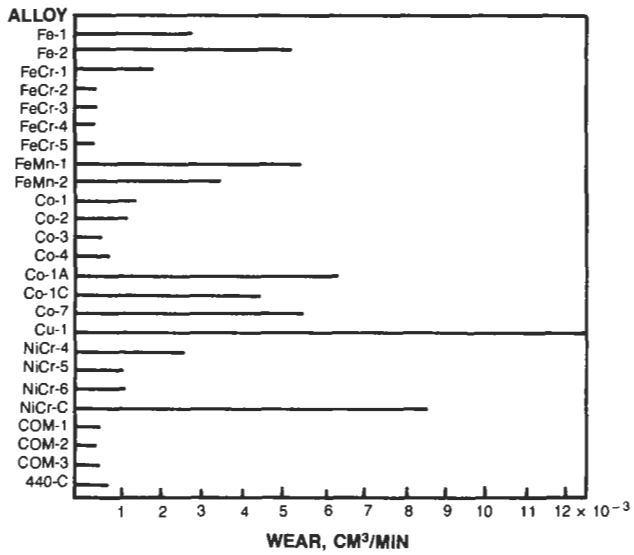


Figure 10-5. Performance of hardsurfacing materials subjected to low-stress abrasive wear. Numbers indicate formulations shown in Table 10-1.

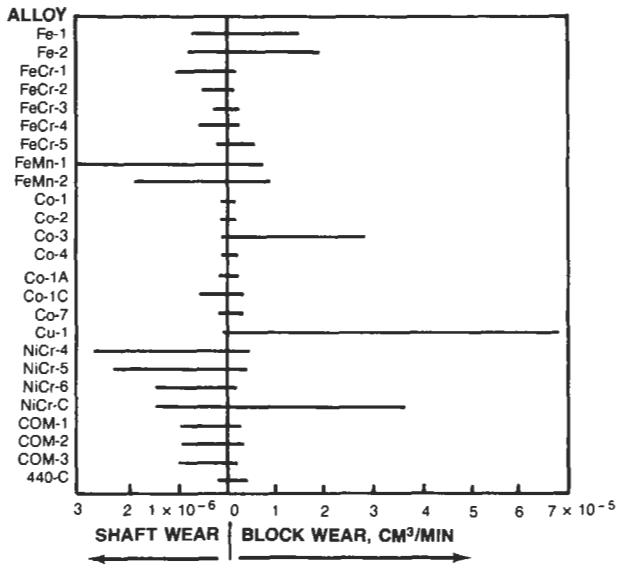


Figure 10-6. Adhesive wear graph showing results of running test blocks in contact with 440-C stainless steel shaft of HRC 58. In most applications, neither shaft wear nor block wear is desired; several cobalt alloys gave superior results.

knife edges. The cobalt-based alloy Co-2 had the best abrasive wear resistance of those alloys that did not crack after welding. Cracking and checking do not mean a loss of bond; and thus, in many surfacing applications, cracking tendencies can be neglected.

In explanation of the results of the adhesive wear tests, it can be hypothesized that the hard microconstituents present in many of the surfacing alloys tested promoted wear of the mating metal surface. The cobalt-based alloys that performed best in this test do not have a large volume fraction of hard microconstituents. In fact, there are few particles large enough to allow a hardness determination. This may account for the low wear of the cobalt-based alloys on the mating tool steel. In any case, adhesive wear, because it is a complex interaction between metal surfaces, cannot be predicted by simple property measurements—a wear test is required.

Selecting a Surfacing Method

The first step is to determine the specific form of wear that is predominant in the system. Once this has been done, the next step will be to select a process for application. The final step will be to select the surfacing material. Here are some guidelines for process selection.

- If a large area has to be surfaced, consider the use of open arc, submerged arc, or bulk welding.
- If distortion cannot be tolerated in a surfacing operation, consider use of spray surfacing by plasma arc, metallizing, or detonation gun.
- If optimum wear resistance is required, use oxyacetylene to minimize dilution, or use a spray technique.
- If accurate deposit profiles are required, use gas tungsten-arc welding.
- If surfacing must be done out of position, use shielded, metal-arc welding.

The process of application will limit alloy selection to some extent. For example, if spray surfacing is required because of distortion, many of the iron chromium, iron manganese, or tool steel surfacings cannot be employed because they are not available as powders.

Selecting a Surfacing Material

Here are some guidelines for choosing the right alloy:

- Tool steels should be used for small gas tungsten-arc welding deposits where accurate weld profiles are required.
- Iron-chromium alloys are well-suited to abrasive wear systems that do not require finishing after welding.

- The composite alloys should be used where extreme abrasion is encountered, and when finishing after welding is not necessary.
- Iron-manganese alloys should be used where impact and surface fatigue are present. Deformation in service must occur to get work hardening. These alloys are not well suited for metal-to-metal wear applications.
- Cobalt-based alloys are preferred for adhesive wear systems. They have the additional benefit of resistance to many corrosive and abrasive environments.
- Nickel-chromium-boron alloys are suitable for metal-to-metal and abrasive wear systems, and they are preferred where finishing of a surfacing deposit is necessary.
- Copper-based surfacing alloys are suitable only to adhesive wear systems. They are resistant to seizure when run against ferrous metal, but may be subject to significant wear.
- Ceramics are the preferred surfacings for packing sleeves, seals, pump impellers, and similar systems involving no shock, but with severe low-stress abrasion.

These surfacings should not be run against themselves without prior compatibility testing.

Table 10-2 lists specific alloys likely to give exceptionally good performance, based on the tests summarized in Figures 10-5 and 10-6.

The Detonation Gun Process*

If we look at the repair of rotating machinery shaft bearings, journals, seal surfaces, and other critical areas in the context of hard surfacing, it becomes apparent that there are numerous methods available. As we saw, one of these methods is by the use of detonation gun coatings. In review, the detonation gun is a device that can deposit a variety of metallic and ceramic coating materials at supersonic velocities onto a workpiece by controlled detonation of oxygen-acetylene gas mixtures. Coatings applied by this method are characterized by high bond strength, low porosity and high modulus of rupture. Table 10-3 shows some of the physical properties of detonation gun coatings. This section describes the equipment used to apply D-Gun coatings and provides data on coating thicknesses used, surface finish available, and physical properties of some popular D-Gun coatings used in machinery repair. Examples are cited showing increases in operating life that can be achieved on various pieces of equipment by properly selected and applied coatings.

* A proprietary process of Union Carbide Corporation.

Table 10-2.
Hard surfacing selection guide.

Surfacing	Form	Deposition Process	Characteristics	Uses
Chromium Oxide	Powder	Plasma Spray	Excellent resistance to very low stress abrasion. Thickness 5-40 mils. Can be ground to very good finish. No welding distortion. (>HRC 70)	Low Stress Erosion
AISI 431 Stainless Steel	Powder	Metallize	Good adhesive wear resistance when lubricated. Poor abrasion resistance. Can be ground to good finish. No welding distortion. (HRC 35)	Fretting, Galling
Ni Cr-4	Powder	Metallize and Fuse	Good adhesive wear resistance; corrosion resistant. Coating thickness to 0.125 in. with fusion bond. Distortion may occur in fusing, but application is faster than oxy-acetylene rod surfacing.	Metal-to-Metal Wear, Galling, Seizure, Cavitation, Erosion, Impingement, Brinneling
Fe Cr-1 (Iron-Chromium)	Electrode	Shielded Metal-Arc Welding	Moderate resistance to low stress abrasion and adhesive wear. Can be easily finished by grinding. Low cost. (HRC 50)	Low Stress, High Stress, Cylinder and Ball Rolling
Fe Cr-5 (Iron-Chromium + TiC)	Electrode	Shielded Metal-Arc Welding	Very good resistance to low stress abrasive wear. Easy to apply. (HRC 60)	Low Stress, Filing, Impingement
Co-1 (Cobalt-Chromium)	Rod	Oxy-acetylene	Very good resistance to adhesive wear. Moderate resistance to low stress abrasion. Corrosion resistant. The alloy is expensive and application is slow. (HRC 43)	Metal-to-Metal Wear, Galling, Seizure, Fretting, Cavitation, High Velocity Liquid, Erosion, Brinneling
Co-1C (Cobalt-Chromium)	Electrode	Shielded Metal-Arc Welding	Good resistance to adhesive wear. Easy to apply. Suitable for all position welding. The alloy is expensive. (HRC 43)	Metal-to-Metal Wear, Galling, Seizure, Fretting, Cavitation
Ni Cr-4	Rod	Oxy-acetylene	Good resistance to metal wear. Machinable. Will not rust. Costly to apply. (HRC 35)	Metal-to-Metal Wear, Galling, Seizure
COM-1 (Tungsten Carbide-Steel Matrix)	Rod	Oxy-acetylene	Excellent resistance to low stress abrasion. Use as deposited. Costly to apply. (>HRC 60)	Low Stress, Filing, Impingement, Erosion
COM-3 (Tungsten Carbide-Cobalt-Chromium Matrix)	Rod	Oxy-acetylene	Excellent resistance to low stress abrasive wear. Use as deposited. Corrosion resistant. Costly to apply. (>HRC 60)	Low Stress, Filing, Impingement, High Velocity Liquid

Table 10-3.
Physical properties of some detonation gun coatings. (UCAR D-Gun).

COMMERCIAL DESIGNATION	LW-IN30	LW-15	LW-5	LC-1C
Nominal Composition (Weight %)(a)	87WC, 13Co	86WC, 10Co, 4Cr	73WC, 20Cr, 7Ni	$80Cr_3C_2$, 16Ni, 4Cr
Tensile Bond Strength (psi) (b)	>10,000	>10,000	>10,000	>10,000
Modulus of Rupture (psi)	90,000		40,000	70,000
Modulus of Elasticity (psi)	31×16^6		17×10^6	18×10^6
Metallographic Apparent Porosity (Vol. %)	≤1	≤1.5	<1	≤1
Nominal Vicker's Hardness (kg/mm^2, 300 g load)	1150 HV	1100 HV	1100 HV	775 HV
Rockwell "C" Hardness—Approx.	71	70	70	63
Max. Rec. Operating Temp. (°F)	1000	1000	1400	1400
Avg. Coef. of Thermal Expansion (in/in/°F)	4.5×10^{-6} (70 to 1000°F)	4.2×10^{-6} (70 to 1832°F)	4.6×10^{-6} (70 to 1400°F)	6.1×10^{-6} (70 to 1475°F)
Characteristics	Extreme Wear Resistance	Good Wear Resistance to Approx. 1000°F. Greater corrosion Resistance than WC-Co.	Good Wear Resistance to Approx. 1400°F. Greater oxidation and corrosion Resistance than WC-Co.	Excellent Wear Resistance at Elevated Temp.

(a) The composition shown represents the total chemical composition, but not the complex microstructural phases present.
(b) Measured per ASTM C633-69 modified to use a reduced coating thickness of 10 mils.
℗ UCAR is a registered trademark of the Union Carbide Corporation.

Shaft repairs on turbomachinery and other equipment can be accomplished in many ways. Repair methods include weld deposit, sleeving, electroplated hard chromium, flame spraying, plasma arc spraying, and detonation gun coatings. Each of these methods has its own advantages and disadvantages. Again, factors such as time needed to make the repair, cost, machinability, surface hardness, wear resistance, corrosion resistance, material compatibility, friction factor, minimum or maximum allowable coating thickness, surface finish attainable, bond strength, coefficient of thermal expansion, coating porosity and the amount of thermal distortion from the repair; all have varying degrees of importance depending on the particular application. In some cases, the repair method to be used is simply based on the availability of a shop in the area that can make the repair within the desired schedule. Sometimes compromise coatings or repair methods are selected. In other cases, a planned, sched-

uled and engineered solution is used to effect a repair that provides service life that is far superior to the original equipment.

A properly chosen method of repair can provide improved durability of the repaired part over that of the original part with properties such as higher hardness, better surface finish, improved wear resistance and improved corrosion resistance. Properly chosen coatings can combine the favorable attributes of several materials, thus lessening the compromises that would have to be made if a single material was used. Equipment users have frequently found that repaired components have withstood service better than the original equipment manufacturer's components. This has led many users to specify specialized coatings on key components of new equipment being purchased. In some cases the use of coatings has led to reduced first cost of components since the special properties of coatings allow the use of lower-cost, less exotic base materials.

Comparing repair prices to the purchase price of new parts, assuming that the new parts are available when needed, shows that the price of repaired parts may be only 1/5 to 1/2 that of new O.E.M. parts. If the repair method eliminates the need for expensive disassembly such as rotor unstacking, the savings become even more dramatic. Coupling these savings with the frequently extended service life of the repaired parts over the original ones, which in turn extends periods between inspections and repairs, the coating repair of parts is extremely attractive from an economic standpoint.

Process Details. In the following we will concentrate on the detonation gun process of coating which is often referred to as the D-Gun process. The system is shown again schematically in Figure 10-7 and pictorially in Figure 10-8. It consists of a water-cooled gun barrel, approximately three feet long, that is fed with oxygen, acetylene and coating powder.

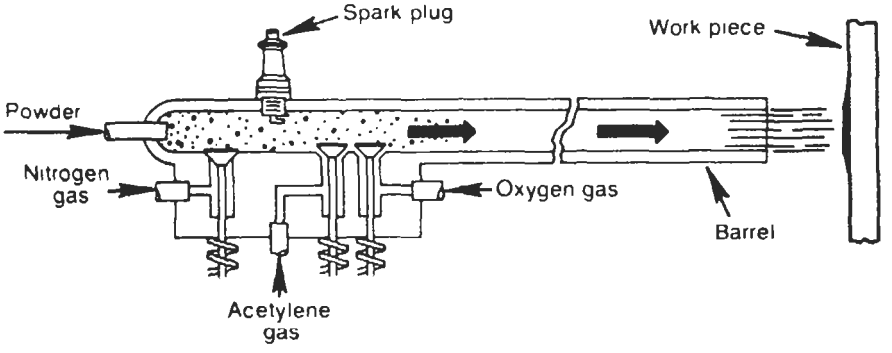


Figure 10-7. Detonation gun schematic.

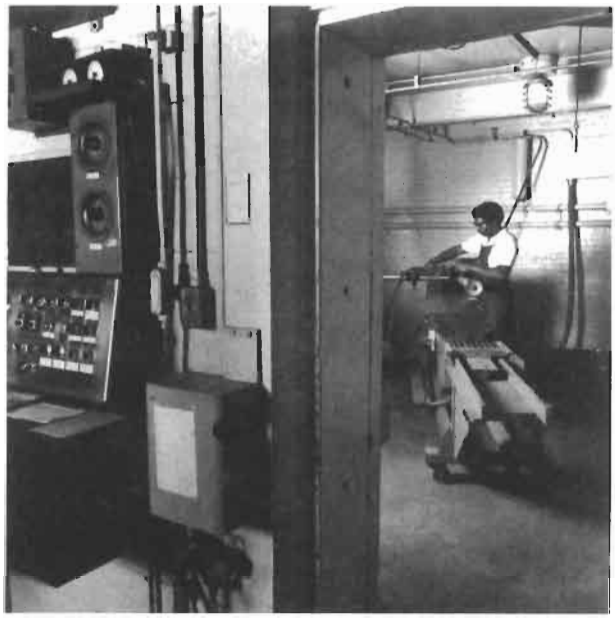


Figure 10-8. Detonation gun installation.

Ignition of the oxygen-acetylene mixture is accomplished by means of a spark plug. The detonation wave in the gun barrel, resulting from the ignition of the gas mixture, travels at ten times the speed of sound through the barrel, and temperatures reach or exceed 6,000°F inside the gun. Noise levels generated by the D-Gun require isolating the process in a noise attenuating enclosure. The equipment operator monitors the coating operation from a control console while observing the operation through a view port. Detonation is cyclic, and subsequent to each detonation the barrel is purged with nitrogen before a fresh charge of oxygen, acetylene, and coating powder is admitted. The particles of coating powder are heated to plasticity and are ejected at supersonic speeds averaging approximately 2,500 ft per second. Kinetic energy of the D-Gun particles is approximately ten times the kinetic energy per unit mass of particles in a conventional plasma arc gun and 25 times the energy of particles in an oxyacetylene spray gun. The high temperature, high velocity coating particles attach and conform to the part being coated, giving a very strong coating bond at the interface and low porosity in the coating. This coating does not depend on a severely roughened surface to provide mechanical interlocking to obtain a bond. Surface preparation for hardened steel consists of grinding to the desired undersize plus, in some instances, grit blasting. Titanium parts do not need grit blasting before coating.

In spite of the high temperatures generated in the barrel of the D-Gun, the part being coated remains below 300°F, so there is little chance of part warpage and the base material metallurgy is not affected.

Coating Details. The D-Gun deposits a very thin coating of material per detonation, so multiple passes are used to build up to the final coating thickness. Figure 10-9 shows the pattern formed by the overlapping circular deposits being built up on the surface of a piston rod. Finished coating thickness may be as low as 1.5 to 2 mils for some high pressure applications such as injection pump plungers or polyethylene compressor piston rods but many typical applications use finished thicknesses of three to five mils. Greater thicknesses may be used for repair jobs. Finished thicknesses greater than is practical for a given cermet or ceramic coating may require prior build-up with metallic coatings such as nickel.

A number of ceramic and metallic coatings are available for application with the D-Gun. These include mixtures or alloys of aluminum oxide, chromium oxide, titanium dioxide, tungsten carbide, chromium carbide, titanium carbide, cobalt, nickel, and chromium. Table 10-3 lists some of the more popular coatings with their compositions and some key physical properties. Tungsten carbide and cobalt alloys are frequently used for coating journal areas and seal areas of shafts. In cases where

Figure 10-9. Detonation gun coated piston rod.

additional corrosion resistance is required, the tungsten carbide and cobalt alloys have chromium added. Such a powder is often used on the seal areas of rotors. Greater oxidation and corrosion resistance at elevated temperatures is accomplished by using powder with chromium and nickel in conjunction with either tungsten carbide or chromium carbide.

Carbide coatings exhibit excellent wear resistance by virtue of their high hardnesses. Chromium carbide coatings have a cross-sectional Vickers hardness number (HV) in the range of 650 to 900 kg/mm^2 based on a 300 g. load which is approximately equal to 58 to 67 Rockwell "C." The tungsten carbide coatings are in the range of 1,000 to 1,400 HV or approximately 69 to 74 Rockwell "C."

Coatings applied by the D-Gun have high bond strengths. Bond strengths, as measured per ASTM C633-69 modified to use a reduced coating thickness of 10 mils, are in excess of 10,000 psi, which is the limit of the epoxy used in the test. Special laboratory methods of testing bond strengths of D-Gun coatings by a brazing technique have given values in excess of 25,000 psi. This type of test, however, may change the coating structure. Porosity is less than two percent by volume for these coatings. Figure 10-10 shows a photomicrograph of a tungsten carbide coating applied to steel. The original photo was taken through a 200 power microscope. The markers in the margin denote from top to bot-

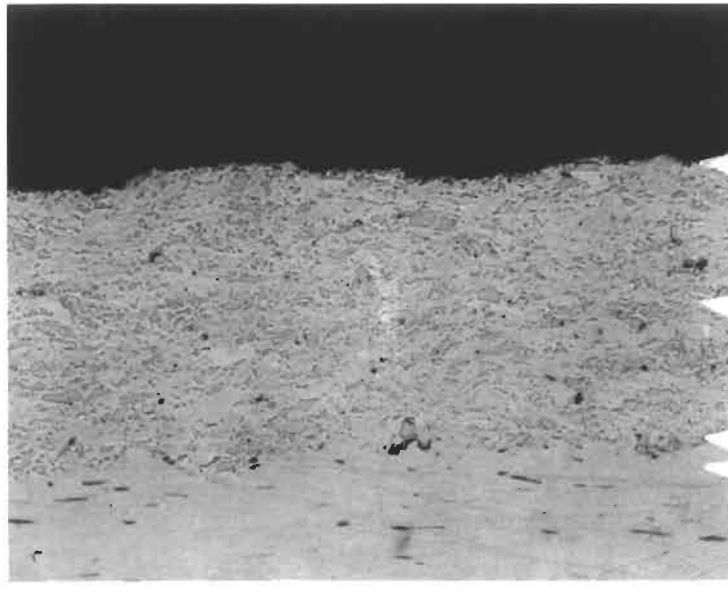


Figure 10-10. Photomicrograph of tungsten carbide-cobalt coating.

tom: the coating surface, tungsten carbide and cobalt coating, bond interface and base metal. The tight bond and low porosity are clearly evident. Low porosity is an important factor in corrosion resistance and it enhances the ability of a coating to take a fine surface finish.

The as-deposited surface finishes of carbide coatings are in the range of 120 to 150 microinches rms when deposited on a smooth base material. Finishing of low tolerance parts, such as bearing journals, is usually accomplished by diamond grinding. Parts that do not require extremely close dimensional control such as hot gas expander blades can be left as coated or, if a smoother finish is desired, they can be given a nondimensional finishing by means of abrasive belts or wet brushing with an abrasive slurry.

A combination of grinding, honing, and polishing is routinely used to finish tungsten carbide coatings to eight microinches, and finishes as fine as two microinches or better are attainable with these coatings.

For many applications however, plasma and D-Gun coatings can be used as coated. In fact, in at least one application, a D-Gun tungsten carbide-cobalt coating is grit blasted to further roughen the surface for better gripping action. Probably in the majority of applications, the coatings are finished before being placed in service. Finishing techniques vary from brush finishing to produce a nodular surface, to machining, honing, grinding, and lapping to produce surfaces with surface roughness down to less than microinches rms. Machining can be used on some metallic coatings, but most coatings are ground with silicon carbide or diamond (diamond is usually required for D-Gun coatings). The best surface finish that can be obtained is a function not only of the finishing technique, but also of the coating type and the deposition parameters. Finishing of D-Gun coatings is usually done by the coating vendor, since great care must be exercised to avoid damaging the coatings.

A typical check list for grinding of most hard surface coatings follows:

1. Check diamond wheel specifications.
   a. Use only 100 concentration.
   b. Use only resinoid bond.
2. Make sure your equipment is in good mechanical condition.
   a. Machine spindle must run true.
   b. Backup plate must be square to the spindle.
   c. Gibs and ways must be tight and true.
3. Balance and true the diamond wheel on its own mount—0.0002 in. maximum runout.
4. Check peripheral wheel speed—5,000 to 6,500 surface feet per minute (SFPM).

5. Use a flood coolant—water plus 1–2 percent water soluble oil of neutral pH.
   a. Direct coolant toward point of contact of the wheel and the workplace.
   b. Filter the coolant.
6. Before grinding each part, clean wheel with minimum use of a silicon carbide stick.
7. Maintain proper infeeds and crossfeeds.
   a. Do not exceed 0.0005 in. infeed per pass.
   b. Do not exceed 0.080 in. crossfeed per pass or revolution.
8. Never spark out—stop grinding after last pass.
9. Maintain a free-cutting wheel by frequent cleaning with a silicon carbide stick.
10. Clean parts after grinding.
    a. Rinse in clean water—then dry.
    b. Apply a neutral pH rust inhibitor to prevent atmospheric corrosion.
11. Visually compare the part at 50X with a known quality control sample.

Similarly, a typical check list for lapping is:

1. Use a hard lap such as GA Meehanite or equivalent.
2. Use a serrated lap.
3. Use recommended diamond abrasives—Bureau of Standards Nos. 1, 3, 6, and 9.
4. Imbed the diamond firmly into the lap.
5. Use a thin lubricant such as mineral spirits.
6. Maintain lapping pressures of 20–25 psi when possible.
7. Maintain low lapping speeds of 100–300 SFPM.
8. Recharge the lap only when lapping time increases 50 percent or more.
9. Clean parts after grinding and between changes to different grade diamond laps—use ultrasonic cleaning if possible.
10. Visually compare the part at 50X with a known quality control sample.

Limitations. All thermal spray-applied coatings have restrictions in their application since a line of sight is needed between the gun and the surface to be coated. The barrel of a D-Gun is positioned several inches away from the surface to be coated, and the angle of impingement can be varied from about 45° to the optimum of 90°. Coating of outside surfaces generally presents no problem, but small diameter, deep or blind holes may be a problem. It is possible to coat into holes when the length is no

more than the diameter. The structure and properties of the coating may vary somewhat as a function of the geometry of the part, because of variations in angle of impingement, stand-off, etc. Portions of a part in close proximity to the area being plated may require masking with metal.

Applications. Detonation gun coatings have been used in a large number of applications for rotating and reciprocating machinery as well as for special tools, cutters and measuring instruments. References 2 and 3 attest to the success of such coatings. Table 10-4 shows typical applications in a petrochemical plant utilizing tungsten carbide based coatings.

The tungsten carbide family of coatings is used principally for its wear resistance. Tungsten carbide is combined with up to 15 percent cobalt by weight. Decreasing the amount of cobalt increases wear resistance, while adding cobalt increases thermal and mechanical shock resistance. Coatings of this type are frequently used to coat bearing journals and seal areas on compressors, steam turbines and gas turbines. These coatings have a high resistance to fretting and they have been used on midspan stiffeners of blades for axial flow compressors. Their fretting resistance and ability to carry high compressive loads make them suitable to correct loose interference fits on impellers and coupling hubs. Addition of chromium to the tungsten carbide and cobalt mixtures adds corrosion resistance and improves wear resistance at high temperature levels. In general, this family of coatings is most frequently used in neutral chemical environments but can be used with many oxidizing acids. Cobalt mixture coatings are usually not used in strongly alkaline environments.

Coatings that combine tungsten carbide with chromium and nickel exhibit greater oxidation and alkaline corrosion resistance than the tungsten

Table 10-4.
Cobalt alloy applications in a petrochemical refinery. (2)

Alloy	Specification	Substrate	Deposition	Component	Wear type
91WC-9Co (powdered form)	AMS 2435A	SAE 4140	D-Gun	Compressor rod	Sliding
		SAE 1040	D-Gun	Pump sleeve	Rubbing
		SAE 60304	D-Gun	Pump sleeve	Fretting
		SAE 60310	D-Gun	Pump plunger	Sliding
85WC-15Co (powdered form)	P & W A* Spec. No. 46	SAE 4140	D-Gun	Turbine shaft	Rubbing
55Co-29Cr-4.5W-1.25Si-1C (E CoCr-C)	AWS A5-13-70	11-13%Cr steel	Arc welding	Slide valve gate	Erosion
52Co-30Cr-13W-2.4C (solid castings)	AMS 5788	—	Cast	Pump sleeve	Rubbing
66Co-26Cr-5W-1C (solid castings)	AMS 5373, 5387, 5788	—	Cast	Pump impeller	Erosion
		—	Cast	Control valve plug	Erosion
		—	Cast	Control valve seat	Erosion
66Co-26Cr-5W-1C (coated electrode)	—	ASTM A216	Arc welding	Pump casing	Erosion

* Pratt & Whitney Aircraft (this coating was developed for use in jet engines).

carbide-cobalt coatings. Their wear resistance capabilities are good up to about 1,200°F, which is about 200°F higher than that of the tungsten carbide-cobalt coatings. This higher temperature capability makes these coatings useful for applications such as coating rotor blades on hot gas expanders used for power recovery from catalytic crackers. Coated blades resist the wear from catalyst fines and have extended life from just a few months, as experienced with uncoated blades, to a life of three to five years. This type of coating is suitable for use in many alkaline environments.

Chromium carbide combined with nickel and chromium provides excellent wear resistance at elevated temperatures and is recommended for temperatures up to about 1,600°F. These coatings do not have the wear resistance of tungsten carbide coatings at low temperatures, but they do perform well at high temperatures. Such coatings have found numerous applications in hot sections of gas turbines. Cobalt base alloys with excellent wear resistance to temperatures over 1,800°F are also available.

In applications where hydrogen sulfide is present, ferrous base materials should not exceed a hardness of 22 Rockwell "C," per recommendation of the National Association of Corrosion Engineers, in order to avoid sulfide stress cracking. The tungsten carbide-cobalt-chromium coatings and tungsten carbide-chromium-nickel coatings have imparted wear resistance to parts in such service while the base material retains a low hardness to avoid sulfide stress cracking.

Application of D-Gun coatings on reciprocating machinery has resulted in extended parts life. Uncoated hardened Monel piston rods in oxygen booster compressors that previously required rod resurfacing in one to two years of service have shown virtually no measurable wear in five to six years of service when coated with tungsten carbide-cobalt coatings. In addition, average life of the gas pressure packings was more than doubled. The high bond strength of the D-Gun coatings has also proven useful on polyethylene hypercompressors. There have been examples of tungsten carbide-cobalt coated plunger pistons that have operated 16,000 hours at 20,000 psi with a wear of only one mil and without any coating peeling problems

In summary, we find that detonation gun coatings are useful to both designers and machinery maintenance personnel as a means of providing dependable wear and corrosive resistant surfaces on machine components operating under difficult service conditions. Properly selected coatings used within their intended limits are significantly capable of extending wear life of parts. The extended wear life reduces the ratio of parts cost per operating hour, justifying the expenditure for coatings on both new and refurbished equipment.

Industrial Plating. Another process that will restore worn or corroded machinery surfaces is industrial plating, usually electroplating. This process is not normally applied on-site but parts in need of restoration have to be shipped to a company specializing in this type of work.

Surface preparation for plating is usually achieved by smooth machining or grinding. In some cases, shot or grit blasting may be suitable. A very rough surface before plating is neither necessary nor desirable. Unless a greater thickness of deposit is required for wear, corrosion allowance, or for bearing material compatibility, there is no need to remove more metal than required to clean up the surface. Sharp corners and edges should be given as large a radius or diameter as possible. Areas not requiring resurfacing will be protected by the plating shop.

Materials that can be repaired belong to the majority of metals used in normal design practice. It is, however, very important that the plating company be informed of the composition or specification.

The properties of steel can be adversely affected by plating unless precautions are taken. Such effects become increasingly important with high strength materials, which may become brittle or lose fatigue strength. Heat treatment or shot peening can help to reduce these effects.[4]

Plating metals normally used for machinery component salvage are chromium and nickel, either singly or in combination. If needed, other metals may be specified, for example, copper, in cases where heat or electrical conductivity is of importance. In the following we would like to concentrate on chromium as the preferred plating metal for machinery wear parts.

Industrial chrome-plating has been applied successfully whenever metal slides and rubs. The excellent wear characteristics of chromium make it well suited for use on liners of power engines, reciprocating compressors and, in some cases, on piston rods.

The process offers two major approaches: *Restorative plating*, to salvage worn parts, and *preventive plating*, to condition wear parts for service. The following advantages are usually stressed:[5]

- Chromium is extremely hard and therefore gives longer life to plated parts.
- Chromium withstands acid contamination and corrosive vapors found in engine crankcase oils and fuels.
- Chromium-plated parts possess a very low friction factor coupled with high thermal conductivity while permitting the parts to operate at more efficient temperatures.
- Chrome-plating extends life of engine parts. It is generally accepted that chromium is four to five times harder than the original cast iron wearing surface.

- Electroetching can provide porosity in a chrome-plated surface where this is necessary to hold a lubricant.

These characteristics of chrome-plating are further explained in the next section.

Chrome-Plating of Cylinder Liners.* In reciprocating engine and compressor cylinders surface finish of the liner is accomplished through smooth turning, grinding, or honing. It is important that the wearing surfaces get a finish that gives the material a maximum of resisting power against the strains to which it is subjected, and also offers a low coefficient of friction and the best possible conditions for the retention of the lubricating film.

It is desirable to develop a "glaze" on the wearing surface of the liner, under actual conditions of service. This glaze is produced by subtle structural and chemical changes in the surface of the liner and is not easily achieved; it is more a product of chance than design, due to the wear-promoting factors mentioned earlier.

Other surface finishing approaches include chemical and metallic coatings, with substantial reductions in ring wear, but uniform coating of cylinders has not been fully documented as of this writing.

Just how good a step toward the solution of cylinder liner wear is chromium?

Bonding. First of all, proper chrome-plating is deposited one ion at a time, assuring a molecular bond that approaches the integrity of fusion between the basis metal and the chrome-plated surface. The chromium literally grows roots into the basis metal to make its bond the strongest in the industry. With a bond of that quality, good chromium actually adds to the structural strength of a restandard-sized liner, or even a new one, to make it stronger and tougher than before . . . and eligible for resalvaging time and time again. The importance of bond in chrome-plating includes its value in strengthening the liner wall, even after successive reborings and replatings. It assures that the chrome layer is "locked" to the basis metal, even under heavy wear conditions that would strip and spall conventional chrome-plating.

Low Coefficient of Friction

Chromium is known to have the lowest coefficient of friction of any of the commonly used structural metals for engine cylinder liners. The

---

* Courtesy of Van Der Horst Corporation of America, Olean, N.Y.

value of the sliding coefficient for chromium on chromium has been given as .12, for chromium on steel as .16, while steel on steel is .20.[6] For rotating shafts, chromium was also found to have the lowest friction of any of the metals tested in a study conducted by Tichvinsky and Fisher.[7]

Hardness

The hardness of chromium has definite advantages over cast iron for long wear characteristics. The hardness is maintained throughout the thickness of the chrome-plating, while the hardness of metals treated with processes like nitriding and carburizing decreases with depth. The value of hardness in a chrome-plated surface lies in its ability to resist abrasion and scoring. Contaminants in lube oil and fuel and their deposits cannot be eliminated, but their abrasive action on the liner wear surfaces has a negligible effect on chromium due to its extreme hardness. Table 10-5 shows some typical hardness tests, in Brinell notation.

Because of the relative immunity of chromium to scuffing, which often occurs in "green" tests, or the initial runs of an engine, ring scuffing and piston seizure are eliminated, and engine production is accelerated. This is an example of the use of *preventive plating*, through processing of a new liner before it is installed for the first time.

Corrosion Resistance

The corrosion resistance of chromium is high, partly due to the dense packing of the chromium molecules during electrodeposition. This resistance makes chromium especially adaptable to cylinder liners.

Sulfuric acid, which attacks cast iron vigorously, has little effect on chromium. Hydrogen sulfide is another corrosive agent found in diesel

Table 10-5—Hardness Table

	Brinell hardness (load 3000 kg: 10-mm ball) or equivalent
Chromium	800–1000
Cast-iron cylinder compositions	150–275
Cast-iron cylinder compositions, heat-treated	Max. 400
Steel 4140 heat-treated	250–375
Steel, carburized	625
Nitralloy in cylinders after removal of surface stock	650–750

engines running on sour gas. In a controlled test of the effects of hydrogen sulfide on steel and chromium, a steel rod partially chrome-plated was subjected to moist hydrogen sulfide at temperatures ranging from 120° to 200°F for 252 hours. After this exposure, the unplated portion of the rod was blackened and badly corroded, but the chrome-plated portion was not disturbed.[8]

Chromium is also unaffected by nitric acid and saturated solutions of ammonia, but it is susceptible to hydrochloric acid. However, as discussed earlier, modern fresh-water cooling prevents the introduction of HCl-producing chlorides into diesel engines now being used. The possibility of the occurrence of sufficient quantities of HCl to attack the chrome-plated surface in a given application is negligible, thus even in marine engines.

Atmospheric corrosion also has no effect on chromium. Porous chromed cylinders may be stored indefinitely with little or no protection, without detrimental results to the plated area.

Lubrication

One chrome plating company* has developed a proprietary process for etching channels and pockets in the surface of the chrome layer, to provide tiny reservoirs for lube oil. This porous surface provides high oil retention even under the high temperatures of the combustion area in the cylinder, and under the constant sliding of adjacent metal parts, like piston rings. This phenomenon of oil retention is termed "wettability" and describes the dispersive characteristics of oil on a microscopically uneven metal surface.

The oil collects in the recesses of the metal surface and disperses outward in an enveloping movement. In contrast, the surface tension of oil will cause an oil drop on a smooth plane surface to exhibit a tendency to reach a state of equilibrium where it will neither spread nor recede, and thus does not provide a lubricating coating for that surface. Such a surface inside a cylinder liner will not be adequately covered with an oil film and will require greater volumes of lube oil to achieve adequate protection from friction, temperatures, corrosion, and abrasion.

This proprietary porous chrome surface prevents the action of the oil's molecular cohesion in trying to achieve a perfect sphere, and forming into a drop. The configuration of the chrome surface disrupts this tendency.

---

* Van Der Horst

This porous chrome presents such a varied surface that a portion of the area 1/4 in. in diameter may contain from 50 to several hundred pores or crevices depending on the porosity pattern applied to the chrome surface. Even one drop of oil, encountering such a surface, tends to disperse itself indefinitely over the flats, downslopes of pores, and the upsloping side.

The importance of lubrication has been discussed in numerous books, and a direct correlation between a successfully maintained oil film and wear on piston rings and liner surfaces can be shown. Thus, the ability of porous chrome surfaces to provide an unbroken oil film indicates its desirability in preventing many types of liner wear, including gas erosion, which is due to a leaky piston ring seal; friction and frictional oxidation, by protecting the surface from oxygen in the combustion area; preventing metal stresses resulting in abrasion from excessive loading, which does not break the oil film maintained by the chrome; and by protecting the surface from corrosive agents produced by lube oil breakdown and combustion products.

The load capacity of porous chrome involves a condition known as boundary-layer lubrication. This term refers to an oil film thickness that is so thin it approaches the characteristics of dry lubrication. It has lost its mobility as a fluid, but reduces the mutual attraction of adjacent, sliding metallic surfaces, and thereby the friction. Fluid lubrication, e.g., thicker layers of lube oil, are not desired under the high-temperature conditions of the combustion area of the cylinder, because of the susceptibility of lube oil to flash point combustion, breakdown into deposits, unnecessarily high lube oil consumption, and the production of air pollutants.

Thermal Conductivity

Thermal conductivity in chromium is higher than for cast iron and commonly used steels, by approximately 40 percent, as shown in Table 10-6. Maximum metal surface temperatures in the cylinder are at the liner surface, especially in the combustion zone, and any improvement in heat transfer provides a lower wall temperature and will improve piston and ring lubrication. The heat reflection qualities of chromium add to the combustion and exhaust temperatures, helping to reduce incomplete combustion and its products.

While the coefficient of expansion, also shown in Table 10-6, of chromium is lower than that of cast iron or steel, there is a decided advantage in the difference. The surface of the cylinder liner has a much higher temperature than the underlying basis metal, because of that sharp temperature gradient through the wall. The effect of this gradient on a homogeneous metal, e.g., distortion, is eliminated with chromium plating, because it is desirable to have a variable coefficient of expansion ranging

Table 10-6—Expansion Coefficients and Thermal Conductivity

Metal	Linear thermal expansion in./in. at 68°F (× 10^{-6})	Thermal conductivity cal/cm²/cm/ deg C/sec at 20°C	Melting point, F°
Chromium, electrolytic	4.5	0.165	3325+
Cast iron	6.6	0.12	2500
Steels	6.2–6.6	0.11	2700–2800
Aluminum	12–13	0.52	1216
Copper	9.1	0.92	1981

from a lower value at the inner wall surface to a higher value in the outer wall, where the coolants are operating. Tests run on air-cooled airplane engines for 700 to 1,000 hours showed no tendency of the chromium surfaces to loosen due to differential expansion between the chrome and the basis metal. This is significant, considering that these engines normally run at higher cylinder wall temperatures than engines in stationary installations.

Abrasion Resistance

Wear rates for chromium are substantially lower than for cast iron, as the data in Tables 10-7 and 10-8 show. The data were developed in a test of two engines run for nine hours under load, with one a cast iron cylinder and the other a porous-chrome surfaced cylinder. Allis-Chalmers Type B abrasive dust (85 percent below five microns, 100 percent below 15 microns) was added to the initial charge of crankcase oil, with a proportion of abrasive dust of 8.6 percent by weight of the lube oil, to accelerate wear.

The constrast in wear ratios between the cast iron and chromium in this test is substantial, reaching as much as four to one in the cylinder and three to one for the pistons and rings. Figure 10-11 shows a plot of these data for the cylinder wear comparison.[9]

Often, the boring out of worn cylinders requires the deposition of extra-thick layers of chrome to bring the surface back to standard size. This is not advisable, because on the next resalvaging, it may not be possible to bore down further into the basis metal and still retain enough structural strength in the liner wall to justify salvaging.

With another proprietary process, 99.9 percent pure iron is electrodeposited on the basis metal with a special bond, to build up the basis metal, to a thickness where normal chrome layer thicknesses are practical.

TABLE 10-7—Cylinder Wear

Location	Diametral wear, in. Cast-iron cylinder	Porous-chrome cylinder	Wear ratio, cast-iron cyl./ porous-chrome cyl.
1/8 in. below head end	0.0077	0.0018	4.3–1
1/2 in. below head end	0.0071	0.0021	3.4–1
2 in. below head end	0.0083	0.0022	3.8–1

TABLE 10-8—Piston and Ring Wear

	In cast iron cylinder		In porous-chrome cylinder		
	Grams	Percent of original weight	Grams	Percent of original weight	Wear ratio, cast-iron cyl./ porous-chrome cylinder
Aluminum piston loss in weight	0.589	0.90	0.316	0.45	1.9:1
Top ring lost in weight	2.506	56.	0.849	18.9	3.0:1
Second ring loss in weight	2.586	57.8	0.972	21.8	2.6:1
Oil ring loss in weight	1.260	46.5	0.865	31.9	1.5:1

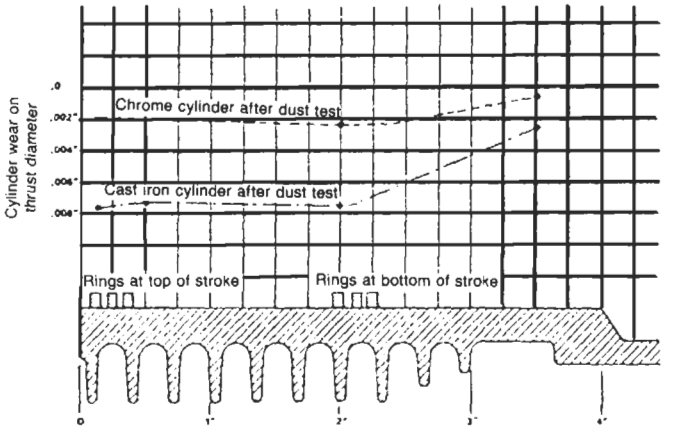


Figure 10-11. Cylinder wear on chrome and cast-iron cylinders.

Chromium in Turbocharged Engines

The operation of turbocharged engines involves the exaggeration of all the wear factors described in this section because the temperatures are higher, fuel and lube oil consumption are higher, the engine runs faster, and corrosive agents seem to be more active and destructive. Turbocharging, however, increases the horsepower of an engine from 10 to 25 percent. During the last decade, many stationary engines were retrofitted for turbocharging, and engines with liners not surfaced with chrome have had the chance to be upgradcd.

Just as an example, the high heat of turbocharged engines creates a lubrication problem with cast iron liner surfaces. Even microporosity in iron casting will not retain oil under such high temperatures. The corresponding increase in wear factor effects will accelerate liner and piston ring wear and increase downtime.

Special chromium, with variable porosity tailored to the operating characteristics of the engine, can make the difference between a productive engine installation and a liability.

Operating Verification

In a detailed study assessing the conditions and circumstances influencing machinery maintenance on motor ships, Vacca[10] plots the operating performance of several marine engine liners and arrives at a documented conclusion that chrome-plated liners show a wear rate that is less than half that of nonchrome-plated liners. The indirect result is considerable improvement in fuel cconomy and ship speed. Figure 10-12 shows these data plots.

Another application study emphasized the benefits of chrome-plating engine liners and was seen to have a direct effect on labor requirements and the workloading of engine room staffs.

For more documented low wear rates, a study on engine liner performance by Dansk-Franske Dampskibsselskab of Copenhagen on one of their ships, the "Holland," produced some interesting statistics. All cylinder liners were preventive plated with chromium before they were installed. The results well repaid the effort, in less overhaul, reduced ring wear, and extremely low cylinder wear. The highest wear rates on the six cylinder liners were 0.20 mm/10,000 hours, as shown on the chart in Figure 10-13. This negligible wear led to the conclusion that the liners:

> ". . . will still have a life of more than 10,000 hours . . . In fact, it means that this ship will never need any liner replacement."[11]

Even though these studies represented only a fraction of the operating and test data that supports this contention, they indicate the considerable

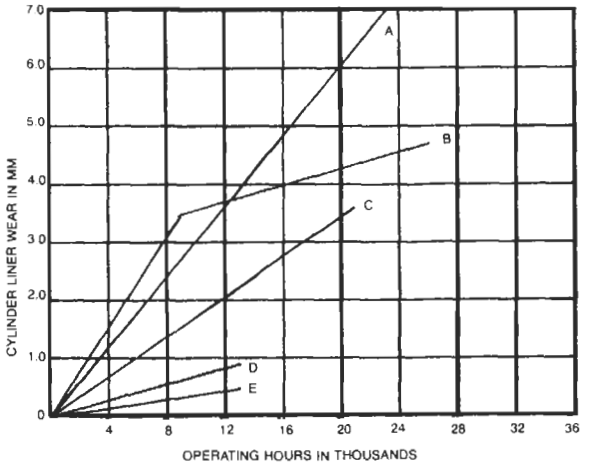


Figure 10-12. Graphs of cylinder liner wear. Curves A and C refer to opposed piston engines and curves B, D and E are for poppet valve engines. Curves D and E show results using chromium plated liners.

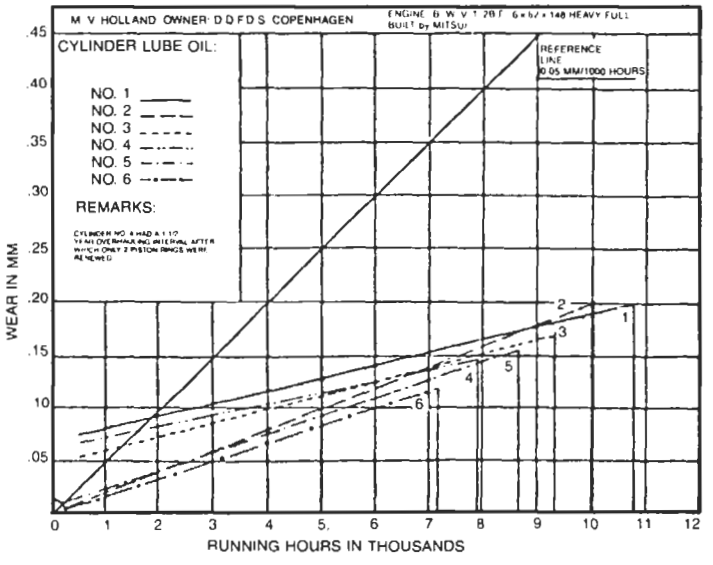


Figure 10-13. Cylinder liner wear—with chrome plating.

benefits in terms of cost-savings and long-lived performance that the use of chrome-plating can provide. The fact that the studies cited were performed on motor ships, in salt-water environments, where corrosion agents are more active than in stationary facilities, adds further emphasis to this position.

The question of chrome plating economy has been raised and can be answered by an example. Chrome-plating offers a twofold economy. First, in the cost of restandardizing with chrome over the cost of a new liner, and second, the extended length of operating life of the plated liner, whether new or reconditioned.

As stated in the Diesel Engineering Handbook:

> "A (chrome) plating . . . will cost 65 to 75 percent of the price of a new unplated cast iron liner, or 50 to 60 percent of the price of a new chrome-plated liner. It must be remembered that the plated liner will have three to five times the life of a new unplated liner."[12]

The significance of the last sentence in the quote is often overlooked. Even if the chrome-plating restandardsizing of the worn liner were *100 percent* of the cost of a new unplated liner, a cost savings will be achieved because the replated liner will still last three to five times as long. At 100 percent, the replated liner is thus still only about 30 percent of the cost of all the new replacement liners that would be required to match its normal operating life.

Conclusion

Our principal conclusions can be summarized as follows. Directly or indirectly, all of the effects of the wear factors described in this section can be mitigated or eliminated completely with the use of special chromium-plating on cylinder liners, crankshafts, and piston rods.

Whether the method of liner salvage is restandardsizing or oversize boring with oversize piston rings, or even with new liners and parts to be conditioned for long wear before going into service, proprietary chromium plating processes can add years of useful operating life in a continuing, cost effective solution to the problems of wear.

On-Site Electroplating Techniques: Where parts cannot be moved to a plating work station, deposition of metal by the *brush electroplating technique* may be considered.* This process serves the same varied functions

* Dalic Plating Process

that bath electroplating serves. Brush electroplating of machinery components is used for corrosion protection, wear resistance, improved solderability or brazing characteristics and the salvaging of worn or mismatched parts. Housed in a clean room, the equipment needed for the process is:

1. The power pack
2. A lathe
3. Plating tools
4. Masking equipment and plating solutions
5. Drip retrieval tray
6. Pump to return solutions through a filter to the storage bath
7. Trained operator
8. Supply of clean water for rinsing parts between plating operations

Brush electroplating thickness in excess of .070 in. is generally more economic if done in a plating bath.

Electrochemical metallizing, another form of electroplating, is a hybrid between electric arc welding and bath electroplating. It is a portable system for adding metal to metal. As a special type of metallizing, the process is claimed to offer better adhesion, less porosity, and more precise thickness control than conventional flame spray or plasma types of metallizing. Unlike conventional metallizing or bulk welding, the base metal is not heated to high temperatures, thus avoiding thermal stresses.

In the rebuilding of main bearing saddle caps—a typical application—one flexible lead is connected to a working tool or "stylus" of appropriate size and shape. The stylus serves as an anode, and is wrapped in an absorbent material. The absorbent is a vehicle for the aqueous metallic plating solution. Metal deposits rapidly onto the cathodic—negative charged—workpiece surface. Deposit rates of .002 in. per minute are typical. One repair shop uses multistep processes in which the prepared metal surface initially is built to approximate dimensions with a heavy-build alkaline copper alloy solution. Then a hardened outer surface is created by depositing a tungsten alloy from a second solution.

Not only engine saddle caps, but cylinder heads, crankcases, manifolds, engine blocks, crankshafts, and other machinery castings have been successfully repaired using the electrochemical metallizing process. The process has replaced conventional oxyacetylene high-heat bronze welding that was used to build new metal onto worn saddle caps. The high-heat welding associated with oxyacetylene spraying had disadvantages in terms of excessive machining time, metal waste, lost time in cool-down, and high temperature distortion of the workpiece.

In field use, the hardness and durability of electrochemically metallized material appears to equal the original casting. In contrast to other

metal rebuilding methods, flaking or cracking of parts rebuilt with the process has not been experienced.[13]

The following equipment is required for an electrochemical plating process:[14]

1. The power pack and flexible leads.
2. Turning heads and assorted stylus tools. The turning head is a low speed reversible, variable speed rotational device for use in electrochemically plating cylindrical components. It enables rotation of shafts, bearings and housings, so that either inside or outside diameters can be uniformly plated.
3. Handles and selected anodes.
4. Accessories such as cotton batting, wrapping material, stylus holders, evaporating dishes, solution pump, and tubing.
5. Selection of plating solutions from some 100 different primary metals or alloy solutions.
6. A trained operator.

Hardening of Machinery Components: In trying to achieve improved wear resistance it would be well not to neglect proven traditional steel-hardening methods. In surface hardening of alloy steels the core of a machinery part may be treated to produce a desired structure for machinability or a strength level of service, whereas the surface may be subsequently hardened for high strength and wear resistance.

Flame hardening involves very rapid surface heating with a direct high temperature flame, followed by cooling at a suitable rate for hardening. The process utilizes a fuel gas plus air or oxygen for heating.

Steels commonly flame hardened are of the medium, 0.30 to 0.60 percent carbon range with alloy suitable for the application. The quenching medium may be caustic, brine, water, oil, or air, as required. Normally quenchants are sprayed, but immersion quenching is used in some instances.

To maintain uniformity of hardening, it is necessary to use mechanical equipment to locate and time the application of heat, and to control the quench.

As with conventional hardening, residual stresses may cause cracking if they are not immediately relieved by tempering. In some instances residual heat after quenching may be sufficient to satisfactorily relieve hardening stresses. As size dictates, either conventional furnace tempering or flame tempering may be used. With flame tempering, the heat is applied in a manner similar to that used for hardening but utilizing smaller flame heads with less heat output.[15]

Carburizing is one of the oldest heat treating processes. Evidence exists that in ancient times sword blades and primitive tools were made by carburization of low carbon wrought irons. Today, the process is a science whereby carbon is added to steel within desired limitations to a controlled amount and depth. Carburizing is usually, but not necessarily, performed on steels initially low in carbon.

If selective or local case hardening of a part is desired, it may be done in one of three ways:

1. Carburize only the areas to have a hardened case.
2. Remove the case from the areas desired to be soft, either before or after hardening.
3. Case carburize the entire surface, but harden only the desired areas.

The first method is the most popular and can be applied to the greatest variety of work.

Restricting the carburizing action to selective areas is usually done by means of a coating that the carburizing gas or liquid will not penetrate. A copper plate deposited electrolytically, or certain commercial pastes generally prove satisfactory. The several methods employed in adding carbon come under the general classification of park carburizing, gas carburizing, and liquid carburizing.[16]

Nitriding is a process for the case hardening of alloy steel in an atmosphere of ammonia gas and dissociated ammonia mixed in suitable proportions. The steel used is of special composition, as seen in Table 10-9. The process is carried out at a temperature below the transformation range for steel and no quenching operation is involved unless optimum core properties are desired. Nitrided parts evidence desirable dimensional stability and are, therefore, adaptable to some types of close tolerance elevated temperature applications.[17]

Table 10-9.
Composition of various nitriding steels. (17)

	AISI 7140 AMS 6470E	AMS 6425	135 Type G	N	EZ
Carbon	0.38–0.43	0.21–0.26	0.30–0.40	0.20–0.27	0.30–0.40
Manganese	0.50–0.70	0.50–0.70	0.40–0.70	0.40–0.70	0.50–1.10
Silicon	0.20–0.40	0.20–0.40	0.20–0.40	0.20–0.40	0.20–0.40
Chromium	1.40–1.80	1.00–1.25	0.90–1.40	1.00–1.30	1.00–1.50
Aluminum	0.95–1.30	1.10–1.40	0.85–1.20	0.85–1.20	0.85–1.20
Molybdenum	0.30–0.40	0.20–0.30	0.15–0.30	0.20–0.30	0.15–0.25
Nickel	—	3.25–3.75	—	—	—
Selenium	—	—	—	—	0.15–0.25

The parts to be nitrided are placed in an airtight container and the nitriding atmosphere is supplied continuously while the temperature is raised and held at 900 to 1150°F. A temperature range of 900 to 1000°F is generally considered optimum to produce the best combination of hardness and penetration. The hardening reaction takes place when nitrogen from the ammonia diffuses into the steel and reacts with the nitride formers (aluminum, chromium, molybdenum, vanadium, and tungsten) to produce precipitates of alloy nitrides.

Nitrogen is absorbed by the steel only in the atomic state, and therefore, it is necessary to keep fresh ammonia surrounding the steel surfaces. This is accomplished by adequate flow rates and circulating the gases effectively within the container.

The nitriding cycle is quite long depending upon the depth of case required. A 50 hour cycle will give approximately .021 in. case of which .005 to .007 in. exceeds 900 Vickers Diamond Pyramid hardness. The handling of nitrided steels in general is similar to that of any other alloy steel. However, due to their high aluminum content, these steels do not flow as readily in forging as other alloy steels and, therefore, require somewhat greater pressures. Where large sections are encountered, normalizing prior to nitriding is recommended.

To develop optimum core properties, nitriding steels must be quenched and tempered before nitriding. If the part is not properly heat treated and all traces of decarburization removed from the surface, nitrogen will penetrate along the ferrite grain boundaries and thereby produce a brittle case that has a tendency to fail by spalling.

In tempering, the temperature must exceed the nitriding temperature; otherwise, significant distortion may result during the nitriding cycle.

If a large amount of machining is to be done, it is sometimes advisable to anneal, rough machine, heat treat, and finish machine. In very large parts, it is advisable to stress relieve before final machining if the parts were rough machined in the heat treated condition. In all instances where machining is done after heat treatment, it is important that sufficient surface be removed to ensure freedom from decarburization.

Nitrided surfaces can be ground, but whenever possible this should be avoided. In nitriding, some growth does occur due to the increase in volume of the case. However, this is constant and predictable for a given part and cycle. Therefore, in most instances, parts are machined very close to final dimensions before nitriding. When necessary, lapping or honing is preferred to grinding because the extremely hard surface is shallow. If threads and fillets are to be protected or areas are to be machined after nitriding, an effective means of doing so is to tin plate those locations which are to remain soft. A 1:1 mixture of tin and lead is commonly used when electroplating is not possible. Since the nitriding tem-

peratures exceed the melting point of the tin and tin alloys, it is essential that an extremely thin coat be applied to prevent the coating from flowing onto surfaces other than those to be protected.

Nitrided parts have a combination of properties that are desirable in many engineering applications. These properties include:

1. An exceptionally high surface hardness which is retained after heating to as high as 1100°F
2. Very superior wear resistance particularly for applications involving metal-to-metal wear
3. Low tendency to gall and seize
4. Minimum warpage or distortion and reduced finishing costs
5. High resistance to fatigue
6. Improved corrosion resistance

Here is a list of typical machinery applications:

Bushings
Cams
Camshafts
Connecting Rods
Crankshafts
Cylinder Barrels
Cylinder Liners
Diesel Engine Fuel Injector Pump Parts
Gears
Guides
King Pins
Knuckle Pins
Needle Valves and Seats
Nozzles
Pinions
Pinion Shafts
Piston Pins
Pistons
Piston Rods
Plungers
Pump Sleeves
Pump Shafts
Push Rods
Racks and Pinions
Ratchets
Retaining Rings
Seats and Valves
Shafts
Splines
Sprockets
Studs
Thrust Washers
Timing Gears
Thrust Washers
Water Pump Shafts
Wear Plates
Wrenches

Diffusion Alloys.* Since carburizing dealt with earlier is, by definition, a diffusion alloying system, the primal history of diffusion alloys is quite lost in antiquity. But, we can state that the modern systems began during World War II in Germany when precious chromium was diffused into

* Courtesy Turbine Metal Technology, Inc., Tujunga, California, 91042.

steel parts to form a stainless surface. Until recently, almost the sole beneficiaries of this work were gas turbine and rocket engine manufacturers. These engines make use of diffusion alloys resistant to high temperature oxidation and sulfidation. Now we are able to produce diffusion alloys tailored to specific industrial needs: Hardness, corrosion resistance, erosion resistance, and oxidation resistance, including combinations of these properties. Diffusion alloys can be produced on a wide spectrum of alloys, allowing interesting combinations of substrate properties and alloys optimized for cost, strength, or other considerations.

Diffusion alloys are alloys and/or intermetallic compounds formed by the high temperature reaction of atoms at the surface of the part to be alloyed with atoms brought to that surface by a suitable process such as chemical vapor deposition (CVD). This is illustrated schematically in Figure 10-14. Since diffusion alloy deposition is conducted at fairly high temperatures there is significant atom mobility for both alloy and substrate elements, i.e., diffusion of all atom species will occur.

Properties of diffusion alloys are quite different from metals in many respects. In general they are single phase, but if multiple phases should exist, these are not intermingled but occur in layers.

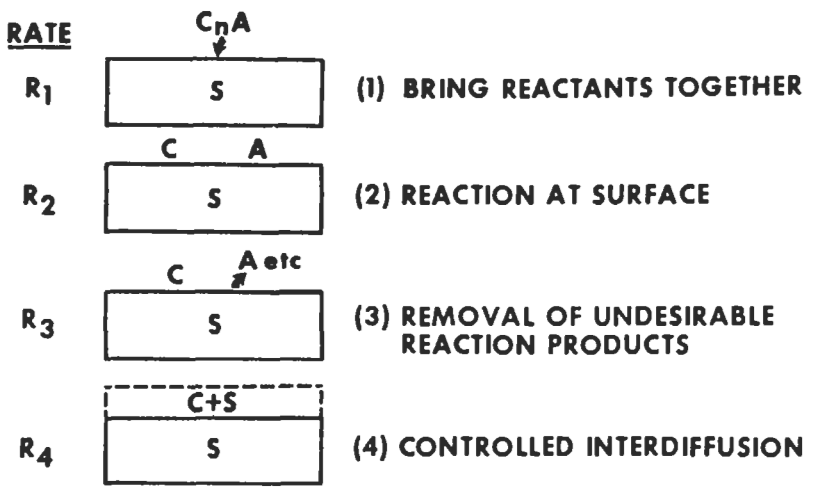


Figure 10-14. Principles of the diffusion alloy process.

There are no grain boundaries, and grain boundaries that exist in the substrate disappear in the alloying. Although the ductility of the alloys is limited, they are not glass-brittle and will allow some plastic deformation of the substrate without cracking. Unlike overlay coatings such as plasma spray, there is no weak interface between the alloy and the substrate to sometimes fail under thermal shock or differential thermal expansion; diffusion alloys are an integral part of the system. In reality then, they are not a "coating," but a conversion of the surface.

How can a thin diffusion alloy prevent erosion? Nothing totally prevents erosion, but erosion can be slowed by a diffusion alloy. As pointed out previously, this is a single phase system. In a hardened metal, the hard precipitate is slowly eroded, but the soft matrix in which it is held erodes very quickly. As soon as the support for the hard particle is worn away, the particle simply drops off. By producing a hard, single phase system on the surface, there is no soft matrix to erode, and a much slower erosion rate results. This rate is low enough so that increases in life of 3 to 30 times are common.

Tungsten carbide and diffusion alloying. There are a number of advantages to diffusion alloying tungsten carbide. Like hardened metals, tungsten carbide is a two-phase system and the matrix is readily eroded. Technology has developed a system that not only hardens the matrix, but reacts with the tungsten carbide particles to form an even harder material. Another advantage is realized by using carbides with higher binder content. The more erosion-resistant grades of tungsten carbide contain very little binder. This results, however, in an extremely brittle material, having low resistance to both thermal and mechanical shock. By utilizing a diffusion alloy with the higher binder carbides, the properties of the alloy are not impaired and a better structural part is produced.

How does a diffusion alloy prevent wear? As described before, wear can be divided into two basic types, adhesive wear and rubbing wear. Adhesive wear usually occurs when two metals rub against each other under either very heavy pressure or extremely de-oxidizing conditions. In both cases metal migrates across the interface of the parts, resulting in an actual weld. Further movement tears a piece of the material from one or the other of the two parts. This is usually called seizing or galling. Again, the high bond strength between the atoms of an intermetallic compound prevents their migration across the interface with the mating part. When there is no migration there is no welding.

How corrosion resistant are diffusion alloys? Different combinations of metals in the part and elements introduced by the process give differing results in corrosion. Generally, diffusion alloys are acid resistant, and various combinations will yield resistance to hydrochloric acid, sul-

furic acid, nitric acid, and hydrofluoric acid. Oxidation resistance can be imparted to over 2,000°F. Most of the diffusion alloys are resistant to hydrogen sulfide and mercaptans. Diffusion alloys can be tailored for specific properties. An intermetallic compound behaves, chemically, very differently from those elements of which it is composed.

Application. Diffusion alloys build with remarkable uniformity, following each asperity of the original surface. Total alloy thickness variation on a part is normally .0001 to .0002 in. If the original surface is eight microinches rms,* then the surface of the diffusion alloyed part will also be eight rms. Finer finishes require slight lapping.

Hardnesses of diffusion alloys are shown in Table 10-10. How brittle is such a hard material? Although the hard diffusion alloys cannot stand extensive elongation, they are sufficiently ductile, for example, to allow straightening of shafts which have been heat treated following diffusion alloying. As long as the plastic deformation is below about five percent, the alloy will not crack. Equally, thermal and mechanical shock do not have any effect. Unlike the "stuck on" coatings, thermal differentials do not load an interface in shear. There is no true interface to load.

What metals can be diffusion alloyed? Almost any alloy of iron, nickel, or cobalt can be diffusion alloyed. Naturally, some alloys are preferred for specific systems, but the general rule holds. Aluminum, copper, zinc, and cadmium cannot be diffusion alloyed. Tungsten molybdenum, niobium, and titanium can be diffusion alloyed.

Is a high strength alloy affected by the high temperature process? In general, when a part is diffusion alloyed it is in the annealed state. If high

* root mean square

Table 10-10.
Hardness of diffusion alloys.

Surface Treatment	Hardness (Vickers)
Nitriding	600– 950
Carbonitriding	700– 820
Carburizing	700– 820
Hard Chrome Plating	950–1100
TMT-5 Steel	1600–2000
TMT-5 WC	2200–2350
TMT-5 Molybdenum	2900–3100

strength is required, the part is heat treated following alloying. With some simple precautions, the heat treating can be carried out in a normal manner.

Can a diffusion alloy be formed in any shape? There are virtually no configuration restraints. Internal passages and blind holes pose no problems. The elements added are transported in a gaseous phase. Spray patterns or "line of sight" are not a part of the system.

The following *specific* process machinery applications of diffusion alloys have been successfully tried:

1. Pump impellers and casings in fluid catalytic cracking units suffering from erosion by catalytic fines.
2. Pump impellers and casings used in coking service.
3. Pump impellers in lime slurry service.
4. Steam turbine nozzles and blades.
5. Expander turbines in contaminated gas streams.

Table 10-11 represents a more comprehensive overview of diffusion alloy applications.

Table 10-11.
Characteristics and Applications of Diffusion Alloys

System	Substrates	Characteristics	Applications
TMT-56 Boron Carbide	Some Chrome Stainless Steels; Low-Alloy Steels	1800–2200 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Centrifugal pumps; Screw pumps; Piping
TMT-601 Complex Boride	Alloy or Carbon Steel	1700–1900 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Centrifugal pumps; Valves; Piping
TMT-601	Chromium Stainless Steel	1900–2000 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Centrifugal pumps; Valves
TMT-601	Chrome-Nickel Stainless Steel	1700–1800 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Valves; Pump plungers; Shafting
TMT-601	Nickel Alloys	1900–2200 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Centrifugal pumps; Valves; Pump plungers
TMT-601	Cobalt Alloys	2000–2200 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Valves; Pump plungers; Seal rings

(Table continued on next page)

Table 10-11. Continued
Characteristics and Applications of Diffusion Alloys

System	Substrates	Characteristics	Applications
TMT-745 Titanium Diboride	Cobalt-bonded Tungsten Carbide	4000–4500 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Valves; Chokes; Seal rings; Dies; Blast tubes & joints; Orifice plates; Wear plates
TMT 5 A modified complex Cobalt Boride	Cobalt-bonded Tungsten Carbide	3800–4200 KHN; Erosion and wear resistance.	Valves; Chokes; Seal rings; Dies; Blast tubes and joints; Orifice plates; Wear plates
TMT-2413 Aluminide	Co or Ni bonded WC; Ni, Co, and Cr-Ni Stainless	Corrosion and galling resistance.	Pump plungers; Piston rings; Shafts; Seal rings; Bearings; Threads
TMT-2813 Nickel Aluminide	Carbon, Low-Alloy, Chrome and Cr-Ni steel	Corrosion and galling resistance.	Piston rings; Bearings; Piping
TMT-213 Chrome Aluminide	Carbon and Low-Alloy Steels	Galling resistance.	Bearings
EC-114 Complex Aluminide	Nickel and Iron-Base Alloys	Friction and oxidation resistance.	Turbine hot section; Oil tools
KS-138 Dispersed Phase Aluminide	Nickel Alloys	Corrosion and erosion resistance.	High temperature fans; Valves; Power recovery turbines
PS-138 Disp. Phase Platinum Aluminide	Nickel Alloys	Hot gas corrosion resistance.	Turbine hot section; Oil tools
RS-138 Disp. Phase Rhodium Aluminide	Cobalt Alloys	Hot gas corrosion resistance.	Turbine hot section; Oil tools

Electro-Spark Deposition Coatings. Electro-spark deposition involves the transfer of minute molten droplets of the desired coating material from a contacting electrode to the surface of the part. At the completion of the spark-induced transfer, the droplet welds to the part. By careful control, usually by computer, these microwelds will overlap, yielding a complete

new surface. Heat input to the part is extremely low, and the maximum temperature rise is just a few degrees above ambient.

Some of the remarkable things that are being done by this process include carbide coatings on aluminum, carbide coatings on titanium, nickel or gold on aluminum, and nickel aluminide on steels, as well as the seemingly simple coating of stainless steel with stainless steel.

Bond strengths equal those of the base components, rather than being limited to 10,000 or 12,000 psi. Thus, the ESD coatings will withstand bend tests, thermal shock, and mechanical shock that no other coating system can match.

This process is now in use in critical nuclear reactor components and may well be the answer to some of the most difficult wear and corrosion problems facing us today. Figure 10-15 illustrates Triboloy 700 applied by electro-spark deposition to seal ring surfaces to prevent fretting.

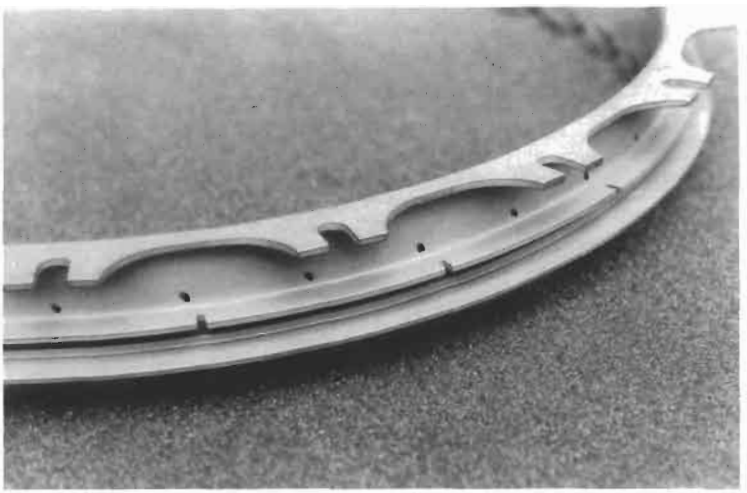


Figure 10-15. Triboloy 700 applied by Electro-Spark Deposition to seal ring surfaces to prevent fretting.

High-Velocity Thermal Spray Coatings. These coatings are available for steam-turbine blading and other components. In a number of applications, high-velocity thermal spray systems have produced coatings that are equal to or better than D-Gun and high-energy plasma spray deposits when evaluated for bond strength, density, and oxide content. More specifically, the bond strength of tungsten carbide/cobalt coatings produced with the HV system has been measured at more than 12,000 psi on a grit-blasted surface.

High-velocity thermal spray systems use high-velocity combustion exhaust gases to heat and propel metallic powder onto a workpiece, thereby producing a coating. The exhaust is produced by internal combustion of oxygen and a fuel gas. Propylene, MAPP, and hydrogen have all been used as fuels with propylene being the recommended fuel. The combustion temperature is approximately 5,000°F, with exhaust velocities of 4,500 ft/sec, more than four times the speed of sound.

The powder particles are introduced axially into the center of the exhaust jet. When the powder particles (hot and possessing high kinetic energy) hit a solid workpiece, they are deformed and quenched. The resulting coatings exhibit high bond strength and density and are exceedingly smooth. Table 10-12 highlights the characteristics and principal applications for high-velocity thermal sprays.

Table 10-12.
Characteristics and Applications of High-Velocity Thermal Sprays

Description	Characteristics	Application
TMT proprietary high density fused.	Very high wear and impact resistance. Operating temperature to 1200°F. Hardness > 1200 DPH. Bond strength > 25,000 psi.	Gate valves and mill rolls.
80 Cr3C2, 20 Ni-Cr	Excellent wear resistance to temperatures approaching 1600°F (1400°F continuous). Not recommended in corrosive environments.	Gas turbine hot section components.
ESD prepared substrate. May be used with all TMT WC systems listed.	Forms metallurgical bond with substrate for all TMTHV applied tungsten carbide systems.	Same applications for all WC systems listed.
73 WC, 20 CR, 7 NI	Good wear resistance with improved oxidation and corrosion resistance at temperatures approaching 1400°F. Hardness > 1100 DPH.	Oilfield machinery & chemical processing equipment. Gas turbine components.
83 (W, Ti)C 17 Ni	Smooth as-coated resistant surface. Resistant to alkaline solutions. Hardness 1200 DPH. Operating temperature below 1000°F.	Plastics industry.

Table 10-12. Continued
Characteristics and Applications of High-Velocity Thermal Sprays

Description	Characteristics	Application
85 WC, 15 Co	Similar to TMTHV-387 with greater impact resistance.	Gas turbine compressor components.
87 WC, 13 Co	Excellent resistance to wear. Particle erosion resistance approx. 50% improvement over weld deposited STELLITE 6. Hardness > 1100 DPH. Operating temperature to 1100°F.	Industrial machinery. Replacement for cemented carbide. Gas turbine components.
91 WC, 9 Co	A hard, erosion and wear resistant surface. Impact resistance fair. Hardness 1200 DPH. Operating temperature to 1000°F.	High wear components in aerospace and industrial applications.
Tribaloy 400	Very high strength & good wear resistance. Hardness 800 DPH. Operating temperature to 1200°F.	Gas turbine bleed air components.
Tribaloy 800	Excellent resistance to metal-to-metal wear, galling, and corrosion to 1500°F. Hardness 600 DPH.	Gas turbine components. Extrusion dies. Piston rings.
Haynes STELLITE 6	High resistance to particle erosion, abrasive wear, and fretting to 1500°F. Hardness 490 DPH.	Valve and pump components. Exhaust valves and seats, conveyor screws, hot crushing rolls.
Hastelloy C	Excellent corrosion resistance. Good metal-to-metal wear and abrasion resistance to 1900°F. Hardness 470 DPH.	Valve and pump components for chemical industry. Boiler tubes, digesters, guide rolls, fan blades.

* Comparable in material composition only. TMT HV Systems offer improved density, bond strength and oxide control.
Tribaloy, STELLITE and Hastelloy are tradenames of Stellite Div. Cabot Corporation.
ESD is a patented process of Intermetallics, a joint venture of Turbine Metal Technology Inc., & Westinghouse Electric Corp.

Source: Turbine Metal Technology, Inc., Tujunga, CA 91402.

Other Coatings for Machinery Components. There are many proprietary coating processes that can be applied to machinery components either in a restorative or preventive manner. These coatings may be used for services in moderate wear and corrosion environments but also in applications where metal to metal contact is made and the danger of galling of the two surfaces exists. The *iron-manganese-phosphate bath process** is a typical example. The use of this process is especially indicated for cams, rollers, and gears.

The iron-manganese-phosphate process adds from .0002 to .0003 in. to the surface of the workpiece. The process specification calls for the cleaning of the workpiece to be coated, preheating in a water bath to 200°F and immersion into the iron-manganese-phosphate bath until all reaction stops. The piece is then rinsed and immersed in a hot solution of soluble oil and colloidal graphite. It is finally wiped and dried thoroughly.

Hard coating treatment of aluminum alloys (anodizing) is a process that increases surface hardness and abrasion and corrosion resistance of aluminum and aluminum alloys. This is accomplished by formation of a dense aluminum oxide in a suitable electrolyte. Coating thicknesses range from .0015 to .0025 in. Typical applications are the coating of reciprocating compressor pistons and centrifugal compressor labyrinths.

Application of thin films of Teflon® to metals. These films often have the advantage over other dry lubricants by producing very low coefficients of friction. The operable temperature range of thin Teflon® lubricating coatings is from −80°F to 550°F. These coatings have also been successfully applied for corrosion protection of machinery parts.

Teflon® coatings are formed by baking an air-dried coating deposited from an aqueous dispersion. Several aqueous suspensions are available. Application methods are well defined.[18] Film thickness ranges between 0.0002 and 0.0003 in. for most lubrication applications. For corrosion protection, multiple coatings are applied for a final thickness of 0.0015 to 0.003 in.

Fluoropolymer (Teflon®) Infusion Process†. This process entails the infusion of a friction-reducing fluoropolymer into the surface of machinery parts. The process does not result in a surface coating, although an initial coating of 0.005 in. is provided after treatment. Since the infusion process is not a rebuilding process, the workpiece must be serviceable be-

---

* Parko Lubriting Process
† Impreglon® Process

fore treatment. The process has been applied to steam turbine trip valve stems, pump plungers, compressor sliding parts, shafts, and bushings. The treatment adds built-in lubrication and corrosion resistance but does not harden the original surface.[19,20]

Selection and Application of O-Rings‡

In hydrocarbon processing plants, mechanical seals for pumps and compressors, tube fittings and pipe flanges often use O-rings to prevent fluid flow or leakage. According to application, O-rings can be categorized as static (seal between flange facings) and dynamic (subjected to movement or wobble). Table 10-13 lists the commonly available O-ring materials in decreasing order of preference based on an overall desirability for O-ring sealing service, with cost and availability considered secondary. When following the design steps results in several candidate elastomers for a specific application, this table may be used for final selection. (Letter suffixes identify elastomers compound designations.)

‡ Source: National® O-rings Division of Federal Mogul, 11634 Patton Road, Downey, California 90241. Adapted by permission.

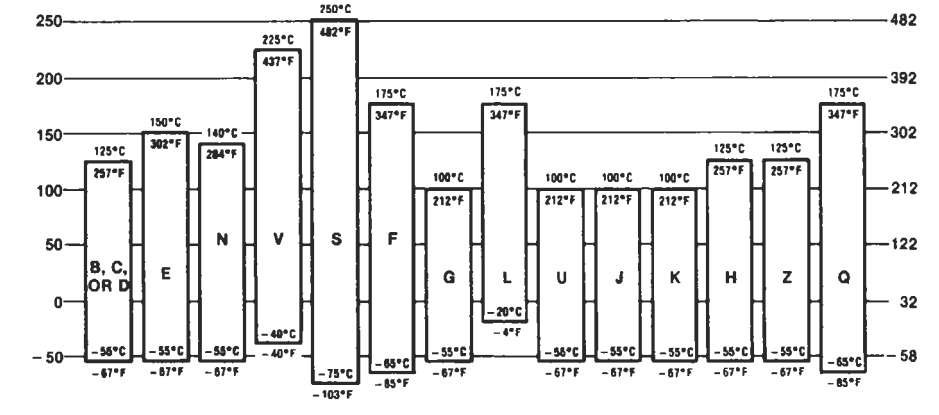
Table 10-13.
Elastomer Preference by Application

DYNAMIC	STATIC
NITRILE (B, C, OR D)	NITRILE (B, C, OR D)
ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE (E)	ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE (E)
SBR (G)	NEOPRENE (N)
FLUOROCARBON (V)	SBR (G)
NEOPRENE (N)	SILICONE (S)
PHOSPHONITRILIC FLUOROELASTOMER (O)	FLUOROCARBON (V)
POLYURETHANE (U)	POLYACRYLATE (L)
POLYACRYLATE (L)	FLUOROSILICONE (F)
BUTYL (J)	POLYURETHANE (U)
EPICHLOROHYDRIN (Z)	BUTYL (J)
	PHOSPHONITRILIC FLUORGELASTOMER (Q)
	EPICHLOROHYDRIN (Z
	POLYSULFIDE (K)
	CHLOROSULFONATED POLYETHYLENE (H)

Next, the user has to consider temperature limitations of the elastomers. Here Table 10-14 will be helpful.

Chemical compatibility of O-rings with a process fluid and temperature limits will define the method of O-ring production, using full-circle molding, ambient adhesive bonding and hot bonding or vulcanizing. Having no joint and hence no weak point, full-circle molded O-rings are the most common for reliability in operation. Available in a wide range of stock sizes and materials, O-rings of this type also can be custom-molded. Ambient adhesive-bonded O-rings of any diameter can be quickly and easily made, using cord stock of most materials except silicone rubber. A simple jig used for cutting square ends and aligning them for bonding gives a smooth joint, which can sometimes be made in place without machine disassembly. Vulcanizing is considered to be an intermediate method in terms of nonstock O-ring delivery, chemical, and temperature resistance. Thermal and chemical resistance of the hot, bonded

Table 10-14.
Elastomer Temperature Ranges



B, C, or D — NITRILE	L — POLYACRYLATE
E — ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE	U — POLYURETHANE
N — NEOPRENE	J — BUTYL
V — FLUOROCARBON	K — POLYSULFIDE
S — SILICONE	H — CHLOROSULFONATED POLYETHYLENE
F — FLUOROSILICONE	Z — EPICHLOROHYDRIN
G — SBR	Q — PHOSPHONITRILIC FLUOROELASTOMER

O-rings is superior to the adhesive-bonded, but inferior to the molded ones.

O-ring failure analysis can be instructive to prevent machine failure. There are several common causes of O-ring failure.

Deterioration in Storage. Some synthetic rubbers such as neoprene and Buna N are sensitive to ultraviolet radiation, others to heat and ozone. O-rings should therefore not be exposed to temperatures above 120°F (49°C) or air, light, ozone, and radiation generating electrical devices. Generally, storing O-rings in polyethylene bags inside larger cardboard boxes under normal warehouse conditions will ensure maximum storage life.

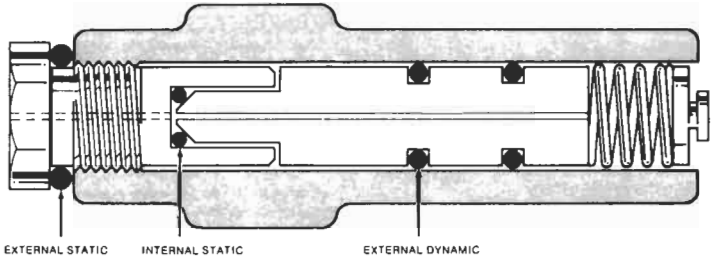
Temperature. Exceeding an allowable temperature is a common cause of O-ring failure. Many O-rings fail from overheating because they are deprived of lubricant and/or coolant. Others are unable to recover from compression set at a high temperature, and they remain "flattened out," so to speak. Yet others fail because of overheating or chemical attack. Table 10-14 lists temperature limits for common O-ring materials. These limits can often be exceeded for short periods. Process fluid temperature may not be equal to O-ring temperature. A cool flush may reduce O-ring temperature, as may heat dissipation through a barrier structure. On the other hand, localized frictional heating may increase the O-ring temperature. If high or low temperatures are suspected of causing failure, it may be practical to change the environmental temperature or the O-ring material. In extreme cases, an all-metal bellows seal may permit elimination of O-rings.

Mechanical Damage. Tearing, pinching, foreign matter embedment, dry rubbing and various other mechanical damage can occur during installation, operation, and removal. A sharp steel tool used for O-ring removal can scratch the groove or sealing surface and cause leakage. Brass, wood or plastic tools can be used without risk of scratching. Removal and installation instructions are shown in Figure 10-16.

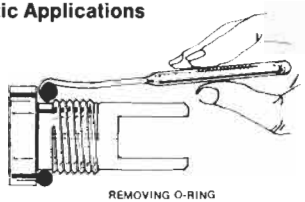
Chemical Attack. Tables 10-15 and 10-16 are useful in selecting O-ring materials compatible with various fluids. Experimental verification is sometimes worthwhile. Complications may occur because of different properties of supposedly identical O-rings produced by various manufacturers. Also, a loss of identification in storage and handling is possible. To minimize unpleasant surprises for critical services, consider discarding even new O-rings which come with new and rebuilt seal assemblies, and replace them with O-rings of known material from a single manufac-

O-ring Removal and Installation for Specific Applications

The diagram below illustrates three different O-ring sealing applications: External Static, Internal Static and External Dynamic. The replacement O-rings in each of these situations will require its own set of procedures.



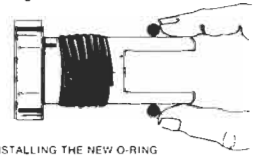
Removal and Installation in External Static Applications



REMOVING O-RING

When removing an O-ring in this type of application, using a pull-type hook tool is very useful. Slip the hook under the O-ring and pull it over the threads and off.

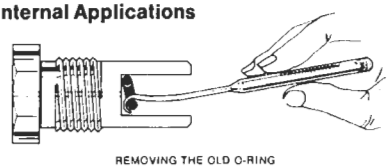
As you would with any O-ring installation, make sure the area is clean and free of all foreign substances to prohibit deformation of sealing surfaces.



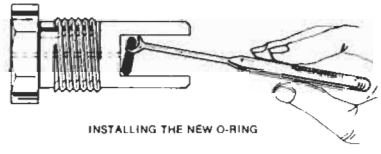
INSTALLING THE NEW O-RING

After you have cleaned the surfaces, put tape over the threads to prevent damage to the O-ring. Lubricating the ring with a compatible material with system fluid will help the O-ring slide easily into position without damage.

Removal and Installation in Static Internal Applications



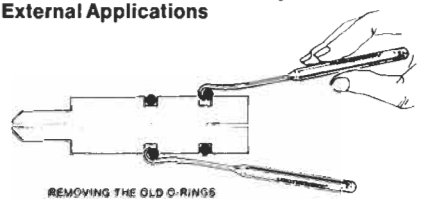
REMOVING THE OLD O-RING



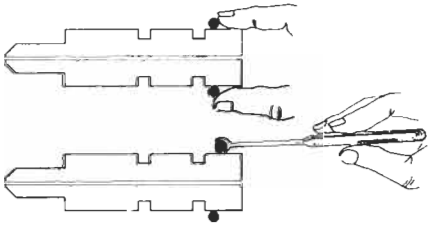
INSTALLING THE NEW O-RING

Most internal static applications require the use of tools because O-rings are hard to get at. For removal, use the pull-type hook. For installation of the new O-ring, use a push-type hook. It may be necessary during removal to loosen the O-ring with a spoon type tool.

Removal and Installation in Dynamic External Applications



REMOVING THE OLD O-RINGS



INSTALLING THE NEW O-RINGS

Figure 10-16. O-ring removal and installation instructions.

Table 10-15.
Elastomer Capabilities Guide

NOMENCLATURE	NITRILE (BUNA N)	ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE	CHLOROPRENE (NEOPRENE)	FLUOROCARBON (VITON, FLUOREL)	SILICONE	FLUOROSILICONE	STYRENE BUTADIENE (SBR)
NATIONAL COMPOUND PREFIX	B, C, D	E	N	V	S	F	G
ASTM D2000 PREFIX	BG, BK, CH	CA	BC, BE	HK	FC, FE, GE	FK	AA, BA
ASTM D1418 DESIGNATION	NBR	EPDM, EPM	CR	FKM	PVMQ, VMQ	FVMQ	SBR
GENERAL							
HARDNESS RANGE, "A" SCALE	40-90	50-90	40-80	70-90	40-80	60-80	40-80
RELATIVE O-RING COST	LOW	LOW	LOW/MOD	MOD./HIGH	MODERATE	HIGH	LOW
CONTINUOUS HIGH TEMP. LIMIT	257°F,125°C	302°F,150°C	284°F,140°C	437°F,225°C	482°F,250°C	347°F,175°C	212°F,100°C
LOW TEMPERATURE CAPABILITY	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-40°F,-40°C	-103°F,-75°C	-85°F,-65°C	-67°F,-55°C
DYNAMIC SERVICE/ABRASION RESISTANCE	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	POOR	POOR	EXCELLENT
COMPRESSION SET RESISTANCE	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	GOOD
FLUID COMPATIBILITY SUMMARY							
ACID, INORGANIC	FAIR	GOOD	FAIR/GOOD	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD	FAIR/GOOD
ACID, ORGANIC	GOOD	VERY GOOD	GOOD	GOOD	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD
AGING, (OXYGEN, OZONE, WEATHER)	FAIR/POOR	VERY GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	POOR
AIR	FAIR	VERY GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	FAIR
ALCOHOLS	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	FAIR	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD
ALDEHYDES	FAIR/POOR	VERY GOOD	FAIR/POOR	POOR	GOOD	POOR	FAIR/POOR
ALKALIS	FAIR/GOOD	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	GOOD	FAIR/GOOD
AMINES	POOR	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	POOR	GOOD	POOR	FAIR
ANIMAL OILS	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	GOOD	EXCELLENT	POOR
ESTERS, ALKYL PHOSPHATE (SKYDROL)	POOR	EXCELLENT	POOR	POOR	GOOD	FAIR/POOR	POOR
ESTERS, ARYL PHOSPHATE	FAIR/POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR/POOR	EXCELLENT	GOOD	VERY GOOD	POOR
ESTERS, SILICATE	GOOD	POOR	FAIR	EXCELLENT	POOR	VERY GOOD	POOR
ETHERS	POOR	FAIR	POOR	POOR	POOR	FAIR	POOR
HYDROCARBON FUELS, ALIPHATIC	EXCELLENT	POOR	FAIR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	EXCELLENT	POOR
HYDROCARBON FUELS, AROMATIC	GOOD	POOR	FAIR/POOR	EXCELLENT	POOR	VERY GOOD	POOR
HYDROCARBONS, HALOGENATED	FAIR/POOR	POOR	POOR	EXCELLENT	POOR	VERY GOOD	POOR
HYDROCARBON OILS, HIGH ANILINE	EXCELLENT	POOR	GOOD	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	POOR
HYDROCARBON OILS, LOW ANILINE	VERY GOOD	POOR	FAIR/POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	VERY GOOD	POOR
IMPERMEABILITY TO GASES	GOOD	GOOD	GOOD	VERY GOOD	POOR	POOR	FAIR/GOOD
KETONES	POOR	EXCELLENT	POOR	POOR	POOR	FAIR/POOR	POOR
SILICONE OILS	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	GOOD	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT
VEGETABLE OILS	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	POOR
WATER/STEAM	GOOD	EXCELLENT	FAIR	FAIR	FAIR	FAIR	FAIR

turer whom you consider reliable. To check whether an unknown, used O-ring is Viton or something else, you can immerse it in carbon tetrachloride. If it sinks, it is probably Viton. If it floats, it is not. Kalrez® perfluoroelastomer would also sink, but this material is uncommon and usually identified by tagging or other means.

What Makes an O-Ring

O-rings are manufactured from a variety of elastomers which are blended to form compounds. These compounds exhibit unique properties such as resistance to certain fluids, temperature extremes, and life. The following section describes the most prominent elastomers and their inherent properties.

Nitrile, Buna N, or NBR. Nitrile is the most widely used elastomer in the seal industry. The popularity of nitrile is due to its excellent resistance to petroleum products and its ability to be compounded for service over a temperature range of −67° to 257°F (−55°C to 125°C).

Table 10-16.
Elastomer Capabilities Guide

NOMENCLATURE	POLYACRYLATE	POLYURETHANE	BUTYL	POLYSULFIDE (THIOKOL)	CHLOROSULFONATED POLYETHYLENE (HYPALON)	EPICHLOROHYDRIN (HYDRIN)	PHOSPHONITRILIC FLUOROELASTOMER (PNF)
NATIONAL COMPOUND PREFIX	L	U	J	K	H	Z	Q
ASTM D2000 PREFIX	DF, DH	BG	AA, BA	AK, BK	CE	DK, DJ	NOT ASSIGNED
ASTM D1418 DESIGNATION	ACM	EU	IIR	T	CSM	ECO	PZ
GENERAL							
HARDNESS RANGE "A" SCALE	70-90	60-90	50-70	50-80	50-90	50-90	50-90
RELATIVE O-RING COST	MODERATE	MODERATE	MODERATE	MODERATE	MODERATE	MODERATE	HIGH
CONTINUOUS HIGH TEMP. LIMIT	347°F,175°C	212°F,100°C	212°F,100°C	212°F,100°C	257°F,125°C	257°F,125°C	347°F,175°C
LOW TEMPERATURE CAPABILITY	-4°F,-20°C	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-67°F,-55°C	-85°F,-65°C
DYNAMIC SERVICE/ABRASION RESISTANCE	GOOD	EXCELLENT	GOOD	FAIR/POOR	POOR	FAIR	VERY GOOD
COMPRESSION SET RESISTANCE	FAIR	FAIR	FAIR/GOOD	FAIR	FAIR/POOR	FAIR/GOOD	GOOD
FLUID COMPATIBILITY SUMMARY							
ACID, INORGANIC	POOR	POOR	GOOD	POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	POOR
ACID, ORGANIC	POOR	POOR	VERY GOOD	GOOD	GOOD	FAIR	FAIR
AGING (OXYGEN, OZONE, WEATHER)	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT
AIR	VERY GOOD	GOOD	GOOD	GOOD	EXCELLENT	GOOD	EXCELLENT
ALCOHOLS	POOR	POOR	VERY GOOD	FAIR/GOOD	VERY GOOD	GOOD	FAIR
ALDEHYDES	POOR	POOR	GOOD	FAIR/GOOD	FAIR/GOOD	POOR	POOR
ALKALIS	POOR	FAIR/GOOD	EXCELLENT	POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	GOOD
AMINES	POOR	POOR	GOOD	POOR	POOR	POOR	GOOD
ANIMAL OILS	EXCELLENT	GOOD	GOOD	POOR	GOOD	GOOD	FAIR
ESTERS, ALKYL PHOSPHATE (SKYDROL)	POOR	POOR	VERY GOOD	POOR	POOR	POOR	POOR
ESTERS, ARYL PHOSPHATE	POOR	POOR	EXCELLENT	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	EXCELLENT
ESTERS, SILICATE	FAIR/POOR	POOR	POOR	FAIR/POOR	FAIR	GOOD	EXCELLENT
ETHERS	FAIR/POOR	FAIR	FAIR/POOR	GOOD	POOR	GOOD	POOR
HYDROCARBON FUELS, ALIPHATIC	VERY GOOD	GOOD	POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT
HYDROCARBON FUELS, AROMATIC	POOR	FAIR/POOR	POOR	GOOD	FAIR/POOR	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT
HYDROCARBONS, HALOGENATED	FAIR/GOOD	FAIR	POOR	GOOD	FAIR	EXCELLENT	FAIR
HYDROCARBON OILS, HIGH ANILINE	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	POOR	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT
HYDROCARBON OILS, LOW ANILINE	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	POOR	GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT
IMPERMEABILITY TO GASES	VERY GOOD	FAIR	EXCELLENT	VERY GOOD	VERY GOOD	EXCELLENT	FAIR
KETONES	POOR	POOR	EXCELLENT	GOOD	FAIR	FAIR	POOR
SILICONE OILS	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT	EXCELLENT
VEGETABLE OILS	GOOD	FAIR	GOOD	POOR	GOOD	EXCELLENT	FAIR
WATER/STEAM	POOR	POOR	EXCELLENT	FAIR	FAIR	GOOD	FAIR

Nitrile is a copolymer of butadiene and acrylonitrile. Variation in proportions of these polymers is possible to accommodate specific requirements. An increase in acrylonitrile content increases resistance to heat plus petroleum base oils and fuels but decreases low temperature flexibility. Military AN and MS O-ring specifications require nitrile compounds with low acrylonitrile content to ensure low temperature performance. Nitrile provides excellent compression set, tear, and abrasion resistance. The major limiting properties of nitrile are its poor ozone and weather resistance and moderate heat resistance.

Advantages:
- Good balance of desirable properties
- Excellent oil and fuel resistance
- Good water resistance

Disadvantages:
- Poor weather resistance
- Moderate heat resistance

Ethylene-Propylene, EP, EPT, or EPDM. Ethylene-propylene compounds are used frequently to seal phosphate ester fire resistant hydraulic fluids such as Skydrol. They are also effective in brake systems, and for sealing hot water and steam. Ethylene-propylene compounds have good resistance to mild acids, alkalis, silicone oils and greases, ketones, and alcohols. They are not recommended for petroleum oils or diester lubricants. Ethylene-propylene has a temperature range of −67°F to 302°F (−55°C to 150°C). It is compatible with polar fluids that adversely affect other elastomers.

Advantages:

- Excellent weather resistance
- Good low temperature flexibility
- Excellent chemical resistance
- Good heat resistance

Disadvantage:

- Poor petroleum oil and solvent resistance

Chloroprene, Neoprene, or CR. Neoprene is a polymer of chlorobutadiene and is unusual in that it is moderately resistant to both petroleum oils and weather (ozone, sunlight, oxygen). This qualifies neoprene for O-ring service where many other elastomers would not be satisfactory. It is also used extensively for sealing refrigeration fluids. Neoprene has good compression set characteristics and a temperature range of −57°F to 284°F (−55°C to 140°C).

Advantages:

- Moderate weather resistance
- Moderate oil resistance
- Versatile

Disadvantage:

- Moderate solvent and water resistance

Fluorocarbon, Viton, Fluorel, or FKM. Fluorocarbon combines more resistance to a broader range of chemicals than any of the other elastomers. It constitutes the closest available approach to the universal O-ring elasto-

mer. Although most fluorocarbon compounds become quite hard at temperatures below −4°F (−20°C), they do not easily fracture, and are thus serviceable at much lower temperatures. Fluorocarbon compounds provide a continuous 437°F (225°C) high temperature capability.

Advantages:

- Excellent chemical resistance
- Excellent heat resistance
- Good mechanical properties
- Good compression set resistance

Disadvantage:

- Fair low temperature resistance

Silicone or PVMQ. Silicone is a semi-organic elastomer with outstanding resistance to extremes of temperature. Specially compounded, it can provide reliable service at temperatures as low as −175°F (−115°C) to as high as 482°F (250°C) continuously. Silicone also has good resistance to compression set.

Low physical strength and abrasion resistance combined with high friction limit silicone to static seals. Silicone is used primarily for dry heat static seals. Although it swells considerably in petroleum lubricants, this is not detrimental in most static sealing applications.

Advantages:

- Excellent at temperature extremes
- Excellent compression set resistance

Disadvantages:

- Poor physical strength

Fluorosilicone or FVMQ. Fluorosilicones combine most of the attributes of silicone with resistance to petroleum oils and hydrocarbon fuels. Low physical strength and abrasion resistance combined with high friction limit fluorosilicone to static seals. Fluorosilicones are used primarily in aircraft fuel systems over a temperature range of −85°F to 347°F (−65°C to 175°C).

Advantages:

- Excellent at temperature extremes
- Good resistance to petroleum oils and fuels
- Good compression set resistance

Disadvantage:

- Poor physical strength

Styrene-Butadiene or SBR. Styrene-butadiene compounds have properties similar to those of natural rubber and are primarily used in the manufacture of tires. Their use in O-rings has been mostly in automobile brake systems and plumbing. Ethylene-propylene, a more recent development, is gradually replacing styrene-butadiene in brake service. Temperature range is −67°F to 212°F (−55°C to 100°C).

Advantages:

- Good resistance to brake fluids
- Good resistance to water

Disadvantages:

- Poor weather resistance
- Poor petroleum oil and solvent resistance

Polyacrylate or ACM. Polyacrylate compounds retain their properties when sealing petroleum oils at continuous temperatures as high as 347°F (175°C). Polyacrylate O-rings are used extensively in automotive transmissions and other automotive applications. They provide some of the attributes of fluorocarbon O-rings. A recent variation, ethylene-acrylate, provides improved low temperature characteristics with some sacrifice in hot oil resistance.

Advantages:

- Excellent resistance to petroleum oils
- Excellent weather resistance

Disadvantages:

- Fair low temperature properties
- Fair to poor water resistance
- Fair compression set resistance

Polyurethane, AU, or EU. Polyurethane compounds exhibit outstanding tensile strength and abrasion resistance in comparison with other elastomers. Fluid compatibility is similar to that of nitrile at temperatures up to 158°F (70°C). At higher temperatures, polyurethane has a tendency to soften and lose both strength and fluid resistance advantages over other elastomers. Some types are readily damaged by water, even high humidity. Polyurethane seals offer outstanding performance in high pressure hydraulic systems with abrasive contamination, high shock loads, and related adverse conditions provided temperature is below 158°F (70°C).

Advantages:

- Excellent strength and abrasion resistance
- Good resistance to petroleum oils
- Good weather resistance

Disadvantages:

- Poor resistance to water
- Poor high temperature capabilities

Butyl or IIR. Butyl is a copolymer of isobutylene and isoprene. It has largely been replaced by ethylene-propylene for O-ring usage. Butyl is resistant to the same fluid types as ethylene-propylene and, except for resistance to gas permeation, it is somewhat inferior to ethylene-propylene for O-ring service. Temperature range is −67°F to 212°F (−55°C to 100°C).

Advantages:

- Excellent weather resistance
- Excellent gas permeation resistance

Disadvantage:

- Poor petroleum oil and fuel resistance

Polysulfide, Thiokol, or T. Polysulfide was one of the first commercial synthetic elastomers. Although polysulfide compounds have limited O-ring usage, they are essential for applications involving combinations of ethers, ketones, and petroleum solvents used by the paint and insecticide industries. Temperature range is −67°F to 212°F (−55°C to 100°C).

Disadvantages:

- Poor high temperature capabilities
- Poor mechanical strength
- Poor resistance to compression set

Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene, Hypalon, or CSM. Chlorosulfonated polyethylene compounds demonstrate excellent resistance to oxygen, ozone, heat, and weathering. But their mechanical properties and compression set are inferior to most other elastomers, and they are seldom used to advantage as O-rings. Temperature range is −65°F to 257°F (−55°C to 125°C).

Advantages:

- Excellent resistance to weather
- Good resistance to heat

Disadvantages:

- Poor tear and abrasion resistance
- Poor resistance to compression set

Epichlorohydrin, Hydrin, or ECO. Epichlorohydrin is a relatively recent development. Compounds of this elastomer provide excellent resistance to fuels and oils plus a broader temperature range, −65°F to 275°F (−55°C to 135°C), than nitrile. Initial usage has been in military aircraft where the particular advantages of epichlorohydrin over nitrile are of immediate benefit.

Advantages:

- Excellent oil and fuel resistance
- Excellent weather resistance
- Good low temperature resistance

Disadvantage:

- Fair resistance to compression set

Phosphonitrilic Fluoroelastomer, Polyphosphazene, PNF, or PZ. This is another new elastomer family. O-rings of phosphonitrilic fluoroelastomer are rapidly accommodating aircraft sealing requirements where the physical strength of fluorosilicone is inadequate. In other regards, the functional characteristics of phosphonitrilic fluoroelastomer and fluorosilicone are similar. Temperature range is −85°F to 347°F (−65°C to 175°C).

Advantages:

- Excellent oil and fuel resistance
- Wide temperature range
- Good compression set resistance

Disadvantage:

- Poor water resistance

UTEX HTCR® Fluororubber. Typical of many recent elastomeric compounds, this copolymer of tetrafluoroethylene and propylene is too new to be on most charts. In application range, it fits somewhere between fluorocarbon (Viton) and Kalrez®.

HTRC is thermally stable for continuous use in temperatures of 450°F, and depending on the specific application, has serviceability in environments up to 550°F. The US manufacturer, UTEX, claims excellent resis-

Table 10-17.
HTCR General Media Resistance Guidelines

HTCR GENERAL MEDIA RESISTANCE GUIDELINES	
Acids.....E	Amines.....G to E
Animal and Vegetable Oils.....E	Oils and Lubricants (incl. synthetics, SF CD, etc.).....G to E
Bases.....E	Oxidizing Agents.....G to E
Brake Fluids.....E	Sour (H_2S) Oil and Gas with Corrosion Inhibitors.....G to E
Hydraulic fluids (incl. phosphate esters, MIL-H -5606, water/glycol, etc.).....E	Benzene, Xylene, etc.....F to G
Steam/Water/Brine.....E	Fuels.....F to G
Radiation.....E	Ketones.....F
Weathering/Ozone.....E	Chloroform.....P
Alcohol.....G to E	

tance to a wide variety of chemical environments. Table 10-17 provides an indication of its chemical resistance. Since temperature, concentration, mixtures and elastomer compound selection can affect performance, this chart provides guidelines only.

Perfluoroelastomer (Kalrez®). Kalrez® O-rings have mechanical properties similar to other fluorinated elastomers but exhibit greater heat resistance and chemical inertness. They have thermal, chemical resistance, and electrical properties similar to Teflon® fluorocarbon resins but, made from a true elastomer, possess excellent resistance to creep and set.

Generally, Kalrez® O-rings are capable of providing continuous service at temperatures of 500–550°F (260–288°C) and can operate at 600°F (316°C) for shorter periods as long as they are in static service. For long-term dynamic sealing duties, an operating temperature of 450°F (232°C) would be a reasonable limit.

The chemical resistance of Kalrez® O-rings is outstanding. When using specially formulated compositions, little or no measurable effect is found in almost all chemicals, excepting fluorinated solvents which induce moderate swelling. The parts have excellent resistance to permeation by most chemicals.

Resistance to attack is especially advantageous in hot, corrosive environments such as:

- Polar solvents (ketones, esters, ethers).
- Strong commercial solvents (tetrahydrofuran, dimethyl formamide, benzene).
- Inorganic and organic acids (hydrochloric, nitric, sulfuric, trichloroacetic) and bases (hot caustic soda).
- Strong oxidizing agents (dinitrogen tetroxide, fuming nitric acid).
- Metal halogen compounds (titanium tetrachloride, diethylaluminum chloride).
- Hot mercury/caustic soda.
- Chlorine, wet and dry.
- Inorganic salt solutions.
- Fuels (aviation gas, kerosene, JP-5, Jet Fuel, ASTM Reference Fuel C).
- Hydraulic fluids, synthetics and transmission fluids.
- Heat transfer fluids.
- Oil well sour gas (methane/hydrogen sulfide/carbon dioxide/steam).
- Steam.

Back-Up Rings. Back-up rings, as shown in Figure 10-17, are often used to prevent extrusion in high pressure applications, or to correct problems such as spiral failure or nibbling. They are sometimes used in normal

Table 10-18.
Gland Design Guide

	INCHES					MILLIMETERS				
O-Ring Section Diameter	.070	.103	.139	.210	.275	1.78	2.62	3.53	5.33	6.99
STATIC SEALING										
A Gland Depth	.048 .054	.077 .083	.109 .115	.168 .176	.222 .232	1.22 1.37	1.96 2.11	2.77 2.92	4.27 4.47	5.64 5.89
B Groove Width	.090 .100	.140 .150	.180 .190	.280 .290	.370 .380	2.29 2.54	3.56 3.81	4.57 4.83	7.11 7.37	9.40 9.65
R Groove Radius (Max.)	.015	.020	.025	.035	.050	.38	.51	.64	.89	1.27
DYNAMIC SEALING										
A Gland Depth	.055 .057	.088 .090	.120 .124	.184 .188	.234 .240	1.40 1.45	2.24 2.29	3.05 3.15	4.67 4.76	5.94 6.10
B Groove Width	.090 .100	.140 .150	.180 .190	.280 .290	.370 .380	2.29 2.54	3.56 3.81	4.57 4.83	7.11 7.37	9.40 9.65
R Groove Radius (Max.)	.015	.020	.025	.035	.050	.38	.51	.64	.89	1.27

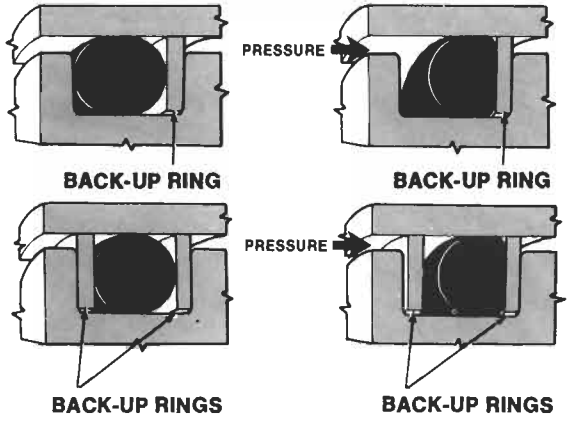


Figure 10-17. Back-up rings used with O-rings.

pressure range applications to provide an added measure of protection or to prolong O-ring life. These devices also permit the use of a wider clearance gap when close tolerances are impossible to maintain.

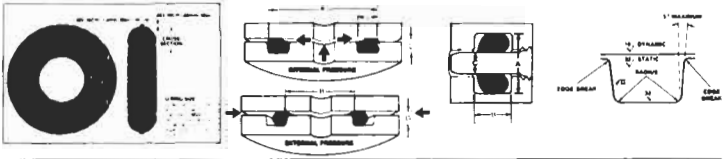
A back-up ring is simply a ring made from a material harder than the O-ring, designed to fit in the downstream side of the groove and close to the clearance gap to provide support for the O-ring. Quite often, O-rings are used as back-up rings, even though back-up rings do not perform any sealing function.

O-Ring, Back-Up Ring and Gland Dimensions. O-ring sizes have been standardized and range in size from an inside diameter of 0.029 in. and a

cross section of 0.040 in. to O-rings with an inside diameter of 16 or more in. and a cross section of 0.210 or more in. Installation dimensions vary with duty and application and the user may find it easy to consult manufacturers' catalogs, which are typically configured as shown in Figure 10-18. Note the small differences in gland dimensions. They depend on whether the O-ring will be axially squeezed, radially squeezed, or will perform dynamic piston and rod sealing duty.

To calculate your own gland design, refer to Table 10-18, "Gland Design Guide."

O-RING SIZE AND GLAND DIMENSIONS



AS 568 MS 28775 DASH #	SIZE INSIDE DIAMETER	SIZE CROSS SECTION	STATIC AXIAL SQUEEZE FACE SEAL GLAND DIMENSIONS (SAE ARP 1234) DIAMETER A +.005 −.000	DIAMETER B +.000 −.005	GLAND WIDTH C +.010 −.000	GLAND DEPTH D +.005 −.000	STATIC RADIAL SQUEEZE GLAND DIMENSIONS (SAE ARP 1232) GLAND DIA. A +.001 −.000	GLAND WIDTH B +.010 −.000	ROD DIA C +.000 −.001	DYNAMIC PISTON AND ROD SEAL GLAND DIMENSIONS (SAE ARP 1233) GLAND DIA. A +.001 −.000	GLAND WIDTH B +.010 −.000	ROD DIA. C +.000 −.001
-001	.029 ± .004	.040 ± .003					.083	.101	.035			
-002	.042 ± .004	.050 ± .003					.116	.101	.048			
-003	.056 ± .004	.060 ± .003					.149	.206	.062			
-004	.070 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.075	.125	.049	.182	.114	.077			
-005	.101 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.106	.125	.049	.216	.114	.109			
-006	.114 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.119	.125	.049	.230	.110	.122	.230	.100	.121
-007	.145 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.150	.125	.049	.263	.110	.154	.262	.100	.152
-008	.176 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.181	.125	.049	.296	.105	.186	.294	.100	.183
-009	.208 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.213	.125	.049	.327	.105	.218	.326	.100	.214
-010	.239 ± .005	.070 ± .003		.244	.125	.049	.360	.105	.250			
-011	.301 ± .005	.070 ± .003	.436			.049	.422	.105				.304
-012	[illegible]	.070 ± .003					.487		.374	.605	.175	.367
			.684	.426	.210	.107		.195	.438	.668	.175	.429
-206	.484 ± .005	.139 ± .004	.757	.489	.210	.107	.723	.195	.502	.732	.175	.492
-207	.546 ± .007	.139 ± .004	.819	.551	.210	.107	.789	.195	.567	.795	.175	.556
-208	.609 ± .009	.139 ± .004	.882	.614	.210	.107	.855	.195	.633	.859	.175	.621
-209	.671 ± .009	.139 ± .004	.944	.676	.210	.107	.918	.195	.697	.922	.175	.683
-210	.734 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.007	.739	.210	.107	.983	.195	.762	.986	.175	.747
-211	.796 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.069	.80[illegible]	.210	.107	1.047	.195	.825	1.049	.175	.810
-212	.859 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.132	.864	.210	.107	1.111	.195	.889	1.112	.175	.873
-213	.921 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.194	.926	.210	.107	1.174	.195	.953	1.175	.175	.935
-214	.984 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.257	.989	.210	.107	1.239	.195	1.017	1.238	.175	.998
-215	1.046 ± .010	.139 ± .004	1.319	1.051	.210	.107	1.302	.195	1.080	1.299	.175	1.060
-216	1.109 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.382	1.114	.210	.107	1.367	.195	1.146	1.365	.175	1.125
-217	1.171 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.444	1.176	.210	.107	1.432	.195	1.210	1.427	.175	1.187
-218	1.234 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.507	1.239	.210	.107	1.496	.195	1.274	1.489	.175	1.250
-219	1.296 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.569	1.301	.210	.107	1.559	.195	1.337	1.552	.175	1.313
-220	1.359 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.632	1.364	.210	.107	1.623	.195	1.401	1.616	.175	1.376
-221	1.421 ± .012	.139 ± .004	1.694	1.426	.210	.107	1.687	.195	1.465	1.676	.175	1.438
-222	1.484 ± .015	.139 ± .004	1.757	1.489	.210	.107	1.754	.195	1.532	1.744	.175	[illegible]
-223	1.609 ± .015	.139 ± .004	[illegible]		.210	.107	1.881	.195	[illegible]	1.868	.175	[illegible]
-224	1.734 ± .015	.139 ± .004	.952	[illegible]	[illegible]	.107	2.009	[illegible]	.550	[illegible]	[illegible]	.547
-225	[illegible]	[illegible]	.005	1.015	.605	.300	[illegible]	.00	.624	.981	.250	.612
-314	.725 ± .009	.210 ± .005	1.077	.667	.300	.169	[illegible]	.280	.687	1.044	.250	.674
-315	.787 ± .010	.210 ± .005	1.140	.730	.300	.169	1.098	.280	.753	1.108	.250	.738
-316	.850 ± .010	.210 ± .005	1.202	.792	.300	.169	1.160	.280	.816	1.170	.250	.801
-317	.912 ± .010	.210 ± .005	1.265	.855	.300	.169	1.225	.280	.880	1.234	.250	.864
-318	.975 ± .010	.210 ± .005	1.327	.917	.300	.169	1.287	.280	.943	1.295	.250	.926
-319	1.037 ± .010	.210 ± .005	1.390	.980	.300	.169	1.353	.280	1.008	1.359	.250	.989
-320	1.100 ± .012	.210 ± .005	1.452	1.042	.300	.169	1.416	.280	1.071	1.420	.250	1.051
-321	1.162 ± .012	.210 ± .005	1.515	1.105	.300	.169	1.482	.280	1.137	1.485	.250	1.116
-322	1.225 ± .012	.210 ± .005	1.577	1.167	.300	.169	1.545	.280	1.200	1.548	.250	1.178
-323	1.287 ± .012	.210 ± .005	1.640	1.230	.300	.169	1.610	.280	1.265	1.610	.250	1.241
-324	1.350 ± .012	.210 ± .005	1.702	1.292	.300	.169	1.673	.280	1.328	1.675	.250	1.304
-325	1.475 ± .015	.210 ± .005	1.765	1.355	.300	.169	1.736	.280	1.392	1.737	.250	1.367
-326	1.600 ± .015	.210 ± .005	1.890	1.480	.300	.169	1.868	.280	1.523	1.865	.250	1.495
-327	1.725 ± .015	.210 ± .005	2.015	1.605	.300	.169	1.995	.280	1.650	1.990	.250	1.620
-328	1.850 ± .015	.210 ± .005	2.140	1.730	.300	.169	2.122	.280	1.778	2.114	.250	1.745
-329	1.975 ± .018	.210 ± .005	2.265	1.855	.300	.169	2.250	.280	1.905	2.240	.250	1.871
-330	2.100 ± .018	.210 ± .005	2.390	1.980	.300	.169	2.381	.280	2.036	2.369	.250	1.999
			2.515	2.105	.300	.169	2.508	.280	2.163	2.493	.250	2.124

Figure 10-18. A sampling of O-ring and gland dimensions.

Casing Joint Compounds*

The selection of a joint sealing compound to be used on horizontally split casing joints of compressors and steam turbines is a complex subject. Operating temperature is the most important consideration in selecting the compound to be used. Joint flange condition is the next configuration. The following is a discussion of recommended compounds in order of preference.

Sealing Compounds

Boiled Linseed Oil

1. Trade name "Alinco," viscosity 37 MM, manufactured by Wheeler Paints, 502 Ohio St. Pittsburgh, Pa. 15212
2. Temperature limit—900°F
3. Description—A thick viscous material recommended by General Electric for turbine joints that is brushed or troweled on flange.

Silicone Rubber

Trade name—RTV-60—manufactured by General Electric Company.
Temperature limit—400°F—recommended by U.S. Navy for saturated steam.

1. *Description*—RTV-60 is a silicone rubber compound, red in color, that offers superior characteristics over the other RTV's such as No. 106. A comparison of the two is as follows:

	RTV-106 (Tube Type)	RTV-60 (Two Component Type)
Hardness, Shore A Durometer	33	60
Tensile Strength, psi	350	800
Percentage of Elongation	400	130
Shelf Life, Months	12	6
Viscosity, cp	Paste	500

As can be seen from these brief comparisons, RTV-60 produces a thinner but stronger film thickness than the one-tube material labeled RTV-106. RTV-60 has a pot life of three to five hours with a .1 percent activator (a Dibutyl tin dilaurate). It becomes firm within 24 hours. This compound is available in one-lb packaged form with a premeasured amount of catalyst from the General Electric Company. The most favorable results are obtained by thinning the compound with an equal volume

* Source: Amoco Oil Company, Texas City, Texas; supplementary references, U.S. Navy, and G. E. Technical Data Book S-35.

of mineral spirits and applying with an ordinary paint brush. When prepared in the following manner, this kit contains sufficient compound for one machine casing.

Measuring Guide for Catalyst Addition

Weight of RTV—1 lb
Catalyst to be added—23 drops (from conventional type medicine dropper)

Care must be taken to ensure that the total quantity of catalyst is thoroughly dispersed throughout the RTV compound. Insufficient mixing results in rubber with nonuniform cure and poor properties.

Application Instructions

a. Thoroughly clean both joint surfaces with a suitable common solvent (toluene, xylene, etc.).
b. Mix the one-lb can of RTV-60 with an equal volume of mineral spirits. This will produce a consistency of approximately that of enamel paint.
c. Add the premeasured package catalyst and mix thoroughly.
d. Apply the compound in a thin uniform coat to only one surface. No attempt should be made to apply any more compound than is necessary to color the surface. Threads and tapped holes should be protected during this operation.
e. The joint should be snugged-up immediately to bring both surfaces together as compound will begin to set in approximately three hours at room temperature. Final tightening may be accomplished as time permits.

Uncatalyzed compound—up to 900°F—recommended by U.S. Navy for superheated steam installations.

1. The same application instructions apply except step c is omitted: no catalyst is added. Although the cure time is not critical for the uncatalyzed compound, the joint should be closed as soon as the surface of the joint is properly coated in order that foreign material will not contaminate the compound. It takes up to 72 hours for the material to firmly cure under these conditions.

Copaltite (Trade Name)

1. Manufacturer—National Engineering Products, Inc., Washington D.C.

2. Temperature limit—850°F.
3. Description—comes in liquid and paste (tube form). The liquid form should be used unless the flanges are in poor condition. With the use of this compound, there must be absolutely no oil or grease on the faces to be made up. Coat both surfaces lightly with the Copaltite liquid by brushing. Bring the joints together but do not tighten immediately, first permitting the compound to become tacky. Copaltite contains alcohol which should be given time to evaporate. On rough or scored flange surfaces, the cement or paste form should be applied in the same manner with a spatula or other flat instrument.

Graphite and Boiled Linseed Oil

1. Trade name—J. Crane 425A
2. Temperature limit—900°F
3. Description—The graphite is placed in a metal container with a small amount of boiled linseed oil. The mixture is then heated until the graphite is thoroughly dissolved in the oil and forms a smooth soft paste about the consistency of molasses. The tendency is to make the paste too thick. The paste is applied by brush to the joint. Crane 425A is premixed.

Usudurian

1. Trade name—Usudurian is a trade name for unvulcanized sheet-rubber packing.
2. Temperature limit—900°F.
3. Description—An unvulcanized sheet rubber packing is applied in strips not over one-half in. wide and not over one 1/32 in. thick, so that it will flow sufficiently to prevent appreciable separation of flange faces when the joint is finally set up. After the turbine is closed and the securing bolts tightened, the turbine is thoroughly heated up and the securing bolts are again tightened. Usudurian is especially effective when the faces of flanges are not in the very best condition. Usudurian dissolved in carbon tetrachloride or gasoline may also be used as a joint compound.

CAUTION: These compounds are not to be used on bearing housings. Aviation grade or liquid "Permatex" should be used on these. Care should be exercised to prevent "Permatex" from coming in contact with aligning surfaces of bearings.

References

1. Bloch, H. P. and Geitner, F. K., *Machinery Failure Analysis and Troubleshooting*, Gulf Publishing Company, Houston, Texas, 1983, pages 36–52.
2. Locke, J. J., "Cobalt Alloy Overlays in a Petro-Chemical Refinery," *Cobalt*, 1974, Vol. 2, Pages 25–31.
3. Mendenhall, M. D., "Shaft Overlays Proven Effective," *Hydrocarbon Processing*, May 1980, Pages 191–192.
4. *Tribology Handbook*, edited by M. J. Neale, John Wiley and Sons, New York-Toronto, 1973, Page E13.
5. *Chrome Plating*, sales brochure by Exline, Inc., Salina, Kansas 67401.
6. Pyles, R., "Porous Chromium in Engine Cylinders," Transactions of the ASME, APRIL 1944, Pages 205–214.
7. Tichvinsky, L. M. and Fischer, E. G., "Boundary Friction in Bearings at Low Loads," Transactions of the ASME, Vol. 61, 1939.
8. Reference 6, Page 206.
9. Reference 6, Page 210.
10. Vacca, A. P., "Extended Periods of Overhaul of Diesel Machinery," *The Motor Ship*, January 1964.
11. Mollerus, A. P. H. J., "Wear Data of Cylinder Liners," study submitted to Ingenieursbureau Lemet Chromium H., Van Der Horst N.V., November 1964.
12. Stinson, K. W., *Diesel Engineering Handbook*, Diesel Publications Inc., Stamford, Conn., 1966.
13. Eichenour, C. and Edwards, V. H., "Electromechanical Metallizing Saves Time in Rebuilding Engine Parts," *Plant Services*, December 1982, Pages 49–50.
14. Correspondence with engineers for the Selectron Process, Metal Surface Technology, Addison, Illinois 60101.
15. Republic Steel Corporation, "Heat Treatment of Steel," Advertising Booklet #1302Ra-10M-266, Cleveland, Ohio 44101, Pages 22–23.
16. Reference 15, Pages 24–25.
17. Reference 15, Pages 29–34.
18. Technical Bulletin by E.I. Du Pont de Nemours Co., Finishes Division, Wilmington, Delaware.
19. Technical Bulletin by SR Metal Impregnation Co., Edmonton, Alberta, Canada.
20. Moffat, J. D., "New Metal Impregnation Technology Solves Friction and Corrosion Problems," ASME, New York, N.Y., publication NO. 75-PEM-17, 1975, Pages 2–7.

Index

ABEC, *See* Annular Bearing Engineers Committee.
Abrasion resistance of chromium, 548–549
Abrasive blasting preparation for hard surfacing, 523
Abrasive wear, definition, 521
Access holes for grouting, 81
Acid
  cleaning, 156–158
  washing, 90
Acid resistance of diffusion alloys, 559
Adapters, for balancing machine end drives, 277–279
Adaptive type bearing, 358
Adhesive bonding, of O-rings, 567–568
Adhesive wear
  definition, 520
  a.w. tests, 531
Advance, of coupling hubs, 514, 516
AFBMA standards, *See* Antifriction Bearing Manufacturers standards.
Aggregate
  kiln drying criteria, 72–73
Aging and stress relieving, effects on balance, 313
Alignment
  calculators, 194
  diagram, 64
  eddy current probes, 57
  face-and-rim a. method, 178–179, 182–184
  formula a. methods, 198
  graphical a. methods, 195, 204–215
  jigs, 177–184
  jig posts, 191–194
  laser-based, 184–185, 231, 233–234
  of close-coupled machinery, 215–216
  of cooling tower drives, 184
  of machinery, 44, 171–237
  optical a. method 57, 233
  plotting board, 204–205
  tolerances, 175–177
Alignment bracket sag, 185–186
Alignment corrections, calculating of a.c., 194–204
Alignment measurement setup, 177–182
Alloys
  copper-base a., 527
  diffusion a., 557–562
Alloy compositions for hard surfacing purposes, 524–531
Aluminum alloys
  hard coating treatment of a.a., 566
  used for turbo-charger impellers, 489
Aluminum oxide
  application of a.o. in anodizing process, 566
American Welding Society (AWS), 523
Amount of unbalance, measurement, 261–274
Anchor bolts, 85–86, 92, 116–117
Angle of lag, in balancing, 249
Angle of unbalance, measurement, 261–264
Angular-contact ball-bearing, 375–376
Annealed copper, use of a.c. for rotor support, 497
Annular Bearing Engineers Committee (ABEC) grade of bearings in balancing machines, 270
Anodizing, 266
Antifriction bearings/rolling element bearings
  contact angles, 389
  effects of contaminants on a.b., 358–359, 422–423
  salvage considerations, 406–407
  shaft and shoulder dimensions, 382–383
Antifriction bearing manufacturers (AFBMA) standards, 389, 397
Arbors
  balancing arbors, definition, 279
  balancing arbors, design, application, 280–289
  used for balancing fans, 454–455
Arbor press, use in bearing removal, 363, 417
Armature, balancing, 254

Assembly
  of rotors, 502–503
  of O-rings, 61
Assembly area, for antifriction bearings, 359–360
Assembly practices
  of antifriction bearings, 406–409
  of thrust collars, 507–508
ASTM-157-80 Concrete Shrinkage Test, 113
Atmospheric corrosion, 546
Automatic balancing machines, 268–269
Availability/service factor, 4
Axial clearance, between impellers, 503
Axial flow-type rotors, 488
Axial gap, between rotor components, 496
Axis of rotation, 239

Babbitt fatigue, 60
Back-to-back mounted bearings, 366, 391
Back-up rings, for protection of O-rings, 579–580
Balance
  error, 252, 309–310
  tolerances, 300–301
  quality, 255, 270, 302–310
Balance piston
  dynamic balancing of b.p., 494
  labyrinth seal clearance/leakage, 506–507
Balancing
  arbors, 279–289
  armatures, 254
  compressor rotors, 496–497
  diesel crankshafts, 276
  fans, 454–455
  gas turbine compressor assembly, 276, 300
  machinery components, 238–350
  static b., 251
  turbine rotor, 276
  twisting and stranding machines, 325–329
Balancing and vibration standards, 344–346
Balancing machines
  hard-bearing b.m., 259–260
  purpose, 239, 255, 300
  soft-bearing b.m., 258–259
Balancing problems, minimizing, 240
Balancing speed, determination, 294–295
Balancing terminology, 332–343
Ball bearings
  cartridge type b.b., 358
  conrad type, 358, 366
  conveyor roll type, 358
  interchangeability, 355–357
Ball cages, antifriction bearings, 352
Ball, antifriction bearings, 351
Bar chart, 45, 49
Baseplate
  leveling procedure, 105–111
  preparation of b., 111–113
  ready for grouting, 121
  significance for alignment, 173
  specifications, 111
  vent holes in, 111–112
Basic machine data, 63
Bearings
  angular-contact ball b. 375–376
  back-to-back mounted af b. 366, 391
  checking of turbomachinery b., 62
  face-to-face mounted af b., 391–401
  packaging of b., 390–392
  preloaded with different contact angles, 405
  special purpose b., 353
  super-precision b., 409
  tandem b., 390–391, 392–394
Bearing journals
  grinding of b.j., 539
Bearing maintenance
  checklist, 426–429
  practices, 351–429
Bearing puller, use of 363–369
Bearing removal from shaft, 361–369
Bearing runout, 254
Bearing seats
  check for out-of-round, 384–386
  general, 375–376
Bearing symbols, 354–357
Bearing wear, 61
Belt drive, for balancing machines, 271
Biasing, balancing arbors, 285
Blower, field balancing, 319–321
Boiled linseed oil, sealing compound, 581–584
Bolt stresses, 146, 152–153
Bolts, anchor, 116–117
Bond, of hard-surfacing materials, 524
Boring, worn cylinders for chromium plating, 348
Boundary layer lubrication, 547
Bracket sag effect, machinery alignment, 187–189
Braze repair, of pump impellers, 470-471
Brine injection pump, shaft repair, 459
Brinelling, of antifriction bearings
  definition, 361–362
  preventing b. during bearing assembly, 415
Brush electroplating, 552–554
Built-up rotors
  definition, 488
  transient bows in b.r., 496
Bulk welding, definition, 523
Burnish marks, in duplexed bearings, 410

Bushings
  nitriding of b., 557
  wear of b. through vibration, 239
Business loss, 6
Butyl, use for O-ring materials, 567, 576

Calculators, programmable for alignment 194
Calibrating mass, used in field balancing, 323
Calibratable balancing machines, 266
Calipers, 177
Cams
  hardening by nitriding, 557
Camshafts
  hardening by nitriding, 557
Carbide coatings, wear resistance, 538–539
Carbon electrodes, use in hard surfacing, 523
Carburizing, 555
Cartridge type ball brg., 358
Case histories of welded repairs of pump parts, 457–462
Casing joint compounds, 582–585
Casting salvaging methods, 470–486
Cement
  grouting, 133–137
Center of gravity
  correlating c.o.g. displacement with unbalance, 249–255
  c.o.g. displacement, significance for balancing, 252
Central parts depot/location, 33–34, 39
Central PM control, 16
Centralized engineering, responsibilities of, 34–35
Centralized technical services, 14–15
Centralized maintenance, 13–24
Centrifugal balancing machines
  hard-bearing machines 260
  purpose, 255
  soft-bearing machines,258–259
Centrifugal compressor rotor repairs, 508–513
Centrifugal force in balancing, 239
  related to speed, 241
Centrifuges, correction of unbalance condition, 321–325
Ceramics, in hard surfacing, 527–528, 537
CG/C.G., *See* Center of gravity.
Checking
  contact of coupling hubs, 514
  bore of impellers, 503
  dimensional c. of spare parts, 45
  off-square condition, 386
  out-of-round condition, 384–386
  procedures during compressor rotor assembly, 503
Checkpoints, for seals, 435–439
Chemical compatibility, of O-ring materials, 567–569
Chemical plating, of high speed shaft journals, 464
Chemical vapor deposition (CVD), 558
Chill rings, 155
Chlorosulfonated polyethylene, for O-rings, 565, 577
Chloroprene, for O-rings, 572–573
Chocks, 83–85
Chrome-plating
  industrial c., 543–552
  economy of c, 552
Chromium, in hard surfacing, 542–552
Chromium carbide, in hard surfacing, 542
Cleaning
  acid c., 156–158
  air, gas or steam piping, 155–156
  of af brg. equipped assembly parts, 369–373
  procedures, 156–167
  turbomachinery components, 60–61
Clearances
  bearing, 62
  labyrinth, 62
  tabulation, 56
  thrust, 62
Close-coupled machinery
  alignment, 215–216
Coating of machinery components
  anodizing, 566
  electro-spark deposition, 562–563
  high-velocity thermal spray, 563–565
  iron-manganese-phosphate, 566
  Teflon®, 566
Cobalt-base alloys, 526–527, 541–542
Coefficient of friction
  of chromium, 544–545
Cold clearances, in compressor rotor assembly, 504
Cold setting, of spring hangers, 145
Cold straightening, of pump shafts repaired by welding, 457
Compensation balancing machines, 266
Compensator, 286
Component life
  deterministic/predictable, 4–5
  indeterminate/probabilistic, 4–5
Composite vibration, in balancing machines, 262
Composites, in hard surfacing, 527
Compositions of hard facing alloys, 529
Compounds
  lapping c., 442
  used for casing joint sealing, 581 584
Compressor
  centrifugal process c., 4
  cylinder cleaning, 155
  efficiency, 36

performance monitoring, 35
pipe cleaning, 156–160
piston rod hardfacing, 537
reciprocating c., 8
rotor repairs, 488–513
Computer-aided balancing, 313–316
Computer-based PM, 16–21
Computer justification
faith, hope & charity type, 24
Computer systems, 17–35
Concrete
ASTM-157-80 C. Shrinkage Test, 113
characteristics, 75, 89
preparation of new c. for foundation, 113–115
preparation of old c. for foundation, 115–116
prestressing, 102
shrinkage, 98
Condition-based maintenance, 8
Condition monitoring, 6–7, 10
Connecting rods, hardening by nitriding, 557
Conrad type ball brg., 358, 366
Contact angle, in af brgs., 389
Contaminants
effect of c. on af brgs., 258–359
protecting brg. and shaft assemblies from c., 422
Contractors, for maintenance, 32
Control system, for PM, 16
Convection current chamber, 69
Conveyor roll type ball brg., 358
Cooling tower drives
alignment of c.t.d., 184
Copaltite, 583
Copper-base alloys, 527
Corner radius, definition, 378
Correction planes, in balancing, 255, 262
Corrosion
atmospheric c., 546
pitting c., 456
stress c. through high shrink stresses, 495
Corrosion resistance of chromium, 545
Cost
of maintenance, 22
of motor rewinds, 485
Cost savings, 4
Costing, of work orders, 17, 19
Couple unbalance, definition, 243, 245
Coupling
checks, 57–58
eccentricity, 180
installation, 62, 174–175
lubricant, 175
Coupling hubs
mounting of c.h., 513–517
CPM techniques, *See* Critical path method.
Cracking tendencies, of hard surfacing materials, 524, 531
Cradle, for balancing machines, 270
Crankcases
repair of c. by electrochemical metallizing, 553
Crankshafts
balancing, 276
hardening by nitriding, 557
repair of c. by electrochemical metallizing, 553
Critical dimensions
diagram, 52–53
post T/A data, 63
tabulation, 54–56
Critical path method (CPM), 20
Cross effect, in balancing plane separation, 261–262
Crossover brackets (alignment), 217–220
Curing agent, 67
Curing agent temperatures, 75
Curvature effect on misaligned components, 190
Cylinder liners
chrome plating of c.l., 544
hardening by nitriding, 557
Cylinder heads
repair by electrochemical metallizing, 553

D-gun process
description, 523, 532-535
physical properties of D-gun coatings, 534
selection of D-gun coating materials, 537-539
Data processing system, for PM, 16–21
Deflection curves, for duplex ball brgs., 398–400
Degaussing, 51, 499
Degrading concrete, 89–91
Deposits/fouling, 59
Deterioration of O-rings in storage, 567–568
Deterministic life problems, 4
Detonation gun process, *See* D-gun process.
Dial indicator conventional American, 192
Dial indicator fixture sag, 185–189
Die-molded packing rings, 450
Diesel crankshaft, balancing, 276
Diesel engine fuel injector pump parts hardening by nitriding, 557
Diffusion alloys, 557–562
characteristics and applications of (table), 561–562
Dimensional checking spare parts, 45
Disassembly of rotors for shaft repair, 499–500
Dismounting of hydraulically fitted coupling hubs, 517–518

Displacement, of shafts, 252
Distortion
  of welded repairs, 452
Documenting
  turbomachinery overhaul results, 37–64
Double compensator, use in balancing tooling, 286
Double-row ball bearings
  interchangeability data, 357
Downtime tasks, scheduling of, 28–30
Drum type rotors
  description, 488
Dry ice, use for bearing mounting, 415
Duplex bearings
  dismounting, 396
  identification and handling, 367
  mounting of d.b., 387–390
  packaging, 390–391
  preloading, 396–402
  remounting, 396
  separating spacers, use of s.s., 392–395
  principles of operation, 389–390
Dye penetrant checks, 60, 498–499
Dynamic balancing
  of compressor rotor assemblies, 493–495
  of centrifugal compressor impellers, 493
Dynamic corrections, while balancing shafts, 505
Dynamic unbalance, definition, 247

Eccentricity
  in balancing, 254
  high point of e. in super-precision bearings, 409–410
Economy, of chrome-plating, 552
Eddy current shaft proximity probes
  e.c.s.p.p. used in alignment, 54, 230
Efficiency
  compressors, 36
Electric discharge machining (EDM), 489
Electric motors
  balancing e.m., 300
  design of e.m. shafts, 361
Electrical runout, 51
Electrochemical metallizing
  of crankcases, 553
  of crankshafts, 553
  of cylinder heads, 553
  of engine blocks, 553
  of machinery castings, 553
  of manifolds, 553
  of saddle caps,553
Electroplating
  on-site techniques, 552–554
  processes, 543–553
Electro-spark deposition coatings, 562–563
Embedment, of foreign particles in O-rings, 569
Embedment method of machinery installation, 83
End-drive adapters, in balancing machines, 310
  42–44
Epichlorohydrin, use as O-ring material, 567, 577
Epoxy
  coefficient of expansion, 73
  grouts, 66–131
    forms for, 117–121
    mixing of, 121–123
    placement of, 121–130
    properties of, 70–71, 121
    temperature, effect on, 121
  primers, 81
  strength, 71
  testing methods, 68–71
  vendor qualifications, 71
Equipment records system, 17–18
Error analysis, of balancing arbors, 281–284
Ethylene-propylene, use as O-ring material, 567, 573
Expansion joints, machinery foundations, 87–88

Face-and-rim alignment method, 178–179, 182–184
Face-to-face bearings
  mounting of f.t.f.b., 391
  preloading of f.t.f.b., 401
Face sag effect, in alignment, 187–189
Failure
  of O-rings, 567
Failure analysis, 4, 8
Failure modes, 7–8
Fans
  balancing of fans, 240
Fatigue failures
  babbitt, f.f., 60
  in centrifugal compressor impellers, 492
  by marking impellers, 494
Feather keys, use of f.k., 492
Feedback cards, 18, 29
Felt seal ball bearing type, 358
Fiber-impregnated tape, use in rotor balancing, 505
Field balancing, 317–329
Field balancing equipment, 252–256, 317–318
Filler piece, tapered for flange alignment, 173–174
Fillets, in shafts for bearing mounting, 377–379
Filters, for compressor piping 156, 160–161

Fits
  of feather keys in centrif. comp. rotors, 491
  push fits in bearings, 411
Fixed equipment inspection system, 19–20, 23
Flame hardening, 554
Flame spraying, 464–465
Flange joint
  bolting practices, 144–145
  face acceptability criteria, 151
  leakage, 146–147
  parallelism, 146
Flatness readings, of seal face, 447–449
Flexible-bearing balancing machine, 258
Flexibility analysis, 143–144
Flexibility test, for rotor balancing, 276–277
Fluorocarbon, use as O-ring material, 567, 574–575, 573–574
Fluorosilicone, use as O-ring material, 567
Forms, for epoxy grout, 117–121
Flywheel, 292
Forced outage, 47
Formula alignment methods, 198
Fouling/deposits, 59
Foundation
  causes of failures, 99–100
  cracking, 86–89, 98–103
  design to reduce stress risers, 86–87
  size and condition for alignment, 173
  machinery, 67
  repairs, 98–103
  specifications, 105, 121–141
  turbotrain, 47
Frequency distribution, 4

Gas ring, used in heating of impellers, 502
Gas tungsten-arc welding, 523
Gas turbine compressor assembly, balancing, 276, 300
Gasket, spiral wound, 174
Gasket, installation, 146–147
Gear couplings, sliding velocity of g.c., 177
Gears, 239
  nitriding of g.s., 557
Gland dimensions, for O-ring sizing, 580–581
Go/No-Go gauge, use in rotor assembly, 502
Graphical alignment methods, 195, 204–213
Graphite, use as joint sealant, 584
Gravity balancing machines, 256–257
Grout
  aggregate, 72
  cement-type, 133–137
  coefficient of expansion, 73
  condition of g. for good machinery alignment, 173
  conventional g., 67
  definition, 66
  dimensional stability, 70
  epoxy resins, 65–71, 104–131
  forms, 117–120
  non-foaming type, 70
  non-metallic type, 131
  placement of, 121–130
Grouting
  access holes, 81
  baseplates, 104–113, 136–137
  checklists, 121–141
  job planning for g., 74–75
  need for good g., 67
  pressure g., 96–98
  of rotating equipment, 138–141
Guides, nitriding of g., 557

Hard-bearing balancing machines, 259–260
Hardening, of machinery components, 554–557
Hardfacing/hard surfacing
  alloys, 519, 524–531
  definition, 519
  materials, 527–529, 537, 542–552
  of fan wheels, 472, 481, 482
  of wear rings/impellers, 457
  selection guide, 533
  techniques, 522–524
Hardness
  of chromium, 545
  diffusion alloys, 558
  required to avoid sulfide stress cracking, 501
Hard coating
  of aluminum alloys (anodizing), 566
Hard surfacing. *See* Hardfacing
Health/safety, 4
Heat
  use of h. for removal of bearings, 369
  use of h. for mounting bearings, 412–415
Heat-affected zone in weld repairs, 462
Heat checking, use of dye penetrants, 498
Heat treatment
  to counter brittleness or fatigue in shafts, 543
High points of eccentricity, in precision bearings, 523
High speed pencil grinder, use for impeller markings, 494
High speed shafts
  repairs of h.s.s., 463–466
High temperature antiseize compound, 503
High-velocity thermal spray coatings, 565
  characteristics and applications (table), 564–565
History charts, for components, 59
Honeycomb labyrinths, in centrifugal comp., 507

Horizontal furnace, used for heating impellers, 502
Hot alignment checking, 57
Hot bolting, 154-155
Hot bonding, of O-rings, 567
Housing bore dimensions, checking, 386
Housing shoulder dimensions, 382-383
HTRC®, fluororubber, used as O-ring material, 577
Hub draw (advance), 514
Hydraulic wrenches, 151
Hysteresis whirl, 501

Identification, of obsolete parts, 23
In situ repair of machinery, *See* On-site electroplating, etc.
Induction heaters, 412-415
Inspection
  of O-rings, 518
  system for fixed equipment, 19-20, 23
Installation
  of gaskets, 146-147
  outdoor i. of machinery, 86-87
Interchangeability, of ball bearings, 355-357
Iron-manganese-phosphate coatings, 566

Jack screws, 106-109, 128, 130, *Also see* Pump baseplates.
Jet gun process, 464
Jig posts, for alignment, 191-194
Jiffy mixer, 122, 124
Jigs, for machinery alignment, 177-181
Job plan, for T/As, 48
Joint compounds, for machinery, 581-584
Joints, in piping, 145-147
Journal
  of shafts, 276
  supports, for balancing machines, 269-271
  treatment of j. diameters in rotor inspection, 498

Kalrez®, use as O-Ring material, 579
Keyways, in balancing madrels, 493
King pins, hardening by nitriding, 557
Knife-edge, supports for balancing machines, 263
Knuckle pins, hardening by nitriding, 557
Knurling, preparation for hardfacing, 523

Lantern rings, in stuffing boxes, 450
Labyrinth
  compounding of thrust error in l. design,506
  leakage, across balance drum, 507
  seal, 4, 60
  wear, 60
Laitance
  definition,67
  removed from concrete foundations, 114
  tensile strength due to l., 89
Lapping
  checklist for l. after hardfacing, 540
  hand l. and polishing seal faces, 443-445
  of mechanical seal faces, 441-449
Laser-optic alignment, 184-185, 231, 233-234
Lateral vibration, failure of rotors caused by l.v., 501
Leakage
  control, 153-155, 440, 451
  l. flow in packing installation, 451
Lightband readings, of seal face flatness, 448-449
Line boring, bearing saddles, 482
Line strainers, 161-162
Load values, for machinery installations, 82
Locking rings, 492
Locknut, installing method of l. in cent. comp. rotors, 504
Lubricant, for antifriction bearings, 352

Machinability, of hardfaced machinery parts, 533
Machinery
  alignment, 44, 57, 64, 171-237
  commissioning, 39
  erection, 39
  failure, 172
  installation, 81-91
  operation, 39
  repair, 39
  specialist, 39
  testing, 39
  troubleshooting, 39
Machinery monitoring, prior to T/As, 47
Magnaflux/magnaglow, in checking for forging defects, 499
Magnetic particle check, 60
Maintainability, 7
  bearing m., 351-429
  computer, 17-35
  contractors, 32
  cost, 22
  manuals, 28-29
  organization, 8, 12-32
  philosophy, 3
  records, 18
  responsibilities, 31-32
  scheduling, 20
  work orders, 21
Maintenance and engineering services, 12-35

Maintenance strategies
  bad actor/weak spot management, 3–5
  breakdown/demand-based, 3–5, 15
  overall, 12–31
  preventive, 3–5, 7, 15
  predictive/condition-based, 3–5
Manager's role, 13
Manuals, for maintenance, 26–31
Manufacturing techniques, impellers, 489
Mass centering, in balancing, 288–289
Material quality, of rotor shaft forgings, 501
Materials
  used for hardsurfacing, 523–525, 528–531
  used for O-Rings, 566–581
  used for overlay, 455, 460–462
  used for plating, 543
Materials checklist
  for cement grouting
  for epoxy grouting, 76–77
  for machinery T/As, 43
Materials coordinator, 38, 45
Mathematical methods, for alignment, 196–204
Measurement
  of amount of unbalance, 261–263
  of angle of unbalance, 261–264
  of seal face flatness, 445–449
Mechanical seals
  faces, 440–451
    lapping and polishing of s. faces, 441–449
  installation checklist, 436–439
  installation, repair, and maintenance, 430–486
  measurement of flatness, 445–449
    monochromatic light, 447
    optical flat, 446–447
    readings, 447–449
  parts, replacing, 440
  removal of, 440
  trouble spots, checklist, 430–435
Mechanical seal fluid containers, cleaning of, 163–165
Mechanical supervisor, 38, 44, 171
Metal stitching, description, 470–472, 475–480
Metallizing
  definition 523
  electrochemical m. processes, 552–554
Micropeening, 51
Misalignment tolerances, 176
Molecular metals, 470
Molybdenum disulfide, application to fits, 493
Moment of inertia, 253
Moment unbalance, 243–246
Monitoring of machinery
  condition, 10
  performance, 34–35
  prior to T/As, 47
  post T/As, 63
  process performance, 34
Monochromatic light, 447
Motor repair shop, selection, 289
Mounting procedures
  antifriction bearings using heat, 412–415
  basic m.p.s for antifriction bearings, 390
  for duplex bearings, 395–397
  of hydraulically fitted coupling hubs, 513–517
  of impellers on balancing mandrels, 493
  of sleeves and thrust collars, 503
Multi-plane balancing, 255, 313–316

National Association of Corrosion Engineers (NACE), 542
Neoprene rubber, use as O-ring material, 567, 571–572
Nickel-chromium-boron alloys, used in hardfacing, 527
Nitriding
  application to typical machinery parts, 557
  definition, 555
Nitrile rubber, use as O-ring material, 567, 571–572
Nomogram, of balance tolerances, 303–305

O-Rings
  assembly precautions, 61
  back-up rings for, 579–581
  compatibility with chemicals, 569
  failure from overheating, 569
  inspection of, 518
  mechanical damage of, 569
  selection and application, 567–581
  use in modern coupling hubs, 514–516
Obsolete parts, identification of, 23
OEM, *See* Original equipment manufacturer.
Off-square, checking shoulders for during bearing assembly, 386
On-site electroplating, 552
Opening, of machinery, 58
Operating costs, 4
Operators, process, 171
OPTALIGN® system, 184–185
Optical alignment, 109–110, 233
Optical flat, used in seal repairs, 446
Organization, types of, 12
Organizational control, 12
Organizational structure, 6–7
Original equipment manufacturer (OEM), 487
Outdoor installation, of machinery, 86–87
Outside repair shops, available services, 472–486
Out-of-round, checking for o.o.r. of bearing seats, 384–386

Overlay materials, in surface repairs, 455, 460–462
Overlaying, of seal flanges, 463
Overhaul
  definition, 6–7, 18
  documentation, 63–64
  of turbomachinery, 37–64
  personnel assigned to o., 37–42
Overheating
  O-ring failure from o., 568
Overspeed testing
  of impellers, 490
  of turbotrain components, 61
Oxyacetylene flame spraying, 483
Oxyacetylene welding, 523

Packaging, of bearings, 390–392
Parallel wedges, 106
Parasitic mass, in balancing, 264
Parts depots, 32
Parts, non-standard, 64
Peening
  applied for shaft straightening, 468–469
  shop peening, to increase fatigue strength, 543
Perfluoroelastomer. *See* Kalrez®.
Performance, of compressors, 35
Performance reports, PM, 26–28
PERMALIGN® system, 233
Phosphonitrilic fluoroelastomer, used as O-ring material, 567, 578
Photorecording, of overhaul, 57, 64
Pictorial records, 57, 64
Pick-ups, used in balancing machines, 260
Pickling, of piping, 156–167
Pin micrometer, used in rotor assembly, 504
Pinions, nitriding of p.s, 557
Pinning procedure, in repair of machinery castings, 472
Pipe strainers, 161–162
Piping
  cleaning, 155, 166–167
  design criteria, 101
  design procedure, 142–144
  fabrication, 155–156
  installation, 142–156
  joints, 145–147
  neutralization, 158
  passivation, 158
  testing, 155–156
Piping flexibility, 143–144
Piping, significance in machinery alignment, 173–174
Pistons, nitriding of p., 557
  resurfacing by D-gun process, 537
Pitting corrosion, 456
Pitting corrosion, 456
Plane separation, in balancing, 261–265
Planners, duties of p. during machinery T/A, 44–50
Planning
  machinery grouting jobs, 74–75
  turbomachinery overhauls, 37–64
Planning and scheduling
  preventive maintenance, (PM), 18–20
  major maintenance projects, 20
  maintenance work orders, 21
Plant engineering, 34–35
Plant manager, PM responsibility of, 15
Plant senior machinery specialist, 38
Plasma spray, definition, 523
Plasti-gage, 59, 62
Plating
  industrial chrome-plating, 543–552
  materials used, 543
  surface preparation, 543
Plotting board, for alignment, 204–205
PM records system, 18
Pocket calculator, used in field balancing, 323–324
Polar moment of inertia, in balancing, 253, 272, 289
Polishing
  of shaft journals, 464
  of seal faces, 441–445
Polyacrylate, used for O-ring materials, 535, 575
Polyethylene compressor piston rods, resurfacing, 537
Polysulfide rubber, used for O-ring materials, 567, 576–577
Polyurethane, use for O-ring materials, 567, 576
Porous chrome, load capacity of p.c., 547
Post mortem failure analysis, 8
Prealignment requirements, 172–175
Precision balancing mandrel, for impellers, 493
Predictive component life, 4
Predictive maintenance, factors in, 8
Predictive maintenance, logic diagram, 9
Preload bearings, 395
Preload offset, 402
Preloading
  of duplex bearings, 396–397
  need for preloading bearings, 400
Pressure grouting, of sole plates, 96–98
Pressure-injection regrouting, 91–99
Preventive maintenance, (PM), 7
Preventive plating, 543
Procedures, for maintenance (purpose, etc.), 26
Process operators, 171
Profitability, of plant, 4, 15

Programmable calculators, for alignment, 194
Protective coating, 88
Pump baseplates
  grouting, 104–132
    specifications for, 121
  leveling, 105–111
  support, 105–111
    jack screws, 106–109
    parallel wedges, 106
    shim pack with chock, 106–107
    single wedge, 106
Pump impellers
    repair by braze method, 470–471
    repair by diffusion alloy application, 560
Pump plungers, resurfacing by D-gun process, 537
Pumps, shaft repair by welding, 455–456
Push fit, for mounting bearings, 411
Push rods, hardening by nitriding, 557
PVMQ®, *See* Silicone.

Quasi-static unbalance, 246–247

Radial deflections, of rolling element bearings, 398–400
Radial runout
  checking of r.r. during balancing operation, 505
  determining r.r. in rolling element bearings, 410
  of rotor shaft ends, 504
Radius of gyration, in balancing, 272
Reassembly procedure, general, 61–63
Reboring, of cylinders, 482
Reciprocating compressor
  foundation, 95–98
  pickling of suction piping, 156–165
Reconditioning of mechanical seal components, 430–435
Records, for flanged joints, 149
Records system, for equipment, 18
Refresher training, 42
Regrouting, 91–98
Reinforcing steel, in foundation reliability, 4
Remachining, of seal faces, 482
Remounting, of duplex bearings, 396
Repair
  definition, 7
  hard surfacing r., 522–552
  of machinery foundations, 98–103
  of castings, 470–471
  of crankshafts, 553
  of cylinder heads, 553
  of high speed shafts, 463–466
  of mechanical seals, 430–451
  of turbomachinery rotors, 487–518
  on-site machinery r. techniques, 522–554
  shops, 472–486, 508–513
  welded r. to pump shafts and other components, 451–463
Repair specifications, for mechanical seals, 430–435
Replacement
  definition, 7
  r. considerations for rolling element bearings, 405
  maintenance, 7
  value, 22
Report format, development of, 25
Residual unbalance, 242, 270, 298, 301
Resins (epoxies), 65–101
Resistance
  of chromium, 548–549
  of diffusion alloys, 559
Resonance speed, of rotors in balancing, 241, 258
Retaining rings, hardening by nitriding, 557
Restorative plating, 543
Reverse-indicator alignment, 178–182
Rigid rotors, in balancing, 241–242
Rim measurements (alignment), 181
Rings, of antifriction bearings, 351
Rolls, balancing of r.s., 292
Rolling element bearings, 270
Rosebud-tip torch, used for heating impeller hubs, 493, 502
Rotating balancing machine, *See* Centrifugal balancing machine.
Rotor
  balancing reporting, 64
  behavior during balancing, 239
  bows in compressors and steam turbines, 495–496
  history charts, 59
  inspection, disassembly, stacking, and balance of cent. comp. r., 508–513
  locknut, results from overtightening, 504
  repairs at outside shops, 508–513
  run-out diagram, 64
  thrust in centrifugal compressors, 506
Rotor checks, 61–63
Runout
  of balancing arbors, 285–286
  radial runout of rotor shaft ends, 504

Saddle caps, repair by electrochemical metallizing, 553
Safety during T/As, 47
Safety/health, 4
Sag, of alignment brackets, 185–189
Sag compensator device, 186
Salvage
  considerations for rolling element bearings, 406–407

Salvage (continued)
methods for machinery castings, 469-472
of worn or mismatched machinery parts, 552
Sampling, of deposits, 59
Sandblasting
of baseplate underside, 111
of rotor parts, 498
SBR, *See* Styrene-butadiene.
Scanning head, used to obtain phase references, 261
Scheduling, of maintenance, 20
Seals
checkpoints for, 435-439
face flatness of, 440-449
labyrinth s. 4, 60, 506
mechanical, installation, repair, and maintenance of, 430 451
repair of s. flanges, 462
removal of, 440
trouble spots, 430-435
Sealants, 88
Sealing, of grout, 79-80
Sealing compounds, for machinery joints
boiled linseed oil, 582
Copaltite, 583-584
graphite and boiled linseed oil, 584
Permatex, 584
silicone rubber, 582-583
Usudurian, 584
Seawater lift pumps, welded shaft repair, 457
Seizing, of rubbing parts, 559
Service factor/availability, 4
Serviceperson, 45, 56-57
Senior machinery specialist, 38
Shaft and housing shoulder dimensions, for af bearings, 382-383
Shaft design, centrifugal compressors, 500-501
Shaft end design, 501
Shaft fillets, significance for rolling element bearings, 377-379
Shaft shoulders, significance for rolling element bearings, 376-377
Shaft straightening, 466-470
Shielded metal-arc welding, used for hardfacing, 522
Shim pack, 106
Shim stock, used to locate impellers 503
Shot peening, to increase shaft fatigue strength, 543
Shoulder removal method, of pressure regrouting, 91-94
Shrink fits, in rotor assembly, 495
Shrinkage, of concrete, 98
Silicone (PVMQ), used for O-ring material, 574
Silicone sealant, use of, 88
Single plane balancing, 255, 306
Single wedge, 106
Sizing of balance piston line, 507
Skilled specialists, 13
Sliding velocity of gear couplings, 177
Soft-bearing balancing machines, 258-259
Sole plates, 81-83, 96-98
Sonic velcity, 489
Spacers, for duplex bearings, 392-395
Spare parts, centralized, 32-33
Spare parts
checking of, 41, 45, 50-51
consumption records, 63
storage of, 50-52
Spare parts and materials, 50-51
coordinator, 38
tabluation, 41
Spare rotors, 51-52
Special purpose bearings, 353
Specialist teams, 13, 32
Specification, for surfacing materials, 523-524
Spin pits, 490
Spindle servicing checklist, 406
Spindles, 239
Splines, hardening by nitriding, 557
Split-collar puller, used in bearing removal, 368
Split bushings, 450
Spring hangers, 143-145
Spray lubed thrust bearings, 507
Stacked rotors, 488
Standard undersize dimensions for shafts, 466
Standardization, of rolling element bearings, 352-358
Standards
ABEC, 352
AFBMA, 352, 389
API, 617, centrifugal compressors, 506
balancing and vibration s., 344-346
for testing balancing machines, 292
ISO 1940, 302
ISO 2953, 292, 295, 299
operating s., 4
Static balancing, 251
Static unbalance, 242-244, 251
Steam turbines
overspeed, 49
Stock catalog system, 17
Stoning, of shaft journals, 465
Straightening of shafts, 466-470
Strainers, 161-162
Strapping, of shaft journals, 465
Strategy, of maintenance, 3
Stress corrosion, through high shrink stresses, 495

Stress relieving, of machinery components, 313
Stress risers
  in foundations, 86–88
  through marking of impellers, 494
Stroboscopic lamp, used in balancing, 261
Styrene-butadiene, used as O-ring material, 567, 575
Squirrel cage induction motor, 272
Submerged metal arc welding, used in pump shaft repair, 459
Super-precision bearings, 409
Surface tension, of oil on chromium surfaces, 546
Surface fatigue, definition, 521–522
Surface foam, removal of, 96
Surfacing materials
  composition, 524–525
  selection of s.m.s., 531
  special purpose s.m.s., 528–531
Surging of centrifugal compressors, effects, 506
Symbols, for bearings, 354–357
Symmetric rotors, 253

T/A, *See* Turnaround
Tandem bearings
  basic mounting, 390
  packaging, 390–391
  separating methods, 392–394
Technical specialists, 13–15
Teflon®
  application of thin films to metals, 566
  infusion process, 566
Temperature(s)
  effect on baseplate leveling, 110, 111
  for grout curing, 75, 121
Tempering, of nitriding steels, 556
Tempil stick, used for indicating temperature when heating impellers, 493
Terminology
  balancing t., 332–339
  balancing machine t., 340–343
Test masses, used in balancing, 294–295
Test procedures, in balancing, 295–299
Testing
  of balancing machines, 289–300
  of impellers, 61
  of rotor shafts, 501
  overspeed t., 61, 490
Thermal conductivity
  of chromium, 547
Thermal expansion
  of equipment, 144
  of piping, 144
Thermal expansion coefficient
  of grouts, 70
Thermal growth
  correction for t.g. in alignment, 228, 230–236
Thermal offset, in alignment, 228, 233
Through-the-case method, of pressure regrouting, 94–96
Thrust
  in angular contact bearings, 410–411
Thrust bearing load, in centrifugal compressors, 507
Thrust collars
  assembly standards, 498
  mounting design, 506
  warping risk from heat applications, 503
Thrust disc, *See* Thrust collars.
Thrust load, in rolling element bearings, 377
Thrust washers, hardening by nitriding, 557
Timing gears, hardening by nitriding, 557
Tip speed,of centrifugal compressor impellers, 489
TIR or T.I.R. *See* Total indicator runout.
Titanium carbide
  applied in D-gun process, 537
Titanium dioxide applied in D-gun process, 537
Tolerances
  alignment t., 175–177
  determination of balancing t.s., 308–309
Torque
  controlled torque bolt-up of flanges, 150–152
Torsional vibration, cause for compressor shaft failures, 501
Total indicator runout (TIR), 252, 254, 499
Training, for machinery T/As, 42
Transient bow condition, in built-up rotors, 496
Transverse moment of inertia, 253
Traverse test, in balancing, 291, 295
Tribaloy® 700, 563
Trip and throttle valve, 49
Tungsten alloy, used in electrochemical metallizing, 553
Tungsten carbide
  applied in D-gun process, 537, 541
  applied in diffusion alloying, 558–559
Turbine rotor, balancing, 276
Turbocharged engines, benefits of chrome liners on t.c.e., 550
Turbocompressors, 8
Turbomachinery rotor repairs, 487–507
Turbotrain T/A engineer, 38, 42–44
Turnaround (T/A)
  bar chart, 49
  coordinator, 38
  definition, 37
  information package, 43

Turnaround (T/A) (continued)
job plan, 48
major machinery, 37–64
management, 37–64
manning, 37–42
planning, 46–56
responsibilities during T/A, 38
specialists, 38
timing, 39
training, 42
Turnaround packages
contents, 43
preparation, 46
Twisting and stranding machine, balancing of t.a.s.m., 325–329
Two-plane balancing, principles, 255
Two-plane rotor balancing tolerance, 306

Unbalance
correction methods, 287–288
definition, cause and effect, 238–239, 247–248
reduction ratio, 290–291
test, 291, 299–300
Unbalanced rotor, effects, 238
Universal joint drive, for balancing machines, 272
Usudurian®, used as machinery joint sealing compound, 584

Vector diagram, used in field balancing, 320–322, 328–329
Vector meters, 261
Velocity-type pick-ups, used in balancing machines, 260
Vendor
assistance, during T/As, 45, 56–57
qualification, for epoxy manufacture, 71
specifications supplied to repair facility, 512–513
Vendor serviceperson, 54–55
Vent holes
in pump baseplates, 111–112
in grout forms, 123–125
Vibration
analyzer, used in balancing, 320
composite v. in balancing machines, 262
effect of v., 239
monitoring, 63
standards, 344–346
torsional, 501

Warpage of shafts after welding, 452
Washing, with acid, 90
Water injection pump, shaft repair, 457
Water pump shafts, hardening by nitriding, 557
Wear
abrasive wear, definition, 521
adhesive wear, definition, 520
corrosive wear, definition, 521
prevention by diffusion alloying, 559
surface fatigue, 521–522
Wear plates, hardening by nitriding, 557
Wear resistance
criteria for w.r., 533
obtained by electroplating 552–554
of carbide-cobalt coatings, 542
Web deflection, 98
Weldability, of materials, 454
Welding
distortion, 453
procedure, 456
repairs by w., 452–463
Wettability, of chromium surfaces, 546
Windage loss, of impellers while being balanced, 490
Wire drawing, 59
Work lists, 39, 40
Work orders, 19, 21
Work zones, 39, 45
Wrenches, hardening by nitriding, 557

Yield strength, of coupling end of compressor shafts, 500

Zyglo method, used for crack detection in shafts, 499

Practical Machinery Management for Process Plants
Volume 3, 2nd Edition

Machinery Component Maintenance and Repair

This edition of the third book in a four-volume series is an indispensable guide for process engineers concerned with machinery (and component) installation, maintenance, and repair. New information is provided on pump baseplate installation and grouting, repair and maintenance of mechanical seals, metal stitching, and managing rotor repairs at outside shops. Numerous additional illustrations and photos aid the engineer in visualizing the process described.

Loaded with practical details, this comprehensive text discusses maintenance organization, machinery turnaround management, turbomachinery overhauls, machinery foundations and grouting, process machinery piping, alignment and balancing of machinery components, ball bearing maintenance and replacement, mechanical seals, welded repairs to pump shafts and other rotating equipment components, centrifugal compressor rotor repair, selection and application of O-rings, and more.

Anyone involved in machinery component maintenance and repair will find that this book is a rich source of field-proven and cost-effective methods.

Heinz P. Bloch, P.E., is a licensed consulting engineer with offices in Montgomery, Texas. He retired from Exxon Chemical Company with more than 20 years of service.

Fred K. Geitner is an engineering associate with Esso Chemicals Canada, Inc.

Other Volumes in the Series

Volume 1: Improving Machinery Reliability, Third Edition

Shows how to ensure that reliability is built into major machinery *before* it arrives at the job site. ISBN 0-88415-661-3 Product #5661

Volume 2: Machinery Failure Analysis and Troubleshooting, Third Edition

Tells plant engineers how to systematically analyze and troubleshoot machinery distress. ISBN 0-88415-662-1 Product #5662

Volume 4: Major Process Equipment Maintenance and Repair, Second Edition

Great detail is given to preventative and predictive maintenance for major process units. Special attention is paid to principles behind machinery selection, efficiency, performance and long life. ISBN 0-87201-454-1 Product #1454

Cover photo courtesy of In-Place Machining Company, Milwaukee.

PRODUCT #1781

ISBN 0-87201-781-8

50000

9 780872 017818

Gulf Publishing Company
Book Division • P.O. Box 2608
Houston, Texas 77252-2608
www.gpcbooks.com